



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

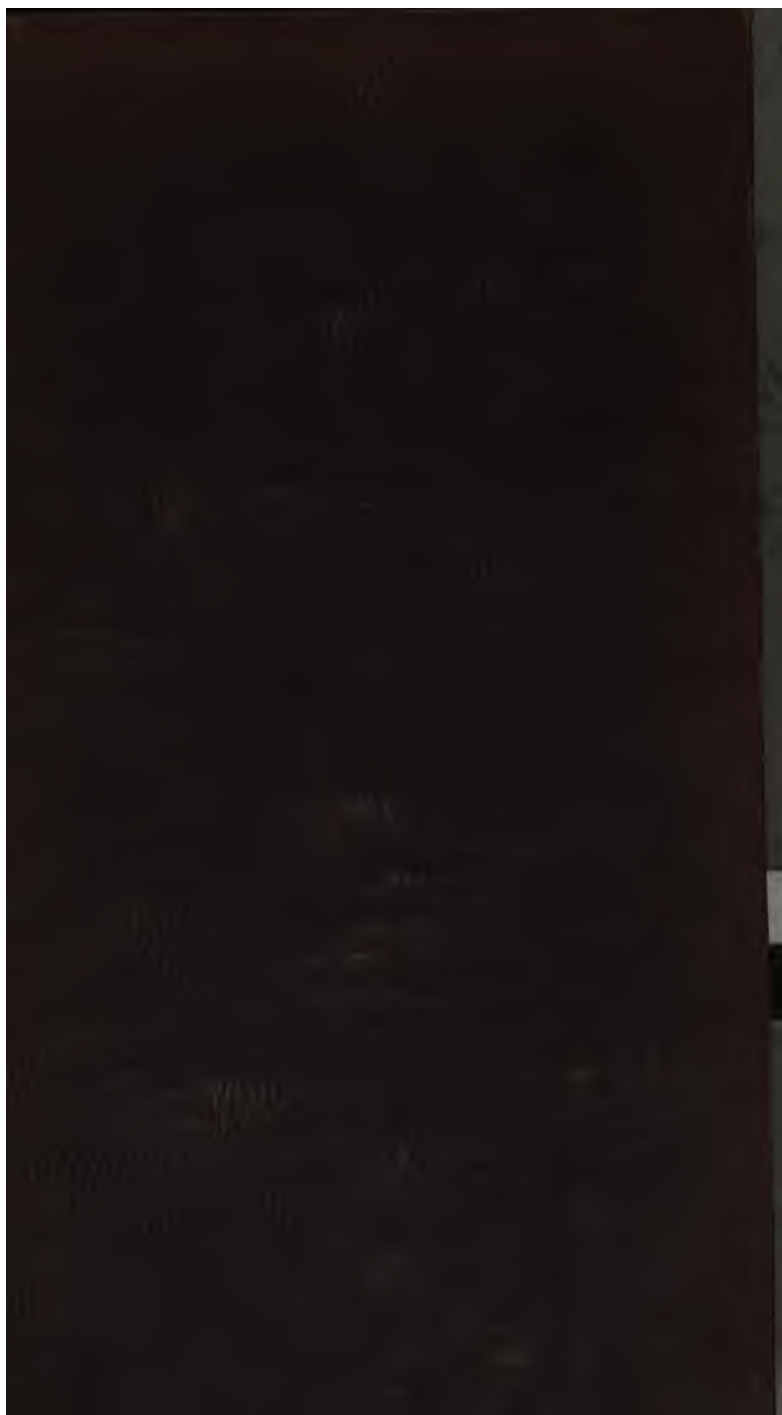
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

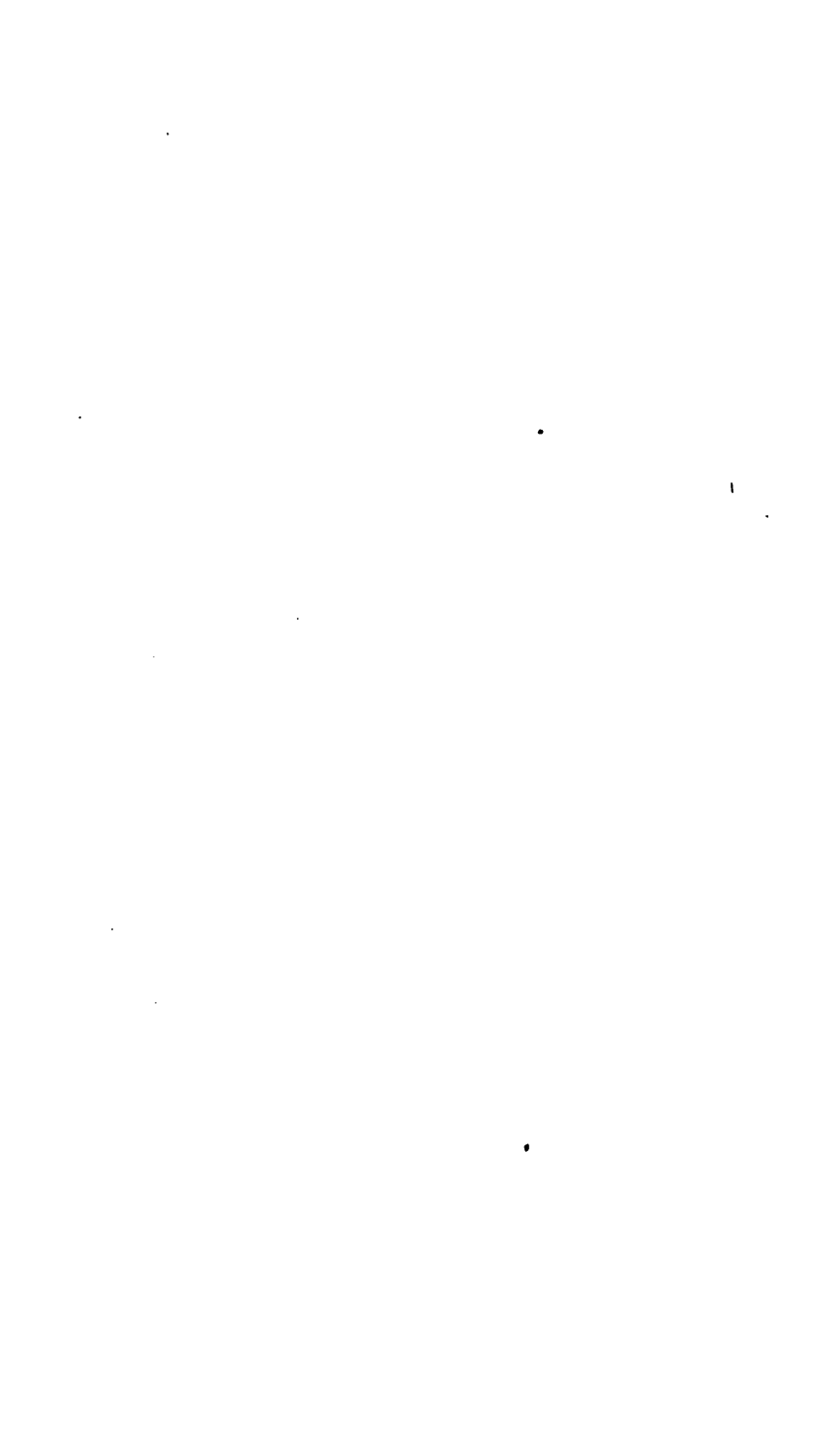
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>





600089700U









Lexicon French Grammar.

Entered at Stationers' Hall.

THE
LEXICON FRENCH GRAMMAR,

FOR THE USE OF

ENGLISH STUDENTS.

BY

SAINT ANGE SIMON,

MASTER OF FRENCH, GLASGOW,

Author of the French Speaker, Grammatical Analysis, Key to the Gender of Nouns, &c.



London:

SIMPKINS, MARSHALL, & CO.

GLASGOW: DAVID ROBERTSON, AND GEORGE GALLIE.

EDINBURGH: SUTHERLAND & KNOX.

1853.

303. C. 130.

PRINTED BY WILLIAM RANKIN, 62 ARGYLL STREET, GLASGOW.

INTRODUCTION.

THE following pages are not presented to the public merely as another French Grammar, but as a New French Grammar; new, because it contains several novel features which, we trust, will be found decided improvements—greatly tending to assist the student, by rendering his labours less irksome and his knowledge more accurate.

One of the first difficulties which retards the progress of a student, is that of selecting the proper French word or expression among the many given in the dictionary—which difficulty, we trust, will be now easily surmounted. How? Simply by the French word being found under each English word in the Exercises; and when the word has previously occurred, reference alone being given, by figures, to the exercise in which it has already appeared: for example, the French of the word *WITH* being wanted, it having previously appeared, *e*⁸ alone is given; and, by reference accordingly, to Exercise VIII. in *Syntax*, easily found, the number of each Exercise being pointed out by the Egyptian figures close to the number of each page, and *avec* will be found, being the absolute word wanted; or if *e*¹⁰ be given for *WITH*, it will, by referring to *Exercise X. in Syntax*, be found rendered by *de*, also the word *absolutely wanted*; but by referring to the dictionary for *WITH*,

you will find *avec, de, par, à, &c.*, which, instead of enlightening the scholar, will tend to puzzle him considerably. We shall find, on the other hand, many French words that have a score of varied meanings in English: for example, the verb FAIRE, *to make, to do, to deal, to be, to order, to take, to fit, to perform, &c.*; again, for ON we find *we, people, they, it, one, he, you, a person, there, &c.* What a labyrinth for a student!

The division of the work has been much approved of by some teachers of French in England; for to those who are desirous of acquiring a thorough knowledge of the language, the work, as a whole, contains a series of lessons calculated to lead them easily, expeditiously, and certainly to their object. While those whose aim in studying goes no further than to understand a quotation, or read ordinary French works, will find all that is necessary for their purpose in the first of the three divisions into which the work is arranged.

The division of the Rules in Syntax and Syntax Raisonnée into short sections, and referred to in the Exercises, will be found a great saving of time and trouble, as the portion of the Rule, of which the phrase in the Exercise is an application, may be found instantanément, without being obliged to wade through a long rule for only a portion of it.

The Exercises will be found in immediate connection with the Rules and Verbs of every kind and form in the First Part, and with all the Rules in Syntax and Syntax Raisonnée; and they are all nearly of uniform length, thereby standing forth as self-appointed daily lessons.

In farther illustration of the plan we have adopted, we would observe that the First Division, intended, of course, for begin-

ners, has received more than ordinary attention, it being necessarily the foundation of all future progress. This division opens with a table of all the French sounds extant, namely 15; and a table of all possible diphthongs, with fifty-four vocabularies of words, being an application of each of the fifteen sounds (though they cannot supply the place of oral instruction), followed by observations on the Consonants, finals or not finals; to which is added an explanation of all the accents, marks, and stops used in the French language; with a full account of the letter *E*; the whole in conformity with that most critical standard, THE FRENCH ACADEMY.

The second part of the First Division begins with a categorical introductory chapter on the Nine Parts of Speech, followed by directions and suitable examples for analysis or parsing, so indispensable; elementary exercises on the principal parts of speech, preceded by concise rules—the Verbs in four conjugations, as acknowledged by all modern French grammarians, fully conjugated in every possible form—Conjugations of all the models of Irregular Verbs, to each of which is appended an Exercise; lastly, an Alphabetical List of all the Irregular Verbs, with reference to their respective models.

The Second Division commences with Syntax, for which the previous division will have fully prepared the pupil. In this part we have been careful to give such rules and explanations as will enable the pupil to prosecute this part of his study without being perplexed with what may be called the *finesse* of the French language; and by the anxiety we have felt to make ourselves understood, we trust we have succeeded in removing most of those difficulties which pupils mostly complain of. An explanation of these difficulties will be found in Syntax *Raisonnée*, to which constant reference is made by the figures affixed to each rule in this division.

The Third Division, or Syntax Raisonnée, contains a series of rules on the finesse and peculiarities of the French language. In explaining these we have aimed at perspicuity rather than elegance; and we have been at pains to make the rules regarding the *participles*, the use of the *subjunctive*, and the *negatives*, positive and precise; to which has been added a selection of the most difficult idioms, reduced to rules.

To the Grammar an Appendix has been annexed, containing thirteen lists, forming a chapter of references, which will be found very useful, more particularly as regards the government of infinitives and prepositions.

If the pupil will follow out the plan we have laid down, and which will be found neither tedious nor irksome, we are confident he will have acquired as much knowledge as can be obtained from any grammar for teaching the French language through the medium of the English tongue; whether he shall be able to converse freely will depend on the advantages he has received from his teacher, or from those with whom he associates; he may rest assured, however, that whatever may be said, *he will never acquire the capability of speaking the language correctly, without making theory the concomitant of the earliest practice*; any thing else would be attempting to raise a superstructure without a foundation.

In conclusion, we beg to remark, that in the formation of our Exercises we have preferred selecting short phrases from the best French authors, which we have translated into English, that, by being put again into French, the idioms and construction of that language might be more easily and better attained; in these translations we have, for obvious reasons, *been more literal than elegant*.

In the foregoing remarks we may, perhaps, have anticipated what the pupil will find stated in the body of the book, but we were anxious fully to explain ourselves and our views. Our excuse, if one be required, we shall give in the words of Larochevoucault—

"Pour bien savoir les choses, il faut en savoir le détail."—MAXIMES.

TESTIMONIALS

IN FAVOUR OF

M. SIMÉON'S FRENCH GRAMMAR.

From the late SIR D. K. SANDFORD, M.P., *and Professor of Greek to the University of Glasgow.*

TIGHANRUDH, September 28, 1834.

SIR,

In reply to your letter, requesting me to give my opinion of your qualifications as a Teacher of the French language, I beg to say that what I have seen of your publication, impresses me with the belief that you are possessed of very sound and elegant scholarship in the French tongue and literature, and that you have adopted a most judicious and successful method of imparting your knowledge to others. I may add that this impression entirely corresponds with the judgment, as to your merit, which I have heard expressed by some who were very competent to decide upon such a subject.

I have the honour to be,

SIR,

Your obedient Servant,

D. K. SANDFORD.

From JAMES EWING, Esq., *of Levenside.*

QUEEN STREET, September 30, 1834.

SIR,

I regret that my absence has prevented an immediate reply to your note.

I can have no hesitation in repeating the opinion which I expressed at the time, that your French Grammar did you great credit; that it was distinguished by simplicity, precision, and intelligence; and that it evinced a thorough knowledge of the language, particularly of its colloquial and idiomatic phrases.

I am,

SIR,

Your faithful and obedient Servant,

JAMES EWING.

From SOL. GROSS, late Teacher of Languages to the Academy of Ayr.

WELLINGTON SQUARE, September 28, 1834.

DEAR SIR,

I answer without delay the letter you have favoured me with, under the date of the 26th current. I shall not in reply enter into a minute examination of the merits of your Grammar, which I have introduced in our Seminary; having done so shows that I approve of it. Your plan is one I went upon, and therefore suited my purpose. I have found much benefit to my pupils by adopting it.

I remain,

DEAR SIR,

Your most obedient Servant,

SOL. GROSS.

From JAMES B. KIRK, M.D.

GLASGOW, September 29, 1834.

SIR,

* * * I heard your lecture, explanatory of your system, four years ago, in Greenock, with much interest; and I was then as much struck with the elegance and good taste you displayed as an adept in the English language, as by the new views you successfully unfolded of the best means of teaching your native language. I have since carefully looked into your Grammar, and though I cannot boast of much nicety of acquaintance in French, yet I feel warranted in pronouncing it the best Grammar I have seen. Your excellent acquaintance of the English language has made you eminently qualified to write a good French and English Grammar; and I have no doubt you will be an equally successful teacher.

I am,

SIR,

Your obedient Servant,

JAMES B. KIRK, M.D.

From the late JAMES HAMILTON, ESQ., of Kames, W.S.

KAMES CASTLE, BUTE, September 30, 1834.

SIR,

I have great pleasure in being able, most conscientiously, to state the high opinion I entertain of your qualifications as a teacher. During the several seasons you attended my sons, in that capacity, I had not only the satisfaction to be highly gratified with your punctuality and mode of teaching, but also with the classical knowledge of the language displayed in your excellent Grammar.

I am,

SIR,

Your most obedient Servant,

JAMES HAMILTON.

From J. TAVERNIER, Esq., Professor of French.

EXETER, March 27, 1840.

MONSIEUR,

It is with the greatest possible pleasure that I bear testimony as to the excellency of your French Grammar: its rules are at once clear and concise, aptly illustrated by numerous and well chosen examples; but its chief merit consists in the arrangement of the syntax, where, by reserving the particular rules for another part, the learner avoids the annoyance, and at times disgust, arising from the crowded syntax of most of the Grammars now in general use; and acquires with facility that which would have otherwise been thrown aside in dismay.

I am,

Your most obedient Servant,

J. TAVERNIER.

EXPLANATION OF ABBREVIATIONS.

m.	for Masculine.	conj.	for Conjunction.
f.	" Feminine.	inter.	" Interjection.
p. or pl.	" Plural.	reg.	" Regular.
s.	" Singular.	irreg.	" Irregular.
art.	" Article.	ind.	" Indicative.
no.	" Noun.	subj.	" Subjunctive.
adj.	" Adjective.	obj.	" Object.
pro.	" Pronoun.	sub.	" Subject.
v.	" Verb.	act.	" Active.
ad.	" Adverb.	uni.	" Unipersonal.
pre.	" Preposition.		

For the explanation of the marks used in the Exercises, see page 54.

For the tenses represented by the letters of the Alphabet, see page 64.

CONTENTS.

FIRST DIVISION.

ETYMOLOGY.

PART FIRST.

	PAGE		PAGE
Of the alphabet,	1	Third conjugation in <i>avoir</i> ,	28
Of the fifteen simple sounds,	2	Exercises on <i>avoir</i> ,	84
Of the diphthongs,	3	Fourth conjugation in <i>re</i> ,	85
Fifty-five vocabularies of words, in application of the fifteen sounds,	4	Exercises on <i>re</i> ,	87
Of the French vowel <i>e</i> ,	15	Verb with negation,	88
Of Euphonic letters and signs,	17	Exercises on negation,	90
Of accents and signs,	19	Verb with interrogation,	91
Of the nasal sounds,	21	Exercises with interrogation,	93
Of consonants,	21	Verb with interrogation and negation,	94
Of final consonants,	24	Exercises with interrog. and negation,	96
General remarks,	27	Active Verbs used in a passive sense,	96
		Exercises on passive verbs,	98
		Conjug. of a reflexive verb,	99
		Exercises on reflexive verbs,	108
		Reflexive verb with negation,	104
		Exercise on reflexive verb with neg.,	106
		Reflexive verb with interrogation,	106
		Exercises on reflex. verb with inter.,	106
		Reflexive verb with neg. and int.,	107
		Exercise on do,	107
		Verbs with pro. as direct object,	107
		Exercises on pro. as object,	108
		Verb with direct object and nega.,	109
		Exercise on pro. and nega.,	109
		Verb with direct object and inter.,	110
		Exercise on object and interrogation,	110
		Verb with direct object, with negation and interrogation,	110
		Exercise on do,	111
		Verbs with indirect object,	111
		Exercise on do,	112
		Verb with direct and indirect object,	113
		Exercise on do,	113
		Idiomatical tenses,	114
		Exercises on do,	116
		Table of the regular terminations,	117
		Observations on regular verbs,	118
		Exercises on do,	119
		First irregular verbs in <i>er</i> ,	120
		Exercises on first conjug.,	121
		Second irregular verbs in <i>ir</i> ,	121
		Exercise on second conjug.,	126
		Third irregular verbs in <i>oir</i> ,	127
		Exercises on do,	131
		Fourth irregular verbs in <i>re</i> ,	133
		Exercises on do,	140
		List of verbs seldom used,	142
		Alphabetical list of irregular verbs,	144
		Of adverbs and formations,	147
		Exercises on adverbs,	149
		Of prepositions,	150
		Exercise on do,	151
		Of conjunctions,	152
		Exercises on do,	157
		Of interjections,	16

PART SECOND.

INTRODUCTORY CHAPTER.

Of the article,	28
Of the noun,	30
Of the adjective,	32
Of the degrees of signification,	35
Of the pronouns,	37
Of personal pronouns,	37
Of possessive pronouns,	38
Of demonstrative pronouns,	39
Of relative and absolute pronouns,	40
Of indefinite pronouns,	41
Of the verb,	41
Of the adverbs,	43
Of the prepositions,	43
Of the conjunctions,	43
Of the interjections,	44
Grammatical analysis,	44
Of numbers,	50
Table of multiplication,	53

PART THIRD.

Explanation of marks,	54
Exercise on the article,	55
Exercise on the word <i>some</i> ,	57
Exercise on <i>un</i> , <i>une</i> ,	58
Exercise on nouns,	59
Exercise on adjectives,	60
Exercise on adj. poss. pro.,	61
Exercise on demon. pron.,	63
Of verbs,	63
Conjug. of <i>avoir</i> , to have,	65
Exercises on <i>avoir</i> ,	67
Conjug. of <i>être</i> , to be,	69
Exercises on <i>être</i> ,	71
First conjugation in <i>er</i> ,	73
Exercises on <i>er</i> ,	77
Second conjugation in <i>ir</i> ,	79
Exercises on <i>ir</i> ,	81

SECOND DIVISION.

SYNTAX.

PART FOURTH.			PAGE
CHAPTER FIRST.			
Of the article when used, . . .	155	Of <i>ci</i> and <i>là</i> , . . .	193
Of the article not used, . . .	157	Of <i>le, la, les</i> , . . .	194
Of the art. before names of countries, . . .	159	Of relative pronouns, . . .	195
Of the partitive word <i>some</i> , . . .	161	Of absolute pronouns, . . .	199
Of <i>un, une</i> , . . .	162	Of indefinite pronouns, . . .	202
		1st class indefinite pronouns, . . .	203
		2d class indefinite pronouns, . . .	205
		3d class indefinite pronouns, . . .	206
		4th class indefinite pronouns, . . .	209
CHAPTER SECOND.		Of the word <i>tout</i> , . . .	210
Of nouns, . . .	163		
Of the union of nouns, . . .	164		
CHAPTER THIRD.		CHAPTER FIFTH.	
Of adjectives, . . .	167	Of verbs and subjects, . . .	211
Of the government of adjectives, . . .	167	Of the place of the subject, . . .	213
Of the agreement of adjectives, . . .	167	Object of the verb—its place, . . .	215
Of the place of adjectives, . . .	169	Of person and number, . . .	216
Of adjectives of number, . . .	170	Of moods and tenses, . . .	217
Of adjectives of dimensions, . . .	171	Of the infinitive, . . .	222
Of adjectives of signification, . . .	173	Of the participle present, . . .	223
		Of the participle past, . . .	224
		Of verbal signs, . . .	228
CHAPTER FOURTH.		CHAPTER SIXTH.	
<i>Of Pronouns.</i>		Of adverbs, . . .	231
Of states and cases, . . .	176	Of negative adverbs, . . .	234
Of personal pronouns as subjects, . . .	177		
<i>Il</i> or <i>ce</i> , it, with <i>être</i> , to be, unip. . .	178	CHAPTER SEVENTH.	
Of pers. pro. as objects, . . .	179	Of prepositions, . . .	236
Of the pronouns <i>en</i> and <i>y</i> , . . .	182	CHAPTER EIGHTH.	
Of pro. with <i>même</i> and <i>soi</i> , . . .	183	Of conjunctions, . . .	237
Repetition of pronouns, . . .	185	CHAPTER NINTH.	
Of the order of pronouns, . . .	186	Of interjections, . . .	239
Of adjec. possess. pronouns, . . .	189		
Of adjec. relative pronouns, . . .	191		
Of demonstrative pronouns, . . .	192		

THIRD DIVISION.

SYNTAX RAISONNÉE.

CHAPTER FIRST.			PAGE
Of the article when used, . . .	242	Of comparatives, . . .	272
Of the article when not used, . . .	245	Of the superlatives, . . .	275
Article used and not used before the names of countries, . . .	248		
Repetition of the article, . . .	251	CHAPTER FOURTH.	
Of the partitive word <i>quelque</i> , &c. . .	254	Of personal pronouns as subjects, . . .	276
Of words of quantity, . . .	256	<i>Il</i> or <i>ce</i> , it, with <i>être</i> unip. . .	278
Of <i>un, une, a, or an</i> , . . .	257	Pers. pro. as objects, . . .	279
		Of the relative pronouns <i>en</i> and <i>y</i> , . . .	282
		Of <i>soi</i> and <i>même</i> , . . .	284
		Repetition of pronouns, . . .	285
		Of possessive pronouns, . . .	286
		Of its and their, . . .	288
		Of relative poss. pronouns, . . .	289
		Of relative pronouns, . . .	290
		Of <i>quoi</i> , . . .	294
		Of absolute pronouns, . . .	295
		Of <i>où</i> , . . .	297
		Of demonstrative pronouns, . . .	298
		<i>Ce</i> used with <i>être</i> , . . .	302
		Of indefinite pronouns, . . .	306
		Of <i>tout</i> , . . .	310
CHAPTER SECOND.			
Of nouns, . . .	259		
Of the union of nouns, . . .	261		
CHAPTER THIRD.			
Of Adjectives—their agreement, . . .	262		
Place of adjectives, . . .	265		
Of government of adjectives, . . .	268		
Of adjectives governing <i>de</i> , . . .	268		
Of adjectives governing <i>à</i> , . . .	269		
Adjectives of number, . . .	271		

CONTENTS.

XV.

CHAPTER FIFTH.	PAGE		PAGE
Of agreement of verbs and subjects,	320	Of collectives with part. past,	381
Place of the subject,	326	Of <i>le peu</i> and <i>le trop</i> , with part.	382
Of the objects of verbs,	328	Of part. of reflective verbs,	384
Place of the object,	330	Of the participle of neuter verbs,	386
Concluding remarks on objects,	332	Of verbal signs,	388
Of moods and tenses,	333	Of will, should, &c. with have,	389
Of imp. pret. and com. pres.,	334	Of the verb must,	391
Compound imperfect and preterite,	338		
Of the two futures,	339	CHAPTER SIXTH.	
Of the conditional,	340	Of adverbs,	398
Of the subjunctive,	342	Of <i>pas</i> and <i>point</i> ,	399
Of conjunctions governing subjunctive,	348	Of the use of <i>ne</i> ,	401
Of verbs governing subjunctive,	350		
Of the subjunc. and indic. moods,	355	CHAPTER SEVENTH.	
Essential observations on part. pres.	356	Of prepositions,	406
Tenses of indicative and conditional,	359		
Of the government of verbs,	362	CHAPTER EIGHTH.	
Of the infinitive governed by <i>de</i> ,	365	Of conjunctions,	419
Of the infinitive governed by <i>à</i> ,	367		
Of the participle present,	368	CHAPTER NINTH.	
Of the participle past,	373	Of idioms,	423
Participle past followed by inf.	375		

APPENDIX.

		PAGE
1st	LIST.—Verbs with direct objects only,	441
2d	—Verbs with a direct and an indirect object governed by <i>de</i> ,	441
3d	—Verbs with only an indic. obj. governed by <i>de</i> ,	442
4th	—Verbs with a direct and an indirect object governed by <i>à</i> ,	442
5th	—Verbs with only an indirect object governed by <i>à</i> ,	443
6th	—Verbs governing <i>à</i> or <i>de</i> before next infinitive,	443
7th	—Adjectives and Nouns governing <i>à</i> or <i>de</i> before the infinitive,	446
8th	—Adjectives governing <i>à</i> or <i>de</i> before their complement,	448
9th	—Part 1, Essential Reflective Verbs,	449
9th	—Part 2, Verbs reflective in French and not in English,	450
10th	—Conjunctions governing the indicative,	451
11th	—Conjunctions governing the subjunctive,	451
12th	—Adjectives which impart a different signification to the noun,	455
13th	—Ancient and Modern Names, not the same in French as in English,	452

ERRATA.

FOR	READ	FOR	READ
4 <i>Almanack</i>	<i>Almanach</i>	95 <i>n'aimerai</i>	<i>n'aimerai-je</i>
5 <i>pâte</i>	<i>pâte.</i>	<i>jamais.</i>	<i>jamais.</i>
28 <i>cerisses</i>	<i>cerises</i>	95 <i>n'aurais je</i>	<i>n'aurais-je</i>
35 <i>n'a pas tant</i>	<i>à moins.</i>	<i>aimez,</i>	<i>aimé.</i>
39 <i>decline</i>	<i>declined.</i>	107 <i>page 87</i>	<i>page 99</i>
41 <i>maletôt</i>	<i>matelôt.</i>	109 <i>when I had</i>	<i>when I had</i>
55 <i>pen</i>	<i>pens.</i>	110 <i>page 69</i>	<i>page 78</i>
55 <i>lettres</i>	<i>lettre.</i>	111 <i>spokento him</i>	<i>to them.</i>
58 <i>assietes</i>	<i>assiettes.</i>	112 <i>speak to her</i>	<i>to them.</i>
67 <i>goute</i>	<i>goutte.</i>	114 <i>from him</i>	<i>from (à) him.</i>
68 <i>has, has</i>	<i>had, had.</i>	116 <i>game at whist</i>	<i>partie de</i>
72 <i>she has</i>	<i>she had.</i>	<i>whist.</i>	
72 <i>boatmen have</i>	<i>boatmen had</i>	135 <i>believing</i>	<i>grown.</i>
82 <i>note page 68</i>	<i>note page 78</i>	160 <i>Epagne</i>	<i>Espagne.</i>
83 <i>comp. imp.</i>	<i>comp. fut.</i>	161 <i>after never,</i>	<i>add, use de.</i>
87 <i>vins, m.</i>	<i>vins.</i>	163 <i>I sold e¹</i>	<i>I sold e¹ κ.</i>
87 <i>they forbid</i>	<i>they would</i>	166 <i>dire</i>	<i>dire κ.</i>
<i>forbid.</i>		171 <i>obscurcie</i>	<i>obscurci.</i>
87 <i>black sheep</i>	<i>black² sheep¹</i>	171 <i>80 in hers</i>	<i>90 in hers.</i>
89 <i>parlerai</i>	<i>parlerez.</i>	178 <i>will accept</i>	<i>se rendre à.</i>
91 <i>prétension</i>	<i>prétention.</i>	183 <i>fuyer</i>	<i>fuire.</i>
93 <i>aurai-j'aimé</i>	<i>aurais-je</i>	187 <i>rule 22, after</i>	<i>before.</i>
<i>aimé.</i>		190 <i>monstre m.</i>	<i>monstre f.</i>
94 <i>would you</i>	<i>would² you¹</i>	199 <i>I'll</i>	<i>all.</i>
		441 <i>no direct</i>	<i>no indirect.</i>

MISDIRECTED REFERENCES IN THE EXERCISES.

FOR	READ	FOR	READ
58 <i>brought e²</i>	<i>brought e⁴</i>	126 <i>goods e²</i>	<i>goods e¹⁸</i>
63 <i>montre e⁶</i>	<i>montre e⁷</i>	153 <i>loud e³⁰</i>	<i>loud e¹⁷</i>
78 <i>montre e⁶</i>	<i>montre e⁷</i>	171 <i>they —</i>	<i>they e²⁰</i>
87 <i>sails e¹</i>	<i>sails e³</i>	175 <i>evils e⁵</i>	<i>evils mal m.</i>
98 <i>sails e¹</i>	<i>sails e³</i>	183 <i>no e²¹</i>	<i>no non.</i>
103 <i>friend e¹⁶</i>	<i>friends e⁵</i>	183 <i>we</i>	<i>we e¹⁵</i>
108 <i>voice —</i>	<i>voice e⁶</i>	186 <i>men e¹</i>	<i>men e¹⁹</i>
116 <i>montre e⁶</i>	<i>montre e⁷</i>	187 <i>no e²¹</i>	<i>no non.</i>

FRENCH GRAMMAR.

FRENCH GRAMMAR is the art of speaking and writing the French language correctly.

To speak and to write, so as to convey a correct idea of our thoughts, we employ words.

Words are composed of letters, a collection of which is called the Alphabet.

Part First.

OF THE ALPHABET, ITS DIVISIONS AND SOUNDS.

The French Alphabet contains twenty-five letters, named—

a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m,
Ah, bay, say, day, a, eff, zhai, ash, ee, jhee, kah, l, m,
n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.
n, o, pey, ku, air, s, tey, u, vey, eeks, egraic, zed,

These letters are divided into vowels and consonants.

OF THE VOWELS.

There are five vowels, *a, e, i, o, u.*

Vowels are divided into simple, compound, and nasal.

A SIMPLE VOWEL is a sound represented by one vowel only, as *i* in *ici*, here; *a* in *tabac*, snuff.

A COMPOUND VOWEL is one sound represented by the union of two or more vowels, as *ou* in *vous*, you; *eau* in *peau*, skin.

A NASAL VOWEL is a sound represented by adding the letter *m* or *n* to a simple or compound vowel, as *an* in *dans*, in; *on* in *don*, gift; *ain* in *pain*, bread; *aim* in *faim*, hunger.

From these vowels are produced fifteen simple sounds; all other combinations of sounds must be produced from these fifteen sounds.

TABLE OF THE FIFTEEN SIMPLE SOUNDS.

1ST.—SIMPLE VOWELS.

1	<i>a</i> , open,.....	<i>ami</i> ,	friend;	like <i>a</i>	in <i>cat</i> .
2	<i>a</i> , close,	<i>bas</i> ,	stocking;	like <i>a</i>	in <i>bar</i> .
3	<i>e</i> , guttural, ... 1	<i>le</i> ,	the;	like <i>u</i> and <i>e</i>	in <i>butter</i> .
4	<i>é</i> , close,..... 2	<i>été</i> ,	summer;	like <i>a</i>	in <i>ape</i> .
5	<i>è</i> , open, 3	<i>près</i> ,	near;	like <i>e</i>	in <i>press</i> .
6	<i>i</i> , short,	<i>ici</i> ,	here;	like <i>e</i>	in <i>me</i> .
7	<i>o</i> , open,	<i>homme</i> ,	man;	like <i>o</i>	in <i>homicide</i>
8	<i>o</i> , close,	<i>dos</i> ,	back,	like <i>o</i>	in <i>doting</i>
9	<i>u</i> , short,..... 4	<i>surplus</i> ,	surplus,	no sound	in <i>English</i> .

2D.—COMPOUND VOWELS.

4	<i>ai</i> , ² close,.....5	<i>Je parlai</i> ,	I spoke;	like <i>ay</i>	in <i>say</i> .
5	<i>ai</i> , ² open,.....	<i>Je parlais</i> ,	I was speaking	like <i>ea</i>	in <i>leather</i> .
7	<i>au</i> , ² open,.....	<i>autorité</i> ,	authority;	like <i>au</i>	in <i>author</i> .
8	<i>au</i> , ² close, 6	<i>beau</i> ,	fine;	like <i>oa</i>	in <i>boat</i> .
5	<i>ei</i> , ² open,.....	<i>peine</i> ,	pain;	like <i>ea</i>	in <i>pen</i> .
3	<i>eu</i> , ² guttural, . 7	<i>heure</i> ,	hour;	like <i>e</i>	in <i>her</i> .
10	<i>eu</i> , short,	<i>feu</i> ,	fire;	no sound	in <i>English</i> .
11	<i>ou</i> , full, 8	<i>nous</i> ,	us;	like <i>oo</i>	in <i>noose</i> .

3D.—NASAL VOWELS.

12	<i>an</i> , open, 9	<i>sans</i> ,	without;	like <i>an</i>	in <i>swan</i> .
12	<i>en</i> , ² less open, ...	<i>sens</i> ,	meaning;	like <i>an</i>	in <i>swan</i> .
13	<i>in</i> , intermediate	<i>fin</i> ,	fine;	no sound	in <i>English</i> .
14	<i>on</i> , close,.....	<i>don</i> ,	gift;	like <i>on</i>	in <i>dont</i> .
15	<i>un</i> , closer,.....	<i>brun</i> ,	brown;	no sound	in <i>English</i> .

1. *e*, at the end of words is mute, or faintly heard. See page 5.

2. *é*, this close accent, called acute, is used over the vowel *e* only, and imparts to it always the sound of *a* in *ape*.

3. *è*, this open accent, called grave, is used over the vowels *a*, *e*, *u*, but affects the *e* only, to which it imparts the sound of *e* in *press*.

Note. There is another accent, called circumflex, which is used to impart to the vowel over which it is placed, not a new, but a longer, a fuller sound than the same vowel had before; so *â* in *château*, is the same sound as *a* 2, in *bas*, stocking, but longer and fuller; it is used for the same purpose over *e* and *ai*, 5, as *bête*, beast; *maître*, master; over *i*, 6, *épître*, epistle; over *o*, 8, *côte*, coast; over *u*, 9, *flûte*, flute; over *eu*, 10, *jéune*, fast; and over *ou*, 11, in *croûte*, crust.

4. The lips forward as in the act of whistling, then articulate a tone, and the sound of the French *u* will be produced.

5. This compound vowel is generally pronounced *é*, 4, when final, and *è*, 5, when followed by a consonant.

6. *au*, is generally preceded by *e*, which is mute.

7. This sound is a little longer than the guttural *e*, in *le*, pronounced like *u* long in *bûr*.

8. The lips not quite so close, nor quite so extended, as in pronouncing *u*, the tongue in the same position.

9. In pronouncing these nasal vowels a teacher must be consulted.

A **DIPHTHONG** is an assemblage of vowels forming but one syllable, producing two sounds by one emission of the voice.

A **SIMPLE DIPHTHONG** is two simple vowels.

A **COMPOUND DIPHTHONG** is a simple and compound vowel, or two compound vowels.

A **NASAL DIPHTHONG** is a simple or compound vowel joined to a nasal vowel.

SIMPLE DIPHTHONGS.

	Diphthongs.	Formed from Simple Sounds.	
1	<i>ia</i>	<i>i</i> 6 and <i>a</i> 1	<i>liard</i> , farthing.
2	<i>iê</i>	<i>i</i> 6 and <i>ê</i> 4	<i>liê</i> , bound; <i>gostier</i> , throat.
3	<i>iè</i>	<i>i</i> 6 and <i>è</i> 5	<i>lumière</i> light; <i>niece</i> , niece.
4	<i>io</i>	<i>i</i> 6 and <i>o</i> 7	<i>médiocre</i> , middling.
5	<i>io</i>	<i>i</i> 6 and <i>o</i> 8	<i>chariot</i> , waggon.
6	<i>iu</i>	<i>i</i> 6 and <i>u</i> 9	<i>relure</i> , binding.
7	<i>od</i>	<i>o</i> 8 and <i>è</i> 5	<i>moelle</i> , marrow,
8	<i>oi</i>	<i>ou</i> 11 and <i>a</i> 2	<i>moi</i> , me; <i>bois</i> , wood.
9	<i>ua</i>	<i>u</i> 9 and <i>a</i> 1	<i>continua</i> , continued.
10	<i>ui</i>	<i>u</i> 9 and <i>i</i> 6	<i>lui</i> , him; <i>nuît</i> , night.
11	<i>uê</i>	<i>u</i> 9 and <i>ê</i> 4	<i>nuée</i> , cloud; <i>tué</i> , killed.
12	<i>uè</i>	<i>u</i> 9 and <i>è</i> 5	<i>must</i> , dumb; <i>écuelle</i> , ladle.
13	<i>uo</i>	<i>u</i> 9 and <i>o</i> 7	<i>impétuosité</i> , impetuosity.
14	<i>uo</i>	<i>u</i> 9 and <i>o</i> 8	<i>duo</i> , duet.

COMPOUND DIPHTHONGS.

2 ²	<i>iai</i>	<i>i</i> 6 and <i>ê</i> 4	<i>Je confiai</i> , I confided.
3 ²	<i>iai</i>	<i>i</i> 6 and <i>è</i> 5	<i>Je confiais</i> , I did confide.
5 ²	<i>iau</i>	<i>i</i> 6 and <i>o</i> 8	<i>cordiaux</i> , cordials.
15	<i>ieu</i>	<i>i</i> 6 and <i>e</i> 3	<i>rieur</i> , a laugh.
16	<i>ieu</i>	<i>i</i> 6 and <i>eu</i> 10	<i>adieu</i> , adieu.
17	<i>oua</i>	<i>ou</i> 11 and <i>a</i> 1	<i>rouage</i> , wheelwork.
8 ²	<i>oua</i>	<i>ou</i> 11 and <i>a</i> 2	<i>nous jouâmes</i> , we played.
18	<i>ouê</i>	<i>ou</i> 11 and <i>ê</i> 4	<i>enroué</i> , hoarse.
18 ²	<i>ouai</i>	<i>ou</i> 11 and <i>ê</i> 4	<i>Je jouai</i> , I played.
19	<i>ouè</i>	<i>ou</i> 11 and <i>è</i> 5	<i>ouest</i> , west.
19 ²	<i>ouai</i>	<i>ou</i> 11 and <i>è</i> 5	<i>Je louais</i> , I did praise.
20	<i>oui</i>	<i>ou</i> 11 and <i>i</i> 6	<i>oui</i> , yes; <i>Louis</i> , Lewis.
21	<i>oueu</i>	<i>ou</i> 11 and <i>e</i> 3	<i>joueur</i> , gamester.
22	<i>oueu</i>	<i>ou</i> 11 and <i>eu</i> 10	<i>boueux</i> , muddy.
11 ²	<i>uai</i>	<i>u</i> 9 and <i>ê</i> 4	<i>Je tuai</i> , I killed.
12 ²	<i>uai</i>	<i>u</i> 9 and <i>è</i> 5	<i>il tuaît</i> , he did kill.
14 ²	<i>uau</i>	<i>u</i> 9 and <i>o</i> 8	<i>gruau</i> , gruel; <i>truau</i> , a net.
23	<i>ueu</i>	<i>u</i> 9 and <i>e</i> 3	<i>lueur</i> , glimmering.
24	<i>ueu</i>	<i>u</i> 9 and <i>eu</i> 10	<i>respectueux</i> , respectful.

NASAL DIPHTHONGS.

25	<i>ian</i>	<i>i</i> 6 and <i>an</i> 12	<i>négoçant</i> , a merchant.
25 ²	<i>ien</i>	<i>i</i> 6 and <i>an</i> 12	<i>patient</i> , patient (<i>ien</i> not final).
26	<i>ien</i>	<i>i</i> 6 and <i>in</i> 13	<i>rien</i> , nothing (<i>ien</i> final).
27	<i>ion</i>	<i>i</i> 6 and <i>on</i> 14	<i>lion</i> , lion; <i>nation</i> , nation.
28	<i>oin</i>	<i>ou</i> 11 and <i>in</i> 13	<i>soin</i> , care; <i>besoin</i> , want.
28 ²	<i>ouin</i>	<i>ou</i> 11 and <i>in</i> 13	<i>marsoin</i> , porpoise.
29	<i>ouan</i>	<i>ou</i> 11 and <i>an</i> 12	<i>louange</i> , praise.
29 ²	<i>ouen</i>	<i>ou</i> 11 and <i>an</i> 12	<i>Rouen</i> , a town of Normandy.
30	<i>ouon</i>	<i>ou</i> 11 and <i>on</i> 14	<i>nous jouons</i> , we play.
31	<i>uin</i>	<i>u</i> 9 and <i>in</i> 13	<i>Juin</i> , June.

APPLICATION OF THE FIFTEEN SIMPLE SOUNDS.

1. *a* open, first simple sound, as *a* in *mat*.

<i>ma</i> ,	<i>my</i> .	<i>ami</i> ,	friend.
<i>arbre</i> ,	tree.	<i>rame</i> ,	oar.
<i>matin</i> ,	morning.	<i>papa</i> ,	papa.
<i>dame</i> ,	lady.	<i>ratafia</i> ,	ratafia.

Also, *em*, *en*, and *ai*, as *a* in *family*.

<i>femme</i> ,	woman.	<i>douairière</i> ,	dowager.
<i>solennel</i> ,	solemn.	<i>indemniser</i> ,	to indemnify.
<i>solennité</i> ,	solemnity.	<i>ardemment</i> ,	ardently.
<i>hennir</i> ,	to neigh.	<i>diligemment</i> ,	diligently.

And all other adverbs ending in *emment*.

Also, *a*, followed by one or more consonants sounded.

<i>mal</i> ,	evil.	<i>exact</i> ,	exact.
<i>total</i> ,	total.	<i>tact</i> ,	touch.
<i>lac</i> ,	lake.	<i>contact</i> ,	contact.
<i>bac</i> ,	ferry boat.	<i>parc</i> ,	park.
<i>sac</i> ,	bag.	<i>arc</i> ,	a bow.
<i>hamac</i> ,	hammock.	<i>yacht</i> , (<i>yaque</i>)	yacht.
<i>tillac</i> ,	quarter deck.	<i>borax</i> ,	borax.
<i>gap</i> ,	gape.	<i>Joab</i> ,	Joab.
<i>fat</i> ,	fop.	<i>cap</i> ,	cape.

Also, *ar*, either final or followed by *d* or *t* mute, like *ar* in *arrogant*.

<i>par</i> ,	by.	<i>marc</i> ,	sediment.
<i>char</i> ,	a car.	<i>art</i> ,	art.
<i>nectar</i> ,	nectar.	<i>part</i> ,	part.
<i>canard</i> ,	duck.	<i>apart</i> ,	aside.
<i>lard</i> ,	bacon.	<i>plupart</i> ,	most part.
<i>tard</i> ,	late.	<i>bavard</i> ,	chatterer.
<i>renard</i> ,	fox.	<i>brouillard</i> ,	fog.

Also, *at*, *ach*, *ac*, *ap*, *as*, with final consonant mute.

<i>avocat</i> ,	lawyer.	<i>almanack</i> ,	almanack.
<i>soldat</i> ,	soldier.	<i>tabac</i> ,	snuff.
<i>état</i> ,	state.	<i>estomac</i> ,	stomach.
<i>ingrat</i> ,	ungrateful.	<i>drap</i> ,	cloth.
<i>plat</i> ,	dish.	<i>éclat</i> ,	splendour.
<i>rat</i> ,	rat.	<i>bras</i> ,	arm.

2. *a* close, second simple sound, like *a* in *bar*, final *s* mute.

accabler,	to overwhelm.	embarras,	trouble.
gras,	fat.	compas,	compass.
amas,	a heap.	lacer,	to lace.
trépas,	death.	macon,	a mason.
Thomas,	Thomas.	gazette,	gazette.
pas,	not.	gazon,	turf.

Also, *â* long, like *a* prolonged in *bâr*.

dge,	age.	âne,	ass.
mâtin,	mastiff.	crâne,	cranium.
fable,	fable.	mânes (manes),	shades.
mâle,	male.	gâteau,	cake.
pâle,	paste.	lâche,	coward.
ame,	soul.	théâtre,	theatre.
mât,	mast.	château,	castle.

Also, *a* like *as*, in *ask*, final consonant sounded.

atlas,	atlas.	Mars (month),	March.
hélas,	alas.	gas,	gas.
as,	ace.	straz,	straz.

3. *e* guttural, third simple sound like *e* in *her*, also *ai* in the first syllable of *faisant*, making; *faisait*, was making; &c. (see remarks on *e*.)

devenir,	to become.	remener,	to lead back.
je, le,	I, him.	appeler,	to call.
me, te,	me, thee.	faisant,	making.
degré,	degree.	je faisais,	I was making.
retenir,	to retain.	il faisait,	he was making
rejeter,	to reject.	bienfaisance,	beneficence.

Also, *eu* and *ue* guttural, like *e* in *her*.

heure,	hour.	fleuve,	large river.
peur,	fear.	veuve,	widow.
auteur,	author.	épreuve,	trial.
sœur,	sister.	orgueille,*	pride.
beurre,	butter.	écueille,*	danger.
cœur,	heart.	cueillir,*	to gather.

e faint, like *e* in *cake*, and *e* mute, like *e* in *toe*, (see remarks on *e*.)

<i>e</i> faint.		<i>e</i> mute.	
larme,	tear.	envie,	envy.
lame,	blade.	eau,	water.

* In these three words *eu* has been transposed into *ue*, to harden the sound of *g* and *c*, but the sound of *eu* is retained.

<i>e</i> faint.		<i>e</i> mute.	
plante,	plant.	mie,	crum.
âne,	ass.	plaie,	wound.
Afrique,	Africa.	vue,	sight.

4. *é*, fourth simple sound, like *ay* in *day*.

dé,	thimble.	vérité	truth.
été,	summer.	prémédité,	premeditated.
épée,	sword,	sincérité,	sincerity.
régénéré,	regenerated.	soirée,	whole evening.

Also, *ai*, like *ay* in *day*, generally when final, and always in the terminations of the preterite and future tenses.

gai,	cheerful.	je sais,	I know.
geai,	a jack daw.	je vais,	I go.
bai,	a bay.	je mangeai,	I ate.
je parlai,	I spoke.	il sait,	he knows.
je parlerai,	I shall speak.	tu sais,	thou knowest.
j'ai,	I have.	je priai,	I prayed.

Also, *er*, finals of infinitives, like *ay* in *day*.

manger,	to eat.	donner,	to give.
chanter,	to sing.	épier,	to spy.
nager,	to swim.	gronder,	to scold.
danser,	to dance.	couper,	to cut.

Also, *et*, *ed*, *ef*, *er*, *ez*, like *ay* in *day*, final consonants mute.

et,	and.	assez,	enough.
pied,	foot.	danger,	danger.
bled,	corn.	vous avez,	you have.
clef,	key.	donnez,	given.
métier,	trade.	étranger,	stranger.
Janvier,	January.	Février,	February.

Also, *er*, in adjectives, and in nouns of professions, dignities, and trades; and in masculine nouns deriving their names from their produce or contents, as trees from their fruits, plants from their flowers, vessels from their contents, &c., as *ay* in *day*.

fermier,	(from <i>ferme</i> , farm,)	farmer.
encrier,	(from <i>encre</i> , ink,)	ink-stand.
moutardier,	(from <i>moutarde</i> , mustard,)	mustard-pot.
poirier,	(from <i>poire</i> , pear,)	pear-tree.
huilier,	(from <i>huile</i> , oil,)	oil bottle.

horloger,	(from <i>horloge</i> , clock,)	clock-maker.
rosier,	(from <i>rose</i> , rose,)	rose-tree.
pommier,	(from <i>pomme</i> , apple,)	apple-tree.
poivrier,	(from <i>poivre</i> , pepper,)	pepper-box.
épiciér,	(from <i>épice</i> , spice,)	grocer.
gantier,	(from <i>gant</i> , glove,)	glover.
péruquier,	(from <i>péruque</i> , wig,)	wig-maker.

5. *è* open, fifth simple sound, like *e* in *met*, *s* mute.

mère,	mother.	zèle,	zeal.
lèvre,	lip.	colère,	anger.
bière,	bier.	nièce,	niece.
sève,	sap.	très,	very.
près,	near.	procès,	law suit.

Also, *ê* and *ai*, like *e* prolonged in *nest*.

frêle,	frail.	grêle,	hail.
mêler,	to mix.	fête,	feast.
chaîne,	chaine.	chêne,	oak tree.
faîte,	summit.	évêque,	bishop.

Also, *ai* in verbs followed by *s*, *t*, or *ent* mute, with few exceptions like *e* in *desk*, (see *ai* page 6.)

je vendais,	I sold.	il parlait,	he spoke.
il venait,	he came.	ils vendaient,	they were selling.
je recevrais,	I should receive.	ils danseraient,	they would dance.

Also, *ais* in designation of countries, and *ai*, *ais*, *ait*, *aix*, final, like *e* in *desk*; final consonants mute.

dais,	canopy.	anglais,	English.
français,	French.	écossais,	Scotch.
bienfait,	kindness.	palais,	palace.
paix,	peace.	délai,	delay.
ballai,	broom.	lait,	milk.
essai,	trial.	lai,	lay.
vrai,	true.	mais,	but.

Also, *ai* followed by a consonant, and *aie*, *ei*, and *ey* in the middle or end of words, like *ea* in *pleasure*.

plaie,	wound.	peine,	pain.
claire,	clear.	raison,	reason.
glaive,	sword.	haie,	hedge.
faible,	weak.	seigneur,	lord.
reine,	queen.	portrait,	picture.
bey,	bey.	dey,	dey.
douzaine,	dozen.	vaine,	vain.

Also, *e* before a consonant, or two consonants, the second being neither *l* nor *r*, the final and penult consonant sounded like *e* in *set*; those marked *m* are mute.

sept, (<i>p m.</i>)	seven.	legs, (<i>lè</i>)	legacy.
cep,	vine plant.	zest,	zest.
indirect,	indirect.	infect,	infectious.
ouest,	west.	échecs, (<i>cs m.</i>)	chess.
test,	test.	direct,	direct.
incorrect,	incorrect.	aspect, (<i>t m.</i>)	aspect.
est,	east.	circuspect,	circumspect.
abject,	abject.	poulet, (<i>t m.</i>)	chicken.
correct,	correct.	lest,	ballast.
Thibet,	Thibet.	objet, (<i>t m.</i>)	object.
respect,	respect.	suspect,	suspicious.
cruel,	cruel.	tel,	such.

Also, *e* coming before a double consonant, like *e* in *elbow*.

belle,	beautiful.	bagatelle,	trifle.
terre,	land.	il gette,	he throws.
tonnerre,	thunder.	dentelle,	lace.
greffe,	graft.	sonnette,	a bell.
il appelle,	he calls.	ficelle,	a string.
cervelle,	brain.	voyelle,	vowel.
adresse,	address.	Indienne,	Indian.
princesse,	princess.	méridienne,	meridian.

Also, *er* final, or followed by a consonant mute, like *ar* in *dare*, being an exception to words in which *er* is sounded like *ay* in *day*, (See page 6.)

Alger,	Algiers.	cueillir,	spoon.
amer,	bitter.	hier, (<i>h m.</i>)	yesterday.
cancer,	cancer.	hiver, (<i>h m.</i>)	winter.
cher,	dear.	Jupiter,	Jupiter.
enfer,	hell.	mer,	sea.
ver,	worm.	éter, (<i>éter,</i>)	ether.
magister, (school)	master.	tiers, (<i>s m.</i>)	third.
cerf, (<i>f m.</i>)	stag.	vert, (<i>t m.</i>)	green.
clerc, (<i>c m.</i>)	clerk.	vers, (<i>s m.</i>)	worm.

Also *e* coming before *s* final.

mes,	my.	les,	the.
tes,	thy.	les,	them.
ses,	his.	des,	of the.
ces,	these.	tu es,	thou art.

All other words ending in *es*, in the singular, take the open accent, as, *dès*, as soon; *après*, after, &c. (See note 6, p. 17)

6. *i, y*, sixth simple sound, like *ee* in *see*.

<i>ici</i> ,	here.	<i>Mardi</i> ,	Tuesday.
<i>abri</i> ,	shelter.	<i>Dimanche</i> ,	Sunday.
<i>y</i> ,	there.	<i>yacht</i> , (<i>yaque</i>)	<i>yacht</i> .
<i>mystère</i> ,	mystery.	<i>gîte</i> ,	covert.
<i>physique</i> ,	physic.	<i>style</i> ,	style.

Also, *i* in words where *in* or *im* is followed by a vowel, or where the word begins with *imm* or *inn*.

<i>i-nanimé</i> ,	inanimate.	<i>i-nnocent</i> ,	innocent.
<i>i-nodore</i> ,	inodorous.	<i>in-né</i> ,	innate.
<i>im-moblie</i> ,	motionless.	<i>in-novation</i> ,	innovation.
<i>im-mortel</i> ,	immortal.	<i>i-nnombrable</i> ,	innumerable.
<i>i-nnocence</i> ,	innocence.	<i>i-naction</i> ,	inaction.
<i>i-mitation</i> ,	imitation.	<i>i-mage</i> ,	image.

Also, *if*, *ir*, *il*, *is*, *it*, *ix*, with final consonants sounded.

<i>canif</i> ,	penknife.	<i>subit</i> ,	sudden.
<i>motif</i> ,	motive.	<i>zenith</i> , (<i>h m.</i>)	zenith.
<i>actif</i> ,	active.	<i>dix</i> , (<i>diss</i>)	ten.
<i>pensif</i> ,	pensive.	<i>fil</i> ,	thread.
<i>offrir</i> ,*	to offer.	<i>profil</i> ,	profile.
<i>babill</i> ,	chat.	<i>subtil</i> ,	subtle.
<i>prétérît</i> ,	preterite.	<i>mil</i> , (<i>date</i>)	thousand.
<i>huit</i> ,	eight.	<i>peril</i> ,	danger.
<i>transit</i> ,	a permit.	<i>six</i> , (<i>sis</i>)	six.
<i>accessit</i> ,	second best.	<i>lys</i> ,	lily.
<i>difficil</i> ,	difficult.	<i>bis</i> , (<i>iz</i>)	encore.
<i>granit</i> ,	granite.	<i>vis</i> , (<i>iss</i>)	a screw.
<i>arsenic</i> , (<i>ik</i>)	arsenic.	<i>jadis</i> , (<i>iss</i>)	formerly.
<i>naïf</i> ,	artless.	<i>lucrâtif</i> ,	lucrative.

Also, *is*, *it*, *il*, like *e* in *me*, final consonant mute.

<i>avis</i> ,	advice.	<i>gril</i> ,	gridiron.
<i>vernis</i> ,	varnish.	<i>nombril</i> ,	navel.
<i>logis</i> ,	home.	<i>gentil</i> ,	pretty.
<i>tapis</i> ,	carpet.	<i>baril</i> ,	barrel.
<i>marquis</i> ,	marquis.	<i>outil</i> ,	tool.
<i>aquis</i> ,	acquired.	<i>fusil</i> ,	gun.
<i>punis</i> ,	punished.	<i>persil</i> ,	parsley.
<i>fil</i> , (<i>fit</i>)	son.	<i>coutil</i> ,	ticking.
<i>crédit</i> ,	credit.	<i>fournil</i> ,	bakehouse.
<i>récit</i> ,	recital.	<i>sourcil</i> ,	eye-brow.
<i>profit</i> ,	profit.	<i>chenil</i> ,	dog-kennel.

* And all verbs and other words ending in *ir*.

† Pronounced *il*, not *file*, unless the next word begins with a vowel, as *file ain* pronounced *fil-ain*, eldest son.

7. *o* open, seventh simple sound, like *o* in *not*.

<i>note,</i>	<i>note.</i>	<i>orage,</i>	<i>storm.</i>
<i>oracle,</i>	<i>oracle.</i>	<i>orange,</i>	<i>orange.</i>
<i>opinion,</i>	<i>opinion.</i>	<i>couronne,</i>	<i>crown.</i>
<i>corbeille,</i>	<i>basket.</i>	<i>occasion,</i>	<i>occasion.</i>
<i>sotte,</i>	<i>foolish.</i>	<i>officier,</i>	<i>officer.</i>
<i>étouffe,</i>	<i>stuff.</i>	<i>olive,</i>	<i>olive.</i>
<i>bosse,</i>	<i>bump.</i>	<i>orateur,</i>	<i>orator.</i>

Also, *au*, like *au* in *author*.

<i>autorité,</i>	<i>authority.</i>	<i>audace,</i>	<i>audacity.</i>
<i>audience,</i>	<i>audience.</i>	<i>augure,</i>	<i>augury.</i>
<i>auspice,</i>	<i>auspices.</i>	<i>nauffrage,</i>	<i>shipwreck.</i>
<i>laurier,</i>	<i>laurel.</i>	<i>taureau,</i>	<i>bull.</i>
<i>augmenter,</i>	<i>to increase.</i>	<i>aurore,</i>	<i>aurora.</i>

Also, *o* followed by *t, q, b, c, x*, sounded.

<i>dot,</i>	<i>dowry.</i>	<i>troc,</i>	<i>barter.</i>
<i>coq,</i>	<i>coque.</i>	<i>froc,</i>	<i>monk's froc.</i>
<i>Jacob,</i>	<i>Jacob.</i>	<i>soc,</i>	<i>plough-share.</i>
<i>Job,</i>	<i>Job.</i>	<i>or,</i>	<i>gold.</i>
<i>Fox,</i>	<i>Fox.</i>	<i>un porc,</i>	<i>a hog.</i>
<i>trésor,</i>	<i>treasure.</i>	<i>tricolor,</i>	<i>tricolour.</i>

Also *or*, followed by *d, p, s, t*, mute, like *or* in *order*.

<i>confort,</i>	<i>comfort.</i>	<i>tort,</i>	<i>wrong.</i>
<i>mort,</i>	<i>death.</i>	<i>tors,</i>	<i>twisted.</i>
<i>accord,</i>	<i>accordance.</i>	<i>d'abord,</i>	<i>at first.</i>
<i>hors,</i>	<i>out.</i>	<i>essor,</i>	<i>flight.</i>
<i>nord,</i>	<i>north.</i>	<i>fort,</i>	<i>strong.</i>
<i>discord,</i>	<i>discord.</i>	<i>corps,</i>	<i>body.</i>

8. *o* close, eighth simple sound, like *o* in *so*.

<i>coco,</i>	<i>cocoa.</i>	<i>numero,</i>	<i>number.</i>
<i>piano,</i>	<i>piano.</i>	<i>agio,</i>	<i>exchange.</i>
<i>zéro,</i>	<i>a cipher.</i>	<i>ode,</i>	<i>ode.</i>
<i>oter,</i>	<i>to take away.</i>	<i>odeur,</i>	<i>smell.</i>

Also, *ô* long, like *oa* in *coast*.

<i>côte,</i>	<i>coast.</i>	<i>le vôtre,</i>	<i>yours.</i>
<i>rôle,</i>	<i>character.</i>	<i>dôme,</i>	<i>dome.</i>
<i>apôtre,</i>	<i>apostle.</i>	<i>tome,</i>	<i>volume.</i>
<i>trône,</i>	<i>throne.</i>	<i>fantome,</i>	<i>phantom.</i>

Also, *au*, *eau*, like *o* in obey.

<i>autour</i> ,	around.	<i>rideau</i> ,	curtain.
<i>cruauté</i> ,	cruelty.	<i>autrui</i> ,	other.
<i>autel</i> ,	altar.	<i>gruau</i> ,*	gruel.
<i>chapeau</i> ,	hat.	<i>noyau</i> ,*	kernel.
<i>morceau</i> ,	piece.	<i>tuyau</i> ,*	pipe.
<i>beau</i> ,	fine.	<i>aloyau</i> ,*	sirloin.
<i>eau</i> ,	water.	<i>fabliau</i> ,*	fable.

Also, *o* followed by *t*, *s*, *c*, mute, like *o* in dotard.

<i>dos</i> ,	back.	<i>bigot</i> ,	bigot.
<i>enclos</i> ,	enclosure.	<i>mot</i> ,	word.
<i>héros</i> ,	heros.	<i>turbot</i> ,	turbot.
<i>croc</i> ,	hook.	<i>chariot</i> ,	chariot.
<i>repos</i> ,	repose.	<i>plutôt</i> ,	sooner.
<i>accroc</i> , (tearing)	rent.	<i>tantot</i> ,	by and by.

Also, *au* followed by *d*, *t*, *x*, mute, like *o* in show.

<i>chaud</i> ,	warm.	<i>nigaut</i> ,	a simpleton.
<i>échafaud</i> ,	scaffold.	<i>saut</i> ,	a leap.
<i>réchaud</i> ,	chaffing dish.	<i>il faut</i> ,	it is necessary
<i>artichaud</i> ,	artichoke.	<i>chaux</i> ,	lime.
<i>assaut</i> ,	assault.	<i>héraut</i> ,	herald.
<i>défaul</i> ,	defect.	<i>chevaux</i> ,	chevaux.

And the plural of most nouns and adjectives ending in *al* and *aïl* in the singular.

9. *u*, *ue*, and *eu* short, ninth simple sound.

<i>humide</i> ,	damp.	<i>écu</i> ,	crown.
<i>usurier</i> ,	usurer.	<i>nu</i> ,	naked.
<i>vertu</i> ,	virtu.	<i>nue</i> ,	cloud.
<i>cru</i> ,	raw.	<i>charue</i> ,	plough.
<i>eu</i> , (u)	had.	<i>recrue</i> ,	recruit.
<i>rue</i> ,	street.	<i>gageure</i> (u)	wager.

Also, *us*, *ut*, *ur*, *ud*, with final consonants sounded.

<i>Vénus</i> ,	Venus.	<i>brut</i> ,	rough.
<i>blocus</i> ,	blockade.	<i>chut</i> ,	silence!
<i>Bacchus</i> ,	Bacchus.	<i>lut</i> ,	lute.
<i>chorus</i> ,	chorus.	<i>azur</i> ,	azure.
<i>rebus</i> ,	rebus.	<i>mur</i> ,	wall.
<i>futur</i> ,	future.	<i>dur</i> ,	hard.
<i>pur</i> ,	pure.	<i>obsur</i> ,	obscure.
<i>mûr</i> ,	ripe.	<i>sud</i> ,	south.
<i>sur</i> ,	sure.	<i>sûr</i> ,	sour.

* All words except these last five take *e* before *au* final.

Also, *us* and *ut*, with final consonants mute.

<i>abus</i> ,	abuse.	<i>Je fus</i> ,	I was.
<i>verjus</i> ,	verjuice.	<i>but</i> ,	object.
<i>inclus</i> ,	inclosed.	<i>salut</i> ,	salvation.
<i>refut</i> ,	refusal.	<i>tribut</i> ,	tribute.
<i>rebut</i> ,	repulse.	<i>institut</i> ,	institute.
<i>talus</i> ,	talus.	<i>il fut</i> ,	he was.

10. *eu*, *eue*, *œu*, tenth simple sound, no similar sound.

<i>feu</i> ,	fire.	<i>lieu</i> ,	league.
<i>bleu</i> ,	blue.	<i>queue</i> ,	tail.
<i>Hébreu</i> ,	Hebrew.	<i>vœu</i> ,	vow.
<i>cheveu</i> ,	a hair.	<i>jeu</i> ,	game.
<i>adieu</i> ,	adieu.	<i>peu</i> ,	little.

Also, *eux*, *œux*, *œud*, *œufs*, final consonants mute.

<i>heureux</i> ,	happy.	<i>deux</i> ,	two.
<i>furieux</i> ,	furious.	<i>bœufs</i> ,	oxen.
<i>cheveux</i> ,	hair.	<i>œufs</i> ,	eggs.
<i>nœud</i> ,	knots.	<i>affreux</i> ,	dreadful.
<i>vœux</i> ,	vows.	<i>creux</i> ,	hollow.
<i>feux</i> .	fires.	<i>glorieux</i> ,	proud.

11. *ou*, eleventh simple sound, like *o* in *do*.

<i>hibou</i> ,	owl.	<i>bouche</i> ,	mouth.
<i>outil</i> ,	tool.	<i>ou</i> ,	or.
<i>fou</i> ,	foolish.	<i>mouton</i> ,	mutton.
<i>cou</i> ,	neck.	<i>bijou</i> ,	jewel.
<i>couteau</i> ,	knife.	<i>filou</i> ,	thief.

Also, *ou*, followed by *x*, *s*, *l*, *p*, *t*, *d*, mute.

<i>couroux</i> ,	anger.	<i>toux</i> ,	cough.
<i>doux</i> ,	sweet.	<i>nous</i> ,	we, us.
<i>époux</i> ,	husband.	<i>choux</i> ,	cabbages.
<i>jaloux</i> ,	jealous.	<i>août</i> , (ou)	august.
<i>roux</i> ,	reddish.	<i>partout</i> ,	everywhere.
<i>soul</i> ,	drunk.	<i>coup</i> ,	a blow.
<i>il coud</i> ,	he sews.	<i>absous</i> ,	absolved.
<i>St. Cloud</i> ,	St. Cloud.	<i>gout</i> ,	taste.
<i>loup</i> ,	wolf.	<i>beaucoup</i> ,	much.

Also, *our*, *ours*, *ourd*, *ourt*, *ourg*—*r* sounded, final *s*, *d* and *t* mute, like *oo* in *poor*.

<i>pour</i> ,	for.	<i>cours</i> ,	course.
<i>amour</i> ,	love.	<i>discours</i> ,	discourse.

* See observations on final consonants.

<i>jour,</i>	<i>day.</i>	<i>secours,</i>	<i>succour.</i>
<i>tour,</i>	<i>tower.</i>	<i>velours,</i>	<i>velvet.</i>
<i>tambour,</i>	<i>drum.</i>	<i>toujours,</i>	<i>always.</i>
<i>court,</i>	<i>short.</i>	<i>décours,</i>	<i>decrease.</i>
<i>sourd,</i>	<i>deaf.</i>	<i>recours,</i>	<i>recourse.</i>
<i>vautour,</i>	<i>vulture.</i>	<i>je parcours,</i>	<i>I ran over.</i>
<i>bourg (bourk)</i>	<i>borough.</i>	<i>ours, (our-se)</i>	<i>a bear.</i>
<i>concours,</i>	<i>concourse.</i>	<i>Tours, (a town)</i>	<i>Tours.</i>

12. *an, en*, twelfth simple sound, like *an* in *swan*.

<i>ruban,</i>	<i>ribbon.</i>	<i>antre,</i>	<i>cavern.</i>
<i>maman (man-man)</i>	<i>manima.</i>	<i>entre,</i>	<i>between.</i>
<i>océan,</i>	<i>ocean.</i>	<i>entendre,</i>	<i>to hear.</i>
<i>tyran,</i>	<i>tyrant.</i>	<i>entier,</i>	<i>whole.</i>
<i>ancree,</i>	<i>anchor.</i>	<i>ennoblir,</i>	<i>to ennoble.</i>
<i>encre,</i>	<i>ink.</i>	<i>enivré,</i>	<i>intoxicated.</i>
<i>encan,</i>	<i>auction.</i>	<i>enfant,</i>	<i>child.</i>

Also, *am, em, aon*, like *an* in *swan*.

<i>Adam,</i>	<i>Adam.</i>	<i>empereur,</i>	<i>emperor.</i>
<i>ample,</i>	<i>full.</i>	<i>emplir,</i>	<i>to fill.</i>
<i>jambon,</i>	<i>ham.</i>	<i>emporter,</i>	<i>to take away.</i>
<i>lampe,</i>	<i>lamp.</i>	<i>ensemble,</i>	<i>together.</i>
<i>lambeaux,</i>	<i>rags.</i>	<i>faon,</i>	<i>fawn.</i>
<i>rampe,</i>	<i>banister.</i>	<i>Saon, (a town)</i>	<i>Saon.</i>
<i>emploi,</i>	<i>employment.</i>	<i>paon,</i>	<i>peacock.</i>

Also, *an, am, en, em*, followed by *t, g, c, d, p, s*, mute, like *an* in *swan*.

<i>constant,</i>	<i>constant.</i>	<i>violent,</i>	<i>violent.</i>
<i>gant,</i>	<i>glove.</i>	<i>hareng,</i>	<i>herring.</i>
<i>sang,</i>	<i>blood.</i>	<i>orient,</i>	<i>east.</i>
<i>patient,</i>	<i>patient.</i>	<i>tems,</i>	<i>time.</i>
<i>blanc,</i>	<i>white.</i>	<i>négociant,</i>	<i>merchant.</i>
<i>franc,</i>	<i>frank.</i>	<i>quand,</i>	<i>when.</i>
<i>chaland,</i>	<i>customer.</i>	<i>dans,</i>	<i>in.</i>
<i>étang,</i>	<i>pond.</i>	<i>temps,</i>	<i>weather.</i>
<i>camp,</i>	<i>camp.</i>	<i>tu prends,</i>	<i>thou takest.</i>
<i>lent,</i>	<i>slow.</i>	<i>exempt,</i>	<i>exempt.</i>

13. *in, im*, thirteenth simple sound, something like *en* in *end*.

<i>sapin,</i>	<i>fir tree.</i>	<i>incrédule,</i>	<i>incredulous.</i>
<i>serin,</i>	<i>canary.</i>	<i>imparfait,</i>	<i>imperfect.</i>
<i>chagrin,</i>	<i>grief.</i>	<i>impiété,</i>	<i>impiety.</i>

<i>inclu,</i>	inclosed.	<i>impie,</i>	impious.
<i>incendie,</i>	a fire.	<i>limpide,</i>	limpid.
<i>imbécile,</i>	silly.	<i>imbiber,</i>	to imbibe.

and in all words where the first syllable is followed by *p* or *b*.

Also *ein, ain, aim*, something like *en* in *end*.

<i>dessein,</i>	design.	<i>sain,</i>	wholesome.
<i>frein,</i>	a curb.	<i>ainsi,</i>	thus.
<i>plein,</i>	full.	<i>contraindre,</i>	to constrain.
<i>peintre,</i>	painter.	<i>faim,</i>	hunger.
<i>pain,</i>	bread.	<i>daim,</i>	deer.
<i>main,</i>	hand.	<i>essaim,</i>	swarm.
<i>soudain,</i>	sudden.	<i>étain,</i>	wool.

Also *ien, yen*, diphthongs when final, or only followed by the sign of the plural, or a verbal sign.

<i>bien,</i>	well.	<i>lien,</i>	bond.
<i>le tien,</i>	thine.	<i>les miens,</i>	mine.
<i>historien,</i>	historian.	<i>il tient,</i>	he holds.
<i>il vient,</i>	he comes.	<i>moyen,</i>	means.
<i>je conviens,</i>	I own.	<i>citoyens,</i>	citizens.
<i>chien,</i>	dog.	<i>chrétiens,</i>	christians.

Also *ain* and *ein*, final *c, cs, g, s, t*, mute.

<i>il vainc,</i>	he conquers.	<i>pleins,</i>	full.
<i>saint,</i>	holy.	<i>tu vaincs,</i>	thou conquerest
<i>il craint,</i>	he fears.	<i>je peins,</i>	I paint.
<i>tu crains,</i>	thou fearest.	<i>teint,</i>	complexion.
<i>seing,</i>	signature.	<i>il plaint,</i>	he pities.

14. *on, om*, fourteenth simple sound, like *on* in *dont*.

<i>donjon,</i>	dungeon.	<i>chanson,</i>	song.
<i>on,</i>	one, people.	<i>moisson,</i>	crop.
<i>bon,</i>	good.	<i>raison,</i>	reason.
<i>ongle,</i>	finger nail.	<i>poison,</i>	poison.
<i>nom,</i>	name.	<i>poisson,</i>	fish.
<i>bonjour,</i>	good day.	<i>sombre,</i>	dark.

Also *on, om*, like *on* in *dont*, final consonant mute.

<i>donc,</i>	therefore.	<i>plomb,</i>	lead.
<i>jonc, (zon)</i>	bulrush.	<i>prompt,</i>	quick.
<i>blond,</i>	fair.	<i>tu romps,</i>	thou breakest.
<i>long,</i>	long.	<i>il rompt,</i>	he breaks.
<i>pont,</i>	bridge.	<i>dont,</i>	of which.
<i>tronc,</i>	trunk of a tree.	<i>il tond,</i>	he shears.

15. *un, um*, fifteenth simple sound, something like *un* in *hung*, *s* of all plurals mute.

<i>brun</i> ,	brown.	<i>aucun</i> ,	none.
<i>commun</i> ,	common.	<i>tribun</i> ,	tribune.
<i>quelqu'un</i> ,	somebody.	<i>parfum</i> ,	perfume.
<i>importun</i> ,	troublesome.	<i>à jeun</i> ,	fasting.
<i>emprunt</i> (<i>t</i> mute) a loan.		<i>défunt</i> (<i>t</i> mute) defunct.	
<i>chacun</i> ,	every one.	<i>alun</i> ,	alum.
<i>un</i> ,	one.	<i>uns</i> ,	ones.

being all the words in use that have the sound of *un*.

OF THE LETTER *y*.

This letter is used instead of *ii*, as in *moyen*, means; *rayons*, rays; pronounced *moi-ien*, *rai-ion*; and though *envoyer*, to send, and *joyeux*, joyful, are spelt with a *y*, because *ii* are pronounced, we must, nevertheless, write their derivatives with one *i* only, because only one *i* is pronounced, as *j'envoie*, I send; *joie*, joy; as in words derived from the Greek, the *y* is purely etymological, it is pronounced as one *i*, as *syllable*, *type*, *séphyr*, pronounced *sillable*, *tipe*, *zéphir*; *y*, *there*, is pronounced *i*.

OF THE FRENCH VOWEL *E*.

1st. *e* mute, absolute.

1st.—*E* without an accent is absolutely mute in words of one or more syllables when it is not the principal vowel or is preceded by another vowel, as *haie*, edge; *vie*, life; *écurie*, stable; *blessée*, wounded; pronounced *è—vi*,—*écuri*,—*blessé*.

2d.—It is also mute when coming before *a*, *o*, *u*, or when in a nasal vowel it forms but one vowel; when it serves to point out etymology, or is used to soften a letter for euphony, as *gâteau*, cake; *seoir*, to suit; *geolier*, jailer; *dévouement*, devotedness; *peintre*, painter. See notes on Euphony, page 17.

2d. *e* faint, or sheva.

1st. *E* without an accent, is faintly heard in the middle or end of words after a consonant, and serves to give to that consonant a sound called *sheva*, which is the first step of this vowel towards its expiration or sound.

as *dangereux*, pronounced *dang-reux*, soft *g* in dangerous—*constant*, *constante*; in the first the *t* is not felt, in the second it is felt strong as in English *constant*—also in words ending in a consonant, and *e* without an accent, as *élève*, pupil; *poète*, poet; pronounced *é-lè-ve*,—*po-à-te*, with final *e* faint.

2d. In all words where the final consonant is sounded, the faint *e* or sheva being heard, is understood, as in *cap*, cape; *ours*, bear; pronounced *ca-pe*, *our-se*; final *e* faint.

3d. *e* guttural.

E without an accent, in syllables where it is the principal vowel, is more sounded than *e* faint, and is called guttural, like *e* in *her*, as *le*, the; *me*, me; *redevenir*, to become; and if ever this sound is passed over it is in conformity to the law of euphony, or in familiar conversation, for though, *Je ne vous le donne pas*, I do not give it to you, is pronounced *Jen vous l'donne pas*, the same words in different positions would be pronounced in full, as *ne lui donne pas*, do not give it to him; *il le lui donne*, he gives to him; this is the second stage of this vowel, in its progress towards perfect sound.

4th. *é* close.*

E with the close accent is pronounced wherever it is found like *ay* in day as *été*, summer, and is the third gradation of the sound of this letter.

5th. *è* open.

1st. *E* with the open accent is pronounced wherever it is found like *e* in *press* or *e* in *met*, and is the fourth gradation of the sound of this letter, which, if observed, has made a gradual and progressive ascent from its mute to its most open state.

2d, *é* open, with a circumflex accent, is the same sound as *è* open, but fuller and more open. See page 19.

3d. The sound of *è* open, under its varied forms, though always the same, is more or less open according to the words in which it is found; for the sound in *fait*, fact; and in *fête*, feast, are the same; but the latter is prolonged as if written *fè-ète*; the same may be observed of the other vowels where the sound is extended by the circumflex accent, but not

* We prefer the names *close* and *open*, to *grave* and *acute*, as the latter are terms not easily defined.

changed, so the second vowel in *a*, *â*;—*e*, *ê*;—*i*, *î*;—*o*, *ô*;—*u*, *û*; is the same sound as the first, but extended.

NOTES ON THE VOWEL *E*.

1. The final *e* not accented is either mute or faint, *élève*.
2. No word can begin with *e* mute or faint, *élève*.
3. The penult *e* at the end of a word must not be faint, in order to avoid the meeting of two faint inflections, *élève*, therefore it cannot be divided from the final *e* by a single consonant; for either the consonant must be doubled, or the penult *e* be accented, as in *élève*, pupil; *il appelle*, he calls; from *apeler*, to call, the *l* being doubled, the penult *e* requires no accent, but if the *l* had not been doubled, the penult *e* would have required an accent; so we write either *il apèle* or *appelle*; the last is best.
4. The penult *e* before a consonant is never close *é*, but always more or less open, as *il confesse*, he confesses; *diocèse*, diocese; except in *manège*, *collège*, as written by the Académie.
5. The *e* guttural is never followed by a double consonant, for then it becomes open by its coalition with the first of the two consonants, as *cession*, pronounced *cè-ssation* or *ces-sation*; except in words beginning with *ress*, not followed by *u*, as *ressaisir*, pronounced *re-ssaisir*; but *ressusciter* is pronounced *rè-ssusciter*:—nor can it be followed by two different consonants except the second be *l* or *r*, as *herbe* is pronounced *hèr-be*, and *replet*, *regret*, are pronounced *replè*, *regrè*.
6. The *e* followed by *s* final, unless the *s* be the sign of the plural, takes the open accent, as *exprès*, purposely; *très*, very; except *mes*, *tes*, *ces*, *ses*, *les*, *des*, *tu es*; which have the same sound as if accented *mès*, *tès*, *cès*, *sès*, *lès*, *dès*, *tu ès*; otherwise *es* final in the plural is never sounded, as *tables*, pronounced *table*, faint *e*.

OF EUPHONICAL LETTERS AND SIGNS.

The law of euphony has given rise to the use of three letters, *l*, *â*, *z*, which are used between words to which they do not belong, to avoid the disagreeable clash of two vowels or hiatus.

L is used before *on*, when it is preceded by *et*, *si*, *ou*, *qui*, or *que* followed by *q* or *c* hard, as *si l'on vient*, if they come; *ce que l'on conçoit bien*, what is well understood; which is more euphonic than *ce qu'on conçoit bien*.

We also say, *si l'un d'eux*, if either of them, instead of *si un d'eux*.

but if *un* or *on* are followed by a word beginning by *l*, the euphonical letter is omitted, as, *si on le voyait*, not *si l'on le voyait*.

T. In interrogative phrases where the third person singular ends with a vowel, the letter *t* is placed with two hiphens between the verb and the pronoun, as *où va-t-il*? where does he go?

T is added to *ce* the mas. demonstrative pronoun, before a noun or adjective beginning with a vowel, as *cet enfant*, that child.

S. When the second person singular of the imperative ends with a vowel, an *s* is added to the verb when followed by *y*, or *en*, as *donne-s-en*, give some; *va-s-y*, or *vas-y*, go there; except when *y* is followed by a verb. Instead of *donnez moi en*, give me some—*mène moi y* and *menez moi y*, take me there, which is grammatical but not euphonic, we write *donnez m'en*, *mène-s-y-moi*, and *menez-y-moi*.

Other signs are used to produce euphony, or to point out etymology.

I. In interrogative phrases, when the first person singular ends in *e* without an accent, the close accent is placed over the *é*, to avoid two mute inflections, as *parlé-je*? do I speak? last *e* faint.

II. The apostrophe, ', is used to point out the suppression of a vowel, called elision, which generally takes place in monosyllables ending in *a*, *e*, *i*, when the next word begins with a vowel or *h* mute.

1st. It takes place in *je*, *me*, *te*, *se*, *de*, *ce*, *ne*, *que*, and *le*, *la*; as *l'ame*, for *la ame*, the soul; *je l'estime*, for *je le estime*, I esteem him; except when *le*, *la*, him or it, her or it, come after the imperative, and are not followed by *en* or *y*; as *apportez le avec vous*, bring it with you.

2d. It takes place in *si* coming before *il* or *ils* only, as, *s'il vient*, for *si il vient*, if he comes.

3d. *E* is cut off, first in *jusque* before *à*, *au*, *aux*, and *ici*, as *jusqu'à Londres*, as far as London; *jusqu'ici*, as far as here.

4th. In *quelque*, before *un*, *une*, *autre*, *quelqu'un*, *quelqu'autre*.

5th. In *puisque*, and *quoique*, before *il*, *ils*, *elle*, *elles*, *on*, *un*, and *une*; also before *ainsi*, as, *puisque'il l'aime*, since he loves her; *quoiqu'elle n'ose*, although she dare not; *puisque'ainsi est*, since so it is.

6. In *presque*, and *presqu'île*, peninsula.

7. In *entre*, before *eux*, *elles*, *autres*, and in reciprocal verbs, as *entr'eux*, *entr'elles*, between them; *s'entrouvrir*, to open one another.

No elision takes place before *oui*, *huit*, *huitaine*, *huitième*, *onze*, and *onzième*.

ELISION sometimes takes place before consonants, as *grand peur*

great fear; *grand' mère*, grandmother; which if written *grande mère*, would mean tall mother.

III. The cedilla is an etymological sign representing the letter *c* placed under the letter *c* instead of placing it after, thus when *c* hard, before *a*, *o*, *u*, is to be pronounced soft as before *e*, *i*, to show its derivation, this mark is placed under it, thus *effaçons*, from *effacer* to efface, makes *effaçons*, as if written *effaceons*, where *e* faint has softened the *c*.

IV. As the cedilla could not be used under the hard *g* to soften it, before *a*, *o*, *u*, an *e* is placed after it, as *nageons* from *nager*, to swim, both soft *g*; and when the *g* is to be pronounced hard before *e*, *i*, to show its derivation, the letter *u* is placed after it, as *guérir*, to cure; *guider*, to guide; in which the *u* is mute, but it is pronounced in *arguer*, to argue; *aiguille*, a needle.

V. By the same reason, *eu* after *g* and *c*, is transposed into *ue*, to harden the *c* and *g*; so *orgueil*, pride; and *accueil*, reception; are pronounced as if written *orgeuil*, *aoceuil*, with hard *g* and *c*.

OF ACCENTS AND OTHER SIGNS.

There are in the French language three accents, the close or acute (´), open or grave (`), the broad or circumflex (^).

The CLOSE or acute accent is placed over the letter *é* only, to which it imparts the sound of *a* in cake, as *célébrité*.

The OPEN or grave accent is used over the vowels *à*, *è*, *ù*, but only affects the sound of *e*, to which it imparts an open sound, as in *règle*, rule:—it is used over *à*, to; to distinguish it from *il a*, he has; over *là*, there; to distinguish it from *la*, the, *la*, her; over *dès*, as soon, to distinguish it from *des*, of the, or some; over *où*, where; to distinguish it from *ou*, or; it is also used over *ça* *déjà*, *delà*, *déjà*.

The BROAD or circumflex accent is used over all the vowels; it never changes the sounds of the vowels, but is used as a mark of the extension of the sound, as *flûte*,* and *maître*, master, are pronounced *flû-te*, *mai-tre*.*

It is sometimes used to distinguish words alike in spelling but different in meaning, without extending the sound, as,

* It is worthy of remark, that when there is any resemblance between the French and English words, the French have substituted the circumflex accent for the *e*, and the English have retained the *e*; as *maître*; now *maître*, master; *apôtre*, now *apôtre*, apostle; *bête*, now *bête*, beast; *coste*, now *côte*, coast.

<i>mûr</i> ,	ripe;	to distinguish it from	<i>mur</i> ,	wall.
<i>sûr</i> ,	sure;	“	from <i>sur</i> ,	upon; sour.
<i>dû</i> , (m. s.)	due;	“	from <i>du</i> ,	of or from the.
<i>crû</i> ,	grewed,	“	from <i>cru</i> ,	believed.
<i>tû</i> , (m. s.)	silenced;	“	from <i>tu</i> ,	thou.
<i>vû</i> ,	seen;	“	from <i>vu que</i> ,	seeing that.
<i>attendû</i> ,	expected;	“	from <i>attendu que</i> ,	seeing that.
<i>pourvû</i> ,	provided;	“	from <i>pourvu que</i> ,	providing that.

There are, besides the stops, which are (.) *point* (,) *virgule*, (;) *point et virgule* (:), *deux points* (?) *point interrogant* (!) *point admiratif*, six other marks.

1. The APOSTROPHE, (') to point out the suppression of a vowel, called *elision*, see page 18.

2. The HYPHEN (-), or *trait d'union*, is principally used when the pronoun subject of the verb is placed after the verb, as *dit-il*, said he; but not if the pronoun be the object, as *donnez-moi*, give me. It is also used before and after a euphonic letter, as *parle-t-il?* does he speak; and frequently to unite words as forming but one, as *celui-ci*, this one; *celui-là*, that one; *très-bien*, very well.

3. The CEDILLA, or *cédille*, is used to soften the ç. See page 19.

4. The DASH, or *trait de separation*, serves to point out the changes of persons in conversation, instead of using the words said he, replied she, or answered they.

“*Debout, dit l'avarice, il est temps de marcher.*

—*eh! laisse moi.—Debout.—Un moment.—Tu répliques!”*

5. The DIALYSIS is used to point out that the vowel over which it is placed forms a distinct syllable from the vowel immediately preceding, as *naïveté*, artlessness, pronounced *na-iveté*, which, without the dialysis, would have been pronounced *nèveté*.

6. The POINT DE SUSPENSION is used to point out interruption, either by another speaking, or by a sudden transition of sentiment, or by suspension of the voice, occasioned by reflection, forgetfulness, or emotion, as,

“.....*Tu vas ouïr le comble des horreurs.*

J'aime.....A ce nom fatal, je tremble, je frissonne.

J'aime.....”

OF THE NASAL SOUNDS.

The *m* represents the same nasal sound as the *n*, as *compter*, to reckon; *conter*, to relate; *faim*, hunger; *pain*, bread; in which *m* or *n* are only the conventional signs of a nasal sound, and are not felt as consonants; but both are felt as consonants at the end of proper names, and other words derived from foreign languages, as *Rotterdam*, *Abraham*, *Jérusalem*, *Hymen*, *amen*; but *Adam* and *Absalon* retain the nasal sound.

M or *n*, followed by any other consonant than *m* or *n*, is nasal; and both lose their nasal effect if followed by *e*, as *un*, *une*, one; *tombe*, tomb; *tome*, volume; *plein*, *pleine*, full.

M or *n*, when doubled in the beginning or middle of words, take their natural inflection, as *anneau*, ring; *innocence*; *commode*, commodious; *immense*; pronounced *a-no*, *i-nocence*, *co-mode*, *im-mense*. See page 9. It is, however, nasal in *ennui*, *ennuyer*, *ennoblir*, &c.

En preceded by *i*, takes the sound of *en* in *men*, when the *n* is doubled, and followed by *e*, as *la mienne*, mine; but it takes the nasal sound of *in* 13, when final after *i*, as *le mien*, mine; or when only followed by the sign of the plural, or the sign of the verb, as *les miens*, mine; *il tient*, he holds.

OF THE CONSONANTS.

C.

C is pronounced like *k*, before *a*, *o*, *u*, *l*, *n*, *r*, and at the end of a syllable; and like *ss* before *e* and *i*; it is also pronounced like *ss* before *a*, *o*, *u*, when it has a cedilla under it, as *garçon*, boy; *façade*, front; *reçu*, received; pronounced *garsson*, *fassade*, *ressu*. *Vermicelle* and *violoncelle* are pronounced *vermishelle*, *violonshelle*.

In *second* and its derivatives, and in *drachme*, *czar*, *czarine*, it takes the sound of *g* in *gate*, as if written *segond*, *dragme*, *gzar*, *gzarine*.

C is not sounded when coming before *q* or *c*, as *acquérir*, acclamation; pronounced *a-quérir*, a-clamation; but if the second *c* precede an *i* or *e*, the first is hard and the second soft, as *accident*, *accès*, pronounced *ac-sident*, *ac-sès*.

C followed by *h* has the sound of *sh* in *shoe*, as *charité*, *charette*, a cart; pronounced *sharité*, *sharette*; and the sound of *k* in words derived from ancient languages, as *chrétien*, *chaos*, *chorus*.

G.

G is hard before *a*, *o*, *u*, and soft before *e* and *i*, as in *gage*, *wages*. It takes *e* to soften it before *a*, *o*, *u*, and *u* to harden it before *e*, *i*. See page 19. *Gangrène* is pronounced *cangrène*.

Gn.

Gn in the middle of words takes a liquid sound like *gn* in *poignant*, as *agneau*, lamb; it is sounded hard in *gnome*, *stagnant*, and in some words derived from Greek and Latin; *signet* is pronounced *sinet*.

H.

H is aspirated in *Henri*, *Hollande*, and *Hongrie*, also in *héro*, but not in its derivatives *héroïne*, &c.; the *h* is mute in *huit*, though we say *le huit*; we also say *le oui* for *l'oui*, the yes; and *le honze*, for *l'onze*, the eleven; the dictionary points out when the *h* is aspirated.

L liquid.

L liquid is always preceded by an *i*, it takes the sound of *ll* in *collier*, or *gl* in *seraglio*; the liquid *il* or *ill* can only be preceded by a consonant, or by *a*, *e*, *ou*, *eu*, in which case it is always liquid, as *il* in *fille*, daughter; *aïl* in *travail*, work; *eïl* in *bouteille*, bottle; *ouïl* in *bouillir*, to boil; *eüil* in *deuil*, mourning; pronounced *fil-ye*, *travail-ye*, *bouteil-ye*, *bouïl-yir*, *deuil-ye*, in which the *l* is always strongly felt; *ill* is not liquid at the beginning of words, and in a few others, as *mille*, mile; *ville*, town.

M and *N*. See page 21.

P.

P is pronounced in *psaume*, *ineptie*, *reptile*, *exemption*, *baptismal*, *septenaire*, &c., but it is mute in *baptiste*, *baptême*, *baptiser*, *baptistaire*, baptismal record; *baptistère*, baptismal room or place; *compte*, *corps*, &c. It is pronounced in *rompre*, to break; but not in the persons of the verb followed by *s* or *t*, as *je romps*, *il rompt*, pronounced *je ron*, *il ron*. See page 14.

Q.

Q is always followed by *u*, except in *coq*, cock; *cing*, five; and the *u* is mute except in *équestre*, equestrian; *équilatéral*, quintuple, five-fold;

équitation, the art of riding; *Quint Curce*, Quintius Curcius; *Quintilen*, Quintilian. It takes the sound of *ou* in *aquatique*, *équateur*, *quadrupède*, *quacre*, *in-quarto*, &c.

S.

S between two vowels is pronounced soft, like *s* in *desire*, as *misère*, poverty; *rose*, rose; except in *désuétude*, *monosyllable*, *parasol*, *présupposer*, *entresole*, *vraisemblance* and its derivatives, *giser* and its derivatives, in which it is pronounced hard; *s* in the middle of words is sounded hard when preceded or followed by a consonant, as *conseil*, *puisque*, except in words beginning with *trans*, as *transitif*, pronounced *transitif*; though it is hard in *transir* and its derivatives.

T.

When *ti* in English takes the sound of *sh*, it takes in French the sound of *see*; thus *nation*, *partial*, are pronounced *na-see-on*, *par-see-al*, except in the termination of verbs; and when *tion*, *tial*, are preceded by *s* or *x*, as *étions*, *bastions*, *bestial*, *mixture*; *ti* is pronounced natural when followed by *en*, as *le tien*, except *patience*, and proper names, as *Vénitien*, pronounced *Véni-see-in*; also where *tie*, *tié*, and *tier* are final, as *partie*, *amitié*, *métier*; but it takes the sound of *see* in *aristocratie*, *prophétie*, *initier*, *minutie*; *thé*, tea; *théâtre*, &c. are pronounced *té*, *téâtre*.

W.

This English compound vowel, vulgarly misnamed a consonant, is rendered in French by the compound vowel *ou*, as *ouest*, west; *oui*, yes; *ouate*, wadding; pronounced *west*, *we*, *wat*; as proper names are national words, there are no rules to fix their pronunciation, and *Warwick*, *Warrington*, *Wirtimberg*, &c. are pronounced *Varvick*, *Varrington*, *Virtimberg*.

X.

X in some words takes the sound of *cs*, as *fixer*, to fix; of *gz*, as *exemple*; of *k*, as *excès*; of *ss*, as *Bruzelles*, *six*, *dix*, *soixante*; and of *q*, as *sixième*, sixth; *deuxième*, second; *dixième*, tenth; *une sixaine*, a half a dozen; *une dizaine*, half a score; *dix-sept*, *dix-huit*, *dix-neuf*, pronounced *sixième*, *deuxième*, &c.

OF FINAL CONSONANTS.

B.

B is pronounced at the end of proper names, as *Jacob*, *Moab*, and in *rob*, but it is mute in *plomb*, lead.

C.

C is generally sounded at the end of words, except in *accroc*, *almanach*, *arsenic*, *banc*, *blanc*, *clerc*, *estomac*, *flanc*, *franc*, *jonc*, *marc*, *porc*, *tabac*, *tronc*, and a few others; it is not sounded in *instinct*, *échecs*, check-mate, *lacs*, nets; nor in *donc*, therefore; except when it begins a sentence, or the next word begins with a vowel, as *donc vous viendrez*, therefore you will come; *il est donc arrivé*, he is therefore arrived.

D.

D is pronounced at the end of proper names, as *le Cid*, *David*, and in *sud*, south, and *le sund*, the sound; *d* final in adjectives before their nouns, and in verbs before their pronouns, beginning with a vowel, is pronounced like *t*, as *un grand oiseau*, a large bird; *entend-il?* does he hear? pronounced *un gran-toiseau*, *enten-til*.

F.

F final is generally pronounced, except in *clef*, key; *étouf*, tennis-ball; *cerf*, a stag; *chef-d'œuvre*, a master-piece; it is sounded in *bœuf*, beef; *nerf*, nerve; *œuf*, egg; but it is mute in *bœuf-salé*, salt beef; *des bœufs*, oxen; *nerf délicat*, delicate nerve; *œuf frais*, fresh egg; *des œufs*, eggs; *des ners*, nerves; pronounced *beu*, *ner*, *eu*.

Neuf, nine, loses the sound of *f* before a word beginning with a consonant, as *neuf maisons*, nine houses, pronounced *neu maison*, except before the four suits of cards, as *le neuf de pique*, the nine of spades, &c., pronounced *neuf de pique*, &c., before a noun or adjective only, beginning with a vowel it takes the sound of *v* in *neuf*, as *neuf enfants*, pronounced *neu-venfants*, nine children.

G.

G final is pronounced a little in *jong*, yoke; *bourg* is pronounced *bourk*; it is always mute in *coign*, quince; *doigt*, finger; *étang*, pond; *faubourgh*, suburbs; *legs*, legacy; *poing*, fist; *seing*, signature; *hareng*, herring; *vingt*, twenty; in other words it is mute when followed by a word begin-

ning with a consonant, as *rang noble*, pronounced *ran noble*; but it is pronounced like *k* subdued, when the next word begins with a vowel or *h* mute, as *rang honorable*, pronounced *ran-konorable*.

L.

For words where *l* final is, or is not pronounced, see page 9.

M.

M final is not pronounced except in proper names. See page 21.

N.

N final is pronounced before words beginning with a vowel; 1st, in *en*, *on*, and *un*; as *en été*, in summer; *on aime*, one loves; *un arbre*, a tree; pronounced *en-néts*, *on-naime*, *un-narbre*. 2d. In adjectives and pronouns, before their respective nouns, as *mon âme*, my soul; *un ancien ami*, an old friend; pronounced *mon-nâme*, *un-nancien-nami*. 3d. In *bien*, well; and *rien*, nothing; before the words they serve to modify, as *bien aimable*, very amiable; *rien autre*, nothing else; but the *n* is not pronounced if there can be a pause between *on*, *en*, *bien*, *rien*, and the next word; in other cases the *n* is not pronounced, as *un plan utile*, a useful plan; *une maison ouverte*, an open house.

P.

P final is pronounced in *cap*, *jap*, *jalap*, *cep*, *julep*, *alep*, and mute in *camp*, *champ*, *drap*, *cirop*, *loup*, &c. In *coup*, blow; *beaucoup*, much; and *trop*, too much; the *p* is sounded only when the next word begins with a vowel, as *coup affreux*, a dreadful blow; *beaucoup en France*, much in France; *trop en Angleterre*, too much in England; pronounced *cou-paffreux*; *beaucou-pen-France*; *tro-pen-Angleterre*.

Q.

Q is only final in *cinq*, five; *coq*, cock; it is not pronounced in *coq-d'inde*, a turkey cock; nor in *cinq*, when immediately followed by an adjective, or the noun it serves to enumerate, as *cinq fois*, five times; *cinq petits garçons*, five little boys; pronounced *cin-fois*, *cin-petits garçons*; it is hard before any other word, or when final, as *cinq pour cent*, five per cent; *trois et deux font cinq*, two and three make five; pronounced hard like *k*.

D

R.

R is sounded in proper names, as *Esther*, *Jupiter*; in monosyllables, as *fer*, iron; *mer*, sea; or when *er* is preceded by *f*, *m*, or *r*, as *enfer*, hell; *amer*, bitter; *hiver*, winter; also in *cuciller*, a spoon; *cancer*, cancer; *hier*, yesterday; *fier*, proud; it is sounded in words ending in *ir* and *eur*, as *punir*, to punish; *honneur*, honor; *er* in infinitives is generally pronounced *é* (see page 6); but in poetry and oratorical discourses the *r* is pronounced; *monsieur* is pronounced *mossieu*, o 7.

S.

S final is pronounced in *alods*, aloes; *as*, ace; *atlas*, *jadis*, formerly; *Jésus*; *lis*, lily; *ours*, bear; in *plus* coming before *q*, as *plus que payé*, more than paid; and in words derived from the Latin, as, *chorus*, *bis*, &c., but it is not pronounced in *Jésus Christ*, *fleur de lis*, *Mathias*, *Thomas*, and *Judas*; nor in *tous*, an adjective, as *J'ai vu tous vos amis*, I have seen all your friends; but *s* is pronounced when *tous* is used as a noun, as, *ils sont tous vos amis*, they are all your friends; when coming before words beginning with a vowel, it takes the sound of *z*.

T.

T is pronounced in *abject*, *accessit*, *Brest*, *brut*, *chut*, *correct*, *contact*, *déficit*, *direct*, *dot*, *exact*, *est* (east), *fat*, *granit*, *incorrect*, *indirect*, *induit*, *infest*, *lest*, *luth*, *net*, *ouest*, *prêtérît*, *subit*, *strict*, *suspect*, *tact*, *test*, *Thibet*, *transit*, *vivat*, *zenith*, *zist*, *zest*; in *vingt*, twenty, it is not sounded when used alone, or when the next word begins with a consonant; the *t* is sounded when the next word begins with a vowel, except when preceded by *r*, as *il part aujourd'hui*, he sets off to-day, pronounced *il par aujourd'hui*; in *sept*, seven, and *huit*, eight, it is only sounded when the next word begins with a vowel, when used as a noun or alone, as, *sept ou huit enfants*, seven or eight children; *le huit de Janvier*, the eighth of January; *ils étaient huit*, they were eight; read as if written *se-tou-hui-tenfants*, *le huitte de Janvier*, *ils étaient huitte*; it is pronounced in *Christ*, but not in *Jésus Christ*; the *c* is sounded and not the *t* in *aspect*, *circonspect*, and *respect*; *t* in *et*, *vent*, *pont*, are never sounded.

X.

X final is pronounced *es* in proper names, as *Fox*, *Fairfax*, and in *borax*, *index*, *lynx*, *sphinx*, *préfix*; in *six* and *dix*, it takes the sound of *ss*, when not followed by the noun it enumerates, as *J'en ai six* (six) ou

dix (*diss*), I have six or ten; when followed by its noun, beginning with a consonant, it is mute, as *j'ai dix* (*di*) *couteaux* et *six* (*si*) *fourchettes*, I have ten knives and six forks; *x* in *deux*, *six*, and *dix*, is soft only when the word enumerated begins with a vowel, or when forming part of a compound word, as *deux amis*, two friends; *dix enfants*, ten children: *dix-huit*, eighteen; pronounced *deu-zami*, *di-zenfants*, *di-zhuit*.

Z.

Z final is generally mute, but when coming before a word beginning with a vowel, it is generally sounded; for *Metz*, *Rhodes*, pronounce *Mess*, *Rhodss*.

GENERAL REMARKS.

ON THE UNION OF WORDS.—Though in public speaking and in serious reading the final consonant is forcibly pronounced on the next word beginning with a vowel, to give more effect and power, yet in conversation and familiar reading it is by no means always necessary, except where harmony absolutely requires it; an intelligent teacher is the surest guide.

GENERAL RULE.—All words preceding those with which they have a close connection, such as prepositions before their compliments, articles and adjectives before their nouns, and nouns before their adjectives, verbs before their subject and object, and all pronouns, sound *s*, *t*, *x*, before the next word beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, the *s* taking the soft sound of *s*, and *t* and *x* their natural sounds.

In familiar conversation the *l* is not pronounced in the words *quelque*, some; *quelqu'un*, somebody; *quelquefois*, sometimes; as if written *queque*, &c.; but we recommend sounding it a little, to avoid a vulgarism often practised by our *petits-maitres* and *nos fashionables*, who must not be imitated when they say *fiye* for *fille*, daughter; *paye* for *paille*, straw; which should be pronounced *fil-ye*, *pail-ye*; nor when they pronounce the diphthong *oi* as *oè*, with its meagre sound, but must give to it its full sound of *ou* and *a*, as *moi je conçois la loi*; and not *moè je conçoès la loè*.

Part Second.

INTRODUCTORY CHAPTER.

ETYMOLOGY.

(To be committed to memory.)

1.—There are, in the French language, nine kinds of words or parts of speech—the article, the noun, the adjective, the pronoun, the verb, the adverb, the preposition, the conjunction, and the interjection.

FIRST.—THE ARTICLE.

2. THE ARTICLE is a word placed before nouns to indicate their determined sense, and in French serves also to point out their gender and number.

3. There is but one article in the French language, *le*, the; which varies according to the gender and number of the noun before which it is placed, as,

mas. <i>le maître</i> ,	the master.	<i>le couteau</i> ,	the knife.
fem. <i>la maîtresse</i> ,	the mistress.	<i>la fourchette</i> ,	the fork.
plur. <i>les maîtres</i> ,	the masters.	<i>les maîtresses</i> ,	the mistresses.

4. Elision is the suppressing of the vowel *e*, or *a*, from the articles *le*, *la*, when they precede a noun beginning with a vowel, or *h* mute, and substituting an apostrophe ('), as,

mas. <i>l'ami</i> ,	instead of— <i>le ami</i> ,	the friend.
fem. <i>l'encre</i> ,	instead of— <i>la encre</i> ,	the ink.
mas. <i>l'homme</i> ,	instead of— <i>le homme</i> ,	the man.
fem. <i>l'heure</i> ,	instead of— <i>la heure</i> ,	the hour.

5. Contraction is to contract the preposition *de*, and the article *le*, into *du*; *de* and *les* into *des*; *à* and *le* into *au*; and *à* and *les* into *aux*; thus we say,

sing. <i>du beurre</i> ,	instead of <i>de le beurre</i> ,	of the butter.
plur. <i>des cerises</i> ,	instead of <i>de les cerisses</i> ,	of the cherries.
sing. <i>au garçon</i> ,	instead of <i>à le garçon</i> ,	to the boy.
plur. <i>aux garçons</i> ,	instead of <i>à les garçons</i> ,	to the boys.

6. There are no cases in the French language, as in the Latin; these relations are pointed out either by the situation of the nouns, or by prepositions, principally by *de*, of or from; and *à*, to or at.

7. Table of the Article with Elision and Contraction.

State.	Equal to the	Mas.	Fem.	Elision.	Plural.	English.
1st,	Nominative,	<i>le</i>	<i>la</i>	<i>l'</i>	<i>les</i>	the.
2d,	Gen. Abl.	<i>du</i>	<i>de la</i>	<i>de l'</i>	<i>des</i>	of or from the.
3d,	Dative,	<i>au</i>	<i>à la</i>	<i>à l'</i>	<i>aux</i>	to or at the.
4th,	Accusative,	<i>le</i>	<i>la</i>	<i>l'</i>	<i>les</i>	the.

8. Elision takes place only in the singular, and is the same for the masculine and feminine.

9. *The partitive word* SOME, or ANY, is generally rendered by the second state of the article, mas. *du*; fem. *de la*; elision, *de l'*; plur. *des*; as,

mas. *du lait*, | some milk. || elision, *de l'or*, | some gold.
fem. *de la viande*, | some meat. || plu. *des pierres*, | some stones.

10. *De* without the article is used instead of *du*, *de la*, *des*, when an adjective precedes the noun, as,

mas. *DE bon pain*, | not *DU bon pain*, | some good bread.
fem. *DE bonne bière*, | not *DE LA bonne bière*, | some good beer.
plur. *DE bons souliers*, | not *DES bons souliers*, | some good shoes.

But should the adjective come after the noun, use *du*, *de la*, *des*, as if there were no adjective, as,

mas. *DU pain bis*, | some brown bread.
fem. *DE LA bière forte*, | some strong beer.
plur. *DES souliers propres*, | some clean shoes.

11. *The indefinite article* A, or AN, is rendered in French by the adjective of number; mas. *un*, fem. *une*, one.

1st or 4th state, | mas. *un*, | fem. *une*, | a or an.
2d state, | mas. *d'un*, | fem. *d'une*, | of or from a or an.
3d state, | mas. *à un*, | fem. *à une*, | to or at a or an.

Examination.

1. How many parts of speech are there? 2. What is the article?
3. How many articles are there? 4. What is elision? 5. What is contraction? 6. Are there any cases in the French language? 7. Recite the table of articles? 8. When does elision take place? 9. How is the partitive word *some* or *any* rendered? 10. When is *de* used without the article? 11. How is *a* or *an* rendered in French?

SECOND.—THE NOUN.

12. THE NOUN serves to name every object, whether it exists in substance, or only in the understanding.

13. There are three kinds of nouns—the common, the proper, and the abstract or ideal.

14. A *common noun* is a name given to all objects of the same kind, as, *un homme*, a man; *un cheval*, a horse; which appellation suits all men, all horses.

15. A *proper noun* is a name given to an individual person or thing, to distinguish it from another person or thing of the same kind, as, *Milton*, Milton; to distinguish him from other men; *Londres*, London; to distinguish it from other cities.

16. An *abstract* or *ideal noun*, serves to name feelings, qualities, or abstracts, which, having no substance, have only an existence in the understanding, as *chagrin*, grief; *courage*, courage; *tems*, time.

17. A common noun is called collective, when, though in the singular, it conveys to the mind the idea of many persons or things, as *armée*, army; being a collection of many soldiers; *une flotte*, a fleet; being a collection of many ships.

18. GENDER is the property which nouns have of representing the distinction of sexes in animated beings; there are, therefore, but two genders—the *masculine* and the *feminine*. In French, however, every inanimate object being personified, the nouns which in English are called neuter, are in that language either masculine or feminine.

19. Many nouns of persons which in English have not a decided distinction of gender, have one in French; the feminine being generally distinguished from the masculine by the faint *e*.

Mas.	Fem.	English.	Mas.	Fem.	English.
<i>voisin</i> ,	<i>voisine</i> ,	neighbour.	<i>épicier</i> ,	<i>épicière</i> ,	grocer.
<i>cousin</i> ,	<i>cousine</i> ,	cousin.	<i>marchand</i> ,	<i>marchande</i> ,	dealer.
<i>amant</i> ,	<i>amante</i> ,	lover.	<i>boucher</i> ,	<i>bouchère</i> ,	butcher.

and most other nouns of trades and professions.

20. NUMBER is the property which nouns have of representing unity or plurality; consequently there are two numbers, the *singular* and the *plural*.

21. There are four rules for forming the plural of nouns.*

FIRST or GENERAL RULE. The plural is formed, as in English, by adding *s* to the singular, as,

plume, pen; *plumes*, pens. | *fruit*, fruit; *fruits*, fruits.

SECOND. Nouns ending in *s*, *x*, or *z*, take no sign for the plural, as,

Singular.		Plural.	
<i>un héros</i> ,	a hero.	<i>deux héros</i> ,	two heroes.
<i>une voix</i> ,	a voice.	<i>trois voix</i> ,	three voices.
<i>un nez</i> ,	a nose.	<i>quatre nez</i> ,	four noses.

THIRD. Nouns ending in *au*, *eu*, *ou*, take *x* for the plural.

<i>un couteau</i> ,	a knife.	<i>cinq couteaux</i> ,	five knives.
<i>un cheveu</i> ,	a hair.	<i>six cheveux</i> ,	six hairs.
<i>un chou</i> ,	a cabbage.	<i>sept choux</i> ,	seven cabbages.

FOURTH. Nouns ending in *al* or *ail*, change *al* or *ail* into *aux*, as,

<i>un cheval</i> ,	a horse.	<i>huit chevaux</i> ,	eight horses.
<i>un travail</i> ,	a work.	<i>neuf travaux</i> ,	nine works.
<i>un amiral</i> ,	an admiral.	<i>dix amiraux</i> ,	ten admirals.

22. The exceptions to the third and fourth rules are:—

3d. <i>bleus</i> ,	blues.	3d. <i>trous</i> ,	holes.
" <i>clous</i> ,	nails.	" <i>verrous</i> ,	bolts.
" <i>cous</i> ,	neck.	4th. <i>bals</i> ,	balls.
" <i>écrous</i> ,	screw-nuts.	" <i>carnavals</i> ,	carnivals.
" <i>filous</i> ,	thieves.	" <i>régals</i> ,	treats.
" <i>fous</i> ,	fools.	" <i>attirails</i> ,	apparatus.
" <i>hibous</i> ,	owls.	" <i>détails</i> ,	particulars.
" <i>licous</i> ,	halters.	" <i>éventails</i> ,	fans.
" <i>matous</i> ,	he-cats.	" <i>gouvernails</i> ,	helms.
" <i>sous</i> ,	pence.	" <i>sérails</i> ,	seraglios.

23. The nouns that have particular forms of plural are:—

Sing. <i>ciel</i> ,	sky or heaven.	Plur. <i>cieux</i> ,	skies or heavens.
" <i>œil</i> ,	eye.	" <i>yeux</i> ,	eyes.
" <i>aïeul</i> ,	ancestor.	" <i>aïeux</i> ,	ancestors.
" <i>ail</i> ,	garlic.	" <i>aulx</i> ,	garlic.

We however say, *ciels-de-lit*, testers of beds; *ciels-de-tableaux*, skies in pictures; *œils-de-bœufs*, small oval windows; and

* By a late decision of the *Académie*, all words ending in *ant* or *ent*, do not now lose the *t* in the plural, except *gens*, never written *gents*.

aieul makes *aieuls*, when it means paternal and maternal grandfathers; *bétail*, cattle, has no plural; but *bestiaux* is sometimes used, and has the same signification.

24. Some nouns have no plural, as *faim*, hunger; *or*, gold; *prudence*, prudence, &c.; which are nearly the same in both languages. Others have no singular in French, as *pleurs*, tears; *ténèbres*, darkness; *funérails*, funerals; *frais*, expenses, &c.

25. A *compound noun* is a common noun composed of two or more words, in which the noun, the pronoun, and the adjective alone, take the sign of the plural; and if two nouns be united by a preposition, the first only takes the sign of the plural, as,

Singular.	Plural.
<i>un chou-fleur</i> , a cauliflower.	<i>des choux-fleurs</i> , cauliflowers.
<i>une chauve-souri</i> , a bat.	<i>des chauves-souris</i> , bats.
<i>madame</i> , madam.	<i>mesdames</i> , ladies.
<i>un maître-d'hôtel</i> , a steward.	<i>des maîtres-d'hôtel</i> , stewards.

Examination.

12. What does the noun serve to name? 13. How many kinds of nouns are there? 14. What is a common noun? 15. What is a proper noun? 16. What is an abstract noun? 17. When is a common noun called collective? 18. What is gender? 19. Have nouns of persons any distinction of gender? 20. What is number? 21. How many rules are there for forming the gender of nouns? 22. What are the exceptions to the 3d and 4th rules? 23. Name the nouns that have particular forms of plural? 24. What are the nouns that have no plural, and those that have no singular? 25. What is a compound noun?

THIRD.—THE ADJECTIVE.

26. THE ADJECTIVE is a word by which the qualities or distinction of a noun are expressed.

27. The Adjective of itself has neither gender nor number, but it is made to assume the gender and number of the noun it serves to distinguish, according to the following rules:—

28. FIRST, OR GENERAL RULE.—All adjectives not ending in *e* unaccented, take an *e* for the feminine, as *un grand prince*, a great prince; *une grande princesse*, a great princess.

SECOND.—All adjectives ending in *e* unaccented, in the masculine, take no additional *e* for the feminine, as *un garçon aimable*, an amiable boy; *une fille aimable*, an amiable girl.

THIRD.—Adjectives ending in *el*, *eil*, *ien*, or *et*, double the last consonant before taking an *e*, as *cruel*, *cruelle*, cruel; *pareil*, *pareille*, alike; *ancien*, *ancienne*, ancient; *muêt*, *muette*, dumb. See i. 30–31, and 32.

FOURTH.—Adjectives ending in *f*, change *f* into *vs*, as *vif*, *vive*, lively; *naïf*, *naïve*, artless.

FIFTH.—Adjectives ending in *eur* or *eux*, change *r* or *x* into *se*, as *flateur*, *flateuse*, flattering; *honteux*, *honteuse*, shameful. See i. 29.

29. Adjectives of opposition or comparison, ending in *eur*, form their feminine by taking *e* unaccented, as—

Mas.	Fem.	English.	Mas.	Fem.	English.
<i>meill-eur</i>	<i>eure</i> ,	better.	<i>supér-ieur</i> ..	<i>ieure</i> ,	superior.
<i>min-eur</i>	<i>eure</i> ,	minor.	<i>infér-ieur</i> ...	<i>ieure</i> ,	inferior.
<i>maj-eur</i>	<i>eure</i> ,	major.	<i>intér-ieur</i> ...	<i>ieure</i> ,	interior.
<i>antér-ieur</i> ...	<i>ieure</i> ,	anterior.	<i>extér-ieur</i> ...	<i>ieure</i> ,	exterior.
<i>postér-ieur</i> ...	<i>ieure</i> ,	posterior.	<i>ultér-ieur</i> ...	<i>ieure</i> ,	ulterior.

30. The only adjectives besides those which, according to rule 3d, double the last consonant before taking *e*, are:—

Mas.	Fem.	English.	Mas.	Fem.	English.
<i>bas</i> ,	<i>basse</i> ,	low.	<i>gentil</i> ,	<i>gentille</i> ,	genteel.
<i>gras</i> ,	<i>grasse</i> ,	fat.	<i>gros</i> ,	<i>grosse</i> ,	big.
<i>las</i> ,	<i>lasse</i> ,	tired.	<i>sot</i> ,	<i>sotte</i> ,	silly.
<i>épais</i> ,	<i>épaisse</i> ,	thick.	<i>nul</i> ,	<i>nulle</i> ,	void.
<i>express</i> ,	<i>expresse</i> ,	express.	<i>bon</i> ,	<i>bonne</i> ,	good.

31. The five following adjectives have two masculines; the second masculine is used before nouns beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, from which the feminine is formed by doubling the last consonant before taking *e* unaccented:—

1st Mas.	2d Mas.	Fem.	English.
<i>beau</i> ,	<i>bel</i> ,	<i>belle</i> ,	fine.
<i>fou</i> ,	<i>fol</i> ,	<i>folle</i> ,	foolish.
<i>nouveau</i> ,	<i>nouvel</i> ,	<i>nouvelle</i> ,	new.
<i>mol</i> ,	<i>mol</i> ,	<i>molle</i> ,	soft.
<i>vieux</i> ,	<i>vieil</i> ,	<i>vieille</i> ,	old.

32. Some adjectives take an open accent over the penult *e*, instead of doubling the last consonant, according to rule 3d.

<i>complet</i> ,	<i>complète</i> ,	complete.	<i>secret</i> ,	<i>secrète</i> ,	secret.
<i>concret</i> ,	<i>concrète</i> ,	concrete.	<i>inquiet</i> ,	<i>inquiète</i> ,	uneasy.
<i>discret</i> ,	<i>discrète</i> ,	discreet.	<i>replet</i> ,	<i>replète</i> ,	replete.

33. Adjectives which form their feminine irregularly:—

Mas.	Fem.	English.	Mas.	Fem.	English.
<i>blanc</i> ,	<i>blanche</i> ,	white.	<i>favori</i> ,	<i>favorite</i> ,	favourite.
<i>franc</i> ,	<i>franche</i> ,	frank.	<i>malin</i> ,	<i>maligne</i> ,	cunning.
<i>sec</i> ,	<i>seche</i> ,	dry.	<i>bénin</i> ,	<i>bénigne</i> ,	benign.
<i>frais</i> ,	<i>fraiche</i> ,	fresh.	<i>doux</i> ,	<i>douce</i> ,	sweet.
<i>turc</i> ,	<i>turque</i> ,	Turkish.	<i>roux</i> ,	<i>rousse</i> ,	reddish.
<i>grec</i> ,	<i>greque</i> ,	Greek.	<i>faux</i> ,	<i>fausse</i> ,	false.
<i>public</i> ,	<i>publique</i> ,	public.	<i>jaloux</i> ,	<i>jalouse</i> ,	jealous.
<i>caduc</i> ,	<i>caduque</i> ,	decayed.	<i>tiers</i> ,	<i>tierce</i> ,	third.
<i>long</i> ,	<i>longue</i> ,	long.	<i>traître</i> ,	<i>traîtresse</i>	treacherous.

The adjective *tout*, all, makes feminine *toute*; masculine plural, *tous*; feminine plural, *toutes*.

34. The plural of adjectives is formed according to the following rules:—

FIRST, OR GENERAL RULE. Adjectives form their plural by the addition of an *s*; this rule is without an exception for the feminine, as, under whatever rule the feminine of adjectives is formed, they invariably end in *e* unaccented.

SECOND. Adjectives ending in *s* or *x*, take no sign for the plural, as *un ami heureux*, *des amis heureux*, happy friends; *un chien gras*, *des chiens gras*, fat dogs.

THIRD. Adjectives ending in *au* take *x* instead of *s*, as *un beau livre*, a fine book; *deux beaux livres*, two fine books.

FOURTH. Most adjectives ending in *al* change *al* into *aux*; as *un poids égal*, *des poids égaux*, equal weights.

35. Some adjectives ending in *al* never qualify masculine plural nouns, and in the feminine always take *s* according to 1st rule, masculine singular, *médicinal*; feminine singular, *médicinale*; feminine plural, *médicinales*; a few others take *s* in the masculine for the plural, as *des moments fatals*, fatal moments; *des vents glacials*, freezing winds; *des effets théatrails*, theatrical effects.*

Examination.

26. What is the adjective? 27. Has the adjective any gender? 28. What are the general rules for forming the gender of adjectives? 29. Are there any adjectives ending in *eur*, which form their fem. differently to rule 5th? 30. What other adjectives double their last consonant before taking *e*? 31. What adjectives have two masculines? 32. What adjectives take an open accent on the penult *e*, when feminine? 33. What adjectives form their feminine irregularly? 34. How are the plurals of adjectives formed? 35. Do all adjectives ending in *al* qualify masculine nouns?

* Custom denies to these words the sign of the plural; but as it is contrary to reason, we raise our humble voice against the absurdity.

DEGREES OF SIGNIFICATION.

36. There are three degrees of signification in adjectives, the positive, the comparative, and the superlative.

37. *First*, THE POSITIVE simply expresses the quality or manner of being of the noun, without comparison, as *J'ai une rose blanche*, I have a white rose.

38. *Second*, THE COMPARATIVE expresses the quality or state of being of the noun, by comparing it with another, either in a state of equality, superiority, or inferiority.

39. The *comparative* of equality is formed by putting *aussi*, as, before an adjective, and *autant de*, as much, before a noun, as,

*Amélie est aussi belle que
Julie,*

*Il a autant d'argent que
son frère,*

Amelia is as beautiful as
Julia.

He has as much money as
his brother.

40. The *comparative* of superiority is formed by putting *plus*, more, before the adjective, and *plus de* before the noun, as,

*La vertu est plus utile que
la science,*

*Elle a plus de bonté que
vous,*

Virtue is more useful than
science.

She has more goodness
than you.

41. The *comparative* of inferiority is formed by putting *moins*, less, before an adjective, and *moins de* before a noun, as,

*Ma maison est moins ab-
ritée que la vôtre,*

*Elle n'a pas tant de pati-
ence que son frère,*

My house is less sheltered
than yours.

She has less patience than
her brother.

42. The *comparative* of inferiority may also be formed by putting the verb in the negative, and using *si*, so, before the adjective, and *tant de*, so much, before the noun, as,

*Ma maison n'est pas si
abritée que la vôtre,*

*Elle n'a pas tant de pati-
ence que son frère,*

My house is not so sheltered
as yours.

She has not so much pa-
tience as her brother.

43. The only adjectives that express comparison of themselves, are,

<i>Meilleur</i> , better;	the comparative of <i>bon</i> , good.
<i>Moindre</i> , less;	the comparative of <i>petit</i> , little.
<i>Pire</i> , worse;	the comparative of <i>mauvais</i> , bad.

44. **Third, THE, SUPERLATIVE**, or third degree of signification, is the adjective expressing the quality or manner of being of the noun, in the highest or lowest degree, either with comparison, and called superlative relative, or without comparison, and called superlative absolute.

45. *The superlative relative* is formed by placing the article *le, la, les, &c.*, or the possessive pronoun *mon, ma, mes, &c.* before the comparatives of inferiority or superiority, as,

<i>le plus constant ami</i> ,	the most constant friend.
<i>le mieux calculé</i> ,	the best calculated.
<i>mon meilleur cheval</i> ,	my best horse.
<i>sa moindre faute</i> ,	his least fault.

46. *The superlative absolute* is formed by placing *fort, très-bien, extrêmement, &c.* before the adjective, as,

<i>Il est bien savant</i> ,	He is very learned.
<i>Il est extrêmement faible</i> ,	He is extremely weak.

47. The adjectives *bon, petit*, and *mauvais*, make,

Positive.		Comparative.		Superlative.	
<i>bon</i> ,	good.	<i>meilleur</i> ,	better.	<i>le meilleur</i> ,	the best.
<i>petit</i> ,	little.	<i>moindre</i> ,	less.	<i>le moindre</i> ,	the least.
<i>mauvais</i> ,	bad.	<i>pire</i> ,	worse.	<i>le pire</i> ,	the worst.

CORRESPONDING ADVERBS.

<i>bien</i> ,	well.	<i>mieux</i> ,	better.	<i>le mieux</i> ,	the best.
<i>peu</i> ,	little.	<i>moins</i> ,	less.	<i>le moins</i> ,	the least.
<i>mal</i> ,	badly.	<i>pis</i> ,	worse.	<i>le pis</i> ,	the worst.

Examination.

36. How many degrees of signification are there? 37. What does the positive express? 38. What does the comparative express? 39. How is the comparative of equality formed? 40. How is the comparative of superiority formed? 41. How is the comparative of inferiority formed? 42. Can it be formed otherwise? 43. What are the adjectives that express comparison of themselves? 44. What is the superlative? 45. How is the superlative relative formed? 46. How is the superlative absolute formed? 47. What does *bon, petit*, and *mauvais* make?

FOURTH.—THE PRONOUNS.

48. THE PRONOUN is used to avoid the repetition of a noun.

49. There are six kinds of pronouns: the personal, the possessive, the demonstrative, the relative, the absolute, and the indefinite.

1st.—PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

50. *Personal pronouns* are so called, because they seem to point out the three persons more particularly than any other pronouns.

51. There are three persons singular and plural:—1st, the person speaking; 2d, the person spoken to; 3d, the person spoken of.

52. Those that represent the subject of verbs, or first state, are,—

1st Person	2d Person	3d Person
sing. <i>Je</i> , I;	<i>tu</i> , thou;	<i>il</i> , he or it; <i>elle</i> , she or it.
plur. <i>nous</i> , we;	<i>vous</i> , you;	<i>ils</i> , mas., <i>elles</i> , fem., they.

53. Those that represent the direct objects, or fourth state, are,—

sing. <i>me</i> , me;	<i>te</i> , thee;	<i>le</i> , him or it; <i>la</i> , her or it.
plur. <i>nous</i> , us;	<i>vous</i> , you;	<i>les</i> , mas. or fem. them.

54. Those that are governed by *de*, of or from, or second state, are,—

sing. <i>de moi</i> , of me;	<i>de toi</i> , of thee;	<i>de lui</i> , of him or it; <i>d'elle</i> , of her or it.
plur. <i>de nous</i> , of us;	<i>de vous</i> , of you;	<i>d'eux</i> , or <i>d'elles</i> , of them.

55. Those that are governed by *à*, to or at, or third state, are,—

sing. <i>à moi</i> , to me;	<i>à toi</i> , to thee;	<i>à lui</i> , to him or it; <i>à elle</i> , to her or it.
plur. <i>à nous</i> , to us;	<i>à vous</i> , to you;	<i>à eux</i> , <i>à elles</i> , to them.

When coming before verbs, they are expressed by

sing. <i>me</i> , for <i>à moi</i> .	<i>te</i> , for <i>à toi</i> ;	<i>lui</i> for <i>à lui</i> , or <i>à elle</i> .
plur. <i>nous</i> , for <i>à nous</i> ;	<i>vous</i> , for <i>à vous</i> .	<i>leur</i> , for <i>à eux</i> .

56. Personal Pronouns, as objects of reflective verbs, 4th state, are,—

sing. <i>me</i> , myself;	<i>te</i> , thyself;	<i>se</i> , himself, herself itself.
plur. <i>nous</i> , ourselves;	<i>vous</i> , yourselves;	<i>se</i> , themselves, m. & f.

One*self*, *itself*, is rendered by *se* or *soi*; *soi* is always governed by a preposition.

en is always in the second state, and stands for *of him*, *of her*, *of it*, *of them*; *y* is always in the third state, and stands for *to him*, *to her*, *to it*, *to them*; they precede the verb except in the imperative, and generally refer to things, and sometimes to persons previously mentioned.

Examination.

48. What is the pronoun? 49. How many kinds of pronouns are there? 50. What are personal pronouns? 51. How many persons are there? 52. What are those that represent the subjects of verbs? 53. What are those that represent the direct objects? 54. What are those governed by *de*, *of* or *from*? 55. What are those governed by *à*, *to* or *at*? 56. What are those used as objects of reflective verbs?

2d.—POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

57. *Possessive pronouns* serve to denote possession or property of persons or things.

58. There are two kinds of possessive pronouns; the *adjective* possessive, which is always joined to nouns, and the *relative* possessive, which is never joined to nouns.

59. *Adjective possessive pronouns* agree in gender and number with the noun they precede. They are declined with *de*, *of* or *from*, for the 2d state; and *à*, *to* or *at*, for the 3d.

	Mas.	Fem.	Plur.	English.
1st pers. sing.	<i>mon</i> ,	<i>ma</i> ,	<i>mes</i> ,	my.
2d pers. sing.	<i>ton</i> ,	<i>ta</i> ,	<i>tes</i> ,	thy.
3d pers. sing.	<i>son</i> ,	<i>sa</i> ,	<i>ses</i> ,	his, her, or it
1st pers. plur.	<i>notre</i> ,	<i>notre</i> ,	<i>nos</i> ,	our.
2d pers. plur.	<i>votre</i> ,	<i>votre</i> ,	<i>vos</i> ,	your.
3d pers. plur.	<i>leur</i> ,	<i>leur</i> ,	<i>leurs</i> ,	their.

60. There is no elision in the possessive pronouns, but *mon*, *ton*, *son*, are used instead of *ma*, *ta*, *sa*; before feminine nouns beginning with a vowel, we say,

fem. *mon âme*, not *ma âme*, nor *m'âme*, my soul.

fem. *son avarice*, not *sa avarice*, nor *s'avarice*, his avarice

61. *His, her, or its*, is equally expressed by *son*, or *sa*, or *ses*, as these pronouns are made to agree with the person or thing possessed, and not with the person or thing possessing.

as,

mas. *son livre*—*his book, her book, or its book.*

fem. *sa maison*—*his house, her house, or its house.*

plur. *ses feuilles*—*his leaves, her leaves, or its leaves.*

62. *The relative possessive pronouns* are never joined to nouns, but agree in gender and number with some noun previously mentioned. They are always preceded by an article, and decline, in the 2d state, with *du, de la, des*; and in the 3d state, with *au, à la, aux*.

Sing.	Ma. sin.	Mas. plu.	Fem. sin.	Fem. plu.	Eng.
1st pers.	<i>le mien</i> ,	<i>les miens</i> ,	<i>la mienne</i> ,	<i>les miennes</i> ,	mine.
2d pers.	<i>le tien</i> ,	<i>les tiens</i> ,	<i>la tienne</i> ,	<i>les tiennes</i> ,	thine.
3d pers.	<i>le sien</i> ,	<i>les siens</i> ,	<i>la sienne</i> ,	<i>les siennes</i> ,	his, hers,
Plur.					or its.
1st pers.	<i>le nôtre</i> ,	<i>les nôtres</i> ,	<i>la nôtre</i> ,	<i>les nôtres</i> ,	ours.
2d pers.	<i>le vôtre</i> ,	<i>les vôtres</i> ,	<i>la vôtre</i> ,	<i>les vôtres</i> ,	yours.
3d pers.	<i>le leur</i> ,	<i>les leurs</i> ,	<i>la leur</i> ,	<i>les leurs</i> ,	theirs.

Examination.

57. What are possessive pronouns? 58. How many kinds of possessive pronouns are there? 59. What do the adjective possessive pronouns agree with? 60. Is there any elision in the possessive pronoun? 61. How do you express *his, her, its*? 62. What are the relative possessive pronouns?

3D.—DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

63. *Demonstrative pronouns* serve to demonstrate in a precise manner the person or thing spoken of; they are divided into *adjective* and *relative* demonstrative pronouns.

64. *Adjective demonstrative pronouns* agree in gender and number with the noun before which they are always placed.

mas. *ce*, fem. *cette*, this, that. | mas. and fem. pl. *ces*, these, those.

Cet is used instead of *ce* before a vowel or *h* mute, as,

mas. *cet âne*, not *ce âne*, nor *c'âne*, this or that ass.

They are declined with *de*, of or from; and *à*, to or at.

65. *Relative demonstrative pronouns* are never placed before nouns, but relate to persons or things previously mentioned or understood, with which they agree in gender and number.

Sing. Mas.	Fem.	English.	Pl. Mas.	Fem.	English.
<i>celui</i> ,	<i>celle</i> ,	this or that.	<i>ceux</i> ,	<i>celles</i> ,	these or those.

to which *ci*, here, is added, to point out the nearest object.

celui-ci, *celle-ci*, | this (here). || *ceux-ci*, *celles-ci*, | these (here).
and to which *là*, there, is added, to point out the farthest object.

celui-là, *celle-là*, | that (there). || *ceux-là*, *celles-là*, | those (there).

To point out an object not previously mentioned, use,

ceci, | this (here). || *celà*, that (there).

They are declined with *de*, of or from; and *à*, to or at.

Examination.

63. What are demonstrative pronouns? 64. What does the adjective demonstrative pronoun agree with? 65. What are the relative demonstrative pronouns?

4TH.—RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

66. *Relative pronouns* serve to represent nouns or pronouns previously mentioned, called antecedent, whose gender and number they assume without the usual signs; they are,

1st state.	<i>qui</i> ,	} of both genders and numbers.
2d state.	<i>de qui</i> , <i>dont</i> ,	
3d state.	<i>à qui</i> ,	
4th state.	<i>que</i> ,	
		who, which, or that.
		whose, of or from whom.
		to whom, to which.
		whom, which, or that.

67. *Lequel*, who, which, or that, can only relate to the third person.

State.	Mas. sin.	Fem. sing.	Mas. Plu.	Fem. Plu.	English.
1st,	<i>lequel</i> ,	<i>laquelle</i> ,	<i>lesquels</i> ,	<i>lesquelles</i> ,	which.
2d,	<i>duquel</i> ,	<i>de laquelle</i> ,	<i>desquels</i> ,	<i>desquelles</i> ,	of which.
3d,	<i>auquel</i> ,	<i>à laquelle</i> ,	<i>auxquels</i> ,	<i>auxquelles</i> ,	to which.

Examination.

66. What are relative pronouns? 67. To what does *lequel*, which, relate?

5TH.—ABSOLUTE PRONOUNS.

68. *Absolute pronouns* are generally used in interrogative phrases, and have no specified antecedent; they are,

Speaking of persons.		Speaking of things.	
1st state.	<i>qui</i> ?	<i>que</i> ?	what?
2d state.	<i>de qui</i> ?	<i>de quoi</i> ?	of or from what?
3d state.	<i>à qui</i> ?	<i>à quoi</i> ?	to what?
4th state.	<i>qui</i> ?	<i>que</i> ?	what?

They never precede a noun, as, *que dites vous?* what do you say? *de quoi parlez vous?* what are you speaking of?

69. *Quel*, what, is the only absolute pronoun that can precede a noun; it makes,

State.	Mas. sin.	Fem. sin.	Mas. plu.	Fem. plu.	English.
1st,	<i>quel</i> ,	<i>quelle</i> ,	<i>quels</i> ,	<i>quelles</i> ,	what?
2d,	<i>de quel</i> ,	<i>de quelle</i> ,	<i>de quels</i> ,	<i>de quelles</i> ,	of what?
3d,	<i>à quel</i> ,	<i>à quelle</i> ,	<i>à quels</i> ,	<i>à quelles</i> ,	to what?

Place *enfant*, child, after the first two columns, and *enfants*, children, after the last two, and you will have the whole declension.

Quel is also used for who or what, before the verb *être*, in reference to a noun following, as,

quelle (or *qui*) *est cette dame*? who is that lady?

quelle (not *qui*) *est la raison*? what is the reason?

70. *Lequel*, *laquelle*, &c., declined as above, 67, with *du*, *de la*, *des*, or *au*, *à la*, *aux*, is used when asking the distinction of a person or thing from a number, as, *lequel des deux voulez-vous*? which of the two will you have?

6TH.—INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

71. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS are so called because they relate to persons or things in a vague and indeterminate sense; they are sometimes joined to nouns, and sometimes not, as,

<i>on dit qu'il est pauvre</i> ,	people say he is poor.
<i>chaque maletot reçut un écu</i> ,	each sailor received a crown.

Examination.

68. What are absolute pronouns? 69. What does *quel*, what, precede? 70. What is *lequel*, *laquelle*, &c.? 71. What are indefinite pronouns?

FIFTH.—THE VERB.

72. THE VERB is principally used to affirm the existence of a subject, as, *Je suis*, I am; or its action, as, *Je marche*, I walk; or its state, as, *il dort*, he sleeps.

73. There are two kinds of verbs, the substantive and the adjective verb; there is but one substantive verb, *être*, to be; and three adjective verbs, the active, neuter, and unipersonal.

74. *The active verb* expresses an action done by a subject, on a person or thing called the object; as, *J'aime mon père*, I love my father; *je* or *j'* is the subject or actor; *aime*, love, the active verb, or act; and *père*, father, the object or sufferer of the act.

75. The active verb always produces the passive state or voice, which is expressed by adding the parti. past of the active verb to any of the tenses of the verb *être*; thus the active verb *J'aime mon père*, I love my father; produces the passive state *mon père est aimé de moi*, my father is loved by me.

Every active verb, except *avoir*, has its passive sense, and every passive sense its active verb.

76. The active verb is called *reflective*, when it expresses an action done by the subject on itself, which becomes the object, and is conjugated with two pronouns, or a noun and pronoun of the same person and number,* as *Je me blesse*, I hurt myself; *Je*, I, is the subject; *me*, myself, the object; and *blesse*, hurt, the reflective verb.

The compound tenses of reflective verbs are conjugated with *être*, to be, as, *Je me suis blessé*, I have hurt myself.

77. The neuter verb expresses a state, as, *Je dors*, I sleep; or an action centered within itself, as, *Je nage*, I swim; it cannot, like the active verb, have a direct object, but it can have an indirect object, governed by a preposition, as, *il vient de la campagne*, he comes from the country; *il*, he, is the subject, *vient*, comes, the neuter verb, and *campagne*, country, the indirect object, governed by the preposition *de*, from.

78. The *unipersonal verb* is conjugated with the third person only, as *il faut*, it is necessary; *il pleut*, it rains.

79. The verbs *avoir*, to have; and *être*, to be; when used with a participle past, serve to form the compound tenses of other verbs, and are called auxiliary verbs, as, *J'ai parlé*, I have spoken; *Je suis allé*, I am gone; *être* is also used to produce the passive state of the active verbs (See 72); but when these verbs are not accompanied by a participle past, the verb *avoir* is called an active verb, as, *J'ai de l'argent*, I have money; and the verb *être*, a substantive verb, as *Je suis sincère*, I am sincere.

Examination.

72. What is a verb? 73. How many kinds of verbs are there? 74. What does the active verb express? 75. What does the active verb produce? 76. When is the active verb called reflective? 77. What does the neuter verb express? 78. What is the unipersonal verb? 79. What are the verbs *avoir*, to have, and *être*, to be?

* The infinitive having no subject, is conjugated with only one pronoun being the object, and in the first and second person of the imperative, the subject is understood. (See conjugation.)

SIXTH.—THE ADVERB.

80. AN ADVERB is an indeclinable word added to verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs, to modify their signification. When I say *Je parle*, I speak; I simply express an act; but if I want to express the manner in which I speak, I must use an adverb, as, *Je parle distinctement*, I speak distinctly; and if I want to point out the manner in which I speak in a higher degree, I must use another adverb, as, *Je parle très-distinctement*, I speak very distinctly.

81. Adverbs of manner have, like adjectives, three degrees of signification, the positive, the comparative, and the superlative, formed in the same manner, as,

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>Je parle distinctement.</i>	<i>Je parle (as) aussi distinctement.</i>	<i>Je parle très-distinctement.</i>
I speak distinctly.	(more) <i>plus distinctement.</i>	I speak very distinctly.
	(less) <i>moins distinctement.</i>	

bien, mal, and peu, form their degrees differently. (See page 36.)

Examination.

80. What is an adverb? 81. Have adverbs of manner any degrees of signification?

SEVENTH.—THE PREPOSITION.

82. A PREPOSITION is an indeclinable word placed between words or expressions to connect them, and to show the relation that exists between them; it attributes to the first an imperfect sense made complete by the second, by means of the preposition, as, *Je viens de la campagne*, I come from the country; *Je viens* forms an incomplete sense, until the preposition *de* connects it with *campagne*, which is governed by the preposition *de*.

Examination.

82. What is a preposition?

EIGHTH.—THE CONJUNCTION.

83. A CONJUNCTION is an indeclinable word, used to unite words and sentences, as, *et*, in *du pain et du fromage*, bread and cheese.

Examination.

83. What is a conjunction?

NINTH.—THE INTERJECTION.

84. AN INTERJECTION is a particle or word produced by an emotion of the soul, as, *ah! bon!* expressive of surprise or fear, as, *ah! que je suis content*, ah! how glad I am; *ha! prenez garde*, ha! take care.

Examination.

84. What is an interjection?

GRAMMATICAL ANALYSIS.

As it is essentially necessary that the pupil should be able to distinguish easily between each of the nine parts of speech, and analyse freely any given sentence, we subjoin directions, classed under each part of speech, which may be referred to when the teacher considers his pupil able to begin parsing, without which it is *impossible* to write or speak the French language correctly.

For the key to the abbreviations used in the following table, see the end of the preface.

DIRECTIONS FOR PARSING.

FIRST.—THE ARTICLE.

1st, State whether simple or compound. 2d, Gender and number, and noun it agrees with. 3d, When compound, name the article and the preposition it is compounded of, what the preposition governs, and in what state.

Examples.

La porte du jardin, the door of the garden.

<i>La,</i>	a sim. art. fem. sing. agreeing with <i>porte</i> .
<i>du,</i>	a comp. art. mas. sing. agreeing with <i>jardin</i> , compounded of <i>de</i> and <i>le</i> , the prep. <i>de</i> governing <i>jardin</i> in the second state.

Aux arbres des forêts, to the trees of the forest.

<i>Aux,</i>	a comp. art. mas. plu. agreeing with <i>arbres</i> , compounded of <i>à</i> and <i>les</i> , <i>à</i> governing <i>arbres</i> in the second state.
<i>des,</i>	a comp. art. fem. plu. agreeing with <i>forêts</i> , compounded of <i>de</i> and <i>les</i> , <i>de</i> governing <i>forêts</i> in the second state.

SECOND.—THE NOUN.

, State whether common, proper, or abstract; its gender and number; if proper, of what or of whom it is the name. Whether subject, object, or apostrophe. 3d, If governed, what, and in what state.

Examples.

erre commandait l'armée, Peter commanded the army.

re, | a prop. no. name of an Emperor, subject of the verb *commandait*.

e, | a coll. com. no. fem. sing. direct obj. of *commandait*.

J'ai une montre d'or, I have a gold watch.

re, | a com. no. fem. sing. direct obj. of *ai*.

| a com. no. mas. sing. governed by *de* in the second state.

THIRD.—THE ADJECTIVE.

t, Name the gender and number, and what it agrees with. If mas. name its fem.; if fem. name its mas. 3d, If plural, how formed; its degree, how formed.

Examples.

t, *Une belle dame*, a fine lady; 2d, *un homme heureux*, happy man; 3d, *de bons écoliers*, good scholars.

lle, | an adj. fem. sing. agreeing with *dame*, pos. deg. mas. *beau*, *bel*.—See rule 6.

oureux, | an adj. mas. sing. agreeing with *homme*, pos. deg. fem. *heureuse*.—See rule 5.

ns, | adj. m. p. agreeing with *écoliers*, pl. formed by adding *s*; fem. *bonne*.—See rule 6.

FOURTH.—THE PRONOUN.

t, State what kind. 2d, If personal, state what person and number; for whom or for what it stands. 3d, If object, of what. 4th, If object direct, of what; if indirect, what it is governed. 5th, If demonstrative, state gender and number; with what it agrees, and in what state. 6th, If possessive, what person and number, what gender and number, the noun it agrees with. 7th, If relative, its gender, number and antecedent, whether subject or obj. dir. or indir.

Examples.

Je vous le donne, I give it to you.

<i>Je</i> ,	a pers. pro. 1st pers. sing., person speaking, subj. of the v. <i>donne</i> .
<i>vous</i> ,	pers. pro. 2d pers. plu., person spoken to, governed by prep. <i>à</i> understood, dir. obj. of the v. <i>donne</i> .
<i>le</i> ,	per. pro. mas. 3d pers. sing., person spoken of, direct object of the v. <i>donne</i> .

Ce garçon a votre livre et le mien, that boy has your book and mine.

<i>ce</i> ,	a dem. pro. m. s. agreeing with <i>garçon</i> , 1st state.
<i>votre</i> ,	an ad. poss. pro. 2d pers. plu. and mas. sing. agreeing with <i>livre</i> , 4th state.
<i>le mien</i> ,	a rela. poss. pro. 1st p. s. and m. s. agreeing with its antecedent <i>livre</i> , dir. obj. of the v. <i>a</i> .

1. *L'homme qui vous parle est Anglais*, the man who is speaking to you is an Englishman. 2. *La montre que j'ai achetée*, the watch which I have bought. 3. *La maison dont je vous ai parlé*, the house I spoke to you of.

1. <i>qui</i> ,	rel. pro. mas. sing. agreeing with its antecedent <i>homme</i> , subj. of the v. <i>est</i> .
2. <i>que</i> ,	rel. pro. fem. sing. agreeing with its antecedent <i>montre</i> , direct obj. of the v. <i>est</i> .
3. <i>dont</i> ,	a comp. rel. pro. standing for <i>de laquelle</i> fem. sing. agreeing with its antec. <i>maison</i> , governed by <i>de</i> , 2d state.

1. *Qui parle?* who speaks? 2. *Que dites vous?* what do you say?

1. <i>qui</i> ,	absolute pro. marks interrogation of person.
2. <i>que</i> ,	absolute pro. marks interrogation of things.

On parle de vous, they speak of you.

on | ind. pro. 3d pers. sing. subj. of the v. *parle*, always sing.

FIFTH.—THE VERB.

1st, State person, number, tense, and mood. 2d, Whether substantive, active, neuter, reflective, or unipersonal. 3d, Name pres. infin., partic. pres., and past. 4th, State the subject it agrees with, whether expressed or understood. 5th,

Name its object, if any, and whether direct or indirect. 6th, If a comp. tense, state if the participle be declinable, the reason, and with what it agrees.

Examples.

1. *Il conduit les soldats à la victoire*, he leads the soldiers to victory. 2. *Je viens de la campagne*, I come from the country. 3. *Vous vous défendrez*, you will defend yourself. 4. *Cette affaire est arrangée*, this business is settled. 5. *Il pleut tous les jours*, it rains every day.

1. <i>conduit</i> ,	3d p. s. pres. ind. act. v. <i>conduire</i> , <i>conduisant</i> , <i>conduit</i> , agre. with its subj. <i>il</i> , standing for <i>Turenne</i> , having <i>soldats</i> for dir. obj. and <i>victoire</i> for indir. obj.
2. <i>viens</i> ,	1st pers. s. pres. ind. of the neuter v. <i>venir</i> , <i>venant</i> , <i>venu</i> , agre. with its subj. <i>je</i> , and having <i>campagne</i> for its dir. obj.
3. <i>défendrez</i> ,	2d pers. plu. fut. ind. of the reflex. v. <i>se défendre</i> , <i>se défendant</i> , <i>défendu</i> , agre. with its subj. <i>vous</i> , and having <i>vous</i> for its dir. obj.
4. <i>est arrangée</i> ,	3d pers. sing. comp. pres. ind. of the act. v. <i>arranger</i> , <i>arrangeant</i> , <i>arrangé</i> , agre. with its subj. <i>affaire</i> , used in a passive sense, part. past agre. with subj. of v.
5. <i>pleut</i> ,	3d pers. sing. pres. ind. uni. v. <i>pleuvoir</i> , <i>pleuvant</i> , <i>plu</i> , agre. with its subj. <i>il</i> , standing for <i>cela</i> , <i>le nuage pleut</i> .

SIXTH.—THE ADVERB.

1st, State what kind, simple or compound; what it modifies.

Examples.

1. *Elle parle trop souvent*, she speaks too often. 2. *Votre sœur est très-jolie*, your sister is very handsome.

1. <i>trop souvent</i> ,	a comp. adv. of time, modifying the v. <i>parle</i> .
2. <i>très</i> ,	adv. of comp. modifying adj. <i>jolie</i> , sup. deg.

SEVENTH.—THE PREPOSITION.

1st, State the relation it expresses. 2d, What it governs and in what state.

Examples.

1. *Le couteau de Jean*, the knife of John. 2. *Il demeure à la campagne*, he lives in the country. 3. *Il l'a fait par charité*, he did it through charity.

- | | |
|------------------|---|
| 1. <i>de</i> , | prep. marking possession, governing <i>Jean</i> , 2d state |
| 2. <i>à</i> , | prep. marking residence, govern. <i>campagne</i> , 3d state |
| 3. <i>pour</i> , | prep. marking motive, governing <i>charité</i> , 4th state |

EIGHTH.—THE CONJUNCTION.

1st, Simple or compound; what kind; what it unites.

Examples.

1. *Il pleure et il rit*, he weeps and he laughs. 2. *Je suis pauvre, mais je ne suis pas triste*, I am poor, but I am not sad. 3. *Soyez économes afin que vous puissiez payer vos dettes*, be economical that you may pay your debts.

- | | |
|----------------------|--|
| 1. <i>et</i> , | a conjunction, uniting <i>pleure</i> and <i>rit</i> . |
| 2. <i>mais</i> , | an adversative conjunction, marking opposition between the affirmative and negative. |
| 3. <i>afin que</i> , | a causative comp. conjun., marking the motive for being economical. |

NINTH.—THE INTERJECTION.

1st, State the sensation supposed to have produced it.

Examples.

1. *Ah! que cela est beau*, ha! how beautiful that is.
 2. *He! que je suis misérable*, oh! how wretched I am.

- | | |
|---------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>ah!</i> | an inter. expressive of admiration. |
| 2. <i>he!</i> | an inter. expressive of grief. |

MODEL OF WRITING AN ANALYSIS.

étude et les connaissances propre à former l'esprit
 study and the knowledge proper to form the mind
cœur, doivent occuper, avant tout les jeunes
 heart, ought to occupy, before all things, the young
elles. L'ignorance est également honteuse et funeste
 Ignorance is equally shameful and fatal

us.

ll.

- stands for *la*, a simple art. f. s. agreeing with *étude*, 1st state (i. 4, introd. ch.)
 abst. no. f. s. subj. of the v. *doivent* (i. 16.)
 conj. uniting two nouns, 1st state.
 sim. art. f. plu. agreeing with *connaissance*, 1st state.
ances, abs. no. f. plu. subj. of the v. *doivent* (i. 16.)
 s, adj. f. plu. agreeing with *connaissances*, 1st state, same both genders, *s* for plu. (i. 27.)
 prep. marking specification, governing *former*, inf.
 , pres. inf. act. v. *former*, *formant*, *formé*, governed by the prep. *à*, having *esprit* and *cœur* for dir. objects.
 for *le*, a simple art. m. s. agreeing with *esprit*, 4th state (i. 4.)
 abst. no. m. s. dir. obj. of *former* (i. 16.)
 conj. uniting two nouns, 4th state (i. 83.)
 simple art. m. s. agreeing with *cœur*, 4th state (i. 2.)
 com. no. m. s. dir. obj. of *former* (i. 15.)
 , 3d pers. plu. pres. ind. of the act. v. *devoir*, *devant*, *dû*, agreeing with its subj. *étude* and *connaissances*, governing *occuper* in the inf.*
 r, pres. inf. of the act. v. *occuper*, *occupant*, *occupé*, governed by the v. *doivent* in the inf. and having *demoiselles* for its direct object.
 a prep. indicating order, governing *tout*, in the 4th state (i. 82.)

* One verb governs another in the infinitive.

<i>tout,</i>	col. no. mas. sin. standing for <i>toutes choses</i> , governed by the prep. <i>avant</i> (i. 33.)
<i>les,</i>	simple art. fem. plu. agreeing with <i>demoiselles</i> , in the 4th state (i. 2.)
<i>jeunes,</i>	adj. f. plu. positive deg. agreeing with <i>demoiselles</i> , in the 4th state, alike in both genders; <i>s</i> for the plu.; repeat the degrees (i. 27—37.)
<i>demoiselles,</i> <i>L',</i>	com. no. f. pl. dir. obj. of <i>occuper</i> (i. 14.) for <i>la</i> , sim. art. f. s. agreeing with <i>ignorance</i> , 1st state (i. 4.)
<i>ignorance,</i> <i>est,</i>	abst. no. fem. sing. subject of <i>est</i> (i. 16.) 3d pers. sing. pres. ind. of the substantive <i>v. être, étant, été</i> , agreeing with its subj. <i>ignorance</i> .
<i>également,</i>	adv. of manner, modifying <i>honteuse</i> and <i>funeste</i> .
<i>honteuse,</i>	adj. f. s. pos. deg. agreeing with <i>ignorance</i> , 1st state; mas. <i>honteux</i> ; repeat the rule and degree (i. 28—36.)
<i>et,</i>	conj. uniting two adjectives in the 1st state.
<i>funeste,</i>	adj. fem. sin. pos. deg. agreeing with <i>ignorance</i> , in the 1st state, alike in both genders (i. 28—36.)
<i>pour,</i>	prep. marking destination, governing <i>tous</i> , 4th state.
<i>tous,</i>	col. no. mas. plu. standing for <i>toutes les personnes</i> , governed by the prep. <i>pour</i> , 4th state (i. 33.)

OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES OF NUMBER.

Cardinal numbers denote a certain number of persons or things; ordinal numbers point out the order in which they exist.

CARDINAL NUMBERS.

<i>Un, Une, f.</i>	1	<i>Six</i> (siss),	6
<i>Deux,</i>	2	<i>Sept</i> (set),	7
<i>Trois,</i>	3	<i>Huit</i> (weet, short),	8
<i>Quatre,</i>	4	<i>Neuf,</i>	9
<i>Cinq,</i>	5	<i>Dix</i> (diss),	10

<i>Onze</i> ,.....	11	<i>Soixante-onze</i> ,.....	71
<i>Douze</i> ,.....	12	<i>Soixante-douze</i> ,.....	72
<i>Treize</i> ,.....	13	<i>Soixante-treize</i> ,.....	73
<i>Quatorze</i> ,.....	14	<i>Soixante-quatorze</i> ,.....	74
<i>Quinze</i> ,.....	15	<i>Soixante-quinze</i> ,.....	75
<i>Seize</i> ,.....	16	<i>Soixante-seize</i> ,.....	76
<i>Dix-sept</i> (diss-sett),.....	17	<i>Soixante-dix-sept</i> ,.....	77
<i>Dix-huit</i> (diss-huite),.....	18	<i>Soixante-dix-huit</i> ,.....	78
<i>Dix-neuf</i> , (diss-neufe)....	19	<i>Soixante-dix-neuf</i> ,.....	79
<i>Vingt</i> (vin),.....	20	<i>Quatre-vingts</i> (vin),.....	80
<i>Vingt-et-un</i> (vinté-un),... 21		<i>Quatre-vingt-un</i> ,.....	81
<i>Vingt-deux</i> (vinte),.....	22	<i>Quatre-vingt-deux</i> ,.....	82
<i>Vingt-trois</i> , (vinte),.....	23	<i>Quatre-vingt-dix</i> ,.....	90
<i>Vingt-quatre</i> (vinte),.....	24	<i>Quatre-vingt-onze</i> ,.....	91
<i>Vingt-cinq</i> , (vinte),.....	25	<i>Quatre-vingt-douze</i> ,.....	92
<i>Vingt-six</i> , (vinte),.....	26	<i>Quatre-vingt-treize</i> ,.....	93
<i>Vingt-sept</i> , (vinte),.....	27	<i>Quatre-vingt-quatorze</i> ,... 94	
<i>Vingt-huit</i> , (vinte),.....	28	<i>Quatre-vingt-quinze</i> ,.....	95
<i>Vingt-neuf</i> (vinte),.....	29	<i>Quatre-vingt-seize</i> ,.....	96
<i>Trente</i> ,.....	30	<i>Quatre-vingt-dix-sept</i> ,... 97	
<i>Trente-et-un</i> ,.....	31	<i>Quatre-vingt-dix-huit</i> ,... 98	
<i>Trente-deux</i> , &c.....	32	<i>Quatre-vingt-dix-neuf</i> ,... 99	
<i>Quarante</i> ,.....	40	<i>Cent</i> ,.....	100
<i>Quarante-et-un</i> ,.....	41	<i>Cent-cinquante</i> ,.....	150
<i>Quarante-deux</i> , &c.....	42	<i>Deux cents</i> ,.....	200
<i>Cinquante</i> ,.....	50	<i>Deux-cent-trente</i> ,.....	230
<i>Cinquante-et-un</i> ,.....	51	<i>Trois cents</i> ,.....	300
<i>Cinquante-deux</i> ,.....	52	<i>Mille</i> ,.....	1000
<i>Soixante</i> ,.....	60	<i>Mille-deux-cent-trois</i> ,... 1203	
<i>Soixante-et-un</i> ,.....	61	<i>Deux mille</i> ,.....	2000
<i>Soixante-deux</i> ,.....	62	<i>Deux-mille-cent</i> ,.....	2100
<i>Soixante-dix</i> ,.....	70	<i>Un million</i> ,.....	1,000,000

ORDINAL NUMBERS.

Ordinal numbers, except *premier* and *second*, are formed from the cardinal numbers, by changing the final *e*, when it occurs, into *ième*, and by adding *ième* to those which end in a consonant; the *f* in *neuf*, nine, and *dix-neuf*, nineteen, is changed into *vième*; *cing* takes *u* before *ième*, as *cinquième*, fifth.

<i>Premier</i> , fem. <i>ière</i> ,.....	1st	<i>Quatrième</i> ,.....	4th
<i>Second</i> , fem. <i>e</i> (segond),	2d	<i>Cinquième</i> ,.....	5th
<i>Troisième</i> (troizième), ..	3d	<i>Sixième</i> ,.....	6th

<i>Septième</i> ,.....	7th	<i>Dix-neuvième</i> ,.....
<i>Huitième</i> ,.....	8th	<i>Vingtième</i> ,.....
<i>Neuvième</i> ,.....	9th	<i>Vingt-et-unième</i> ,.....
<i>Dixième</i> ,.....	10th	<i>Vingt-deuxième</i> ,.....
<i>Onzième</i> ,.....	11th	<i>Vingt-troisième</i> ,.....
<i>Douzième</i> ,.....	12th	<i>Trentième</i> ,.....
<i>Treizième</i> ,.....	13th	<i>Trente-et-unième</i> ,.....
<i>Quatorzième</i> ,.....	14th	<i>Trente-deuxième</i> ,.....
<i>Quinzième</i> ,.....	15th	<i>Trente-troisième</i> ,.....
<i>Seizième</i> ,.....	16th	<i>Quarantième</i> ,.....
<i>Dix-septième</i> ,.....	17th	<i>Quarante-et-unième</i> ,...
<i>Dix-huitième</i> ,.....	18th	<i>Quarante-deuxième</i> ,...

In compound numbers use *unième* and *deuxième*, as *premier*, *second*, as, *vingt-et-unième*, *vingt-deuxième*.

The word *time*, used with cardinal and ordinary numbers is rendered in French by *fois*, and not by *tems*, as,

Cardinals of Repetition.		Ordinals of Repetition.	
<i>Une fois</i> ,	once.	<i>La première fois</i> ,	the first time
<i>Deux fois</i> ,	twice.	<i>La seconde fois</i> ,	the second
<i>Trois fois</i> ,	three times.	<i>La troisième</i> ,	the third
<i>Quatre fois</i> ,	four times.	<i>La quatrième fois</i> ,	the fourth
<i>Cinq fois</i> ,	five times.	<i>La cinquième fois</i> ,	the fifth time
<i>Six fois</i> ,	six times.	<i>La sixième fois</i> ,	the sixth time

Numeral adverbs are formed by adding *ment* to the numbers, and *ement* to *premier* and *second*.

<i>Premièrement</i> ,	at first.	<i>Quatrièmement</i> ,	fourthly.
<i>Secondement</i> ,	secondly.	<i>Cinquièmement</i> ,	fifthly.
<i>Troisièmement</i> ,	thirdly.	<i>Sixièmement</i> ,	sixthly.

Collective nouns of numbers express by one term the collection of a certain number of things, as,

<i>Une demi-douzaine</i> ,.....	half a dozen.
<i>Une huitaine</i> ,.....	eight in number.
<i>Une neuwaine</i> ,.....	nine in number.
<i>Une dizaine</i> ,.....	half a score.
<i>Une douzaine</i> ,.....	a dozen.
<i>Une quinzaine</i> ,.....	fifteen in number.
<i>Une vingtaine</i> ,.....	a score.
<i>Une trentaine</i> ,.....	a score and a half.
<i>Une quarantaine</i> ,.....	two score.
<i>Une cinquantaine</i> ,.....	two score and a half.
<i>Une soixantaine</i> ,.....	three score.

<i>Une centaine</i> ,.....		a hundred.
<i>Une grosse</i> ,.....		a gross.
<i>Un millier</i> ,.....		a thousand in number.
<i>Un million</i> ,		a million in number.

Partitive nouns point out the distributive parts of a whole, as,

<i>La moitié</i> ,	the half.		<i>Le tiers</i> ,	the third part.
<i>Le quart</i> ,	the quarter.		<i>Le cinquième</i> ,	the fifth part.

The proportionable nouns point out the progressive increase in the number of things, as,

<i>Le double</i> ,	the double.		<i>Le quadruple</i> ,	the quadruple.
<i>Le triple</i> ,	the triple.		<i>Le décuple, &c.</i>	tenfold, &c.

TABLE DE MULTIPLICATION.

2 Fois— 1 font 2	3 Fois— 1 font 3	4 Fois— 1 font 4	5 Fois— 1 font 5	6 Fois— 1 font 6	7 Fois— 1 font 7
2 ~ 4	2 ~ 6	2 ~ 8	2 ~ 10	2 ~ 12	2 ~ 14
3 ~ 6	3 ~ 9	3 ~ 12	3 ~ 15	3 ~ 18	3 ~ 21
4 ~ 8	4 ~ 12	4 ~ 16	4 ~ 20	4 ~ 24	4 ~ 28
5 ~ 10	5 ~ 15	5 ~ 20	5 ~ 25	5 ~ 30	5 ~ 35
6 ~ 12	6 ~ 18	6 ~ 24	6 ~ 30	6 ~ 36	6 ~ 42
7 ~ 14	7 ~ 21	7 ~ 28	7 ~ 35	7 ~ 42	7 ~ 49
8 ~ 16	8 ~ 24	8 ~ 32	8 ~ 40	8 ~ 48	8 ~ 56
9 ~ 18	9 ~ 27	9 ~ 36	9 ~ 45	9 ~ 54	9 ~ 63
10 ~ 20	10 ~ 30	10 ~ 40	10 ~ 50	10 ~ 60	10 ~ 70
11 ~ 22	11 ~ 33	11 ~ 44	11 ~ 55	11 ~ 66	11 ~ 77
12 ~ 24	12 ~ 36	12 ~ 48	12 ~ 60	12 ~ 72	12 ~ 84
13 ~ 26	13 ~ 39	13 ~ 52	13 ~ 65	13 ~ 78	13 ~ 91

8 Fois— 1 font 8	9 Fois— 1 font 9	10 Fois— 1 font 10	11 Fois— 1 font 11	12 Fois— 1 font 12	13 Fois— 1 font 13
2 ~ 16	2 ~ 18	2 ~ 20	2 ~ 22	2 ~ 24	2 ~ 26
3 ~ 24	3 ~ 27	3 ~ 30	3 ~ 33	3 ~ 36	3 ~ 39
4 ~ 32	4 ~ 36	4 ~ 40	4 ~ 44	4 ~ 48	4 ~ 52
5 ~ 40	5 ~ 45	5 ~ 50	5 ~ 55	5 ~ 60	5 ~ 65
6 ~ 48	6 ~ 54	6 ~ 60	6 ~ 66	6 ~ 72	6 ~ 78
7 ~ 56	7 ~ 63	7 ~ 70	7 ~ 77	7 ~ 84	7 ~ 91
8 ~ 64	8 ~ 72	8 ~ 80	8 ~ 88	8 ~ 96	8 ~ 104
9 ~ 72	9 ~ 81	9 ~ 90	9 ~ 99	9 ~ 108	9 ~ 117
10 ~ 80	10 ~ 90	10 ~ 100	10 ~ 110	10 ~ 120	10 ~ 130
11 ~ 88	11 ~ 99	11 ~ 110	11 ~ 121	11 ~ 132	11 ~ 143
12 ~ 96	12 ~ 108	12 ~ 120	12 ~ 132	12 ~ 144	12 ~ 156
13 ~ 104	13 ~ 117	13 ~ 130	13 ~ 143	13 ~ 156	13 ~ 169

As numbers occur in almost every topic of conversation, a perfect knowledge of them is indispensable; and this table, when committed to memory, is considered as best calculated to rivet them on the mind.

Part Third.

ELEMENTARY EXERCISES ON THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF SPEECH.

EXPLANATION OF THE MARKS USED IN THE FOLLOWING EXERCISES.

1. The dots indicate that the words, or parts of words, under which they are placed, are the same in both languages.

2. When one or several words are in Italics, sometimes divided by other words, it denotes that they are expressed by the French word or words placed under them, subject to such changes as the sense requires.

3. Two dots before an *h* point out that the *h* is mute.

4. The small figures in the English line show the order of the words in French.

5. A caret ^ points out where any additional word is to be placed.

6. A stroke — under any English word, implies that it is to be omitted in French.

7. The small capitals, which occasionally attend a verb in the exercises, refer to the tenses so marked in the conjugations.

8. The figures preceded by an *e* point out the number of the exercise, where the same word has occurred before in French, thus, *e*⁶ signifies exercise 6th. The figures preceded by an *r* refer to the rules in the exercises, as *r*⁶ signifies rule 6th; and the figures preceded by an *i*, as *i*⁶, refer to the rules in the introductory chapter.

9. *m.* masculine; *f.* feminine; *pl.* plural; *art.* article.

The figures in Egyptian, at the top of the page, refer to the Exercises.

OF THE ARTICLE.

RULE 1.—The article must agree with its noun in gender and number.

EXERCISE I.—PART I.

1st and 4th State.—Mas. *le*, fem. *la*, plur. *les*, the.

The brother; the sister; the boys; the girls; the princes;
frère, sœur, garçons, filles,
 the book; the pen; the battles; the courage; the virtues; the
livre m. plumes f. batailles f.m. vertus f.
 day; the night; the moon; the sun; the stars; the earth;
jour m. nuit f. lune f. soleil m. étoiles f. terre f.

2d State.—Mas. *du*, fem. *de la*, plu. *des*, of the; or from the.

The foot of the table; the price of the box; the glove of the
pied m. f. prix m. boîte f. gant m.
 lady; the silk from the shop; the noise of the cannon; the
dame soie f. boutique f. bruit m. canon m.
 guns of the soldiers; from the heat of the day; the letter from
fusils m. soldats chaleur f. e¹ lettres f.
 the nephew; the leaves of the flowers; the wheels of the
neveu feuilles f. fleurs f. roues f.
 carriages; the hat from the head; the tail of the dog.
voitures f. chapeau m. tête f. queue f. chien m.

EXERCISE I.—PART II.

3d State.—Mas. *au*, fem. *à la*, plu. *aux*, to the, or at the.

Give that to the queen; to the power of the nation; from the
donnez cela reine pouvoir m. f.
 garden to the field; from the ship to the house; from the
jardin m. champ m. vaisseau m. maison f.
 master to the scholar; from the parlour to the garret; to the
maître écolier parloir m. grenier m.
 sailors of the fleet; to the officers of the regiment.
matelots flotte f. officiers ré.....m.

Elision mas. and fem. *l'* for *le* or *la*; *de l'* for *du*, or *de la*;
à l' for *au*, or *à la*.

The eloquence of the orator; the soul of the man; the anchor
é.....f. orateur, âme f. :homme ancre m.
 is in the water; give the orange to the children; the hand of
est dans eau f. e¹f. enfants aiguille f.
 the clock; from the labour of the scholar to the amusement
:horloge f. travail m. e¹
 of the garden; to the gold of the ring; the honour due to the
e¹ or m. bague f. :honneur m. du

army; from the expression of the face; the cavern of the bear.
armée f. f. *figure* f. *antre* m. *ours* m.

RULE 2. The article must be repeated before every noun, when expressed before the first, and understood before the second, third, &c.; so must the preposition *de*, of or from; or à, to or at, whether alone, or accompanied with the article.

EXERCISE II.

The pens, ink, and paper are ready; the milk, cream, and butter are bad; I have been to the opera and concert; the attention of the father and mother; send the sugar to London or Glasgow; I am tired of the noise; confusion and smoke of the city; bring a glass of wine and water to the lady and gentleman; the ship comes from Hull or Newcastle; the wall is built of stones or bricks; hand me the salt and pepper.

e¹ encre, f. *et papier* m. *sont prêts* *lait* m. *crème* f. *e² beurre* m. *e² mauvais* j'ai été *opéra* m. *e² m.*
attention of the father and mother; send the sugar to London
 f. *père* *mère* *envoyez* *sucré* m. *Londres*
 or Glasgow; I am tired of the noise; confusion and smoke
 ou *je suis fatigué* *e¹ f.* *e² fumée* f.
 of the city; bring a glass of wine and water to the lady and
ville f. *apportez un verre* m. *vin* *e² e¹* *e¹ e²*
 gentleman; the ship comes from Hull or Newcastle; the wall
monsieur *e¹ vient* *e² mur* m.
 is built of stones or bricks; hand me the salt and pepper.
e¹ bâti *pierres* f. *e² briques* f. *passer moi* *sel* m. *e² poivre* m.

RULE 3. When in English the 's marks the possessive case or second state, the nouns must be transposed in French, thus, the dog's leg, will make the leg of the dog, *la jambe du chien*; also, if the s be only understood, as, the house door, the door of the house, *la porte de la maison*.

EXERCISE III.

The lady's cat; the ship's sails; the man's leg; the garden door; to the queen's health; the young lady's veil was torn by the lion's paw; Miss Orr's exercises are well written; the kitchen fire is out; the young man's pride is intolerant; John's knife and fork are clean; the coach wheel is broken; the boy's shoes and stockings are in the table

e¹ chat m. *e¹ voiles* f. *e¹ jambe* f. *e¹*
porte f. *e¹ santé* f. *demoiselle* *voile* m. *fut*
 torn by the lion's paw; Miss Orr's exercises are well
déchiré par ... m. *patte* f. *Mlle.* *thèmes* m. *e² bien*
 written; the kitchen fire is out; the young man's pride is
écrite *cuisine* f. *feu* m. *e¹ éteint* *jeune* *e¹ orgueil* m. *e¹*
 intolerant; John's knife and fork are clean; the coach wheel
insupportable *Jean couteau* m. *fourchette* f. *propres* *voiture* f. *e¹*
 is broken; the boy's shoes and stockings are in the table
e¹ cassée *e¹ souliers* m. *e² bas* m. *e² e¹* ... f.

drawer; the gardener's spade is lost; I saw the *ship's crew*;
avoir m. jardinier bêche f. e¹ perdue vis équipage m.
 the beggar's feet and legs are bare; the sun beams.
mendiant m. e¹ e³ e² nus e¹ rayons m.

RULE 4. The partitive word, *some* or *any*, is generally rendered in French by the second state of the article,

Mas. *du*, fem. *de la*, elision, *de l'*, plur. *des*;

and must be expressed before every noun in French, whether expressed or only understood in English.—See §².

EXERCISE IV.

Some sugar; some cream; some water; some herrings;
e² e² e¹ harengs m.
 I have some salad, oil, and vinegar; I had some apples;
e² sallade f. :huile f. e² vinaigre m. j'avais pommes f.
 we shall have patience; the gardener's daughter has brought
nous aurons f. e³ fille a apporté
 some strawberries and cherries; have you any pine apples or
fraises f. cerises f. avez-vous ananas e¹
 melons in the castle garden? here are some infantry and
..... m. e¹ chateau m. e¹ voici infanterie f. e²
 cavalry; offer some turkey or chicken to this lady; has he
cavalerie f. offrez dindon m. poulet m. cette e¹ a-t-il
 any lemons? she has modesty and prudence; Miss Catherine
citrons m. elle e⁴ modestie f. e² f. e³
 has taste and judgment.
e⁴ gout m. jugement m.

RULE 5. Should an adjective come before a noun, in a partitive sense, use *de* instead of *du*, or *de la*, or *des*, but should the adjective come after the noun, use *du*, *de la*, *des*, as if there were no adjective.—See §¹⁰.

EXERCISE V.

Some good milk; some small pears; some black² ink¹ and
bon e² petites poires f. noire e² e²
 white² paper¹; have you any true friends? I have seen some
blanc e² e⁴ vrais amis m. e² vu
 young soldiers in some old regiments; have they any ripe²
e² e¹ vieux ré.....m. ont ils mûres
 peaches¹? she has received some fine presents; I have some
pêches f. e⁴ e⁴ reçu beaux cadeaux m. e²

beautiful flowers; he has bad wine but excellent porter; you
belles ^{e¹} ^{e⁴} ^{e³} ^{e³} *mais* m.
 have brought some warm² plates¹ and cold² meat¹;
^{e⁴} ^{e²} *chaudes assietes* f. ^{e²} *froide viande* f.
 send me some red² handkerchiefs¹ and yellow² gloves¹, and I
^{e²} ^{e²} *rouges mouchoirs* m. ^{e²} *jaune* ^{e¹} ^{e²}
 will send some money.
enverrai *argent* m.

RULE 6. *A* or *an* is rendered in French by the adjective of number, mas. *un*, fem. *une*, one; it must agree with the noun it precedes, and be repeated before each successive noun, whenever it is expressed or understood in English; it makes second state, mas. *d'un*, fem. *d'une*; third state, mas. *à un*, fem. *à une*.

EXERCISE VI.

A pen; a neighbour; a street; the back of a chair; the leaf
^{e¹} *voisin* m. *rue* f. *dos* m. *chaise* f. ^{e¹}
 of a book; the stair of a house; to a carpet; to a gown; give
^{e¹} *escalier* m. ^{e¹} *tapis* m. *robe* f. ^{e¹}
 the money to a beggar; a pair of shoes; a garden wall;
^{e²} ^{e³} *paire* f. ^{e³} ^{e¹} ^{e²}
 he threw a stone at a dog; the pleasure of a ball; he has a
jetta ^{e²} ^{e¹} *plaisir* m. *bal* m. ^{e⁴}
 son and daughter; a cow's tail; the shells of an oyster; the
fil ^{e⁴} *vache* ^{e¹} *écailles* f. *huitre* f.
 voice of an orator; bring me a lemon and an orange; she
voix f. ^{e¹} ^{e²} ^{e⁴}f.
 brings an exercise every day; a looking-glass; a steeple; a
apporte ^{e²} *tous les jours* *miroir* m. *clocher* m.
 shovel; an ink-stand; a table cloth.
pêle f. *encrier* m. *nappe* f.

OF NOUNS.

RULE 7. Nouns must be made plural in French when they are so in English.—See §²⁰.

1st. The plural of nouns is generally formed in French by adding *s* to the singular.

2d. Nouns ending in *s*, *x*, *z*, take no sign for the plural.

3d. Nouns ending in *au*, *eu*, *ou*, take *x* instead of *s*.

4th. Nouns ending in *al, ail, change al, ail*, into *aux*.

Note.—The numbers affixed to the nouns in the following exercises refer to the above rules; those without numbers will be found in the exceptions, page 31.

EXERCISE VII.—PART I.

The trees of the orchards; the steeples of the churches;
arbre m. 1 *verger* m. 1. *e*⁶ 1 *église* f. 1
 an arm; the arms of the children; a nose; her children
bras m. *e*⁷ 2 *e*¹ 1 *nez* m. *ses* *e*¹ 1
 have fine noses; a voice; those ladies have fine voices; a
*e*¹ *i*¹⁰ *e*⁶ *e*⁷ 2 *e*⁶ *ces* *e*¹ *e*⁶ *i*¹⁰ *belles* *e*⁶ 2
 palace; the palaces of ^Δ kings; the tails of the ravens; the
palais m. *e*⁷ 2 *art. roi* 1 *e*¹ 2 *corbeau* m. 3
 labours of the generals; the skins of the animals; the
*e*¹ m. 4 *général* 4 *peau* f. 9m. 4
 tribunals of the marshals; close the curtains; the castles are
m. 4 *maréchal* 4 *fermez rideau* m. 3 *e*⁴ m. 3 *e*²
 burned; the ships of the admirals; a hero; the heroes of the
brûlés *e*¹ 3 *amiral* 4 *héros* *e*⁷ 2
 ancients; bring me some pebbles; his nephews have ^Δ fine
ancien m. 1 *e*² *e*² *caillou* m. 3 *ses* *e*¹ *e*⁶ *i*¹⁰ *e*⁵
 hair; she has two watches.
cheveu m. pl. 3. *montre* f.

EXERCISE VII.—PART II.

Turn the helms; fill up the holes, and I will give² you¹ six-
tournez gouvernail m. *remplissez trou* m. *e*² *donnerai*
 pence; the eyes of the he-cats are red; he went to the funeral
sou m. *œil* m. *matou* *e*² *e*⁶ *alla funérail* *i*²⁴
 of the free-masons; my two grand-fathers are dead; they
franc maçon *i*²⁶ *mes* *aieul* *i*²³ *e*² *morts*
 sleep with their ancestors; he eats ^Δ cauliflowers every day;
dorment avec leurs aieul *i*²³ *mange* *i*⁶ *chou-fleur* *i*²⁶ *e*⁶
 open your eyes and look at the heavens; ladies, you have lost
ouvrez les *e*¹ *regardez* — *ciel* m. *madame* *i*²⁵ *e*⁴ *perdu*
 your fans; the knees of the boy are torn; ^Δ owls and thieves
vos évantail m. *genou* m. 3 *e*¹ *e*² *e*³ s *art. hibou* m. *filou* m.
 prowl at night; the stewards are very attentive; the corals
rodent la *e*¹ *maitre d'hôtel* *i*²⁵ *e*² *très attentifs* *corail* m,
 belong to the children; he paid the expenses of the funeral.
sont *e*¹ *paya frais* *i*²⁴ *e*¹

OF ADJECTIVES.

RULE 8. An adjective must agree in gender and number with the noun or pronoun it serves to qualify, the feminine being formed according to the following rules.—See ist, &c.

1st. Adjectives take an *e* unaccented as the sign of the fem.

2d. Adjectives ending in *e* unaccented, take no sign for the fem.

3d. Adjectives ending in *el, eil, ien, or et*, double the last consonant before taking an *e* unaccented.

4th. Adjectives ending in *f*, change *f* into *ve* for the fem.

5th. Adjectives ending in *eur* or *eux*, change *r* or *x* into *se*.

The numbers affixed to the adjectives in the following exercises, refer to the above rules, those without numbers will be found in the list of exceptions.—See page 33, &c.

Observe to place the adjectives according to the order pointed out by the small numbers affixed to the English words.

To form the plural of adjectives, see page 34.

EXERCISE VIII.—PART I.

Your sister is constant and prudent; the little table is
votre e¹ e¹ l e² l petit l f. e¹
 ready; a pretty boy; a pretty girl; a clean² knife¹; a clean²
e² s 3 joli e¹ e² l e¹ e³ e² e² 2
 plate¹; a useful² work¹; a useful² pamphlet¹; this woman is
e² utile ouvrage m. e² 2 brochure f. e⁴ femme e¹
 sensible and fortunate; a cruel² order¹; a cruel² law¹; the
..... 2 e² fortuné l ordre m. 3 loi f.
 qualities are alike, but the colour is vermillion; the soldier's
qualité f. e² pareil 3 e⁵ couleur f. e¹ vermeil 3 e¹
 daughter is artless and reserved; the eels are lively; an
e⁴ e¹ naïf 4 e² réservé l anguille f. e² vif. 4
 attentive² ear¹; a happy² wife¹; flattering² manners¹ are
e¹ 4 oreille f. heureux 5 femme i³ flateur 5 manière f. e²
 often deceitful; the business is scandalous.
souvent trompeur 5 affaire f. e¹ scandaleux 5

EXERCISE VIII.—PART II.

Send me a new gown; the Greek² language¹ is very beautiful;
e² e² nouveau e⁵ Grec langue f. e¹ e¹ beau
 a fat² cow¹; thick² boards¹; my new friend has a mad
gras e⁵ i³ épais planche f. mon e² e⁵ e⁴ fou
 c

ambition for public² honours¹; an old lady with white²
f. *pour* ¹ *public* ^{e¹} ^{e²} ^{e¹} ^{e¹} ^{e²}
 feathers¹; the house is inferior, but the rooms are superior;
plume f. ^{e¹} ^{e¹} *inférieur* ^{e²} *chambre* f. ^{e²} *supérieur*
 the Turkish² fleet¹ is lost; your sister is dumb, and very
turc ^{e¹} ^{e¹} ^{e²} *votre* ^{e¹} ^{e¹} *muet* 3 ^{e²} ^{e¹}
 discreet; these songs are complete; you have a sweet² voice¹;
discret ces chanson f. ^{e²} *complet* ^{e⁴} *doux* ^{e²}
 sing an Italian² song¹; Miss Josephine is very frank, and very
chantex Italien 3 ^{e²} ^{e²} ^{e¹} ^{e¹} *franc* ^{e²} ^{e¹}
 benign; these boots are too long; your former friends were
bénin ^{e²} *botte* f. ^{e²} *trop* *vos ancien* 3 *amie* f. *étaient*
 cruel; she is subject to the head-ache, and is always uneasy.
 3 ^{e¹} *sujet* 3 *mal de tête* m. ^{e²} ^{e¹} *toujours inquiet*

OF ADJECTIVE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

RULE 9. Adjective possessive pronouns must agree in gender and number with the noun before which they are placed, and be repeated before every noun, when expressed in English before the first, and understood before the second, third, &c. —See *i*⁵⁷.

1st pers. sing.	mas. <i>mon</i> ,	fem. <i>ma</i> ,	plu. <i>mes</i> ,	my.
2d pers. sing.	mas. <i>ton</i> ,	fem. <i>ta</i> ,	plu. <i>tes</i> ,	thy
3d pers. sing.	mas. <i>son</i> ,	fem. <i>sa</i> ,	plu. <i>ses</i> ,	his, her, its
1st pers. plu.	mas. <i>notre</i> ,	fem. <i>notre</i> ,	plu. <i>nos</i> ,	our.
2d pers. plu.	mas. <i>votre</i> ,	fem. <i>votre</i> ,	plu. <i>vos</i> ,	your.
3d pers. plu.	mas. <i>leur</i> ,	fem. <i>leur</i> ,	plu. <i>leurs</i> ,	their.

Mon, *ton*, *son*, are used instead of *ma*, *ta*, *sa*, before nouns fem. beginning with a vowel or *h* mute. —See *i*⁶⁰.

EXERCISE IX.

My arm; my head; my hands; my ambition; thy foot; thy
^{e²} ^{e¹} *main* f.f. ^{e¹}
 leg; thy knees; thy ignorance; his hat; his shirt; his
^{e²} ^{e¹}f. ^{e¹} *chemise* f.
 stockings; his approbation; her apron; her garter; her gloves;
^{e²}f. *tablier* m. *jarretière* f. ^{e¹}
 her illusion; its beak; its colour; its feathers; its wing; your
f. *bec* m. ^{e²} ^{e²} *aile* f.
 niece and our nephew; their carriage and their servants; the
nièce ^{e¹} ^{e¹} *domestique*
 violence of his conduct; my father, mother, and sisters are
f. *conduite* f. ^{e²} ^{e²} ^{e¹} ^{e²}

gone to ^a church; his horse has lost all his shoes; give my
allé art. ^{e¹} *cheval* m. ^{e⁴} ^{e³} *tout* *fer* m. *faites*
 love to your cousins; your garden and field are sold; your
amitiés m. pl. *cousine* f. ^{e¹} ^{e²} ^{e¹} ^{e²} *vendus*
 canary is dead; its water was bad; his apple is not so good as
serin m. ^{e¹} ^{e¹} ^{e¹} *était* ^{e²} ^{e⁴} *n'est pas si* ^{e⁵} *que*
 his orange.
f.

OF RELATIVE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

RULE 10. Relative possessive pronouns are always used with an article, and must agree with the noun they refer to.¹⁰²

Those relating to one possessor are:—

Sing.	Mas. sin.	Fem. sin.	Mas. pl.	Fem. pl.	Eng.
1st pers.	<i>le mien,</i>	<i>la mienne,</i>	<i>les miens,</i>	<i>les miennes,</i>	mine.
2d pers.	<i>le tien,</i>	<i>la tienne,</i>	<i>les tiens,</i>	<i>les tiennes,</i>	thine.[its
3d pers.	<i>le sien,</i>	<i>la sienne,</i>	<i>les siens,</i>	<i>les siennes,</i>	his, hers,
Plur.	Those relating to two or more possessors are:—				
1st pers.	<i>le nôtre,</i>	<i>la nôtre,</i>	<i>les nôtres,</i>	<i>les nôtres,</i>	ours.
2d pers.	<i>le vôtre,</i>	<i>la vôtre,</i>	<i>les vôtres,</i>	<i>les vôtres,</i>	yours.
3d pers.	<i>le leur,</i>	<i>la leur,</i>	<i>les leurs,</i>	<i>les leurs,</i>	theirs.

Observe to distinguish, in the following exercise, the *adjective* possessive pronoun from the *relative* possessive pronoun.

EXERCISE X.

Your horse and mine; your bottle and mine; her shoes and
^{e⁹} ^{e²} *bouteille* f. ^{e³}
 mine; my country and thine; his coat and mine; my knife
patrie f. *habit* m. ^{e³}
 and hers; our orchard and his; their pictures are more
^{e¹} *tableau* m. ^{e²}
 beautiful than ours; her watch, yours, and mine, are of gold;
^{e³} *que* ^{e¹} ^{e²} ^{e¹}
 your friendship and mine; our memory and theirs; your purse
amitié f. *mémoire* f. *bourse* f.
 and mine are empty; your friend, mine, and hers, are arrived;
^{e²} *vide* ^{e⁵} ^{e²} ^{e³} *arrivé*
here are my scissors, where are yours and theirs? her nosegay
^{e⁴} *scissaux* f. *où* ^{e²} *bouquet* m.
 and thine; he has lost the oars of his boat and of ours; she
^{e⁴} ^{e³} *rame* f. *bateau* m.

has written to her niece and to mine; Mrs. Davidson
*é¹ écrit e⁹
 was speaking of your song and of mine.
*parlait e⁸**

OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

RULE 11. These pronouns must agree in gender and number with the noun they precede, and be repeated before each, when in English they are expressed before the 1st, and understood before the 2d, 3d, &c., i⁹⁰

Mas. *ce*, fem. *cette*, this or that; plu. *ces*, these or those.

Cet is used instead of *ce*, before masculine nouns beginning with a vowel or *h* mute.

EXERCISE XI.

This candlestick; this candle; this rain is good for this
*chandelier m. chandelle f. pluie f. e¹ e⁸ e⁸
 country; save that bird; those haddocks and whittings are
*pays m. sauvez oiseau m. merluche f. merlan m. e²
 fresh; the fruit of this tree; this dog is barking at that boy;
*frais ...m. e⁷ e¹ aboie e¹
 we are going from this place in that omnibus; he goes to that
*allons ... f. e¹ m. va
 school at eleven o'clock; these keys belong to that stranger;
*école f. heures f. clef f. e¹ étranger m.
 the rapidity of this torrent; give these potatoes to that blind
é f. m. e¹ pomme de terre, f. aveugle
 man, and that bread to that lame woman; these wafers are
*pain m. estropiée pain à cacheter m.
 bad; this seal is broken; this dog has been running after that
 e² cachet m. e⁸ e¹ vient de courir après
 sheep; this amiable child is the son of that gentleman.
*mouton m. aimable e¹ e² e⁸ e²*******

OF VERBS.

The French verbs are classed into four conjugations, distinguished by the termination of the infinitive.

Verbs of the 1st conjugation end in *er*, as, *parl-er*, to speak.

Verbs of the 2d conjugation end in *ir*, as, *pun-ir*, to punish.

Verbs of the 3d conjugation end in *oir*, as *dev-oir*, to owe.

Verbs of the 4th conjugation end in *re*, as, *vend-re*, to sell.

VERBS are divided into moods, tenses, persons, and numbers.

MOODS point out the different manners of using a verb.

The INFINITIVE OR IMPERSONAL MOOD serves to express indefinitely an action or a state in general, without any relation to person or number, as, *parler*, to speak; *parlant*, speaking.

The INDICATIVE MOOD serves to indicate or affirm, in a positive or direct manner, as, *Je parle*, I speak.

The CONDITIONAL MOOD serves to express affirmation, dependent on certain conditions, as, *Je parlerais Français si je pouvais*, I would speak French if I could.

The IMPERATIVE MOOD serves to express the act of commanding, praying, or exhorting, as, *parlez*, speak.

The SUBJUNCTIVE OR SUPPOSITIVE MOOD serves to express affirmation in a subordinate manner, and is dependent on another verb, to which it is always connected by means of a conjunction, as, *Je désire que vous veniez*, I wish that you may come.

TENSES. There are, besides the infinitive, fifteen tenses in every complete verb, twelve of which serve to express more definitely the time of the three natural tenses—the *past*, the *present*, and *future*.

PERSONS are the pronouns or nouns with which a verb is conjugated. There are three persons singular and three persons plural.

NUMBER is the distinction between the three persons sing. and the three persons plur. All nouns are of the third person.

As in the following exercises the French tenses do not always correspond to the English tenses, reference will be made to the tense required by the letters of the alphabet.

A. Inf. present.	H. Indicative pret.	P. Comp. Con. pres.
B. Part. present.	I. Indicative fut.	Q. Imperative.
C. Part. past.	K. Comp. present.	R. Subj. present.
D. Comp. of the pres.	L. Comp. imperfect.	S. Subj. preterite.
E. Comp. part. pres.	M. Comp. preterite.	T. Comp. present.
F. Indicative pres.	N. Comp. future.	V. Comp. preterite.
G. Indicative Imp.	O. Conditional pres.	(Commit to memory.)

CONJUGATION

Of the Auxiliary or Active Verb AVOIR, to have.

INFINITIVE OR IMPERSONAL MOOD.

A. Present,	<i>avoir,</i>	to have.
B. Participle present,	<i>ayant,</i>	having.
C. Participle past,	<i>eu,</i>	had.
D. Compound of the present,	<i>avoir-eu,</i>	to have had
E. Comp. of the participle present,	<i>ayant-eu,</i>	having had.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

F. *Present Tense.*

Singular.		Plural.	
<i>J'ai,</i>	I have.	<i>nous avons,</i>	we have.
<i>tu as,</i>	thou hast.	<i>vous avez,</i>	you have.
<i>il a,</i>	he has.	<i>ils ont, m.</i>	they have.
<i>le frère a,</i>	the brother has.	<i>les frères ont</i>	the brothers have
<i>elle a,</i>	she has.	<i>elles ont, f.</i>	they have.
<i>la sœur a,</i>	the sister has.	<i>les sœurs ont</i>	the sisters have.

G. *Imperfect Tense.*

<i>J'avais,</i>	I had.	<i>nous avions,</i>	we had.
<i>tu avais,</i>	thou hadst.	<i>vous aviez,</i>	you had.
<i>il avait,</i>	he had.	<i>ils avaient,</i>	they had.

H. *Preterite.*

<i>J'eus,</i>	I had.	<i>nous eûmes,</i>	we had.
<i>tu eus,</i>	thou hadst.	<i>vous eûtes,</i>	you had.
<i>il eut,</i>	he had.	<i>ils eurent,</i>	they had.

I. *Future.*

J'aurai, I shall or will have.

<i>J'aurai,</i>	I shall have.	<i>nous aurons,</i>	we shall have.
<i>tu auras,</i>	thou shalt have	<i>vous aurez,</i>	you shall have.
<i>il aura,</i>	he shall have.	<i>ils auront,</i>	they shall have

K. *Compound of the Present.*

<i>J'ai eu,</i>	I have had.	<i>nous avons eu,</i>	we have had.
<i>tu as eu,</i>	thou hast had.	<i>vous avez eu,</i>	you have had.
<i>il a eu,</i>	he has had.	<i>ils ont eu,</i>	they have had.

L. *Compound of the Imperfect.*

<i>J'avais eu,</i>	I had had.	<i>nous avions eu,</i>	we had had.
<i>tu avais eu,</i>	thou hadst had.	<i>vous aviez eu,</i>	you had had.
<i>il avait eu,</i>	he had had.	<i>ils avaient eu,</i>	they had had.

M. *Compound of the Preterite.*

<i>J'eus eu,</i>	I had had.	<i>nous eûmes eu,</i>	we had had.
<i>tu eus eu,</i>	thou hadst had.	<i>vous eûtes eu,</i>	you had had.
<i>il eut eu,</i>	he had had.	<i>ils eurent eu,</i>	they had had.

N. *Compound of the Future.*

J'aurai eu, I shall or will have had.

<i>J'aurai eu,</i>	I shall have had	<i>nous aurons eu,</i>	we shall have had
<i>tu auras eu,</i>	thou shalt “	<i>vous aurez eu,</i>	you shall “
<i>il aura eu,</i>	he shall “	<i>ils auront eu,</i>	they shall “

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

O. *Present Tense.*

J'aurais, I would, could, should, or might have.

<i>J'aurais,</i>	I should have.	<i>nous aurions,</i>	we should have.
<i>tu aurais,</i>	thou shouldst “	<i>vous auriez,</i>	you should have.
<i>il aurait,</i>	he should “	<i>ils auraient,</i>	they should have.

P. *Compound of the Present.*

J'aurais eu, I would, could, should, or might have had.

<i>J'aurais eu,</i> or, <i>J'eusse eu,</i>	I should have had.
<i>tu aurais eu,</i> or, <i>tu eusses eu,</i>	thou shouldst have had
<i>il aurait eu,</i> or, <i>il eût eu,</i>	he should have had.
<i>nous aurions eu,</i> or, <i>nous eussions eu,</i>	we should have had,
<i>vous auriez eu,</i> or, <i>vous eussiez eu,</i>	you should have had.
<i>ils auraient eu,</i> or, <i>ils eussent eu,</i>	they should have had.

Q. IMPERATIVE MOOD.

No first person.	<i>ayons,</i>	let us have.	
<i>aie,</i>	have thou.	<i>ayez,</i>	have (you).
<i>qu'il ait,</i>	let him have.	<i>qu'ils aient,</i>	let them have.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

R. *Present Tense.*

que—	that—	que—	that—
— <i>j'aie,</i>	I may have.	— <i>nous ayons,</i>	we may have.
— <i>tu aies,</i>	thou mayst have.	— <i>vous ayez,</i>	you may have.
<i>qu'il ait,</i>	he may have.	<i>qu'ils aient,</i>	they may have.

S. *Preterite.*

<i>que—</i>	<i>that—</i>	<i>que—</i>	<i>that—</i>
<i>—j'eusse,</i>	I might have.	<i>—nous eussions</i>	we might have.
<i>—tu eusses,</i>	thou mightest "	<i>—vous eussiez,</i>	you might have.
<i>qu'il eût,</i>	he might have.	<i>qu'ils eussent,</i>	they might have.

T. *Compound of the Present.*

<i>que j'aie eu,</i>	that I may have had.
<i>que tu aies eu,</i>	that thou mayst have had.
<i>qu'il ait eu,</i>	that he may have had.
<i>que nous ayons eu,</i>	that we may have had.
<i>que vous ayez eu,</i>	that you may have had.
<i>qu'ils aient eu,</i>	that they may have had.

V. *Compound of the Preterite.*

<i>que j'eusse eu,</i>	that I might have had.
<i>que tu eusses eu,</i>	that thou mightst have had.
<i>qu'il eût eu,</i>	that he might have had.
<i>que nous eussions eu,</i>	that we might have had.
<i>que vous eussiez eu,</i>	that you might have had.
<i>qu'ils eussent eu,</i>	that they might have had.

Observe 1st, That a verb must be of the same number and person as its subject, whether noun or pronoun.

2d, That two nouns in the singular are equal to a plural.

3d, That a noun is always third person singular or plural.

4th, That an application of all the foregoing rules is to be made throughout the following exercises, and of the partitive word *some* in particular, which must be expressed in French, wherever it is expressed or only understood in English, *i*⁹, *i*¹⁰.

EXERCISE XII.

C. Pr. Ten.—I have the gout; he has the clock; she has

the baskets; the dog has a collar; we have the banker's
panier m. *e*¹ *collier m.* *banquier*
 promise; you have the tailor's thimble; you have some
promesse f. *tailleur dé m.*
 pleasure; the hens have feathers; they have the courage;
*e*⁶ *poule* *i*³ *e*⁸m.
 they have power; they have their guns and bayonets ready.
*i*⁹ *e*¹ *e*¹ *batonnette f. e*²

Imp. I had a penknife; he has a spoon; she has a canary;
canif m. *cueiller* f. *e*⁹
 we had some honey; they had some bread and ^Acheese.
miel m. *e*¹¹ *r*^A*fromage* m.
Pret. He had ^Abeautiful prints; you had some fine cider;
*i*¹⁰ *e*⁸ *gravures* f. *i*¹⁰ *bon cidre* m.
 you had a large revenue; they had ^Ayouth and ^Abeauty.
grand revenu m. *i*⁹ *jeunesse* f. *r*^A *beauté* f.
Fut. I shall have an opinion; you shall have this *wax candle*.
f. *bougie* f.

EXERCISE XIII.

C. Pres. I have had ^Apatience; she has had ^Aprudence;
*i*⁹f. *i*⁹f.
 Miss Mary has had a nosegay; we have had ^Abig apples.
Marie *e*¹⁰ *i*¹⁰ *gros* *e*⁴
C. Imp. We had had ^Agreat storms; you had had some
*i*¹⁰ *grand orage* m.
 chicken; Miss B. and Miss M. had had their lessons.
*e*⁴ *e*³ *e*³ *leçon* f.
C. Fut. I shall have had two hundred crowns; we shall have
écu, m.
 had a dreadful² hurricane¹; they will have had three new² gowns¹.
affreux ouragan m. *e*³ *e*⁶
Cond. I should have a large fortune; we should have an
*e*¹²f.
 opinion; you would have had some gold and iron.
f. *e*¹ *fer* m.
Com. Pres. You would have had my promise; they would
*e*¹²
 have had his vote; these gentlemen would have had this ticket.
voix f. *messieurs* *billet* m.

EXERCISE XIV.

Imp. Have ^Apoliteness; let him have ^Afortitude; let us
 sing. *i*⁹ *politesse* f. *i*⁶f.
 have ^Acharity; have ^Acandour; let them have ^Acandles.
*i*⁹ *charité* f. *i*⁹ *candeur* f. *i*⁶ *e*¹¹
S. Pres. That you may have a pleasant² evening¹; that she
agréable soirée f.
 may have a walk; that they may have ^Agood sailors.
promenade f. *i*¹⁰ *e*⁶ *e*¹

S. *Pret.* That I might have a bow; that she might have
archet m.

learned² teachers¹; that they might have ^A time ^A to sing.
savant maître art. tems m. de chanter.

O. *Pres.* That he may have had a cold; that we may have
rhume m.

had your saddle; that they may have had ^A peace.
selle f. art. paix f.

C. *Pret.* That she might have had ^A pride; that you might
i² e²

have had ^A coffee; that they might have had ^A blue² ribbons¹.
i² café m. i² bleu ruban m.

CONJUGATION

Of the Auxiliary or Substantive Verb ÊTRE, to be.

INFINITIVE MOOD,

A. Present,	être,	to be.
B. Participle present,	étant,	being.
C. Participle past,	été,	been.
D. Comp. of the present,	avoir été,	to have been.
E. Comp. of the part. pres.	ayant été,	having been.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

F. *Present Tense.*

Pers.	Singular.		Plural.
1st, <i>Je suis,</i>	I am.	<i>nous sommes,</i>	we are.
2d, <i>tu es,</i>	thou art.	<i>vous êtes,</i>	you are.
3d, <i>il est,</i>	he is.	<i>ils sont m.</i>	they are.
3d, <i>le frère est</i>	the brother is.	<i>les frères sont,</i>	the brothers are
3d, <i>elle est,</i>	she is.	<i>elles sont,</i>	they are.
3d, <i>la sœur est</i>	the sister is.	<i>les sœurs sont,</i>	the sisters are.

G. *Imperfect.*

<i>J'étais,</i>	I was.	<i>nous étions,</i>	we were.
<i>tu étais,</i>	thou wast.	<i>vous étiez,</i>	you were.
<i>il était,</i>	he was.	<i>ils étaient,</i>	they were.

H. *Preterite.*

<i>Je fus,</i>	I was.	<i>nous fûmes,</i>	we were.
<i>tu fus,</i>	thou wast.	<i>vous fûtes,</i>	you were.
<i>il fut,</i>	he was.	<i>ils furent,</i>	they were.

I. *Future.**Je serai*, I shall or will be.

<i>Je serai,</i>	I shall be.	<i>nous serons,</i>	we shall
<i>tu seras,</i>	thou shalt be.	<i>vous serez,</i>	you shall
<i>il sera,</i>	he shall be.	<i>ils seront,</i>	they shall

K. *Compound of the Present.*

<i>J'ai été,</i>	I have been.	<i>nous avons été,</i>	we have b
<i>tu as été,</i>	thou hast been.	<i>vous avez été,</i>	you have
<i>il a été,</i>	he has been.	<i>ils ont été,</i>	they have

L. *Compound of the Imperfect.*

<i>J'avais été,</i>	I had been.	<i>nous avions été,</i>	we had b
<i>tu avais été,</i>	thou hadst been.	<i>vous aviez été,</i>	you had
<i>il avait été,</i>	he had been.	<i>ils avaient été,</i>	they had

M. *Compound of the Preterite.*

<i>J'eusse été,</i>	I had been.	<i>nous eûmes été,</i>	we had b
<i>tu eusses été,</i>	thou hadst been.	<i>vous eûtes été,</i>	you had
<i>il eut été,</i>	he had been.	<i>ils eurent été,</i>	they had

N. *Compound of the Future.*

<i>J'aurai été</i>	I shall have been	<i>nous aurons été</i>	we shall have
<i>tu auras été</i>	thou shalt " been	<i>vous aurez été</i>	you shall "
<i>il aura été</i>	he shall " been	<i>ils auront été</i>	they shall "

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

O. *Present Tense.**Je serais*, I would, could, should, or might be.

<i>Je serais,</i>	I should be.	<i>nous serions,</i>	we should
<i>tu serais,</i>	thou shouldst be.	<i>vous seriez,</i>	you should
<i>il serait,</i>	he should be.	<i>ils seraient,</i>	they should

P. *Compound of the Present.*

<i>J'aurais été,</i>	I should have been.
<i>tu aurais été,</i>	thou shouldst have been
<i>il aurait été,</i>	he should have been.
<i>nous aurions été,</i>	we should have been.
<i>vous auriez été,</i>	you should have been.
<i>ils auraient été,</i>	they should have been.

Q. IMPERATIVE MOOD.

No first person.		
<i>sois,</i>	be thou.	<i>soyons,</i> let us be.
<i>qu'il soit,</i>	let him be.	<i>soyez,</i> be ye.
		<i>qu'ils soient,</i> let them be.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

R. *Present Tense.*

<i>que je sois,</i>	that I may be.	<i>que nous soyons,</i>	that we may "
<i>que tu sois,</i>	that thou mayst "	<i>que vous soyez,</i>	that you "
<i>qu'il soit,</i>	that he may be.	<i>qu'ils soient,</i>	that they "

S. *Preterite.*

<i>que je fusse,</i>	that I might be.	<i>que nous fussions,</i>	that we "
<i>que tu fusse,</i>	that thou mightst "	<i>que vous fussiez,</i>	that you "
<i>qu'il fut,</i>	that he might be.	<i>qu'ils fussent,</i>	that they "

T. *Compound of the Present.*

<i>que j'aie été,</i>	that I may have been.
<i>que tu aies été,</i>	that thou mayst have been.
<i>qu'il ait été,</i>	that he may have been.
<i>que nous ayons été,</i>	that we may have been.
<i>que vous ayez été,</i>	that you may have been.
<i>qu'ils aient été,</i>	that they may have been.

V. *Compound of the Preterite.*

<i>que j'eusse été,</i>	that I might have been.
<i>que tu eusses été,</i>	that thou mightst have been.
<i>qu'il eût été,</i>	that he might have been.
<i>que nous eussions été,</i>	that we might have been.
<i>que vous eussiez été,</i>	that you might have been.
<i>qu'ils eussent été,</i>	that they might have been.

When an adjective or a participle is used with the verb *être*, to be, it must agree in gender and number with the subject of the verb which it serves to qualify, *t^{es}* &c.

When in addressing one person, *vous*, you, is used instead of *tu*, thou, the adjective is put in the singular though the verb be in the plural.

EXERCISE XV.

Pres. I am content; he is generous; she is lively, though stout.

f. *généreux* *e^s* *quoique gras.*

Imp. We were happy; they were new; these ladies were tired.

e^s - f. *e^s* *e^l* *e²*

Pret. She was proud; Matilda was curious; they were jealous.

dédaigneux Matilde curieux f. jaloux

Fut. I shall be false; we shall be anxious and timid; you

f. faux f. inquiet timide

will be delighted; the girls will be merry and foolish.

charmé e¹ gai fou

C. Pres. I have been pretty and rich; my mother has been

f. e⁸ riche e²

punctual and my sister negligent; they have been deaf.

ponctuel e¹ négligent f. sourd

C. Imp. She has been studious; these boatmen have been drunk.

studieux batelier ivre

C. Pret. We had been skilful; you had been uneasy.

habile f. sing. e⁸

C. Fut. I shall have been firm; you shall have been religious.

ferme religieux

EXERCISE XVI.

Cond. Pres. I should be frank; she should be discreet; we should

e⁸ e⁸ f.

be modest and reserved; we should be industrious and zealous.

modeste e⁸ f. industrieux zélé

Imp. Be ashamed to break thy word; let her be careful;

f. honteux de manquer à parole f. soigneux

let us be wise; be always honourable; let them be just.

sage plu. e⁸ f. juste

S. Pres. That I may be ill; that my neighbour may be worthy

f. malade voisine f. digne

of the place; that his mare may be big and fat.

.....f. jument e¹³ e⁸

S. Pret. That we might be tired; that they might be quick.

e² vif

C. Pres. That I may have been idle; that Janet may have

f. paresseux

been assiduous; that you may have been proud and insolent.

assidu orgueilleux

C. Pret. That the coachman and guard may have been drunk.

cocher conducteur soul

Verbs are either regular, irregular, defective, or unipersonal.

OF REGULAR VERBS.
FIRST CONJUGATION IN ER.

PARLER, TO SPEAK.

Radicals.]

INFINITIVE MOOD.

[Finals.

Parl.....cr.

A. Present,	<i>parl-er,</i>	to speak.
B. Participle present,	<i>parl-ant,</i>	speaking.
C. Participle past,	<i>parl-é,</i>	spoken.
D. Comp. of the present.	<i>avoir parlé,</i>	to have spoken.
E. Comp. of the parti. Pres.	<i>ayant parlé,</i>	having spoken.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

F. *Present Tense.*

Expresses an act performed at the time of speaking.

I speak—I do speak—I am speaking.

maintenant

— now

<i>Je parl-e,</i>	I speak.	<i>nous parl-ons,</i>	we speak.
<i>tu parl-es,</i>	thou speakest.	<i>vous parl-ez,</i>	you speak.
<i>il parl-e,</i>	he speaks.	<i>ils parl-ent,</i>	they speak.
<i>le fils parl-e,</i>	the son speaks.	<i>les fils parl-ent,</i>	the sons speak.
<i>elle parl-e,</i>	she speaks.	<i>elles parl-ent,</i>	they speak.
<i>la fille parl-e,</i>	the girl speaks.	<i>les filles parl-ent,</i>	the girls speak.

G. *Imperfect Tense.*

Expresses 'an act done as present relatively to another also passed.

Je parlais, I did speak—I used to speak—I was speaking.*quand vous êtes entré*

— when you entered

<i>Je parl-ais,</i>	I did speak.	<i>nous parl-ions,</i>	we did speak.
<i>tu parl-ais,</i>	thou didst "	<i>vous parl-iez,</i>	you did speak.
<i>il parl-ait,</i>	he did speak.	<i>ils parl-aient,</i>	they did speak.

H. *Preterite Tense.*

Expresses an act done at a time past determined.

hier

— yesterday

<i>Je parl-ai,</i>	I spoke.	<i>nous parl-âmes,</i>	we spoke.
<i>tu parl-as,</i>	thou spokest.	<i>vous parl-âtes,</i>	you spoke.
<i>il parl-a,</i>	he spoke.	<i>ils parl-èrent,</i>	they spoke.

I. *Future Tense.*

Expresses that an act will take place at a time yet to come.

Je parlerai, I shall or will speak.

demain

—

to-morrow

<i>Je parl-erai</i> ,	I shall speak.	<i>nous parl-erons</i> ,	we shall speak.
<i>tu parl-eras</i> ,	thou shalt speak.	<i>vous parl-erez</i> ,	you shall speak.
<i>il parl-era</i> ,	he shall speak.	<i>ils parl-eront</i> ,	they shall speak.

K. *Compound of the Present.*

Expresses an act done at a time past, but not designed; or if designed, not completed.

J'ai parlai, I have spoken, or I have been speaking.

cette semaine

—

this week

<i>J'ai parlé</i> ,	I have spoken.	<i>nous avons parlé</i> ,	we have spoken.
<i>tu as parlé</i> ,	thou hast spoken	<i>vous avez parlé</i> ,	you have spoken.
<i>il a parlé</i> ,	he has spoken.	<i>ils ont parlé</i> ,	they have spoken

L. *Compound of the Imperfect.*

Expresses an act as having been done before another also passed.

J'avais parlé, I had spoken, or had been speaking.

quand vous arrivâtes

—

when you arrived

<i>J'avais parlé</i> ,	I had spoken.	<i>nous avions parlé</i> ,	we had spoken
<i>tu avais parlé</i> ,	thou hadst "	<i>vous aviez parlé</i> ,	you had "
<i>il avait parlé</i> ,	he had "	<i>ils avaient parlé</i> ,	they had "

M. *Compound of the Preterite.*

Expresses an act which has been done before another completely passed.

avant cela

—

before that

<i>J'eus parlé</i> ,	I had spoken.	<i>nous eûmes parlé</i> ,	we had spoken.
<i>tu eus parlé</i> ,	thou hadst "	<i>vous eûtes parlé</i> ,	you had spoken.
<i>il eut parlé</i> ,	he had "	<i>ils eurent parlé</i> ,	they had spoken.

N. *Compound of the Future.*

Expresses an act that will take place before another that is also to take place.

Je sortirai quand

—

I shall go out when

<i>J'aurai parlé</i> ,	I shall or will have spoken. thou shalt or wilt have spoken. he shall or will have spoken.
<i>tu auras parlé</i> ,	
<i>il aura parlé</i> ,	

nous aurons parlé,
vous aurez parlé,
ils auront parlé,

we shall or will have spoken.
 you shall or will have spoken.
 they shall or will have spoken.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

O. *Present Tense.*

Expresses an act as dependant on a condition.

Je parl-erais, I would, could, should, or might speak.

si je pouvais — if I could

<i>Je parl-erais</i> ,	I should speak.	<i>nous parl-erions</i>	we should “
<i>tu parl-erais</i> ,	thou shouldst “	<i>vous parl-eriez</i> ,	you should “
<i>il parl-erait</i> ,	he should “	<i>ils parl-eraient</i> ,	they should “

P. *Compound of the Present.*

Expresses that an act would have taken place if a certain condition had been fulfilled.

J'aurais parlé, I would, could, should, or might have spoken.

si vous aviez voulu — if you had wished

<i>J'aurais parlé</i> ,	or <i>j'eusse parlé</i> ,	I would have spoken.
<i>tu aurais parlé</i> ,	or <i>tu eusses parlé</i> ,	thou wouldst have spoken.
<i>il aurait parlé</i> ,	or <i>il eut parlé</i> ,	he would have spoken.
<i>nous aurions parlé</i> ,	or <i>nous eussions</i> “	we would have spoken.
<i>vous auriez parlé</i> ,	or <i>vous eussiez</i> “	you would have spoken.
<i>ils auraient parlé</i> ,	or <i>ils eussent</i> “	they would have spoken.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Q. *Present or Future Tense.*

Expresses the act of commanding or exhorting.

No first person.

<i>parl-e</i> ,	<i>parl-ons</i>	let us speak.
<i>qu'il parl-e</i> ,	speak (thou). <i>parl-ez</i> ,	speak (you).
	let him speak. <i>qu'ils parl-ent</i> ,	let them speak.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

R. *Present or Future Tense.*

il faut, il faudra — it is—it will be necessary

<i>que je parl-e</i> ,	that I may speak, or may be speaking.
<i>que tu parl-es</i> ,	that thou mayst speak, &c.
<i>qu'il parl-e</i> ,	that he may speak, &c.
<i>que nous parl-ions</i> ,	that we may speak, &c.
<i>que vous parl-iez</i> ,	that you may speak, &c.
<i>qu'ils parl-ent</i> ,	that they may speak, &c.

S. *Preterite Tense.*

<i>il fallait</i>	— it was necessary
<i>que je parl-asse,</i>	that I might speak.
<i>que tu parl-asses,</i>	that thou mightst speak.
<i>qu'il parl-ât,</i>	that he might speak.
<i>que nous parl-assions,</i>	that we might speak.
<i>que vous parl-assiez,</i>	that you might speak.
<i>qu'ils parl-assent,</i>	that they might speak.

T. *Compound of the Present.*

<i>il faut</i>	— it is necessary
<i>que j'aie parlé,</i>	that I may have spoken.
<i>que tu aies parlé,</i>	that thou mayst have spoken.
<i>qu'il ait parlé,</i>	that he may have spoken.
<i>que nous ayons parlé,</i>	that we may have spoken.
<i>que vous ayez parlé,</i>	that you may have spoken.
<i>qu'ils aient parlé,</i>	that they may have spoken.

V. *Compound of the Preterite.*

<i>il faudrait</i>	— it would be necessary
<i>que j'eusse parlé,</i>	that I might have spoken.
<i>que tu eusses parlé,</i>	that thou mightst have spoken.
<i>qu'il eût parlé,</i>	that he might have spoken.
<i>que nous eussions parlé,</i>	that we might have spoken.
<i>que vous eussiez parlé,</i>	that you might have spoken.
<i>qu'ils eussent parlé,</i>	that they might have spoken.

Observe—1st, That the verbs in the following exercises are all in the pres. of the infin., as *estimer*, to esteem.

2d, That to obtain the tense and person required, the learner must cut off the final *er* from the verb in the exercise, and substitute the final of the same tense and person of the verb *parler*, as divided by a hyphen throughout the conjugation: thus, if *we refuse* be wanted in French, *refuser* being given, cut off the final *er*, and *refus* will remain; to which add *ons*, being the termination of the 1st pers. plu. pres. ind. of *parler*, and *nous refusons* will be obtained.

3d. Adverbs must be placed after the verb in simple tenses, and immediately after the auxiliary verb in compound tenses.

The tenses will henceforth be indicated only by the letters representing them.

EXERCISE XVII.

A. To affirm the truth; B. whilst dancing he fell; D. he was
affirmer vérité f. en danser tomba eut
 wrong to have spoken so loud; E. having² offended³ her¹,
tort de parler e⁹ haut offenser la
 she wept.
pleura.

F. I esteem my friends; thou speakest too fast; he is
estimer e⁵ e¹⁷ trop vite
 studying* his lessons; she gives clothes to the poor; we do†
étudier e¹³ donner hardes f. pauvre pl.
 often work at six o'clock; you dine too early; they are
e⁸ travailler e¹¹ dinner trop tôt
 walking* slowly.
marcher lentement.

G. I was cleaning* the cottage; he did† water the flowers;
nettoyer chaumière f. arroser e¹
 Sophia was embroidering† a cap; you did† refuse¹ to pay.
.....ie broder bonnet m. refuser de payer.

H. I always respected his talent; the professor deserved
e⁸ respecter m. professeur mériter
 our esteem; they broke three bottles; we sung a duette; the
estime m. casser e¹⁰ e¹⁴ duo m.

Turks declared¹ a war to the Egyptians.
turc déclarer art. guerre f. Egyptien.

EXERCISE XVIII.

I. I shall accept your invitation; he will arrive at 12 o'clock;
accepter f. arriver midi m.

Rosaline will weep with joy; you will¹ break my heart; their
..... pleurer de joie f. me briser le cœur m.
 eyes will sparkle with anger.
e¹ briller e¹⁸ colère f.

K. I have owned everything; he has forwarded the goods;
avouer tout expédier marchandises f.
 we have drawn on you; they have broken open the stable door;
tirer sur enfoncer écurie f. e³
 the soldiers have deserted; they have danced with me.
e¹ désertir e¹⁷ e⁷ e²

* The participle present, with the verb *être*, to be, as a verbal sign, are never used in French to represent the pres. or imper. of the ind. See these tenses in the verb.

† *Do* and *does*, signs of the present, and *did*, sign of the imperfect, are never used in French. See these tenses in the verb *parler*.

L. I had observed his conduct; he had respected the laws; he
observer e^9 e^{17} e^8
 had dispersed the mob; the girls had torn their frocks;
disperser *foule* f. e^1 *déchirer* *foureau* m.
 M. I had proposed an armistice; he had thought of his country;
proposerm. *penser* e^{11}
 we had calculated our losses; they had dressed his wounds;
calculer *perte* f. *panser* *blessure* f.
 Amelia and her sister had spent their money.
Amélie e^1 *dépenser* e^5

EXERCISE XIX.

N. I shall have avoided this island; he will have justly deserved
éviter *île* f. *avec justice* e^{17}
 the king's favour; we will have consoled the afflicted;
 e^7 *faveur* f. *consoler* *affligé*, pl.
 O. I should like to buy a gig; she would dance all night;
aimer acheter cabriolet m. e^{17} e^9 art. e^1
 we would reap the corn; they would wash the linen;
moissoner *blé* m. *laver* *linge* m.
 P. I would have rewarded the boy; he would have concealed
récompenser e^1 *cacher*
 the fact; we would have borrowed some straw; they would
fait m. *emprunter* *paille* f.
 have anchored their ships; they would have fallen.
ancrer e^1 *tomber*
 Q. Burn all these papers; let him carry this letter; let the
brûler e^2 *porter* e^1
 girls mark the stockings; let us walk slowly; wind up your
 e^1 *marquer* e^3 e^{17} e^{17} *monter*
 watch; let them profit by his example.
 e^6 *profiter* e^3

Note.—The following exercise is simply the verbs of the preceding exercises repeated, to be put in the respective tenses of the subjunctive; each sentence marked with a hyphen — must be completed by the addition of a complement, viz.: by such words as will complete the sense.

EXERCISE XX.

R. That I may esteem—; that he may study—; that she may give—; that we may work; that you may dine; that they may clean—. S. That I might water—; that Sophia might embroider—; that we might refuse—; that you might respect—; that they might break—. T. That I may have

accepted—; that Rosaline may have wept; that we may have owned—; that you may have forwarded—; that they may have *broken open*—; that the soldiers may have deserted. V. That I might have observed—; that he might have respected—; that we might have dispersed—; that the girls might have torn—.

SECOND CONJUGATION IN IR.

PUNIR, TO PUNISH.

Radicals.]	INFINITIVE MOOD.	[Finals.
<i>Pun</i>		<i>ir</i> .

A. Present.	<i>pun-ir,</i>	to punish.
B. Participle present.	<i>pun-issant,</i>	punishing.
C. Participle past.	<i>pun-i,</i>	punished.
D. Comp. of the present.	<i>avoir puni,</i>	to have punished.
E. Comp. of the part. pres.	<i>ayant puni,</i>	having punished.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

F. *Present Tense.*

Je punis, I punish, I do punish, I am punishing.

<i>Je pun-is,</i>	I punish.	<i>nous pun-issons,</i>	we punish.
<i>tu pun-is,</i>	thou punishest.	<i>vous pun-issez,</i>	you punish.
<i>il pun-it,</i>	he punishes.	<i>ils pun-issent,</i>	they punish.

G. *Imperfect.*

Je punissais, I did punish, I was punishing.

<i>Je pun-issais,</i>	I did punish.	<i>nous pun-issions,</i>	we did punish.
<i>tu pun-issais,</i>	thou didst “	<i>vous pun-issiez,</i>	you did “
<i>il pun-issait,</i>	he did “	<i>ils pun-issaient,</i>	they did “

H. *Preterite.*

<i>Je pun-is,</i>	I punished.	<i>nous pun-îmes,</i>	we punished.
<i>tu pun-is,</i>	thou punishedst.	<i>vous pun-îtes,</i>	you punished.
<i>il pun-it,</i>	he punished.	<i>ils pun-irent,</i>	they punished.

I. *Future.*

Je punirai, I shall, or I will punish.

<i>Je pun-irai,</i>	I shall punish.	<i>nous pun-irons,</i>	we shall punish.
<i>tu pun-iras,</i>	thou shalt “	<i>vous pun-irez,</i>	you shall “
<i>il pun-ira,</i>	he shall “	<i>ils pun-iront,</i>	they shall “

Note.—As the compound tenses of a verb are always formed with its participle past and the corresponding tense of *avoir* or *être*, we have only exhibited the first person of each tense.

K. Comp. of the pres.	<i>J'ai puni, &c.</i>	I have punished, &c.
L. Comp. of the imp.	<i>J'avais puni, &c.</i>	I had punished, &c.
M. Comp. of the pret.	<i>J'eus puni, &c.</i>	I had punished, &c.
N. Comp. of the fut.	<i>J'aurai puni, &c.</i>	I shall have " &c.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

O. *Present Tense.*

Je punirais, I would, could, should, or might punish.

<i>Je pun-irais,</i>	I should punish.
<i>tu pun-irais,</i>	thou shouldst punish.
<i>il pun-irait,</i>	he should punish.
<i>nous pun-irions,</i>	we should punish.
<i>vous pun-iriez,</i>	you should punish.
<i>ils pun-iraient,</i>	they should punish.

P. *Compound of the Present.*

J'aurais puni, &c. | I should have punished, &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Q. *Present or Future Tense.*

No first person.	<i>pun-issons,</i>	let us punish.
<i>pun-is,</i>	<i>pun-issez,</i>	punish (ye).
<i>qu'il pun-isse,</i>	<i>qu'ils pun-issent,</i>	let them pun.
punish (thou).		
let him punish.		

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

R. *Present or Future Tense.*

<i>que je pun-isse,</i>	that I may punish.
<i>que tu pun-isses,</i>	that thou mayst punish.
<i>qu'il pun-isse,</i>	that he may punish.
<i>que nous pun-issions,</i>	that we may punish.
<i>que vous pun-issiez,</i>	that you may punish.
<i>qu'ils pun-issent,</i>	that they may punish.

S. *Preterite.*

<i>que je pun-isse,</i>	that I might punish.
<i>que tu pun-isses,</i>	that thou mightst punish.
<i>qu'il pun-ît,</i>	that he might punish.
<i>que nous pun-issions,</i>	that we might punish.
<i>que vous pun-issiez,</i>	that you might punish.
<i>qu'ils pun-issent,</i>	that they might punish.

T. Compound of the Present.

que j'aie puni, &c. | that I may have punished, &c.

V. Compound of the Preterite.

que j'eusse puni, &c. | that I might have punished, &c.

Observe to cut off the finals *ir* before adding the terminations.

EXERCISE XXI.

F. I am finishing my work; thou reddenedst with shame;
finir e⁸ rougir e¹⁸ honte f.

he betrays his country; we do hate ^A quackery; you
trahir e¹⁰ hair art. charlatanisme m.

applaud that actor in vain; they always act with prudence.
applaudir acteur en e⁸ agir e⁷f.

G. I was reflecting on my essay; he was climbing the hill;
réfléchir à essai m. gravir montagne f.

we did disobey ^A his orders; you did fulfil your promise; they
disobéir à e⁸ remplir e¹²

were blackening their faces; they finished their supper.
noircir figures f. e²¹ soupe m.

H. I slackened my pace; we established a spinners; you
ralentir pas m. établir filature f.

stuffed a turkey; they soon punished the rebels; the lions
farcir dindon m. bientôt punir révoltésf.

roared; the spectators trembled.
rugir spectateur frémir.

I. I shall act for you; he will varnish the pictures; we
e²¹ e⁸ vernir e¹⁰

shall soon define this problem; you will accomplish your design.
e²¹ définir problème m. accomplir dessin m.

EXERCISE XXII.

K. I have smoothed all the difficulties; this rose bush has
applanir e⁹ difficulté f. rosier m.

flowered again; she has dirtied her gown and shawl.
refleurir salir e⁶ e² schall m.

L. He had acted imprudently; we had built a wall; you
e²¹ imprudemment bâtir e²

had applauded Miss M'Leod's singing; they had succeeded.
applaudir mademoiselle chant m. réussir.

M. When we had converted the heathens we were happy;
quand convertir païen m. e⁸

as soon as Buonaparte's ambition had sullied his glory, he fell.
dès quef. ternir gloire f. e¹³ n.

N. You will have thinned the gooseberry tree; the sea will
éclaircir *grosellier* m. *mer* f.

have *swallowed up* the vessel; they will have perished.
engloutir *e*¹ *périr.*

O. I would cure his wounds if I had, &c.; I would banish
guérir *e*¹⁸ *si* *banir*

all fear; he would fulfil his promise; they would obey.
*e*⁹ *crainte* f. *e*²¹ *e*¹² *obéir.*

P. they would have blushed; they would have bloomed.
*e*²¹ *fleurir.*

Q. Obey the laws; cherish ^Δ virtue; let the oxen bellow.
*e*²² *e*⁸ *chérir* art. *e*¹ *bœuf mugir.*

EXERCISE XXIII.

See Note page 68. R. That I may finish—; that he may betray—; that we may applaud—; that you may act—. S. That I might reflect—; that he might cherish—; that we might disobey—; that you might fulfil—; that they might blacken—; that they (f.) might punish—. T. That I may have blackened—; that ye may have established—; that you may have stuffed—; that they may have soon punished—; that the lions may have roared. V. That I might have acted—; that he might have smoothed—; that this rose-bush might have flowered again; that she might have dirtied—; that we might have converted—; that they might have thinned—.

THIRD CONJUGATION IN EVOIR.

RECEVOIR, TO RECEIVE.

Radicals.]

INFINITIVE MOOD.

[Finals.]

Rec.....*evoir.*

A. Present,	<i>rec-evoir,</i>	to receive.
B. Participle present,	<i>rec-évant,</i>	receiving.
C. Participle past,	<i>reç-u*</i> ,	received.
D. Comp. of the present,	<i>avoir reçu,</i>	to have received.
E. Comp. participle present,	<i>ayant reçu,</i>	having received.

* Observe to put a cedilla under the ç when it precedes o or u.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

F. *Present Tense.*

Je reçois, I receive, I do receive, I am receiving.

<i>Je reçois,</i>	I receive.	<i>nous rec-evois,</i>	we receive.
<i>tu reçois,</i>	thou receivest.	<i>vous rec-evez,</i>	you receive.
<i>il reçoit,</i>	he receives.	<i>ils rec-oivent,</i>	they receive.

G. *Imperfect Tense.*

<i>c-avais,</i>	I did receive.	<i>nous rec-évisions,</i>	we did receive
<i>c-avais,</i>	thou didst "	<i>vous rec-éviez,</i>	you did "
<i>-evait,</i>	he did "	<i>ils rec-évaient,</i>	they did "

H. *Preterite Tense.*

<i>ç-us,</i>	I received.	<i>nous reç-ûmes,</i>	we received.
<i>ç-us,</i>	thou receivedst.	<i>vous reç-ûtes,</i>	you received.
<i>ç-ut,</i>	he received.	<i>ils reç-urent,</i>	they received.

I. *Future Tense.*

Je recevrai, I shall receive, I will receive.

<i>re-vrai,</i>	I shall receive.	<i>nous rec-evrons,</i>	we shall receive.
<i>c-evras,</i>	thou shalt "	<i>vous rec-evrez,</i>	you shall "
<i>c-evra,</i>	he shall "	<i>ils rec-evront,</i>	they shall "

Comp. pres.	<i>J'ai reçu,</i>	I have received, &c.
Comp. imp.	<i>J'avais reçu,</i>	I had received, &c.
Comp. pret.	<i>J'eus reçu,</i>	I had received, &c.
Comp. imp.	<i>J'aurai reçu,</i>	I shall have received, &c.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

O. *Present Tense.*

Je recevrais, I would, could, should, or might receive.

<i>Je rec-evrais,</i>	I should receive.
<i>tu rec-evrais,</i>	thou shouldst receive.
<i>il rec-evrait,</i>	he should receive.
<i>nous rec-evrions,</i>	we should receive.
<i>vous rec-evriez,</i>	you should receive.
<i>ils rec-evraient,</i>	they should receive.

Comp. pres.	<i>J'aurais reçu,</i>	I should have received, &c.
-------------	-----------------------	-----------------------------

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Q. *Present or Future Tense.*

No first person.	<i>rec-evons,</i>	let us receive.
is,	receive (thou). <i>rec-evez,</i>	receive (you).
l <i>reç-oive,</i>	let him receive. <i>qu'ils reç-oivent,</i>	let them receive.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

R. *Present or Future Tense.*

<i>que—</i>	that—	<i>que—</i>	that—
<i>reç-oive,</i>	—I may receive.	<i>—nous rec-evions,</i>	—we may receive.
<i>reç-oives,</i>	—thou mayst "	<i>—vous rec-eviez,</i>	—you may "
<i>reç-oive,</i>	that he may "	<i>qu'ils reç-oivent,</i>	that they may "

S. *Preterite Tense.*

<i>que—</i>	<i>that—</i>	<i>que—</i>	<i>that—</i>
<i>—je reç-usse,</i>	<i>—I may receive.</i>	<i>—nous reç-ussions</i>	<i>—we might receive.</i>
<i>—tu reç-usses,</i>	<i>—thou mayst “</i>	<i>—vous reç-ussiez,</i>	<i>—you might receive.</i>
<i>qu’il reç-ut,</i>	<i>that he may “</i>	<i>qu’ils reç-ussent,</i>	<i>that they may “</i>

T. Comp. pres.	<i>que j’ai reç-u,</i>	that I may have received.
V. Comp. pret.	<i>que j’eusse reç-u,</i>	that I might have received.

EXERCISE XXIV.

Observe to cut off the finals *evoir* before adding the terminations.

F. I perceive a storm; he is receiving five pounds a month;
appercevoir e^{13} *recevoir* *livre* f. *par mois* m.
 you owe³ me¹ fifty guineas; the pilots perceive a ship.

devoir *guinée* f. *pilote* e^{24} e^1
 G. I was collecting the city taxes; he was receiving 5 per cent.;
percevoir e^2 e^{24} *pour*

we did conceive the difficulty of these rules.

concevoir e^{22} *règle* f.
 H. I saw the danger from my window; Josephine received a
appercevoirm. *fenêtre* f. e^{24}

present from her aunt in Paris; they perceived² us¹.
 e^5 *tante* à e^{24} *nous*.

I. I shall owe² him¹ gratitude all my life; he will perceive
redevoir lui reconnaissance f. *vie* f. e^{24}
 the castle in the distance; we shall receive you with pleasure.
 e^4 e^1 *lointain* m. e^{24} e^7 e^8

K. We have perceived your error; they have owed that sum;
 e^{24} *erreur* f. e^{24} *somme* f.
 the partners of that firm have deceived their creditors.
associé *raison* f. *décevoir* *créancier*.

EXERCISE XXV.

L. I had understood the meaning of this question; we had
concevoir *sens* m. f.
 gathered the city-toll; they had deceived every body.
percevoir *octroi* m. e^{24} *tout le monde*.

M. As soon as he had² perceived³ you¹ he laughed; when we
 e^{22} e^{24} *ria* e^{22}
 had² received³ him¹ he presented² us¹ his wife.
 e^{24} *présenta* *épouse*.

N. I shall soon have comprehended the mechanism of this
 e^{21} *concevoir* *mécanisme* m.
 engine; they will have received your orders with pleasure.
engin m. e^{24} e^8 e^7 e^8

- O. He would *still owe* one hundred and twenty pounds;
redevoir — — — — — ^{e²⁴}
 she should receive her money before Monday evening if, &c.
^{e²⁴} ^{e⁵} *avant Lundi m. soir m. e²³*
- P. We would have received the chestnuts and figs; you would
^{e²⁴} *châtaigne f. figus f.*
 have conceived a wrong idea of his character.
^{e²⁴} *faux idée f. caracer m.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION IN RE.

VENDRE, TO SELL.

Radicals.]

INFINITIVE MOOD.

[Finals.

Vend.....re.

A. Present,	<i>vend-re,</i>	to sell.
B. Participle present,	<i>vend-ant,</i>	selling.
C. Participle past,	<i>vend-u,</i>	sold.
D. Compound of the present,	<i>avoir vendu,</i>	to have sold.
E. Comp. of the part. pres.	<i>ayant-vendu,</i>	having sold.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

F. *Present Tense.**Je vends, I sell, I do sell, I am selling.*

<i>Je vend-s,</i>	I sell.	<i>nous vend-ons,</i>	we sell.
<i>tu vend-s,</i>	thou sellest.	<i>vous vend-ez,</i>	you sell.
<i>il vend,</i>	he sells.	<i>ils vend-ent,</i>	they sell.

G. *Imperfect Tense.**Je vendais, I did sell, I was selling.*

<i>Je vend-ais,</i>	I did sell.	<i>nous vend-ions,</i>	we did sell.
<i>tu vend-ais,</i>	thou didst sell.	<i>vous vend-iez,</i>	you did sell.
<i>il vend-ait,</i>	he did sell.	<i>ils vend-aient,</i>	they did sell.

H. *Preterite Tense.*

<i>Je vend-is,</i>	I sold.	<i>nous vend-îmes,</i>	we sold.
<i>tu vend-is,</i>	thou soldest.	<i>vous vend-îtes,</i>	you sold.
<i>il vend-it,</i>	he sold.	<i>ils vend-irent,</i>	they sold.

I. *Future Tense.**Je vendrai*, I shall sell, I will sell.

<i>Je vend-rai,</i>	I shall sell.	<i>nous vend-ront,</i>	we shall sell.
<i>tu vend-ras,</i>	thou shalt sell.	<i>vous vend-rez,</i>	you shall sell.
<i>il vend-ra,</i>	he shall sell.	<i>ils vend-ront,</i>	they shall sell.

K. Comp. present,	<i>J'ai vendu,</i>	I have sold.
L. Comp. imperfect,	<i>J'avais vendu,</i>	I had sold.
M. Comp. preterite,	<i>J'eus vendu,</i>	I had sold.
N. Comp. future,	<i>J'aurai vendu,</i>	I shall have sold.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

O. *Present Tense.**Je vendrais*, I would, could, should, or might sell.

<i>Je vend-rai,</i>	I should sell.	<i>nous vend-rions,</i>	we should sell.
<i>tu vend-rai,</i>	thou shouldst “	<i>vous vend-riez,</i>	you should “
<i>il vend-rai,</i>	he should “	<i>ils vend-raient,</i>	they should “

P. Comp. present, | *J'aurais vendu,* | I should have sold.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Q. *Present or Future Tense.*

No first person.	<i>vend-ons,</i>	let us sell.
<i>vend-s,</i>	<i>vend-ez,</i>	sell (you).
<i>qu'il vend-e,</i>	<i>qu'ils vend-ent,</i>	let them sell.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

R. *Present or Future Tense.*

que—	that—	que—	that—
— <i>je vend-e,</i>	—I may sell.	— <i>nous vend-ions,</i>	—we may sell.
— <i>tu vend-es,</i>	—thou mayst “	— <i>vous vend-iez,</i>	—you may sell.
<i>qu'il vend-e,</i>	that he may “	<i>qu'ils vend-ent,</i>	that they may sell.

S. *Preterite Tense.*

que—	that—	que—	that—
— <i>je vend-isse,</i>	—I might sell.	— <i>nous vend-issions,</i>	—we might sell.
— <i>tu vend-isses,</i>	—thou mightst “	— <i>vous vend-issiez,</i>	—you might “
<i>qu'il vend-ît,</i>	that he might “	<i>qu'ils vend-issent,</i>	that they might “

T. Comp. present,	<i>que j'aie vendu,</i>	that I may have sold.
V. Comp. preterite,	<i>que j'eusse vendu,</i>	that I might have sold.

EXERCISE XXVI.

- F. I am waiting for the *steam-boat*; this *young lady* is
attendre ^{e³} *batteau à vapeur* m. ^{e²}
wasting her time; we correspond in French; we do sell
perdre ^{e¹⁴} *correspondre* ^{e²¹} *français* *vendre*
tea sometimes; they come down to breakfast at eight o'clock.
thé m. *quelquefois* *descendre* ^{e¹} *déjeuner* m. ^{e¹¹}
G. I was stretching the skins; he was twisting this rope; the
étendre ^{e⁷} *tordre* *corde* f.
dog was biting; they were losing every game.
mordre ^{e¹} *perdre* ^{e¹} *tout* art. *partie* f. pl.
H. I heard the great bell; she spread the flax on the grass;
entendre ^{e¹³} *cloche* f. *épendre* *lin* m. ^{e¹⁸} *herbe* f.
we forbade the bans; they sheared the black sheep.
défendre ^{e¹} ...m. *tondre* ^{e¹} *mouton* m. pl.
I. I shall expect² you¹ to dinner; he will lose his law-suit;
attendre ^{e¹} *dinner* ^{e²⁶} *procès* m.
you will wait for the postman; we shall confound² them¹.
^{e²⁶} — *facteur* *confondre* *les*
K. I have melted the butter; he has waited for his brother.
fondre ^{e³} ^{e²⁶} ^{e³} ^{e¹}
L. I had sold my share again; the hen had laid an egg;
revendre *action* f. ^{e¹³} *pondre* *œuf* m.
we had² expected³ you¹; they had bent the sails.
^{e²⁶} *tendre* ^{e¹}

EXERCISE XXVII.

- M. When I had sold my *country house* I came into town;
^{e²²} ^{e²⁶} *campagne* f. *vins* m. *en ville* f.
as soon as he had suspended his judgment we retired.
^{e²²} *suspendre* ^{e⁴} m. *nous retirer* II.
N. I shall have rendered justice to every one; he will have
rendref. *chacun*
bent his bow; they will have confounded the facts.
^{e²⁶} *arc* m. ^{e²⁶} ^{e¹⁹}
O. I should waste my time; she would condescend to
^{e²⁶} ^{e¹⁴} *condescendre* *de*
receive² you¹; he would extend the boundaries of his park;
^{e²⁴} *étendre* *limite* f. *parc* m.
the coachmen would return the money; they forbid dancing.
^{e¹⁶} *rendre* ^{e¹} ^{e²⁶} art. *danse* f.
P. I would have defended my sister; he would have pretended
défendre ^{e¹} *prétendre*
to great honours; they would have split the wood.
^{e¹⁰} ^{e¹³} ^{e¹} *fendre* *bois* m.

Q. *Come down stairs*; let her suspend her opinion; ye people
descendre ^{e²⁷}f. *peuple* m.
 defend your country; let the passengers depend on me.
^{e²⁷} ^{e¹¹} *passager* m. *dépendre* ^{e¹⁸} ^{e²}

EXERCISE XXVIII.

R. That I may wait—; that this young lady may be wasting—; that we may correspond—; that they may come down—. S. That I might twist; that the dog might bite; that we might lose—; that they might hear—. T. That I may have spread—; that he may have forbidden—; that we may have sheared—; that they may have expected. V. That I might have melted—; that he might have waited—; that we might have lost—; that you might have sold—; that they might have bent—.

VERBS WITH NEGATION.

Conjugation of the Verb PARLER, with various Négations.

1st. NE with PAS—not or no.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

A. Present,	<i>ne pas parler,</i>	not to speak.
B. Participle present,	<i>ne parlant pas,</i>	not speaking.
D. Comp. present,	<i>n'avoir pas parlé,</i>	not to have spoken.
E. Comp. part. pres.	<i>n'ayant pas parlé,</i>	not having spoken.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

F. *Present Tense*.—I do not speak, I am not speaking, &c.

<i>Je ne parle pas.</i>	<i>nous ne parlons pas.</i>
<i>tu ne parles pas.</i>	<i>vous ne parlez pas.</i>
<i>il ne parle pas.</i>	<i>ils ne parlent pas.</i>

K. *Compound Present*.—I have not spoken, &c.

<i>Je n'ai pas parlé.</i>	<i>nous n'avons pas parlé.</i>
<i>tu n'as pas parlé.</i>	<i>vous n'avez pas parlé.</i>
<i>il n'a pas parlé.</i>	<i>ils n'ont pas parlé.</i>

2d. NE with POINT—not or no.

G. *Imperfect Tense*.—I did not speak, I was not speaking.

<i>Je ne parlais point.</i>	<i>nous ne parlions point.</i>
<i>tu ne parlais point.</i>	<i>vous ne parliez point.</i>
<i>il ne parlait point.</i>	<i>ils ne parlaient point.</i>

L. *Compound Imperfect*.—I had not spoken.

<i>Je n'avais point parlé.</i>	<i>nous n'avions point parlé.</i>
<i>tu n'avais point parlé.</i>	<i>vous n'aviez point parlé.</i>
<i>il n'avait point parlé.</i>	<i>ils n'avaient point parlé.</i>

3d. NE with PLUS—no more*, not any more.

H. *Preterite*.—I spoke no more.

<i>Je ne parlai plus.</i>	<i>nous ne parlâmes plus.</i>
<i>tu ne parlas plus.</i>	<i>vous ne parlâtes plus.</i>
<i>il ne parla plus.</i>	<i>ils ne parlèrent plus.</i>

I. *Comp. Pret.*—I had spoken no more, I had not spoken any more.

<i>Je n'eus plus parlé.</i>	<i>nous n'eûmes plus parlé.</i>
<i>tu n'eus plus parlé.</i>	<i>vous n'eûtes plus parlé.</i>
<i>il n'eut plus parlé.</i>	<i>ils n'eurent plus parlé.</i>

4th. NE with JAMAIS—never.

I. *Future*.—I shall never speak, or, will never speak.

<i>Je ne parlerai jamais.</i>	<i>nous ne parlerons jamais.</i>
<i>tu ne parleras jamais.</i>	<i>vous ne parlerez jamais.</i>
<i>il ne parlera jamais.</i>	<i>ils ne parleront jamais.</i>

N. *Comp. Future*.—I shall, or, will never have spoken.

<i>j'en aurai jamais parlé.</i>	<i>nous n'aurons jamais parlé.</i>
<i>tu n'auras jamais parlé.</i>	<i>vous n'aurez jamais parlé.</i>
<i>il n'aura jamais parlé.</i>	<i>ils n'auront jamais parlé.</i>

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

5th. NE with QUE—only.

. *Pres.*—I would, could, should, or might speak French only.

<i>je ne parlerais que français.</i>	<i>nous ne parlerions que français.</i>
<i>tu ne parlerais que français.</i>	<i>vous ne parleriez que français.</i>
<i>il ne parlerait que français.</i>	<i>ils ne parleraient que français.</i>

C. *Pres.*—I would, could, should, or might have spoken French only.

<i>j'en aurais parlé que français.</i>	<i>nous n'aurions parlé que “</i>
<i>tu n'aurais parlé que français.</i>	<i>vous n'auriez parlé que “</i>
<i>il n'aurait parlé que français.</i>	<i>ils n'auraient parlé que “</i>

* Should no more or not any more be followed by *than*, it is rendered by *ne* and *pas*; as, *Je ne parle pas plus que vous, I speak no more than you.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Q. *Present or Future.*

<i>ne parle que français,</i>	speak (thou) French only.
<i>qu'il ne parle que français,</i>	let him speak French only.
<i>ne parlons que français,</i>	let us speak French only.
<i>ne parlez que français,</i>	speak (you) French only.
<i>qu'ils ne parlent que français,</i>	let them speak French only.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

R. <i>que je ne parle pas,</i>	that I may not speak.
S. <i>que je ne parlasse pas,</i>	that I might not speak.
T. <i>que je n'aie pas parlé,</i>	that I may not have spoken.
V. <i>que je n'eusse pas parlé,</i>	that I might not have spoken.

OF NEGATIVES.

From the preceding model it will be observed that *not* or *no* are rendered in French by *ne pas*, or *ne point*;^{*} *no more*, *not any more*, by *ne plus*; never, by *ne jamais*; and only, by *ne que*; placing *ne* before the verb, and *pas*, *point*, *plus*, *jamais*, or *que*, after the verb, in simple tenses, and between the auxiliary verb and the participle, in compound tenses.

With the present infinitive *ne pas*, *ne point*, *ne plus*, or *ne jamais*, are generally placed before the verb.

Pas, *point*, *plus*, and *jamais*, followed by a noun in a partitive sense, require *de* before the noun, as *je n'ai pas de pain*, I have no bread (i. e. not any or no quantity of bread).

The preceding is a model for any verb used negatively.

EXERCISE XXIX.

- A. Not to speak French is a mark of ignorance; B. Not ^{e¹⁷} telling the truth he is despised; C. He was sorry ^{e²⁸} not to ^{marque f. f.} *disant* ^{e¹⁷} *méprisé* ^H *faché de* have danced; E. Not having ^{e¹⁷} taken away the stone, he fell. ^{oter} ^{e²} *tomba*
F. I have no fruit *to-day*; she does not like the sea; we do ^{e¹⁹} ^{e²²}
...m. *aujourd'hui*

* *Point* is a stronger negative than *pas*; *point* denies absolutely and without exception: *pas*, with modification; *je ne vais pas à la comédie*, I am not going to the theatre; *je ne vais point à la comédie*, I don't go to the theatre.

not *pull off* our hats; you are not happy; they do not like [^]
oter ^{e¹} f. s. ^{e⁸} ^{e¹⁹} art.
 rabbits; the travellers are not here this evening.
lapin m. *voyageur* m. *ici* ^{e²⁵}
 G. I was not ringing; she did not talk with him; he had no
sonner *causer* ^{e⁷} ^{e²⁴}
 pretensions; the cat did not scratch; we were speaking French.
prétension f. ^{e²} m. *égratigner* ^{e¹⁷} ^{e²⁴}
 H. I never avoid my friends; the brewers had no more water.
^{e¹⁹} ^{e⁵} *brasseurs* m. ^{e¹}
 I. I shall never succeed; he will not eat any more nuts; he
^{e²²} *manger* *noisettes* f.
 will only reap six acres; they will never return his visit.
^{e¹⁹} *arpent* m. ^{e²⁷} *visite* f.

EXERCISE XXX.

K. I have not been in France this year; he has never
^{e²¹}f. *année* f.
 travelled; we have only received a hundred bales of cotton;
voyager ^{e²⁴} — *ballot* m. *coton* m.
 they have never visited the hospital.
visiter : *hopital* m.
 L. He had caught no more fish; you had not sent the box;
attraper *poisson* m. *envoyer* ^{e¹}
 she had not lost any time; we had not shut the door.
^{e²³} ^{e¹⁴} *fermer* ^{e³}
 N. You will not have built a castle; they will not have swam.
^{e²²} ^{e⁴} *nager*
 O. I would not sell my inheritance; he would never fall; we
^{e²⁰} : *héritage* m. ^{e¹⁹}
 would eat no more meat; you would not answer [^] her brother.
^{e²⁰} ^{e⁵} *répondre* à ^{e¹}
 P. I would not have paid the son; they would not have dreamt.
^{e¹⁷} ^{e⁸} *rêver*
 Q. Do not torment² me¹; let her sing only *once*; let us never
tourmenter me ^{e¹⁴} *une fois*
 refuse our mite to the widow; [^] friends, do not speak so loud.
^{e¹⁷} *morceau* m. *veuve* mes ^{e⁵} ^{e¹⁷} ^{e⁹} ^{e¹⁷}

VERBS WITH INTERROGATION.

In French, as in English, interrogation is formed by placing the pronoun, subject of the verb, after the verb, with a hyphen between the pronoun and the verb; and in compound

tenses, immediately after the auxiliary verb. Should the subject be a noun, it stands before the verb; and one of the pronouns, *il, ils, elle, elles*, corresponding with the noun in gender and number, is placed after the verb, or immediately after the auxiliary. See the four last lines of the present indicative.

When, with interrogation, surprise is intended to be expressed, the French place *est-ce que* before the verb, without disturbing the order of the words.

Conjugation of the Verb AIMER, to Love, with interrogation.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

F. *Present Tense.*

Aimé-je?* or *est-ce que j'aime?* do I love? or am I loving?

aimé-je?.....*aimes-tu?*.....*aime-t-il?*.....*aime-t-elle?*

aimons-nous?..... *aimez-vous?*.....*aiment-ils?*.....*aiment-elles?*

son frère aime-t-il?†

does his brother love?

sa sœur aime-t-elle?

does his sister love?

ses frères aiment-ils?

do his brothers love?

ses sœurs aiment-elles?

do his sisters love?

G. *Imperfect Tense.*

aimais-je? or *est-ce que j'aimais?* did I love, or was I loving?

aimais-je?.....*aimais-tu?*.....*aimait-il?*.....*aimait-elle?*

aimions-nous?.....*aimiez-vous?*.....*aimaient-ils?*.....*aimaient-elles?*

est-ce que son fils aimait?

did his son love?

est-ce que ses fils aimaient?

did his sons love?

H.—*aimai-je?* did I love?

aimai-je?.....*aimas-tu?*.....*aima-t-il?*.....*aima-t-elle?*

aimâmes-nous?.....*aimâtes-vous?*.....*aimèrent-ils?*.....*aimèrent-elles?*

I.—*aimerai-je?* or *est-ce que j'aimerai?* shall I love?

aimerai-je?.....*aimeras-tu?*.....*aimera-t-il?*.....*aimera-t-elle?*

aimerons-nous?.....*aimerez-vous?*.....*aimeront-ils?*.....*aimeront-elles?*

* When the first person singular ends in faint *e*, it takes a close accent (*é*) when immediately followed by *je*, and the *e* in *je* becomes faint.

† In interrogative sentences when the third person ends in a vowel the letter *-t-* is placed between the verb and the pronoun.

K. *ai-je aimé?* or *est-ce que j'ai aimé?* have I loved?
ai-je aimé?.....*as-tu aimé?*.....*a-t-il aimé?*
avons-nous aimé?.....*avez-vous aimé?*.....*ont-ils aimé?*

L. *avais-je aimé?* or *est-ce que j'avais aimé?* had I loved?
avais-je aimé?.....*avais-tu aimé?*.....*avait-il aimé?*
avions-nous aimé?.....*aviez-vous aimé?*.....*avaient-ils aimé?*

N. *aurai-je aimé?* or *est-ce que j'aurai aimé?* shall I have loved?
aurai-je aimé?.....*auras-tu aimé?*.....*aura-t-il aimé?*
aurons-nous aimé?.....*aurez-vous aimé?*.....*auront-ils aimé?*

O. *aimerais-je?* or *est-ce que j'aimerais?* should I love?
aimerais-je?.....*aimerais-tu?*.....*aimerait-il?*
aimerions-nous?.....*aimeriez-vous?*.....*aimeraient-ils?*

P. *aurais-je aimé?* or *est-ce que j'aurais aimé?* should I have "
aurais-je aimé?.....*aurais-tu aimé?*.....*aurait-il aimé?*
aurions-nous aimé?.....*auriez-vous aimé?*.....*auraient-ils aimé?*

It will be observed that interrogation is not used in the compound preterite, imperative mood, and tenses of the subjunctive.

EXERCISE XXXI.

- F. Do I speak correctly? am I losing*? does he study much?
e¹⁷ correctement e²⁶ e¹⁷ beaucoup
do you play at ^Δ chess? are they singing! do they scold!
jouer art. échecs pl. e¹⁴ gronder
G. Had I ^Δ good reasons? was he asking for me? were you
e¹⁰ e⁵ raison f. demander e⁸
swimming! were they tall? were your sisters at the concert?
e²⁰ grand e¹ m.
H. Did I eat *too much*? did she love her cousin? did we arrive
e²⁰ trop aimer e⁹ e¹⁸
before you? did the girls dance all ^Δ night!
e²⁵ e¹ e¹⁷ e⁹ art. e¹
I. Shall I finish this before to-morrow ^Δ night? shall Thomas
e²¹ ce-ci e²⁵ demain soir m.

* *Est-ce que* is also used with the first person singular of the Indicative of verbs ending in several consonants, to avoid the harsh sound that would arise from the clash of these consonants, as *dors-je?* do I sleep? *vends-je?* do I sell? better to say, *est-ce que je dors? est-ce que je vends?*

plough the field? shall we breakfast here? will the carpenters
labourer e¹ e²⁶ e²⁹ charpentier
 work?

K. Have I united all my friends? has the postman delivered
e¹⁷ unir e⁹ e⁵ e²⁶ délivrer
 my letters? have they shipped the goods for Jamaica?
e¹ embarquer e¹⁸ e⁹ jamaïque f.

EXERCISE XXXII.

L. Had I hissed too loud! had my clerk paid the porter!
siffler e⁸ fort commis e¹⁷ porte-fais
 had you lighted the candle? had the plumbers finished?
allumer e¹¹ plombier e²¹

N. Shall I have waited in vain? will she have replied to my
e²⁶ e²¹ répondre
 objections? shall we have fulfilled our promises?
..... f. e²¹ e¹³

O. Should I improve by his lessons? would he buy all the
profiter de e¹³ e¹⁹ e⁹
 cargo? would you receive a present? would you conclude it?
cargaison f. e²⁴ e⁵ conclure le

P. Would I have scolded the servants? would she have chosen
e³¹ e⁹ choisir
 this colour? would the ministers have passed that law? would
e⁸ ministre passer e⁸
 the Egyptians have delivered up the Turkish² fleet¹?
e¹⁷ rendre e⁸ e¹

VERBS WITH NEGATION AND INTERROGATION.

To add negation to a verb already interrogative, place *ne* before the verb, and either of the particles *pas*, *point*, *jamais*, *plus*, or *que*, after the pronoun already placed after the verb. When *est-ce que* is used, these particles are placed immediately after the verb, and in compound tenses immediately after the auxiliary; except *que*, which is placed after the participle.

F.—*n'aimé-je pas?* or *est-ce que je n'aime pas?* do I not love?

n'aimé-je pas?
n'aimes-tu pas?
n'aime-t-il pas?

n'aimons-nous pas?
n'aimez-vous pas?
n'aiment-ils pas?

G.—*n'aimais-je pas?* or, *est-ce que je n'aimais pas?* did I not love?

<i>n'aimais-je point?</i>	<i>n'aimions-nous point?</i>
<i>n'aimais-tu point?</i>	<i>n'aimiez-vous point?</i>
<i>n'aimait-il point?</i>	<i>n'aimaient-ils point?</i>

H.—*n'aimai-je plus?* or, *est-ce que, &c.?* did I love no more?

<i>n'aimai-je plus?</i>	<i>n'aimâmes-nous plus?</i>
<i>n'aimas-tu plus?</i>	<i>n'aimâtes-vous plus?</i>
<i>n'aima-t-il plus?</i>	<i>n'aimèrent-ils plus?</i>

I.—*n'aimerai-je jamais, &c.?* shall I never love?

<i>n'aimerai-je jamais?</i>	<i>n'aimerons-nous jamais?</i>
<i>n'aimeras-tu jamais?</i>	<i>n'aimerez-vous jamais?</i>
<i>n'aimera-t-il jamais?</i>	<i>n'aimeront-ils jamais?</i>

K.—*n'ai-je pas aimé, &c.?* have I not loved?

<i>n'ai-je pas aimé?</i>	<i>n'avons-nous pas aimé?</i>
<i>n'as-tu pas aimé?</i>	<i>n'avez-vous pas aimé?</i>
<i>n'a-t-il pas aimé?</i>	<i>n'ont-ils pas aimé?</i>

L.—*n'avais-je point aimé, &c.?* had I not loved?

<i>n'avais-je point aimé?</i>	<i>n'avions-nous point aimé?</i>
<i>n'avais-tu point aimé?</i>	<i>n'aviez-vous point aimé?</i>
<i>n'avait-il point aimé?</i>	<i>n'avaient-ils point aimé?</i>

N.—*n'aurai-je jamais aimé, &c.?* shall I never have loved?

<i>n'aurai-je jamais aimé?</i>	<i>n'aurons-nous jamais aimé?</i>
<i>n'auras-tu jamais aimé?</i>	<i>n'aurez-vous jamais aimé?</i>
<i>n'aura-t-il jamais aimé?</i>	<i>n'auront-ils jamais aimé?</i>

O.—*n'aimerais que lui?* should I love him only?

<i>n'aimerais-je que lui?</i>	<i>n'aimerions-nous que lui?</i>
<i>n'aimerais-tu que lui?</i>	<i>n'aimeriez-vous que lui?</i>
<i>n'aimerait-il que lui?</i>	<i>n'aimeraient-ils que lui?</i>

P.—*n'aurais-je aimé que lui?* should I have loved him only?

<i>n'aurais-je aimé que lui?</i>	<i>n'aurions-nous aimé que lui?</i>
<i>n'aurais-tu aimé que lui?</i>	<i>n'auriez-vous aimé que lui?</i>
<i>n'aurait-il aimé que lui?</i>	<i>n'auraient-ils aimé que lui?</i>

EXERCISE XXXIII.

Same as Exercise XXXI., with INTERROGATION.

F. Do I not speak correctly? am I not losing? does he not study much? do you never play chess? are they not singing? do they never scold? G. Had I not good reasons? was he not asking for me? were you not swimming? were they not tall? were not your sisters at the concert? H. Did I not eat too much? did she only love her cousin? did we not arrive before you? did the girls not dance all night? I. Shall I finish this only to-morrow? will Thomas never plough the field shall we never breakfast? will the carpenters work no more K. Have I not united all my friends? has the postman never delivered my letters? have they not shipped the goods!

EXERCISE XXXIV.

Same as Exercise XXXII., with INTERROGATION.

L. Had I not hissed too loud? had my clerk not paid the porter? had you not lighted the candle? had the plumbers not finished? N. shall I *not* have waited *any more*? will she not have replied to my objection? shall we not have fulfilled our promises? O. Should I not improve any more by his lessons would he buy only half the cargo? would you never receive a present? would you not conclude it? P. Would I not have scolded the servants? would she not have chosen this colour would the minister never have passed that law? would not the Egyptians have delivered up the Turkish fleet?

ACTIVE VERBS USED IN A PASSIVE SENSE.

Active verbs form their passive state by adding to their participle past any of the tenses of the verb *être*, to be; the participle is then declinable, that is, it assumes the gender and number of the subject of the verb, taking invariably *e* for the fem. and *s* for the plural, whatever be their termination.

Conjugation of an Active Verb used in a passive sense.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

A. Present,	<i>être aimé,</i>	to be loved.
B. Participle present,	<i>étant aimé,</i>	being loved.
C. Participle past,	<i>été aimé,</i>	been loved.
D. Comp. of the present,	<i>avoir été aimé,</i>	to have been loved
E. Comp. of the part. pres.	<i>ayant été aimé,</i>	having been loved

INDICATIVE MOOD.

F. *Present Tense.*

Mas.	Fem.	
<i>Je suis aimé,</i>	<i>Je suis aimée,</i>	I am loved.
<i>tu es aimé,</i>	<i>tu es aimée,</i>	thou art loved.
<i>il est aimé,</i>	<i>elle est aimée,</i>	he or she is loved.
<i>nous sommes " "</i>	<i>nous sommes aimées,</i>	we are loved.
<i>vous êtes aimés,</i>	<i>vous êtes aimées,</i>	you are loved.
<i>ils sont aimés,</i>	<i>elles sont aimées,</i>	they are loved.

Using the pupil to be well acquainted with the verb *être*, we have only given the first person singular of the 5 tenses, but they should be recited throughout, observing that the three persons plural take an *s* in the termination of the participle (as in the present tense), whether masculine or feminine.

Masculine.	Fem.	
<i>Je suis aimé,</i>	<i>Je suis aimée,</i>	I was loved.
<i>tu es aimé,</i>	<i>tu es aimée,</i>	I was loved.
<i>il sera aimé,</i>	<i>il sera aimée,</i>	I shall be loved.
<i>il a été aimé,</i>	<i>il a été aimée,</i>	I have been loved.
<i>il avait été aimé,</i>	<i>il avait été aimée,</i>	I had been loved.
<i>il ira être aimé,</i>	<i>il ira être aimée,</i>	I shall have been loved.
<i>il va être aimé,</i>	<i>il va être aimée,</i>	I should be loved.
<i>il aurait été aimé,</i>	<i>il aurait été aimée,</i>	I should have been loved.
<i>sois aimé,</i>	<i>sois aimée,</i>	be (thou) loved.
<i>qu'il soit aimé,</i>	<i>qu'elle soit aimée,</i>	let him be loved.
<i>qu'elle soit —</i>	<i>qu'elle soit —</i>	let her be loved.
<i>soient aimés,</i>	<i>soient aimées,</i>	let us be loved.
<i>soient aimés,</i>	<i>soient aimées,</i>	be (you) loved.
<i>qu'ils soient aimés,</i>	<i>qu'elles soient aimées,</i>	let them be loved.
<i>qu'elles soient —</i>	<i>qu'elles soient —</i>	let them be loved.
<i>je sois aimé,</i>	<i>je sois aimée,</i>	that I may be loved.
<i>je fusse aimé,</i>	<i>je fusse aimée,</i>	that I might be loved.
<i>j'aie été aimé,</i>	<i>j'aie été aimée,</i>	that I may have been "
<i>j'eusse été aimé,</i>	<i>j'eusse été aimée,</i>	that I might have been "

—As negation and interrogation are the same in the passive as in the active sense, we have intermixed them in the following exercises.

EXERCISE XXXV.

F. I am alarmed; thou art astonished; she is praised; they
allarmer *étonner* *louer* f.
 are not drowned, but very wet. G. Was she ruined? she was
noyer *e*⁶ *e*⁷ *mouiller* *ruiner*
 not applauded; Semeramis was honoured by the people; we
*e*²² f. *honorer* *e*³² *e*²⁷
 were only benumbed with cold. H. Was she delighted [▲] to
engourdir *e*¹⁸ *froid* m. *charmer* *de*
 see² you¹? were you warned? I. Shall I be examined on
voir *avertir* f. *examiner* *e*¹⁸
[▲] analysis? I shall not be prepared; then you will be scolded;
 art. *analyse* f. *préparer* *alors* *e*²¹
 this flower will be spoiled; we shall never be united. K. Her
*e*¹ *gâter* *e*²¹
 curiosity has been punished; the sponge has been lost since
curiosité f. *e*²¹ *éponge* f. *e*²⁸ *depuis*
 Tuesday; we have not been sheltered from the rain; you have
mardi m. f. *abriter* *e*¹¹
 been forgotten by the king.
oublier *e*³ *e*⁷

EXERCISE XXXVI.

L. The milliner has been paid before the tailor; we had
marchande de mode *e*¹⁷ *e*²⁵ *e*¹³
 been insulted by the mob; the sails had not been spread.
insulter *e*³ *canaille* f. *e*³ *e*²⁸
 M. Had I been betrayed? she had been restored to her
*e*²¹ *rendre*
 husband; had not the partridges been seen? the captives had
époux *perdrix* f. *e*²⁵ *captif* m.
 been ransomed.
racheter
 N. She will have been alarmed; their conduct will not have
*e*³⁵ *e*⁹
 been approved; will Amelia have been deceived?
approuver *Amélie* *tromper*.
 O. I should not be obeyed if, &c.; we should be blessed if, &c.;
 f. *e*²² *bénir*
 the flies would be killed if, &c.; the church would be rebuilt if, &c.
mouche f. *tuer* *e*⁷ *rebâtir*
 P. She would have been heard with pleasure; your conversation
*e*²⁶ *e*⁷ *e*⁸ f.
 would not have been admired.
admiré

Q. *Young ladies*, be warned by your past³ danger¹; let the
mesdemoiselles *avertir* e²³ m.
 colonies be well protected.
colonie f. e³ *protéger*

OF REFLECTIVE VERBS.

Reflective verbs are always conjugated with two pronouns, or a noun and pronoun, of the same person and number, the one being the subject, the other the object of the verb. Reflective verbs have no conjugation peculiar to themselves, they follow the one indicated by the present of the infinitive—thus, when regular, those ending in *er* are conjugated like *parler*; those ending in *ir*, like *punir*; those ending in *oir*, like *recevoir*; and those ending in *re*, like *vendre*.

Paradigm of a Reflective Verb.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

A. Present,	<i>se couper,</i>	to cut one's self.
B. Participle present,	<i>se coupant,</i>	cutting one's self.
C. Participle past,	<i>coupé-e-s,</i>	cut.
D. Comp. of the pres.	<i>s'être coupé,</i>	to have cut one's self.
E. Comp. part. present,	<i>s'étant coupé,</i>	having cut one's self.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

F. *Present Tense.*

Je me coupe, I cut—I do cut—I am cutting myself.

Sing. <i>Je me coupe,</i>	I cut myself.
" <i>tu te coupes,</i>	thou cuttest thyself.
" <i>il se coupe,</i>	he cuts himself.
" <i>elle se coupe,</i>	she cuts herself.
" <i>l'homme se coupe,</i>	the man cuts himself.
" <i>la femme se coupe,</i>	the woman cuts herself.
Plur. <i>nous nous coupons,</i>	we cut ourselves.
" <i>vous vous coupez,</i>	you cut yourselves.
" <i>ils se coupent,</i>	they cut themselves.
" <i>elles se coupent,</i>	they cut themselves.
" <i>les hommes se coupent,</i>	the men cut themselves.
" <i>les femmes se coupent,</i>	the women cut themselves.

G. *Imperfect Tense.*

Je me coupais, I did cut—I was cutting myself.

<i>Je me coupais.</i>	<i>nous nous coupions.</i>
<i>tu te coupais.</i>	<i>vous vous coupiez.</i>
<i>il se coupait.</i>	<i>ils se coupaient.</i>

H. *Preterite Tense.*

Je me coupai, I cut myself.

<i>Je me coupai.</i>	<i>nous nous coupâmes.</i>
<i>tu te coupas.</i>	<i>vous vous coupâtes.</i>
<i>il se coupa.</i>	<i>ils se coupèrent.</i>

I. *Future Tense.*

Je me couperai, I shall—I will cut myself.

<i>Je me couperai.</i>	<i>nous nous couperons.</i>
<i>tu te couperas.</i>	<i>vous vous couperez.</i>
<i>il se coupera.</i>	<i>ils se couperont.</i>

Observe that the compound tenses of reflective verbs are formed in French with the verb *être*, and in English with the verb *to have*, and that the participle agrees in gender and number with the object of the verb that precedes, taking *e* for the feminine and *s* for the plural, whatever be its termination.

K. *Compound of the Present.*

Sing. <i>Je me suis coupé,</i>	I have cut myself.
“ <i>tu t'es coupé,</i>	thou hast cut thyself.
“ <i>il s'est coupé,</i>	he has cut himself.
Fem. <i>elle s'est coupée,</i>	she has cut herself.
“ <i>l'homme s'est coupé,</i>	the man has cut himself.
Fem. <i>la femme s'est coupée,</i>	the woman has cut herself.
Plur. <i>nous nous sommes coupés,</i>	we have cut ourselves.
“ <i>vous vous êtes coupés,</i>	you have cut yourselves.
“ <i>ils se sont coupés,</i>	they have cut themselves.
Fem. <i>elles se sont coupées,</i>	they have cut themselves.
“ <i>les hommes se sont coupés,</i>	the men have cut themselves.
Fem. <i>les femmes se sont coupées,</i>	the women have cut themselves.

L. *Compound of the Imperfect.*

Je m'étais coupé, I had cut myself.

<i>Je m'étais coupé.</i>	<i>nous nous étions coupés.</i>
<i>tu t'étais coupé.</i>	<i>vous vous étiez coupés.</i>
<i>il s'était coupé.</i>	<i>ils s'étaient coupés.</i>
Fem. <i>elle s'était coupée.</i>	<i>elles s'étaient coupées.</i>

M. *Compound of the Preterite.**Je me fus coupé*, I had cut myself.

<i>Je me fus coupé.</i>	<i>nous nous fûmes coupés.</i>
<i>tu te fus coupé.</i>	<i>vous vous fûtes coupés.</i>
<i>il se fut coupé.</i>	<i>ils se furent coupés.</i>
em. <i>elle se fut coupée.</i>	<i>elles se furent coupées.</i>

N. *Compound of the Future.**Je me serai coupé*, I shall—I will have cut myself.

<i>Je me serai coupé.</i>	<i>nous nous serons coupés.</i>
<i>tu te seras coupé.</i>	<i>vous vous serez coupés.</i>
<i>il se sera coupé.</i>	<i>ils se seront coupés.</i>
em. <i>elle se sera coupée.</i>	<i>elles se seront coupées.</i>

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

O. *Present Tense.**Je me couperais*, I would, could, should, or might cut myself.

<i>Je me couperais.</i>	<i>nous nous couperions.</i>
<i>tu te couperais.</i>	<i>vous vous couperiez.</i>
<i>il se couperait.</i>	<i>ils se couperaient.</i>

P. *Compound of the Present.**Je me serais coupé*, I would, could, &c. have cut myself.

<i>Je me serais coupé.</i>	<i>nous nous serions coupés.</i>
<i>tu te serais coupé.</i>	<i>vous vous seriez coupés.</i>
<i>il se serait coupé.</i>	<i>ils se seraient coupés.</i>
<i>elle se serait coupée.</i>	<i>elles se seraient coupées.</i>

Q. IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>coupe toi,</i>	cut thyself.
<i>qu'il se coupe,</i>	let him cut himself.
<i>coupons nous,</i>	let us cut ourselves.
<i>coupez vous,</i>	cut yourselves.
<i>qu'ils se coupent,</i>	let them cut themselves.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

R. *Present Tense.**Que je me coupe*, that I may cut myself.

<i>que je me coupe.</i>	<i>que nous nous coupions.</i>
<i>que tu te coupes.</i>	<i>que vous vous coupiez.</i>
<i>qu'il se coupe.</i>	<i>qu'ils se coupent.</i>

S. *Preterite Tense.*

Que je me coupasse, that I might cut myself.

que je me coupasse.
que tu te coupasses.
qu'il se coupât.

que nous nous coupassions.
que vous vous coupassiez.
qu'ils se coupassent.

T. *Compound of the Present.*

Que je me sois coupé, that I may have cut myself.

que je me sois coupé.
que tu te sois coupé.
qu'il se soit coupé.
qu'elle se soit coupée.

que nous nous soyons coupés.
que vous vous soyez coupés.
qu'il se soient coupés.
qu'elles se soient coupées.

V. *Compound of the Preterite.*

Que je me fusse coupé, that I might have cut myself.

que je me fusse coupé.
que tu te fusses coupé.
qu'il se fût coupé.
qu'elle se fut coupée.

que nous nous fussions coupés.
que vous vous fussiez coupés.
qu'ils se fussent coupés.
qu'elles se fussent coupées.

Observe.—When a reflexive verb, in any part of the infinitive, is preceded by another verb or verbs, the pronoun that accompanies the reflexive verb as its object, must be of the same person and number as the subject of the first verb, as, I ran to bathe myself, &c.

Je courus me baigner.
tu courus te baigner.
il courut se baigner.
elle courut se baigner.

nous courûmes nous baigner.
vous courûtes vous baigner.
ils coururent se baigner.
elles coururent se baigner.

By this example it will be seen that the object immediately preceding the reflexive verb *se baigner*, always corresponds in person and number with the subject of the verb *courus*, &c.

RECIPROCAL VERBS are, like reflexive verbs, conjugated with two pronouns, or a noun and a pronoun; but as they express the actions of persons or things on one another, they can only be used in the plural; they are generally accompanied by the indefinite pronoun *l'un l'autre*, when only two are acting, and by *les uns les autres*, when more than two; also by *entre*; all of which are rendered English by one another, as—

nous nous exposons l'un l'autre,
nous nous exposons les uns les autres,
nous nous entre-aidons,

we expose one another.
we expose one another.
we help one another.

EXERCISES ON REFLECTIVE AND RECIPROCAL VERBS.

Note.—All the verbs in the following exercises being in the present of the infinitive, and preceded by *se* or *s'*, are reflexive, though sometimes not so in English; the second pronoun, object of the verb, must therefore properly correspond with the first pronoun or noun, *subject* of the verb, by changing *se*, either into *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous*, *vous*, or *se*.

EXERCISE XXXVII.

- A. I am going to bathe myself; B. he fell in defending himself.
vais se baigner *tomba e²¹ se défendre*
- D. We are very glad [^] to have established ourselves here.
bien aise de être s'établir e²⁰
- F. I amuse myself; he rests every day; we are warming ourselves; you are sacrificing one another; they applaud themselves.
s'amuser se reposer e⁶ se chauffer
se sacrifier s'applaudir
- G. I was losing myself in that wood; she was preparing herself [^] to dance; he was diverting himself in a boat.
se perdre e¹ e²⁷ se préparer
^à *e¹⁷ se divertir e¹ e¹⁰*
- H. In going to your house I hurt myself; he made use of his interest; you applied to our friends as soon as you perceived [^] your error; these two officers wounded one another in battle.
e²¹ allant chez-vous se blesser se servir
intérêt m. s'adresser e¹⁵ e²² s'apercevoir de
^{e²⁴} *e¹ se blesser e²¹ e¹*
- I. I shall be anxious [^] to serve² you; he will rise before me; we will rejoice at your good fortune; they will be married before twelve o'clock; they will love one another.
s'empresser de servir se lever e²⁵ e²
se réjouir de e⁵f. se marier
^{e²⁵} ^{e¹⁸} *s'entre-aimer*

Observe to make the participle past agree in gender and number with the direct object that precedes the verb, *e* fem. *s* plu.

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

- K. I have often rested myself under this tree; she has fallen asleep; this rose has faded; we have exposed one another; you have boasted of your talents; they have dressed (reciprocal) themselves.
^{e³} ^{e²⁷} *sous e⁷*
s'endormir ...f. se flétrir s'exposer
se vanterm. s'habiller

L. I had enriched myself; she had *taken a walk* in the
s'enrichir *se promener* *e*¹
botanic garden; she had *fainted away*; you had plunged into
jardin des plantes m. *s'évanouir* *se plonger dans*
the water; these two widows had distrusted one another.
*e*¹ *e*³⁰ *se méfier* *dé*

M. When she had rested herself she continued her way; when
*e*²² *e*³⁷ *continuer* H. *chemin* m. *e*²¹
we had approached we sounded the trumpet; as soon as the
s'approcher *sonner* H. *de* *trompette* f. *e*²²
boatmen had rested themselves they rowed.
*e*¹⁵ *e*³⁷ *ramer* H.

N. I shall have cured myself; the river will have overflowed;
se guérir *rivière* f. *se déborder*
they will have embarked; they will have withdrawn themselves.
s'embarquer f. *se retirer*

EXERCISE XXXIX.

O. If I were at home, I should laugh at your threats; with
à *chez moi* *se moquer de* *menace* f. *e*¹
a little money we should free ourselves from slavery.
peu de *e*⁶ *s'affranchir* *art. esclavage* m.

P. I should have dishonoured myself; those fishermen would
se déshonorer *pêcheur*

have drowned themselves; those two madmen would have
se noyer *fou*

killed one another. Q. Get up, inquire if there are any
*e*³⁰ *se lever* *s'informer* *e*²² *y avoir*

news; let us refresh ourselves; let them divert themselves.
nouvelles f. *se rafraîchir* *f. se divertir* (two pers.)

R. (See Ex. 37.) That I may amuse myself; that he may
rest himself; that you may warm yourself; (sing.) that they
may applaud one another. S. That she might prepare herself;
that he might divert himself; that I may have hurt myself;
that she may have made use—. V. That you might have
rejoiced—.

Conjugation of a Reflective Verb with Negation.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

A. Present	<i>ne pas se couper,</i>	not to cut	"
B. Participle present,	<i>ne se coupant pas,</i>	not cutting	"
D. Compound present,	<i>ne s'être pas coupé,</i>	not to have	"
E. Comp. part. present,	<i>ne s'étant pas coupé,</i>	not having	"

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. <i>Je ne me coupe pas,</i>	I do not cut myself.
2. <i>Je ne me coupais point,</i>	I did not cut myself.
3. <i>Je ne me coupai plus,</i>	I did not cut myself any more.
4. <i>Je ne me couperai jamais,</i>	I shall never cut myself.
5. <i>Je ne me suis pas coupé,</i>	I have not cut myself.
6. <i>Je ne m'étais point coupé,</i>	I had not cut myself.
7. <i>Je ne me fus plus coupé,</i>	I had cut myself no more.
8. <i>Je ne me serai pas coupé,</i>	I shall not have cut myself.
9. <i>Je ne me couperais pas,</i>	I should not cut myself.
10. <i>Je ne me serais pas coupé,</i>	I should not have cut myself.

For the remaining part of these tenses see page 99.

Q. No first person singular.

1. <i>il ne se coupe pas,</i>	cut not (thymself.)
2. <i>il ne se coupait point,</i>	let him not cut himself.
3. <i>ils ne se coupent pas,</i>	let us not cut ourselves.
4. <i>ils ne se coupent pas,</i>	do not cut yourselves.
5. <i>ils ne se coupent pas,</i>	let them not cut themselves.

1. <i>que je ne me coupe pas,</i>	that I may not cut myself.
2. <i>que je ne me coupasse pas,</i>	that I might not cut myself.
3. <i>que je ne me sois pas coupé,</i>	that I may not have cut “
4. <i>que je ne me fusse pas coupé,</i>	that I might not have cut “

The negative particle *ne* always precedes the verb, and *mes* after the subject, and before the object, when the latter precedes the verb.

EXERCISE XL.

Same as Exercise XXXVII., with NEGATION and COMPLEMENT.

A. I am not going to bathe myself. B. He never fell in fending himself. D. We are very glad never to have tablished ourselves here. F. I do not amuse myself; he es not rest every day; we never warm ourselves; you are t sacrificing one another; they are not applauding them- lves. G. I was not losing myself—; she was not preparing rself—; he did never divert himself—. H. In going to ur house I did not hurt myself—; he made no more use —; you only applied to our friends when—; these two icers did not wound one another—; I shall only be anxious serve you—; he will never use—; we will rejoice no more—; ay will not be married—; they will not love one another.

EXERCISE XII.

Same as Exercises XXXVIII. and XXXIX., with NEGATION and COMPLEMENT.

K. I have never rested myself—; she has only fallen asleep; this rose has not faded; we have never exposed one another; you have not boasted—; they have not dressed themselves. L. I had not enriched myself; she had not taken a walk—; she had not fainted away; you had plunged no more into the water; these two widows had not distrusted one another. N. I shall not have cured myself; the river will not have overflowed; they will not have embarked; they will not have withdrawn themselves. O. I should not laugh at—; we should only free ourselves—. P. I should have dishonoured myself no more. Q. Do not get up—.

Conjugation of a Reflective Verb with Interrogation.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

F. <i>me coupé-je?</i>	do I cut, or am I cutting myself?
G. <i>me coupais-je?</i>	did I cut, or was I cutting myself?
H. <i>me coupai-je?</i>	did I cut myself?
I. <i>me couperai-je?</i>	shall I, or will I cut myself?
K. <i>me suis-je coupé?</i>	have I cut myself?
L. <i>m'étais-je coupé?</i>	had I cut myself?
N. <i>me serai-je coupé?</i>	shall I have cut myself?
O. <i>me couperais-je?</i>	should I cut myself?
P. <i>me serais-je coupé?</i>	should I have cut myself.

For the remainder of these tenses see page 99.

EXERCISE XLII.

Same as Exercise XXXVII. and XXXVIII., with INTERROGATION and COMPLEMENT.

F. Do I amuse myself? does he rest—? are we warming ourselves? are you sacrificing one another? G. Was I losing myself—? was she preparing herself? I. Shall I be anxious—? will he rise before me? shall we rejoice—? will they be married—? K. Have I often rested myself—? has she fallen asleep? has this rose faded? L. Had I enriched myself? had she taken a walk—? N. Shall I have cured myself? will the river have overflowed? O. Should I laugh at your threats—? should we free ourselves—? P. Should I have dishonoured myself? would those fishermen have drowned themselves?

Conjugation of a Reflective Verb, with Negation and Interrogation.

INDICATIVE AND CONDITIONAL MOODS.

F. <i>ne me coupé-je pas?</i>	do I not cut myself?
G. <i>ne me coupais-je pas?</i>	did I not cut myself?
H. <i>ne me coupai-je pas?</i>	did I not cut myself?
I. <i>ne me couperai-je pas?</i>	shall I not cut myself?
K. <i>ne me suis-je pas coupé?</i>	have I not cut myself?
L. <i>ne métais pas coupé?</i>	had I not cut myself?
N. <i>ne me serai-je pas coupé?</i>	shall I not have cut myself?
O. <i>ne me couperais-je pas?</i>	should I not cut myself?
P. <i>ne me serais-je pas coupé?</i>	should I not have cut myself?

For the remainder of these tenses see page 87.

EXERCISE XLIII.

Same as Exercise XLII., with NEGATION, INTERROGATION, and COMPLEMENT.

F. Do I not amuse myself? does he not rest—? do we never warm ourselves? are you not sacrificing one another? G. Was I not losing myself—? was she not preparing herself—? I. Shall I only be anxious to serve you? will he never rise—? shall we rejoice no more? will they not be married—? K. Have I never rested myself—? has she only fallen asleep? has not this rose faded? L. Had I not enriched myself? had she not taken a walk—? N. Shall I not have cured myself? will not the river have overflowed—? O. Should I not laugh at—? should we only free ourselves—? P. Should I have dishonoured myself no more? would those fishermen never have drowned themselves.

VERBS WITH PRONOUNS AS DIRECT OBJECTS.

Pronouns of the third person, as direct objects, are—

mas. sing.	fem. sing.	mas. and fem. plur.
<i>le</i> , him or it.	<i>la</i> , her or it.	<i>les</i> , them.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

A. Present,	<i>le punir</i> ,	to punish him.
B. Part. present,	<i>le punissant</i> ,	punishing him.
D. Comp. present,	<i>l'avoir punie</i> ,†	to have punished her.
E. Comp. part. pres.	<i>les ayant punis</i> ,	having punished them.

* *Me*, me; *te*, thee; *nous*, us; *vous*, you; are also direct objects, and precede the verb, except in the second pers. Imper., then *me* makes *moi*.

† The participle past agrees, as in reflective verbs, with the direct object that precedes the verb, taking *s* for the fem. and *s* for the plural.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

F. <i>Je le punis,</i>	I punish him.	<i>nous le punissons,</i>	we pun. "
<i>tu le punis,</i>	thou punishest "	<i>vous le punissez,</i>	you " "
<i>il le punit,</i>	he punishes him.	<i>ils le punissent,</i>	they " "

G. <i>Je la punissais,</i>	I did punish her.
H. <i>Je les punis,</i>	I punished them.
I. <i>Je la punirai,</i>	I shall or will punish her.
K. <i>Je l'ai puni,</i>	I have punished him.
L. <i>Je l'avais punie,</i>	I had punished her.
M. <i>Je les eus punis,</i>	I had punished them.
N. <i>Je les aurai punies,</i>	I shall have punished them.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

O. <i>Je le punirais,</i>	I should punish him.
P. <i>Je les aurais punis,</i>	I should have punished them.

For the remainder of these tenses see page 79; they must be conjugated throughout.

Q. IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>punis le,*</i>	punish him.
<i>qu'il le punisse,</i>	let him punish him.
<i>punissons le,</i>	let us punish him.
<i>punissez le,</i>	punish him.
<i>qu'ils, or quelles les punissent,</i>	let them punish them.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

R. <i>que je le punisse,</i>	that I may punish him.
S. <i>que je la punisse,</i>	that I might punish her.
T. <i>que je les aie punis,</i>	that I may have punished them.
V. <i>que je l'eusse punie,</i>	that I might have punished her.

EXERCISE XLIV.

F. I punish him for he deserves it;† he brings her because
^{e²¹} *car* ^{e¹⁷} *amener parce que*
 you desire it; they are biting me; they burn you. G. She was
^{e²⁶} *désirer* ^{e¹⁹}
 delighting them with her charming² voice¹; we did convert him.
^{e¹⁸} *enchanter* ^{e²²} *charmant*
 H. We saw them in danger and we saved them; I perceived
^{e²¹} *vîmes*m. ^{e²⁴} *sauver*
 you at a distance. I. We will take you to the concert.
^{e²¹} *de loin* ^{e²⁴} *mener*m.

* Observe that in the imperative the object comes after the verb.

† It, in reference to a verb or sentence, is rendered by *le*.

have forgot her entirely; they have invited him
^{e²⁵} *entièrement* ^{e²⁶} *inviter* ^{e²⁷} *à*
 L. I had sold them; she had forced her ^{e²⁸} *to accept*
^{e²⁹} *forcer* ^{e³⁰} *à accepter*
 I had lost it. I paid it. N. I shall have done it before
^{e³¹} ^{e³²} *finir* ^{e³³}
 O. I should respect her for her virtues; we would
^{e³⁴} ^{e³⁵} ^{e³⁶}
 for his kindness. P. We would have warned you
^{e³⁷} *bonté pl.* ^{e³⁸}
 anger; we would have woke her. Q. Pay me; let us
 ...m. *réveiller* ^{e³⁹}
 a.

tion of a Verb with Direct Objects and Negation.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>le punir.</i>		D. <i>ne l'avoir pas punie.</i>
<i>punissant pas.</i>		E. <i>ne les ayant pas punies.</i>

e English see the preceding verb, to which add

INDICATIVE AND CONDITIONAL MOODS.

<i>le punis pas.</i>		L. <i>Je ne l'avais pas punie.</i>
<i>la punissais pas.</i>		M. <i>Je ne les eus pas punis.</i>
<i>les punis pas.</i>		N. <i>Je ne les (f.) aurai pas punies.</i>
<i>la punirai pas.</i>		O. <i>Je ne la punirais pas.</i>
<i>l'ai pas puni.</i>		P. <i>Je ne les aurais pas punis.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

o first person.		<i>ne le punissons pas.</i>
<i>punis pas.</i>		<i>ne le punissez pas.</i>
<i>le punisse pas.</i>		<i>qu'ils ne le punisse pas.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>ne le punisse pas.</i>		T. <i>que je ne les aie pas punis.</i>
<i>ne la punisse pas.</i>		V. <i>que je ne l'eusse pas punie.</i>

EXERCISE XLV.

e as Exercise XLIV., with NEGATION and COMPLEMENT.

not punish him, for he does not deserve it; he does her, because you do not desire it; they never bite me;

imperative the objects all come before the verb when used negatively.

they never burn you. G. She was only delighting them—; we did not convert him. H. We did not see them in danger and we did not save them; I did not perceive you—. I. We will not take you—. K. You have not forgot her—; they have not invited him—. L. I had not sold them; she had not forced her—. N. I shall not have done it—. O. I should only respect her for her virtues—; we would never thank him—. P. We would not have warned you—; we would not have woke her! Q. Do not pay me; let us leave them no more.

Conjugation of a Verb with Direct Object and Interrogation.

INDICATIVE AND CONDITIONAL MOODS.

F. <i>le punis-je?</i>	L. <i>l'avais-je punie?</i>
G. <i>la punissais-je?</i>	M. <i>les eus-je punis?</i>
H. <i>les punis-je?</i>	N. <i>les aurai-je punies?</i>
I. <i>la punirai-je?</i>	O. <i>le punirais-je?</i>
K. <i>l'ai-je puni?</i>	P. <i>les aurais-je punis?</i>

For the English see the verb page 69, &c.

EXERCISE XLVI.

Same as Exercise XLIV., with INTERROGATION and COMPLEMENT.

F. Do I punish him? does he deserve it? does he bring her, because you desire it? do they bite me? are they burning you? G. Was she delighting them—? did we convert him? H. Did we see them in danger, and did we not save them? did I perceive you—? L. Had I sold them? had she forced her—? N. Shall I have done it—? O. Should I respect her—? would we thank him—? would we have warned you—? would we have woke her!

Conjugation of an Active Verb, with Direct Object, Negation, and Interrogation.

INDICATIVE AND CONDITIONAL MOODS.

F. <i>ne le punis-je pas?</i>	L. <i>ne l'avais-je pas punie?</i>
G. <i>ne le punissais-je pas?</i>	M. <i>ne les eus-je pas punis?</i>
H. <i>ne le punis-je pas?</i>	N. <i>ne les aurai-je pas punies?</i>
I. <i>ne le punirai-je pas?</i>	O. <i>ne le punirais-je pas?</i>
K. <i>ne l'ai-je pas puni?</i>	P. <i>ne les aurais-je pas punis?</i>

EXERCISE XLVII.

same as Exercise XLIV., with NEGATION, INTERROGATION, and COMPLEMENT.

F. Do I not punish him? does he not deserve it? does he not bring her, because you do not desire it? do they not bite us? do they never burn you? was she only delighting them? did we not convert him? H. Did we not see them in danger, and did we not save them? did I not perceive you?—? L. Had I not sold them? had she not forced her?—? N. Shall I not have done it? O. should I respect her only?—? would we never thank him? P. Would we not have warned you?—? would we not have woke her?

VERBS WITH PRONOUNS AS INDIRECT OBJECTS.

Indirect objects are nouns or pronouns governed by a preposition expressed or understood. The pronouns of the third person, with the prep. *à* understood, are—

Sing. mas. or fem.		Plur. mas. or fem.
<i>lui</i> , to him, or to her.		<i>leur</i> , to them.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

1. Present,	<i>lui parler</i> ,	to speak to him.
2. Part. present,	<i>lui parlant</i> ,	speaking to her.
3. Comp. present,	<i>leur avoir parlé</i> ,	to have spoken to them.
4. Comp. part. pres.	<i>leur ayant parlé</i> ,	having spoken to them.

F. INDICATIVE AND CONDITIONAL MOODS.

<i>Je lui parle</i> ,	I speak to him.	<i>nous lui parlons</i> ,	we speak to him
<i>Tu lui parles</i> ,	thou speakest “	<i>vous lui parlez</i> ,	you speak to “
<i>Il lui parle</i> ,	he speaks to him	<i>ils lui parlent</i> ,	they speak to “

1. <i>Je lui parlais</i> ,	I was speaking to him.
2. <i>Je leur parlai</i> ,	I spoke to them.
3. <i>Je lui parlerai</i> ,	I shall speak to them.
4. <i>Je lui ai parlé</i> ,	I have spoken to him.
5. <i>Je leur avais parlé</i> ,	I had spoken to them.
6. <i>Je lui eus parlé</i> ,	I had spoken to him.
7. <i>Je lui aurai parlé</i> ,	I shall have spoken to him.
8. <i>Je lui parlerais</i> ,	I should speak to him.
9. <i>Je leur aurais parlé</i> ,	I should have spoken to him.

For the rest of these tenses see page 73, &c.; they must be conjugated in full.

Q. IMPERATIVE MOOD.

No first person. *parlons lui*, let us speak "
parle lui, speak to him. *parlez lui*, speak to him.
qu'il lui parle, let him speak " *qu'ils lui parlent*, let them "

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

R. *que je lui parle*, that I may speak to him.
 S. *que je leur parlasse*, that I might speak to her.
 T. *que je leur aie parlé*, that I may have spoken to them.
 V. *que je lui eusse parlé*, that I might have spoken to him.

Me, to me; *te*, to thee; *y*, to it, or, to them; *nous*, to us; *vous*, to you; are also indirect objects of the verb in the third state, and placed before it, except in the 2d person imperative, when *me* is rendered by *moi*.

EXERCISE XLVIII.

F. I express to him my displeasure; he speaks to her
marquer mécontentement m.
every day; we always give him a good advice. G. I was
e⁶ e³ e¹⁷ de e⁸ conseil m.
 showing him my plough; she was lending him money; we
montrer charue f. prêter i⁸ e⁸
 were asking you to tell the truth. H. He granted me what
e²¹ de dire e¹⁷ accorder ce que
 I asked; he related to us all his travels; we lent him our best
e²¹ raconter e⁹ voyage m. e⁴⁸ meilleur
 horses. I. I will order him to come; this cloth will appear
e⁹ ordonner de venir drap m. paraître
 very coarse to him. K. I have forbade them reading
e⁷ gros e²⁶ de lire
 novels; we have given her a new muff. L. I had refused you
roman m. e¹⁷ e⁸ manchon m. e¹⁷
 a prize; you had spoken French to him. N. Your neighbour
prix m. e¹⁷ e²⁶ e⁹
 will have given her all his property. O. He would explain
e¹⁷ e⁹ bien m. expliquer
 to you the danger of a flattery. P. I would have taught her
m. art. flatterie f. enseigner

^A German.
 art. Allemand m.

Note.—This exercise must be written again, 1st, with negation; 2d, with interrogation; 3d, with negation and interrogation, as in the preceding exercises, observing that in the imperative used negatively, the pronouns all precede the verb.

VERBS WITH PRONOUNS AS DIRECT AND INDIRECT OBJECTS.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

1. <i>le lui vendre,</i>	to sell it to him.
2. <i>la lui vendant,</i>	selling it to her.
3. <i>les (m.) lui avoir vendus,</i>	to have sold them to him.
4. <i>les (fem.) lui ayant vendues,</i>	having sold them to him.

INDICATIVE AND CONDITIONAL MOODS.

<i>Je le lui vends,</i>	I sell it to him.	<i>nous le lui vendons,</i>	they sell “
<i>tu le lui vends,</i>	thou sellest it “	<i>vous le lui vendez,</i>	you sell “
<i>il le lui vend,</i>	he sells it to him.	<i>ils le lui vendent,</i>	they sell “

5. <i>Je la lui vendais,</i>	I did sell it to him.
6. <i>Je les lui vendis,</i>	I sold them to him.
7. <i>Je les leur vendrai,</i>	I shall sell them to them.
8. <i>Je le lui ai vendu,</i>	I have sold it to him.
9. <i>Je la lui avais vendue,</i>	I had sold it to her.
10. <i>Je les lui eus vendus,</i>	I had sold them to him.
11. <i>Je les lui aurai vendus,</i>	I shall have sold them to him.
12. <i>Je les leur vendrais,</i>	I should sell them to them.
13. <i>Je la leur aurais vendue,</i>	I should have sold it to them.

For the rest of these tenses see page 85, &c.; they must be conjugated in full.

Q. IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>vends le lui,</i>	sell it to him.	<i>vendons le lui,</i>	let us sell “
<i>qu'il le lui vende,</i>	let him sell it “	<i>vendez le lui,</i>	sell it “
<i>qu'ils or qu'elles le lui vendent,</i>	let them sell it to him.		

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

14. <i>que je le leur vende,</i>	that I may sell it to them.
15. <i>que je la lui vendisse,</i>	that I might sell it to him.
16. <i>que je le leur aie vendu,</i>	that I may have sold it to them.
17. <i>que je la leur eusse vendue,</i>	that I might have sold it to “

EXERCISE XLIX.

F. I give it to him with all my heart; he returns them to you;* they are proposing it to them. G. I was bringing

* Pronouns of different persons as objects, follow the order of their person—the 1st person coming before the 2d, the 1st or 2d before the 3d; as *il vous, les renvoie*. For the other pronouns governed by *à*, see top of page 112.

them to you; he was announcing it to me. H. He dedicated
annoncer *dédier*
 it to her; we carried them to them. I. She will repeat it to
e¹⁹ *répéter*
 you; the booksellers will sell it to me. K. I have returned it
libraire *e²⁰* *renvoyer*
 to you by the *rail-way*; she has owed it to me for a year.
e³ *chemin de fer* *e²⁴* *e⁸* *an n.*
 L. You have revealed them to us too late. M. They had
révéler *trop-tard*
 praised her to us. N. I will have *taken* them *away* from him;
e²⁵ *e²⁰*
 we shall have entrusted it to them. O. He would present her
confier *présenter*
 to me. P. He would have given them to her. Q. Lend it to
e¹⁷ *e⁴⁸*
 me,* and I will return it to you.
e²⁷

This Exercise to be written again with negation, &c., see note page 112.

IDIOMATICAL TENSES.

As the learner may frequently have occasion to use what may be termed idiomatical tenses before he reaches that part of syntax which treats of them, we have subjoined four of the most essential.

PAST JUST ELAPSED.

Venir de, to have just.

Je viens d'avoir,
 I have just had.
tu viens d'avoir.
il vient d'avoir.
nous venons d'avoir.
vous venez d'avoir.
ils viennent d'avoir.

Je viens de vendre,
 I have just sold, or been selling.
tu viens de vendre.
il vient de vendre.
nous venons de vendre.
vous venez de vendre.
ils viennent de vendre.

PAST JUST ELAPSED ANTERIOR.

Je venais d'avoir,
 I had just had.

Je venais de vendre,
 I had just sold, or been selling.

* In the 2d persons imperative, *le, la, les*, precede *moi*, and come after the verb, but when negative they follow the general rule.

<i>d'avoir.</i>	<i>tu venais de vendre.</i>
<i>d'avoir.</i>	<i>il venait de vendre.</i>
<i>ions d'avoir.</i>	<i>nous venions de vendre.</i>
<i>ez d'avoir.</i>	<i>vous veniez de vendre.</i>
<i>nt d'avoir.</i>	<i>ils venaient de vendre.</i>

FUTURE INDEFINITE.

Devoir, to be.

<i>s avoir,</i>	<i>Je dois parler,</i>
<i>o have.</i>	<i>I am to speak.</i>
<i>s avoir.</i>	<i>tu dois parler.</i>
<i>avoir.</i>	<i>il doit parler.</i>
<i>levons avoir.</i>	<i>nous devons parler.</i>
<i>vez avoir.</i>	<i>vous devez parler.</i>
<i>vent avoir.</i>	<i>ils doivent parler.</i>

CONDITIONAL FUTURE.

<i>rais avoir,</i>	<i>Je devrais acheter,</i>
<i>it to have.</i>	<i>I ought to buy.</i>
<i>rais avoir.</i>	<i>tu devrais acheter.</i>
<i>rait avoir.</i>	<i>il devrait acheter.</i>
<i>levrions avoir.</i>	<i>nous devrions acheter.</i>
<i>levriez avoir.</i>	<i>vous devriez acheter.</i>
<i>raient avoir.</i>	<i>ils devraient acheter.</i>

tenses may be used like the tenses of other verbs with and interrogation, and with pronouns as object, proper sense be good in English.

EXERCISE L.

mail has just arrived, indeed! yes, I have just seen it*;
lle f. ^{e¹⁸} *vraiment oui* ^{e²⁶}
 has just fallen from the top of the house; I have just
^{e¹⁰} *haut m.* ^{e¹}
 him*; Miss Nimmo has just been dancing†; we have
^{e¹⁷}
 ived our letters; our correspondent says that the fleet
^{e¹} *correspondant dit* ^{e¹}

Observe to place the pronouns, as object, before their own verb.
 One verb governs another in the present infinitive.

has just anchored; I had just borrowed one hundred and twenty
 pounds; we had just returned when the flames burst forth;
 twelve o'clock has just struck, so your watch is slow, it has
 just stopped; you have just done a good action in relieving
 that poor Frenchwoman; he has just had a severe cold; he,
 asked me to give him my umbrella, but I had just given it
 to him; we had just finished a game at whist when he
 came in; Miss Sophia has just cut her finger by her
 awkwardness.
gaucherie f.

EXERCISE LI.

I have just seen the Duke of Wellington, and I am to be
 presented at the first levee; the ship is to set sail the 10th May.
 I am to have sixty pounds for that stallion, I ought to have
 seventy, but he is to give me a little Shetland pony which he
 has just received; am I to go to London? am I to have your
 vote? he ought not to have the liberty to spend so much
 money; his father ought to punish him; ought we to print this
 card or this bill? you are to print neither; he has just been
 selling his furniture; you ought not to speak English in the
 class, you ought to speak French only; ought I to sing when
 I am asked? certainly; ought we not to conclude? yes, for
 the music master is just arrived.

TABLE OF THE REGULAR TERMINATIONS.

		INFINITIVE.		PART. PRÉS.	PART. PAST.
		RADICALS.	FINALS.	FINALS.	FINALS.
Conjugation,		<i>parl-</i>	<i>-er</i>	<i>-ant</i>	<i>-é</i>
Conjugation,		<i>pun-</i>	<i>-ir</i>	<i>-issant</i>	<i>-i</i>
Conjugation,		<i>conç-</i>	<i>-evoir</i>	<i>-evant</i>	<i>-u</i>
Conjugation,		<i>vend-</i>	<i>-re</i>	<i>-ant</i>	<i>-u</i>

		RAD.	SING. FINALS.			PLU. FINALS.		
			<i>Je—</i>	<i>tu—</i>	<i>il—</i>	<i>nous—</i>	<i>vous—</i>	<i>ils—</i>
es.	1 conj.	<i>parl-</i>	<i>-e</i>	<i>-es</i>	<i>-e</i>	<i>-ons</i>	<i>-ez</i>	<i>-ent</i>
	2 conj.	<i>pun-</i>	<i>-is</i>	<i>-is</i>	<i>-it</i>	<i>-issons</i>	<i>-issez</i>	<i>-issent</i>
	3 conj.	<i>conç-</i>	<i>-ois</i>	<i>-ois</i>	<i>-oit</i>	<i>-evons</i>	<i>-eviez</i>	<i>-oivent</i>
	4 conj.	<i>vend-</i>	<i>-s</i>	<i>-s</i>	—	<i>-ons</i>	<i>-ez</i>	<i>-ent</i>
ip.	1 conj.	<i>parl-</i>	<i>-ais</i>	<i>-ais</i>	<i>-ait</i>	<i>-ions</i>	<i>-iez</i>	<i>-aient</i>
	2 conj.	<i>pun-</i>	<i>-issais</i>	<i>-issais</i>	<i>-issait</i>	<i>-issions</i>	<i>-issiez</i>	<i>-issaient</i>
	3 conj.	<i>conç-</i>	<i>-euais</i>	<i>-euais</i>	<i>-evait</i>	<i>-evions</i>	<i>-eviez</i>	<i>-evaient</i>
	4 conj.	<i>vend-</i>	<i>-ais</i>	<i>-ais</i>	<i>-ait</i>	<i>-ions</i>	<i>-iez</i>	<i>-aient</i>
et.	1 conj.	<i>parl-</i>	<i>-ai</i>	<i>-as</i>	<i>-a</i>	<i>-âmes</i>	<i>-âtes</i>	<i>-ârent</i>
	2 conj.	<i>pun-</i>	<i>-is</i>	<i>-is</i>	<i>-it</i>	<i>-îmes</i>	<i>-îtes</i>	<i>-îrent</i>
	3 conj.	<i>conç-</i>	<i>-us</i>	<i>-us</i>	<i>-ut</i>	<i>-ûmes</i>	<i>-ûtes</i>	<i>-ûrent</i>
	4 conj.	<i>vend-</i>	<i>-is</i>	<i>-is</i>	<i>-it</i>	<i>-îmes</i>	<i>-îtes</i>	<i>-îrent</i>
it.	1 conj.	<i>parl-</i>	<i>-erai</i>	<i>-eras</i>	<i>-era</i>	<i>-erons</i>	<i>-erez</i>	<i>-eront</i>
	2 conj.	<i>pun-</i>	<i>-irai</i>	<i>-iras</i>	<i>-ira</i>	<i>-irons</i>	<i>-irez</i>	<i>-iront</i>
	3 conj.	<i>conç-</i>	<i>-evrai</i>	<i>-evras</i>	<i>-evra</i>	<i>-evrons</i>	<i>-evrez</i>	<i>-evront</i>
	4 conj.	<i>vend-</i>	<i>-rai</i>	<i>-ras</i>	<i>-ra</i>	<i>-rons</i>	<i>-rez</i>	<i>-ront</i>
ad.	1 conj.	<i>parl-</i>	<i>-erais</i>	<i>-erais</i>	<i>-erait</i>	<i>-erions</i>	<i>-eriez</i>	<i>-eraient</i>
	2 conj.	<i>pun-</i>	<i>-irais</i>	<i>-irais</i>	<i>-irait</i>	<i>-irions</i>	<i>-iriez</i>	<i>-iraient</i>
	3 conj.	<i>conç-</i>	<i>-evrais</i>	<i>-evrais</i>	<i>-evrait</i>	<i>-evrions</i>	<i>-evriez</i>	<i>-evraient</i>
	4 conj.	<i>vend-</i>	<i>-rais</i>	<i>-rais</i>	<i>-rait</i>	<i>-rions</i>	<i>-riez</i>	<i>-raient</i>
p.	1 conj.	<i>parl-</i>	—	<i>-e</i>	<i>-e</i>	<i>-ons</i>	<i>-ez</i>	<i>-ent</i>
	2 conj.	<i>pun-</i>	—	<i>-is</i>	<i>-isse</i>	<i>-issons</i>	<i>-issez</i>	<i>-issent</i>
	3 conj.	<i>conç-</i>	—	<i>-ois</i>	<i>-oive</i>	<i>-evons</i>	<i>-eviez</i>	<i>-oivent</i>
	4 conj.	<i>vend-</i>	—	<i>-s</i>	<i>-e</i>	<i>-ons</i>	<i>-ez</i>	<i>-ent</i>
b.	1 conj.	<i>parl-</i>	<i>-e</i>	<i>-es</i>	<i>-e</i>	<i>-ions</i>	<i>-iez</i>	<i>-ent</i>
	2 conj.	<i>pun-</i>	<i>-isse</i>	<i>-isses</i>	<i>-isse</i>	<i>-issions</i>	<i>-issiez</i>	<i>-issent</i>
	3 conj.	<i>conç-</i>	<i>-oive</i>	<i>-oives</i>	<i>-oive</i>	<i>-evions</i>	<i>-eviez</i>	<i>-oivent</i>
	4 conj.	<i>vend-</i>	<i>-e</i>	<i>-es</i>	<i>-e</i>	<i>-ions</i>	<i>-iez</i>	<i>-ent</i>
st.	1 conj.	<i>parl-</i>	<i>-asse</i>	<i>-asses</i>	<i>-ât</i>	<i>-assions</i>	<i>-assiez</i>	<i>-assent</i>
	2 conj.	<i>pun-</i>	<i>-isse</i>	<i>-isses</i>	<i>-ît</i>	<i>-issions</i>	<i>-issiez</i>	<i>-issent</i>
	3 conj.	<i>conç-</i>	<i>-usse</i>	<i>-usses</i>	<i>-ût</i>	<i>-ussions</i>	<i>-ussiez</i>	<i>-ussent</i>
	4 conj.	<i>vend-</i>	<i>-isse</i>	<i>-isses</i>	<i>-ît</i>	<i>-issions</i>	<i>-issiez</i>	<i>-issent</i>

FINAL OBSERVATIONS ON REGULAR VERBS.

Many verbs which are regular in their terminations have a trifling difference in their spelling, rendered necessary by the law of euphony. The following notes will explain in what the difference consists.

1. Verbs ending in *ayer*, *oyer*, and *uyer*, change the *y* into an *i* before an *e* mute.

Payer, to pay; *je paie*, *tu paies*, *il paie*, I pay, &c.

Envoyer, to send; *j'envoie*, *tu envoies*, *il envoie*, I send, &c.

Appuyer, to lean; *j'appuie*, *tu appuies*, *il appuie*, I lean, &c.

2. Verbs which in the first and second person plural imperfect ind. as present subj. have a *y* require also an *i*, as *nous payions*, *vous payiez*, I did pay, &c.; *que nous payions*, *que vous payiez*, that you may pay, &c.

3. Verbs ending in *cer* and *cevoir* require a cedilla under the *c* when followed by *a*, *o*, or *u*, that they may retain the same soft sound of throughout the conjugation, as in the infinitive.—See letter *c*, page 21, a

Avancer, to advance; *J'avance*, *tu avances*, *il avance*, I advanced, &c.

Concevoir, to conceive; *Je conçois*, *tu conçois*, *il conçoit*, I conceive, &c.

Recevoir, to receive; *Je reçois*, *tu reçois*, *il reçoit*, I received, &c.

4. Verbs ending in *ger* retain the *e* before *a* or *o*, that the *g* may retain the same soft sound throughout as in the infin.—See letter *g*, page 22, a

Nager, to swim; *je nage*, I swam; *nous mangeons*, we eat.

5. Verbs ending in *eler* and *eter* generally double the *l* or *t* before an *e* mute, except *geler*, to freeze, and its derivatives, *peler*, to peel, &c., as,

Appeler, to call; *J'appelle*, *tu appelles*, *il appelle*, he calls, &c.

Jeter, to throw; *Je jette*, *tu jettes*, *ils jettent*, I throw, &c.

6. Other verbs having *e* unaccented or *é* close in the penult or last syllable but one, as they do not double the consonant like those ending in *eler* and *eter*, change the *e* unaccented or *é* close into *è* open, when the consonant which it precedes is immediately followed by *e* unaccented, as

Mener, to lead; *Je mène*, *tu mènes*, *il mène*, *nous menons*, I lead, &c.

Espérer, to hope; *J'espère*, *tu espères*, *il espère*, *nous espérons*, I hope, &c.

7. Verbs ending in *éer*, whose termination begins by *a* or *i*, retain on the close *é*, as *créer*, to create; *je créais*, I created; *nous créions*, I did create; but if followed by a consonant it retains both *ée*, as *je crée*, I shall create; *nous créerons*, &c.; part. past, *créé*, mas.; *créée*, fem.

8. Verbs ending in *éter* have a double *é* in the first and second person plural of the imperfect, and present of the subjunctive, as,

Imp. *nous priions*, we did pray; *vous priiez*, you did pray.

Subj. pr. *que nous priions*, that we may pray; *que vous priiez*, that, &c.

9. The two first persons imp. ind. and pres. subj. of verbs ending in *uer* take a dialysis (·) as, *jouer*, to play; *nous jouions*, we were playing; *vous jouiez*, you, &c.; *que nous jouions*, that we may play; *que vous jouiez*, that you may play.

EXERCISE LII.

The tenses in the remaining exercises are the same in French as in English, unless pointed out to be otherwise by the small capitals.

I pay him every ^A Friday; he employs six hundred weavers;
payer ^{e²⁴} art. *vendredi* plu. *employer* ^{e²⁶} *tisser* and
the *hostler* cleans the horses every ^A morning; will you not
garçon d'écurie nettoyer ^{e⁹} ^{e²⁶} art. *matin* m.
weary him with this tale; the Turks will unfold the prophet's
ennuyer ^{e⁷} *histoire* f. ^{e¹⁷} *déployer* *prophète*
standard; wipe the counter, *that* I may fold this silk; we
standard m. *essuyer comptoir* m. *à fin que* f. *ployer* ^{e¹}
begin ^A to penetrate his design; he did not *drive in* the nails;
commencer à pénétrer intention f. *enfoncer* H. *clou*
we pinched the boy's ears; we will not agree to your proposal
pincer ^{e¹} ^{e⁸} *agréer proposition* f.
for that would create ^A enemies; I am *afraid* ^A we shall forget
^{e¹⁴} ^{e¹} *créer* ^{e¹} *ennemi* m. *avoir peur que* ^{e²⁶} R.
it; we shared our biscuits with the poor Indians; she is leading
partagerm. ^{e⁷} ^{e⁵⁰} *Indien* *mener*
a life very regular.
^{e²⁴} ^{e¹} *régulier*

EXERCISE LIII.

We were studying our lessons; *act so*, that we may forget
^{e¹⁷} ^{e¹⁸} *faites* ^{e²⁸}
your follies; you were crying too loud; were they *speaking ill*
sotise f. *crier trop* ^{e¹⁷} *décrier*
of that lady; he never calls you; it freezes every ^A night; they
— ^{e¹} *appeler* *geler* ^{e²⁶} art. ^{e²¹} m.
will unyoke the horses; would they buy this property if they
dételer ^{e⁹} ^{e¹⁹} ^{e⁴⁸}
had the means? is he not sowing his wheat *very early*? I never
moyens m. *semer blé* m. *bientôt*
prefer ^A pleasure to my duty; she always yields to her mother;
préférer art. ^{e⁶} *devoir* m. ^{e⁸} *céder* ^{e²}
he was protecting the unfortunate prisoners; we were tying up
protéger malheureux prisonier m. *lier*
the fagots when you left us; she will not bring him with her;
.....m. ^{e²²} *quitter* ^{e⁴⁴} ^{e⁷}
we were playing at ^A tennis; we were praying that you might
^{e²¹} art. *paume* f. *prier*
forget his conversation.
^{e²⁴}f.

IRREGULAR, DEFECTIVE, AND UNIPERSONAL VERBS.

IRREGULAR VERBS are those whose finals differ in some of their tenses from the regular conjugation given as a model.

DEFECTIVE VERBS are those in which some tenses or person are omitted as not in use.

UNIPERSONAL VERBS are those which are conjugated with the third person sing. only, as, *il pleut*, it rains.

The Compound tenses being invariably formed by adding the participle past to any of the tenses of *avoir* or *être*, they are not given in the following conjugations, though used whenever the verb has a participle past.

1.

ALLER.

A. *Aller*, to go. B. *Allant*, going. C. *Allé*, gone (*être*.)

F. Je vais	tu vas, il va.	nous allons, vous allez, ils vont.
G. J'all-ais,	-ais, -ait.	nous all-ions, -iez, -aient.
H. J'all-ai,	-as, -a.	nous all-âmes, -âtes, -èrent.
I. J'i-rai,	-ras, -ra.	nous i-rons, -rez, -ront.
O. J'i-rai,	-rais, -rait.	nous i-rions, -riez, -raient.
Q. no 1st pers. -va,*	†-aille.	— allons, -allez, †-aillent.
R. " j'aill-e,	-es, -e.	" nous all-ions, -iez, -aillent.
S. " j'all-asse -asses,	-ât.	" nous all-ussions, -assiez, -assent.

Conjugate in the same manner *s'en aller*, to go away.

A. *s'en aller*, to go away; *s'en allant*, going " ; *allé*, gone.

F. Je m'en vais,	I am going away.	nous nous en allons, &c.
tu t'en vas,	thou art going "	vous vous en allez, &c.
il s'en va,	he is going away.	ils s'en vont, &c.

G. *Je m'en allais*, I was going away. *nous nous en allions, &c.*

H. *Je m'en allai*, I went away. *nous nous en allâmes, "*

I. *Je m'en irai*, I shall go away. *nous nous en irons, "*

O. *Je m'en irais*, I should go away. *nous nous en irions, "*

Q. *va-t-en*, go away. *qu'il s'en aille*, let him "

allons nous en, let us go " *allez vous en*, go you "

qu'ils s'en aillent, let them go " *qu'elles s'en aillent*, let " "

R. " *je m'en aille*, I may go " " *nous nous en allions, &c.*

S. " *je m'en allasse*, I might go " " *nous nous en allussions, "*

K. *Je m'en suis allé*, *tu t'en es allé*, " *nous nous en sommes allé* "

* *Va* takes an *s* when immediately followed by *y*, as *vas-y*, go there.

† Observe to put *que*, let; before the 3d pers. sing. and plu. of the imperative, and *que*, that; before all the persons of the subjunctive.

2.

ENVOYER, TO SEND.

Regular in all its tenses, except in the Future and Conditional Present.

J. J'enver-rai, -ras, -ra. | nous enver-rons, -rez, -ront.
O. J'enver-raïs, -rais, -rait. | nous enver-rions, -riez, -raient.

Conjugate in the same manner *renvoyer*, to return, to send back.

EXERCISE LIV.

When I shall go to London I shall send you a fine harp;
^{e²²} aller ^{e²} envoyer ^{e¹} harpe f.
 he went away without telling us; we are going to pay some
^{s'en aller} ^{sans} ^{le} ^{e²⁹} ^{e⁶⁴} faire ^{e⁹}
 visits; go away or you will be too late; I am going to
^{visite} f. ^{e⁶⁴} ^{e¹} ^{e⁴⁰} ^{e⁶⁴} en
 America by a steam ship, and he is going by a sailing vessel;
^{e²} vaisseau à vapeur ^{e⁶⁴} vaisseau à voile
 must he go away this morning? we would send you some
^{faut-il que} ^{e⁶⁴} ^{e⁶²} ^{e⁶⁴}
 spring² flowers¹ if we could; will the poulterer send the turkey
^{printanier} ^{e¹} ^{e²²} pouvoir G. ^{poulailler} ^{e⁶⁴} ^{e²¹}
 in time for dinner? he was going away without his hat; go
^{e²⁴} ^{e¹⁴} ^{e⁹} art. ^{e²⁶} ^{e⁶⁴} ^{e⁶⁴} ^{e¹} ^{e⁶⁴}
 there thyself; he is not gone to his country seat; we shall
^y ^{toi-même} ^{e⁶⁴} ^{e²⁷}
 send back our horses; I would not send back the horses; go
^{renvoyer} ^{e⁹} ^{e⁶⁴} ^{e⁹} ^{e⁶⁴}
 there with thy brother; after that I went away to Brighton; I
^y ^{e⁷} ^{e¹} ^{e¹¹} ^{e¹} ^{e⁶⁴}
 will send back this coat, it is too short; we shall go away
^{e⁶⁴} ^{e¹⁰} ^e court ^{e⁶⁴}
 before next² Thursday.¹
^{e²²} prochain jeudi m.

SECOND CONJUGATION IN IR.

3.

ACQUERIR.

(avoir.)

A. Acquérir, to acquire. B. Acquérant, acquiring. C. Acquis, acquired.

F. J'acqu-iers,	-iers,	-iert.	acqu-érons,	-érez,	-ièrent.
G. J'acqué-raïs,	-rais,	-rait.	acqué-rions,	-riez,	-raient.
H. J'acqu-is,	-is,	-it.	acqu-îmes,	-îtes,	-irent.
I. J'acqu-er-rai,	-ras,	-ra.	acqu-er-rons,	-rez,	-ront.
O. J'acqu-er-raïs,	-rais,	-rait.	acqu-er-rions,	-riez,	-raient.
Q. no 1st person,	acquiers,	-ière.	acqu-érons,	-érez,	-ièrent.
R. " j'acqu-ier-e,	-es,	-e.	" acqu-ér-ions,	-iez,	acqu-ieraient.
S. " j'acqu-isse,	-isses,	-ît.	" acqu-issions,	-issiez,	-issent.

Conjugate thus *requérir* to require: the double *rr* in the future and conditional must be given with a rolling sound.

4.

ASSAILIR.

(avoir.)

A. Assailir, *to assault*. B. Assaillant, *assaulting*. C. Assailli, *assaulted*.

F. J'assail-e,	-es,	-e.	assail-ons,	-ez,	-ent.
G. J'assail-ais,	-ais,	-ait.	assail-ions,	-iez,	-aient.
H. J'assail-is,	-is,	-it.	assail-îmes,	-îtes,	-irent.
I. J'assail-irai,	-iras,	-ira.	assail-irons,	-irez,	-iront.
O. J'assail-irais,	-irais,	-irait.	assail-irions,	-iriez,	-iraient.
Q. no 1st person,	assail-e,	-e.	assail-ons,	-ez,	-ent.
R. " j'assail-e,	-es,	-e.	" assail-ions,	-iez,	-aient.
S. " j'assail-isse,	-isses,	-ît.	" assail-issions,	-issiez,	-issent.

Conjugate thus *tressaillir* to start, which makes in the future *je tressaillirai*, and cond. *je tressaillerais*, &c.

5.

BOUILLIR.

A. Bouillir, *to boil*. B. Bouillant, *boiling*. C. Bouilli, *boiled* (avoir.)

F. Je bou-s,	bou-s,	bou-t.	Nous bouill-ons,	-ez,	-ent.
G. Je bouill-ais,	-ais,	-ait.	Nous bouill-ions,	-iez,	-aient.
H. Je bouill-is,	-is,	-it.	Nous bouill-îmes,	-îtes,	-irent.
I. Je bouill-irai,	-iras,	-ira.	Nous bouill-irons,	-irez,	-iront.
O. Je bouill-irais,	-irais,	-irait.	Nous bouill-irions,	-iriez,	-iraient.
Q. no 1st person,	"bous,	"bouille.	— bouill-ons,	-ez,	-ent.
R. " je bouill-e,	-es,	-e.	" nous bouill-ions,	-iez,	-aient.
S. " je bouill-isse,	-isses,	-ît.	" nous bouill-issions,	-issiez,	-issent.

This verb, properly speaking, can only be used in the third person singular and plural, as *l'eau bout*, the water boils; when used in all its persons with an object, it is governed in the infin. by the verb *faire* in all its tenses, as *je fais bouillir l'eau*, I make the water boil; conjugate thus *rebouillir*, to boil again.

6.

COURIR.

A. Courir, *to run*. B. Courant, *running*. C. Couru, *ran* (avoir.)

F. Je cour-s,	cour-s,	cour-t.	Nous cour-ons,	-ez,	-ent.
G. Je cour-ais,	-ais,	-ait.	Nous cour-ions,	-iez,	-aient.
H. Je cour-us,	-us,	-ut.	Nous cour-ûmes,	-ûtes,	-urent.
I. Je cour-rai,	-ras,	-ra.	Nous cour-rions,	-rez,	-ront.
O. Je cour-rai,	-rais,	-rait.	Nous cour-rions,	-riez,	-raient.
Q. no 1st person,	cour-s,	cour-e.	— cou-rions,	-rez,	-ent.
R. " je cour-e,	-es,	-e.	" nous cour-ions,	-iez,	-aient.
S. " je cour-usse,	-usses,	-ût.	" nous cour-ussions,	-ussiez,	-ussent.

Conjugate thus all verbs compounded of *courir*; *accourir*, to run to, is conjugated with *être* in its compound tenses.

7.

CUEILLIR.

A. Cueillir, *to gather*. B. Cueillant, *gathering*. C. Cueilli, *gathered* (avoir.)

F. Je cueill-e,	-es,	-e.	Nous cueill-ons,	-ez,	-ent.
G. Je cueill-ais,	-ais,	-ait.	Nous cueill-ions,	-iez,	-aient.
H. Je cueill-is,	-is,	-it.	Nous cueill-îmes,	-îtes,	-irent.
I. Je cueill-erai,	-eras,	-era.	Nous cueill-erons,	-erez,	-eront.
O. Je cueill-erais,	-erais,	-erait.	Nous cueill-erions,	-eriez,	-eraient.
Q. no 1st person,	cueill-e,	-e.	— cueill-ons,	-ez,	-ent.
R. " je cueill-e,	-es,	-e.	" nous cueill-ions,	-iez,	-ent.
S. " je cueill-isse,	-isses,	-ît.	" nous cueill-issions,	-issiez,	-issent.

Conjugate thus *accueillir*, to receive kindly, to make welcome; *recueillir*, to gather in, to reap, to receive; we also say, *faire accueil*, *faire bon accueil*, to give good reception.

8.

DORMIR.

A. Dormir, *to sleep*. B. Dormant, *sleeping*. C. Dormi, *sleep* (avoir.)

F. Je dors,	dors,	dort.	Nous dorm-ons,	-ez,	-ent.
G. Je dorm-ais,	-ais,	-ait.	Nous dorm-ions,	-iez,	-aient.
H. Je dorm-is,	-is,	-it.	Nous dorm-îmes,	-îtes,	-irent.
I. Je dorm-irai,	-iras,	-ira.	Nous dorm-irons,	-irez,	-iront.
O. Je dorm-irais,	-irais,	-irait.	Nous dorm-irions,	-iriez,	-iraient.
Q. no 1st person,	dors,	dorme.	— dorm-ons,	-ez,	-ent.
R. " je dorm-e,	-es,	-e.	" nous dorm-ions,	-iez,	-ent.
S. " je dorm-isse,	-isses,	-ît.	" nous dorm-issions,	-issiez,	-issent.

Conjugate thus *endormir*, to lull asleep; *redormir*, to sleep again; *rendormir*, to lull asleep again; *s'endormir*, to fall asleep; *se rendormir*, to fall asleep again.

9.

FAILLIR.

A. Faillir, *to fail*. B. Faillant, *failing*. C. Failli, *failed*, *defec.* (avoir.)

H. Je faill-is,	-is,	-it.	Nous faill-îmes,	îtes,	irent.
K. J'ai failli, I have failed, &c.			Nous avons-failli, we have failed, &c.		

Seldom used but in these two tenses.

A. Défaillir, *to fall to decay*. B. Défaillant. C. Défailli, *defec.* (avoir.)

F. no singular,	—	—	Nous défaill-ons,	-ez,	-ent.
G. Je défaill-ais,	-ais,	-ait.	Nous défaill-ions,	-iez,	-aient.
H. Je défaill-is,	-is,	-it.	Nous défaill-îmes,	-îtes,	-irent.
K. J'ai défailli, I have fallen, &c.			Nous avons-défailli, we have fallen, &c.		

Décliner, and *tomber en défaillance*, supply the tenses wanted.

10.

FLEURIR.

(defective.)

A. Fleurir, *to flourish*. B. Florissant, *flourishing*. C. wanting.*

G. Je floriss-ais,	-ais,	-ait.	Nous floriss-ions,	-iez,	-aient.
--------------------	-------	-------	--------------------	-------	---------

This verb is regular in all its other tenses; conjugate thus, *refleurir*, to flourish again; when these verbs mean to bloom, or bloom again as a flower, they are regular throughout.

* Verbs without participle past have no compound tenses.

11.

FUIR.

(avoir.)

A. Fair, to shun, to avoid, to run away. B. Fuyant, shunning, &c.
C. Fui, shunned, &c.

F. Je fui-s,	fui-s,	fui-t.	Nous fuy-ons,	-ez,	fuient
G. Je fuy-ais,	-ais,	-ait.	Nous fuy-ions,	-iez,	-aient
H. Je fui-s,	fui-s,	fui-t.	Nous fu-îmes,	-îtes,	-irent
I. Je fui-rai,	-ras,	-ra.	Nous fui-rons,	-rez,	-ront
O. Je fui-rai,	-rais,	-rait.	Nous fui-rions,	-riez,	-raient
Q. no 1st person,	fuis,	fuie.	— fuy-ons,	-ez,	fuient
R. " je fui-e	-es,	-e.	" nous fuy-ions,	-iez,	fuient
S. " je fu-isse,	-isses,	-ît.	" nous fui-ssions,	-ssiez,	-aient

The neuter verb to run away, is best rendered in the preterite by *fu* *pris la fuite*, and the active verb to shun, by *j'évitai*, I shunned, &c., conjugate thus *s'enfuir de*, to run away from.

12.

MOURIR.

A. Mourir, to die. B. Mourant, dying. C. Mort, dead. (être.)

F. Je meurs,	meurs,	meurt.	Nous mour-ons,	-ez,	meurent
G. Je mour-ais,	-ais,	-ait.	Nous mour-ions,	-iez,	-aient
H. Je mour-us,	-us,	-ut.	Nous mour-îmes,	-îtes,	-urent
I. Je mour-rai,	-ras,	-ra.	Nous mour-rons,	-rez,	-ront
O. Je mour-rai,	-rais,	-rait.	Nous mour-rions,	-riez,	-raient
Q. no 1st person,	meurs,	meure.	— mour-ons,	-ez,	meurent
R. " je meur-e,	-es,	-e.	" nous mour-ions,	-iez,	meurent
S. " je mour-usse,	-usses,	-ût.	" nous mour-ussions,	-ussiez,	-aient

Conjugate thus *se mourir*, to be dying.

13.

OUIR.

A. Ouïr, to hear. B. wanting. C. ouï, heard. (defective.)

H. J'ouïs,	ouïs,	ouït.	Nous ou-îmes,	-îtes,	-irent
R. " j'ou-isse,	-isses,	-ît.	" nous ou-issions,	-issiez,	-aient

This verb is generally used in its compound tenses, with the verb *dire*, to say, instead of *entendre*, to hear, when speaking of a vague report, as *J'ai ouï dire qu'il était mort*, I heard he was dead; otherwise use *entendre* for hear.

14.

OUVRIR.

A. Ouvrir, to open. B. Ouvrant, opening. C. Ouvert, opened (avoir.)

F. J'ouvr-e,	-es,	-e.	Nous ouvr-ons,	-ez,	-ent.
G. J'ouvr-ais,	-ais,	-ait.	Nous ouvr-ions,	-iez,	-aient
H. J'ouvr-is,	-is,	-it.	Nous ouvr-îmes,	-îtes,	-irent
I. J'ouvri-rai,	-ras,	-ra.	Nous ouvri-rons,	-rez,	-ront
O. J'ouvri-rai,	-rais,	-rait.	Nous ouvri-rions,	-riez,	-raient
Q. no 1st person,	ouvre,	ouvre.	— ouvr-ons,	-ez,	-ent
R. " j'ouvr-e,	-es,	-e.	" nous ouvr-ions,	-iez,	-ent
S. " j'ouvr-isse,	-isses,	-ît.	" nous ouvr-issions,	-issiez,	-aient

Conjugate thus, *couvrir*, to cover; *découvrir*, to uncover, to discover; *entr'ouvrir*, to open ajar; *mésoffrir*, to underbid; *offrir*, to offer; *rouvrir*, to open again; *recouvrir*, to cover again; *souffrir*, to suffer.

15.

SENTIR.

(avoir.)

A. Sentir, to feel or to smell. B. Sentant, feeling. C. Senti, felt.

F. Je sens,	sens,	sens.	Nous sent-ons,	-ez,	-ent.
G. Je sent-ais,	-ais,	-ait.	Nous sent-ions,	-iez,	-aient.
H. Je sent-is,	-is,	-it.	Nous sent-îmes,	-îtes,	-irent.
I. Je sent-irai,	-iras,	-ira.	Nous sent-irons,	-irez,	-iront.
O. Je sent-irais,	-irais,	-irait.	Nous sent-irions,	-iriez,	-iraient.
Q. No 1st person,	-sens,	sente.	— sent-ons,	-ez,	-ent.
R. " je sent-e,	-es,	-e.	" nous sent-ions,	-iez,	-aient.
S. " je sent-isse,	-isses,	-it.	" nous sent-issions,	-issiez,	-issent.

Conjugate thus, *consentir*, to consent; *démentir*, to belie; *départir*, to distribute; *mentir*, to lie; *partir* (être), to set off; *pressentir*, to foresee; *repartir* (être), to set off again; *ressentir*, to resent; *sortir* (être), to go out; *ressortir* (être), to go out again; *se départir* (être), to depart from; *se ressentir*, to feel yet; *se repentir*, to repent.

16.

SAILLIR.

A. Saillir, to project. B. Saillant, projecting. C. Sailli, projected.

F. Il saill-e,	-ils -ent.	G. Il saill-ait,	-ils -aient.	I. Il saill-ira,	-ils -iront.
O. Il saillirait,	ils sailliraient.	R. Qu'il saille;	qu'ils saillent.		

Saillir, to gush out, is conjugated like *punir*, in the third persons only.

17.

SERVIR.

A. Servir, to serve. B. Servant, serving. C. Servi, served. (avoir.)

F. Je sers,	sers,	sert.	Nous serv-ons,	-ez,	-ent.
G. Je serv-ais,	-ais,	-ait.	Nous serv-ions,	-iez,	-aient.
H. Je serv-is,	-is,	-it.	Nous serv-îmes,	-îtes,	-irent.
I. Je servi-rai,	-ras,	-ra.	Nous servi-rions,	-rez,	-ront.
O. Je servi-rai,	-rais,	-rait.	Nous servi-rions,	-riez,	-raient.
Q. no 1st person,	sers,	serve.	— serv-ons,	-ez,	-ent.
R. " je serv-e,	-es,	-e.	" nous serv-ions,	-iez,	-aient.
S. " je serv-isse,	-isses,	-it.	" nous serv-issions,	-issiez,	-issent.

Conjugate thus *desservir*, to take away the things after a meal.

18.

VENIR.

A. Venir, to come. B. Venant, coming. C. Venu, come (être.)

F. Je vien-s,	vien-s,	vien-t.	Nous ven-ons,	ez,	viennent.
G. Je ven-ais,	-ais,	-ait.	Nous ven-ions,	-iez,	-aient.
H. Je vin-s,	vin-s,	vin-t.	Nous v-inmes,	-îmes,	-inrent.
I. Je vien-drai,	-dras,	-dra.	Nous vien-drons,	-drez,	-dront.
O. Je vien-drais,	-drais,	-drait.	Nous vien-drions,	-driez,	-draient.
Q. no 1st person,	viens,	"vienne.	— ven-ons,	-ez,	"viennent.
R. " je vienn-e,	-es,	-e.	" nous ven-ions,	-iez,	"viennent.
S. " je vins-se,	-ses,	"vint.	" nous vins-sions,	-siez,	-sent.

Conjugate thus *tenir*, to hold, and all verbs compounded of *tenir* and *venir*; *avenir*, to happen, is impersonal; and *provenir*, to proceed from, is only used in the third person plural; *venir de* used with the infinitive of another verb forms idiomatical tenses.—See page 114.

19.

VETIR.

A. *Vetir, to clothe.* B. *Vêtant, clothing.* C. *Vêtu, clothed.* (avoir.)

F. Je vêt-s,	vêt-s,	vê-t.	Nous vêt-ons,	-ez,	-ent.
G. Je vêt-ais,	-ais,	-ait.	Nous vêt-ions,	-iez,	-aient.
H. Je vêt-is,	-is,	-it.	Nous vêt-îmes,	-îtes,	-irent.
I. Je vêt-i-rai,	-ras,	-ra.	Nous vêt-i-rions,	-rez,	-ront.
O. Je vêt-i-rai,	-rais,	-rait.	Nous vêt-i-rions,	-riez,	-raient.
Q. no 1st person,	vêt-s,	vêt-e.	— vêt-ons,	-ez,	-ent.
R. " je vêt-e,	vêt-es,	vêt-e.	" nous vêt-ions,	-iez,	-ient.
S. " je vêt-isse,	isses,	-ît.	" nous vêt-issions,	-issiez,	-issent.

Conjugate thus *dévetir*, to strip; *revêtir*, to invest with; *se dévetir*, to divest one's self; *s'habiller*, is oftener used than *vêtir*, in the sing. and to undress, *déshabiller*; in the sense of put on, and pull off, *mettre*, and *oter*, are used.

Exercises on Verbs of the Second Conjugation in IR.

EXERCISE LV.

I go out every ^A morning; ^A time past never returns; will
sortir ^{e²⁰} art. ^{e⁶²} art. ^{e¹⁴} *passé* ^{e⁵⁰}
 they set out to-day; does Miss Catherine sleep at ^A church?
partir ^{e²⁰} ^{e³} *dormir* art. ^{e⁷}
 unless ^A you ^A cover the goods you will incur his displeasure;
à moins que ne couvrir ^{e²} *encourir déplaisir* m.
 own that you are in the wrong; you will never obtain that
convenir *avoir* — — ^{e¹⁷} *obtenir*
 employment; hold fast or you will fall; do not take away the
emploi m. *tenir bon* ^{e¹⁹} *desservir*
 roast meat; the teacher would maintain his authority if—;
rotie m. ^{e¹⁴} *maintenir* *autorité* f.
 these houses do not belong to him; he has attained to that
^{e¹} *appartenir* *parvenir*
 dignity by his honourable conduct; but for the bad horses we
dignité f.f. ^{e⁹} *sans* ^{e²} ^{e⁹}
 should have returned before you; this belongs to me; do you
^{e⁵⁰} ^{e²⁵} ^{e³¹} ^{e⁵⁵}
 remember ^A the tournament at Eglinton?
se ressouvenir de tournoie m.

EXERCISE LVI.

Open the window; I did not discover his intentions; ^A
ouvrir ^{e²⁴} *découvrir*f. art.
 learning flourished in the reign of Louis the Fourteenth;
litterature f. *fleurir* g. *sous* *régne* m. *quatorze*
 this pear-tree blossoms every ^A spring; do you² think¹ that ^A
^{e²⁰} *poirier* m. *fleurir* art. *printems* m. plu. *croire* art.
 Greece will ever reflower? it is just that I should retain
^{f.} *jamais reflower* ^{e¹⁶} *retenir* R.

EXERCISE LVII.

THIRD CONJUGATION IN *OIR*.

20.

DECHOIR.

A. Déchoir, *to decay*. B. wanting. C. Déchu, *decayed*. (être.)

F. Je déch-ois,	-ois,	-oit.	Nous déch-oyons,	-oyez,	-oient.
G. Je déchoy-ais,	-ais,	-ait.	Nous déchoy-ions,	-iez,	-aient.
H. Je déch-us,	-us,	-ut.	Nous déch-ûmes,	-ûtes,	-urent.
I. Je déchér-rai,	-rai,	-ra.	Nous déchér-rons,	-rez,	-ront.
O. Je déchér-raïs,	-raïs,	-rait.	Nous déchér-rions,	-riez,	-raient.
R. " Je déchoi-e,	-es,	-e.	" nous déch-o-yions,	-yiez,	-oient.
S. " Je déch-usse,	-usses,	-ût.	" nous déch-ussions,	-ussiez,	-ussent.

Boisser and *décliner* are oftener used in the imperfect and imperative.

21.

ECHOIR.—DEFECTIVE VERB.

A. Echoir, *to be due*. B. échéant, *being due*. C. échu, *been due* (être.)

F. Il échoit or échet, *it is due*. H. Il échut, *it was due*. Il échera, *it will be due*. O. Il écherrait, *it would be due*. S. Qu'il échût, *that it might be due*.

The compound tenses are conjugated in the third persons sing. and pla.

22.

FALLOIR.—UNIPERSONAL VERB.

(avoir.)

A. Falloir, *to be necessary*. B. wanting. C. Fallu, *been necessary*. F. Il faut, *it is necessary*. G. Il fallait, *it was, &c.* H. Il fallut, *it was, &c.* I. Il faudra, *it will be, &c.* O. Il faudrait, *it would be, &c.* R. Qu'il faille, *that it may be, &c.* S. Qu'il fallût, *that it might be, &c.*, used in the compound tenses in the third person sing. only.

23.

MOUVOIR.

A. Mouvoir, *to move*. B. Mouvant, *moving*. C. Mu, *moved* (avoir.)

F. Je meu-s,	meu-s,	meu-t.	Nou. mouv-ons,	-ez,	meuvent
G. Je mouv-ais,	-ais,	-ait.	Nous mouv-ions,	-iez,	-aient.
H. Je mu-s,	mu-s,	mu-t.	Nous m-ûmes,	-ûtes,	-urent.
I. Je mouv-rai,	-ras,	-ra.	Nous mouv-rions,	-riez,	-raient.
O. Je mouv-rai-s,	-rais,	-rait.	Nous mouv-rions,	-riez,	-raient.
Q. no 1st person,	meu-s,	-ve.	— mouv-ons,	-ez,	meuvent
R. " je meu-e,	-es,	-e.	" nous mouv-ions,	-iez,	meuvent.
S. " je m-usse,	-usses,	-ût.	" nous m-ussions,	-ussiez,	-ussent.

Conjugate thus *s'émouvoir*, *to be concerned*; *émouvoir*, *to move*; *mouvoir* is seldom used but in the present inf.; *promouvoir*, *to promote*, is only used in the compound tenses and pres. inf.

24.

PLEUVOIR.—UNIPERSONAL VERB.

A. Pleuvoir, *to rain*. B. Pleuvant, *raining*. C. Plu, *rained* (avoir.)

F. Il pleut, *it rains*. G. Il pleuvait, *it was raining*. H. Il plut, *it rained*. I. Il pleuvra, *it will rain*. O. Il pleuvrait, *it would rain*. R. Qu'il pleuve, *that it may rain*. S. Qu'il plût, *that it might rain*. K. Il a plu, *it has rained, &c.*

25.

POUVOIR.

A. Pouvoir, *to be able*. B. Pouvant, *being able*. C. Pu, *been able* (avoir.)

F. Je puis, or peux,	peux,	peut.	Nous pouv-ons,	-ez,	peuvent
G. Je pouv-ais,	-ais,	-ait.	Nous pouv-ions,	-iez,	-aient.
H. Je pus,	pus,	put.	Nous p-ûmes,	-ûtes,	-urent.
I. Je pour-rai,	-ras,	-ra.	Nous pour-rions,	-riez,	-raient.
O. Je pour-rai-s,	-rais,	-rait.	Nous pour-rions,	-riez,	-raient.
R. " je puiss-e,	-es,	-e.	" nous pui-ssions,	-ssiez,	-ssent.
S. " je pu-ss-e,	-sses,	-ût.	" nous pu-ssions,	-ssiez,	-ssent.

26.

POURVOIR.

(avoir.)

A. *Pouvoir, to provide.*B. *Pourvoyant, providing.*C. *Pourvu, provided.*

F. Je pourv-ois,	-ois,	-oit.	Nous pourvo-yons,	-yez,	-ient.
G. Je pourvo-yais,	-yais,	-yait.	Nous pourvo-yions,	-yiez,	-yaient.
H. Je pourv-us,	-us,	-ut.	Nous pourv-ûmes,	-ûtes,	-urent.
I. Je pourvoi-rai,	-ras,	-ra.	Nous pourvoi-rions,	-riez,	-raient.
O. Je pourvoi-raïs,	-rais,	-rait.	Nous pourvoi-rions,	-riez,	-raient.
Q. no 1st person,	pourv-ois,	-oie.	— pourvo-yons,	-yez,	-ient.
R. " je pourvoi-e,	-es,	-e.	" nous pourvo-yions,	-yiez,	-ient.
S. " je pourv-usse,	-usses,	-ût.	" nous pourv-ussions,	-ussiez,	-ussent.

27.

S'ASSEOIR.

A. *S'asseoir, to sit.*B. *S'asséyant, sitting.*C. *Assis, sat (être.)*

F. Je m'ass-ieds,	-ieds,	-ied.	assé-yons,	-yez,	-ient.
G. Je m'assey-ais,	-ais,	-ait.	assey-ions,	-iez,	-aient.
H. Je m'ass-is,	-is,	-it.	ass-îmes,	-îtes,	-irent.
I. Je m'assié-rai,	-ras,	-ra.	assié-rions,	-rez,	-ront.
O. Je m'assié-raïs,	-rais,	-rait.	assie-rions,	-riez,	-raient.
Q. — assieds-toi,	qu'il,	s'assie.	assey-ons n.,	-ez v.,	-qu'ils s'-ent.
R. " je m'assei-e,	-es,	-e.	asse-yions,	-yiez,	-ient.
S. " je m'ass-inse,	-isses,	-ît.	ass-issions,	-issiez,	-issent.

Conjugate thus *asseoir*, to set; *se rasseoir*, to sit down again.

28.

SAVOIR.

A. *Savoir, to know.*B. *Sachant, knowing.*C. *Su, known (avoir.)*

F. Je sai-s,	sai-s,	sai-t.	Nous sav-ons,	-ez,	-ent.
G. Je sav-ais,	-ais,	-ait.	Nous sav-ions,	-iez,	-aient.
H. Je su-s,	su-s,	su-t.	Nous s-ûmes,	-ûtes,	-urent.
I. Je sau-rai,	-ras,	-ra.	Nous sau-rions,	-rez,	-ront.
O. Je sau-raïs,	-rais,	-rait.	Nous sau-rions,	-riez,	-raient.
Q. no 1st person,	sach-e,	-e.	— sach-ons,	-ez,	-ent.
R. " je sach-e,	-es,	-e.	" nous sach-ions,	-iez,	-ent.
S. " je s-usse,	-usses,	-ût.	" nous su-sions,	-ssiez,	-ssent.

29.

SEoir.—DEFECTIVE VERB.

A. *Seoir, to become, to fit.*B. *Séyant.*C. *wanting.*

F. Il sied, ils sièent. G. Il séyait, ils séyaient. I. Il siéra, ils siéront. O. Il siérait, ils siéraient. R. Qu'ils siée, qu'ils sièent.

Seoir has no compound tenses, the participle *sit*, m. *sise*, f. is only used as an adjective, Angloised by *situated*.

30.

SURSEOIR.

(avoir.)

A. *Surseoir, to supersede.*B. *Sursoyant, superseding.*C. *Surrais, superseded.*

F. Je sur-s-ois,	-ois,	-oit.	Nous sursoy-ons,	-ez,	-ent.
G. Je sursoy-ais,	-ais,	-ait.	Nous sursoy-ions,	-iez,	-aient.
H. Je sur-s-is,	-is,	-it.	Nous sur-s-îmes,	-îtes,	-irent.
I. Je surseo-rai,	-ras,	-ra.	Nous sursoir-rions,	-riez,	-raient.

O. Je surseoi-rai,	-rais,	-rait.	Nous sursoi-rions,	-riez,	-raient.
Q. no 1st person,	surse-ois,	-oit.	— surs-oyons,	-yez,	-eoient.
R. " je surseoi-e,	-es,	-e.	" nous sursoy-ions,	-iez,	surs-oient.
S. " je surs-isse,	-isses,	-ît.	" nous surs-issions,	-issiez,	-issent.

31.

VALOIR.

A. Valoir, *to be worth*. B. Valant, *being worth*. C. Valu, *worth*. (avoir.)

F. Je vauX,	vauX,	vaut.	Nous val-ons,	-ez,	-ent.
G. Je val-ais,	-ais,	-ait.	Nous val-ions,	-iez,	-aient.
H. Je val-us,	-us,	-ut.	Nous val-ûmes,	-ûtes,	-urent.
I. Je vaud-rai,	-ras,	-ra.	Nous vaud-rions,	-rez,	-ront.
O. Je vaud-rai,	-rais,	-rait.	Nous vaud-rions,	-riez,	-raient.
R. " je vaill-e,	-es,	-e.	" nous val-ions,	-iez,	vaillent.
S. " je val-usse,	-usses,	-ût.	" nous valu-ssions,	-ssiez,	-ssent.

Conjugate thus, *équivaloir*, to be equivalent; *revaloir*, to return like for like, which makes in the imperative, *revauX, qu'il revaille, revalons, revaliez, qu'ils revaillent*; and *prévaloir*, to prevail; which makes

B. " je préval-e,	-es,	-e.	" nous préval-ions,	-iez,	-ent.
-------------------	------	-----	---------------------	-------	-------

32.

VOIR.

A. Voir, *to see*. B. Voyant, *seeing*. C. Vu, *seen*. (avoir.)

F. Je voi-s,	voi-s,	voi-t.	Nous vo-yons,	-yez,	-ient.
G. Je voy-ais,	-ais,	-ait.	Nous voy-ions,	-iez,	-aient.
H. Je vi-s,	vi-s,	vi-t.	Nous v-îmes,	-îtes,	-irent.
I. Je ver-rai,	-ras,	-ra.	Nous ver-rions,	-rez,	-ront.
O. Je ver-rai,	-rais,	-rait.	Nous ver-rions,	-riez,	-raient.
Q. no 1st person,	vois,	voie.	— vo-yons,	-yez,	-ient.
R. " je voi-e,	-es,	-e.	" nous vo-yons,	-yez,	-ient.
S. " je v-is-se,	-isses,	-ît.	" nous vi-ssions,	-ssiez,	-ssent.

Conjugate thus *entrevoir*, to have a glimpse of; *revoir*, to see again; and *prévoir*, to foresee; which makes

I. Je prévoi-rai,	-ras,	-ra.	Nous prévoi-rions,	-rez,	-ront.
O. Je prévoi-rai,	-rais,	-rait.	Nous prévoi-rions,	-riez,	-raient.

33.

VOULOIR.

(avoir.)

A. Vouloir, *to be willing*. B. Voulant, *being willing*. C. Voulu, *been willing*.

F. Je veu-x,	veu-x,	eu-t.	Nous voul-ons,	-ez,	veulent.
G. Je voul-ais,	-ais,	-ait.	Nous voul-ions,	-iez,	-aient.
H. Je voul-us,	-us,	-ut.	Nous voul-ûmes,	-ûtes,	-urent.
I. Je vould-rai,	-ras,	-ra.	Nous vould-rions,	-rez,	-ront.
O. Je vould-rai,	-rais,	-rait.	Nous vould-rions,	-riez,	-raient.
Q. no singular.	—	—	only 2d p. veuillez, <i>be so good, so kind</i>		
R. " je veuill-e,	-es,	-e.	" nous voul-ions,	-iez,	veuillent.
S. " je voul-usse,	-usses,	-ût.	nous voulu-ssions,	-ssiez,	-ssent.

34.

Y AVOIR.

A. Y avoir, *there to be.* B. Y ayant, *there been.* C. wanting.

F. <i>Il y a</i> , there is or there are.	<i>il n'y a pas</i> , there is or are not.
G. <i>il y avait</i> , there was or there were.	<i>il n'y avait pas</i> , there was, &c.
H. <i>il y eut</i> , there was or there were.	<i>il n'y eut pas</i> , there was, &c.
I. <i>il y aura</i> , there shall or will be.	<i>il n'y aura pas</i> , there will not, &c.
O. <i>il y aurait</i> , there would be.	<i>il n'y aurait pas</i> , there would, &c.
R. " <i>qu'il y ait</i> , that there may be.	<i>qu'il n'y ait pas</i> , that there, &c.
S. " <i>qu'il y eût</i> , that there might be.	<i>qu'il n'y eût pas</i> , that there, &c.
K. " <i>Il y a eu</i> , there has been, &c.	<i>il n'y a pas eu</i> , there has, &c.

The compound tenses are conjugated with the participle *eu*.*Interrogatively.**Negatively and Interrogatively.*

F. <i>y a-t-il?</i> is there? or, are there?	<i>n'y a-t-il pas?</i> is there not?
G. <i>y avait-il?</i> was there?	<i>n'y avait-il pas?</i> was there not?
H. <i>y eut-il?</i> was there?	<i>n'y eut-il pas?</i> was there not?
I. <i>y aura-t-il?</i> will there be?	<i>n'y aura-t-il pas?</i> will there not be.
O. <i>y aurait-il?</i> would there be?	<i>n'y aurait-il pas?</i> would there not be?
K. <i>y a-t-il eu?</i> has there been?	<i>n'y a-t-il pas eu?</i> has there not been?

Exercises on the Verbs of the Third Conjugation.

EXERCISE LVIII.

I always sit on the front seat; he will not see you till
^e *s'asseoir* ^{e¹⁸} *premier banc* m. ^{e³⁵} *avant*
Monday; did you not know it already? there were many
^{e³⁵} *savoir* *déjà* *y avoir beaucoup*
[^] ladies in the theatre last night; are there many [^] balls in
^{de} ^{e¹} ^{e²⁴} *comédie* f. *hier soir* ^{e⁶⁸} ^{e³⁸} *de* ^{e⁹} m. ^{e²⁴}
Edinburgh? it is time [^] he should see him; go and see if it
^{e¹⁴} *que* ^{e³⁵} R. — ^{e³⁵} ^{e²²}
rains; no, sir, but it will rain soon; I will see you again after
pleuvoir non monsieur ^{e¹} ^{e³⁸} ^{e²¹} *revoir* ^{e¹¹}
[^] tea; will you present my compliments to your sister;
art. ^{e³⁵} *vouloir* Q. *faire* m. ^{e¹}
whoever assembles the people moves them; the heart is moved
quiconque assembler ^{e²¹} *mouvoir* ^{e¹⁸} *émouvoir*
before the head reflects; he sees² no¹ difficulty in anything;
^{e³⁵} ^{e¹} ^{e²¹} R. ^{e³⁵} *ne de* ^{e²²} ^{e²¹} *rien*
provide these two batallions with biscuits; we shall not be able
pouvoir m. ^{e¹⁸} m. *pouvoir*
to dance to-morrow night.
^{e¹⁷} ^{e³¹} ^{e³¹}

EXERCISE LIX.

He will easily foresee the storm; *be so good as read this*
aisément prévoir ^{e¹³} *vouloir* ^{e⁴⁸}
 letter; let us see your *silver plate*; *be seated again if you*
^{e¹} ^{e³⁶} *argenterie* f. *rasseoir* ^{e¹⁰⁰} *s'il vous*
please; I could not foresee that event; when will you *ask*
plait ^{e⁶⁰} *événement* m. ^{e²³}
again your native country? is it not *a shame* that you do *not*
^{e⁶⁸} *patrie* f. *honteux*
 know your task? [^] reason often prevails over [^] custom;
^{e⁶⁸} R. *tâche* f. art. ^{e³¹} ^{e⁸} *prévaloir sur* art. *usage* m.
[^] resignation to the Supreme² Being¹ always becomes a man;
 art. *ré.....* f. *être* ^{e⁸} *séoir* ¹
[^] virtue is better than [^] glory; I have not seen his grammar;
 art. ^{e¹} *valoir mieux* art. ^{e²²} ^{e³⁵} *grammaire* f.
 the dogs would not stop; we will be obeyed; this carpet
^{e¹} ^{e⁶⁸} H. *s'arrêter* ^{e⁶⁸} F. ^{e²²}
 suits well the colour of this apartment; this bill is worth *a*
seoir ^{e³} ^{e⁸} *apartement* m. *traite* f. *valoir* —
 hundred pounds; sit on the sofa.
^{e²⁴} ^{e⁶⁸} ^{e¹⁸} *canapé* m.

EXERCISE LX.

I cannot* lend you my gig; know that I am your father;
pouvoir ^{e⁴⁸} ^{e¹⁹} ^{e⁶⁸} ^{e⁸}
 since that misfortune he has declined *daily*; *we must be*
^{e³⁵} ^{e⁵⁶} *déchoir de jour en jour falloir avoir*
 hungry before [^] we eat; [^] virtue is equivalent to [^] riches;
faim f. ^{e²⁸} *de* — ^{e²⁹} art. ^{e¹} *équivaloir* art. *richesse* f.
there are no [^] letters for you; is *there* any reason for her
^{e⁶⁸} ^{e¹} ^{e⁸} ^{e⁶⁸} *aucun* ^{e³¹} ^{e⁸}
 conduct; *is there* not sufficient² cause¹ for her death? *that*
^{e⁹} ^{e⁶⁸} *suffisant* f. ^{e⁸} *mort* f. ^{e¹}
 suits you very well; did you see the queen when you were in
^{e⁶⁹} ^{e⁷} ^{e³} ^{e³⁵} ^{e¹} ^{e²²} ^{e⁶⁴}
 London; [^] men actuated by [^] passions agitate one another;
^{e²} art. ^{e¹} *agité* ^{e³} *les* f. *s'émouvoir*
 not knowing [^] you had the article, I provided myself elsewhere;
^{e⁶⁸} *que* [^] m. ^{e⁶⁸} *ailleurs*
was there an illumination on Monday last; I have never seen
^{e⁶⁸} f. ^{e²⁵} *dernier* ^{e³⁵}
 a bad man happy; he cannot* see you to-day.
méchant ^{e¹} ^{e⁸} ^{e⁶⁰} ^{e³⁵} ^{e²⁹}

* *Pas* or *point* are seldom seen after the tenses of the verb *pouvoir*.

FOURTH CONJUGATION IN *RE*.

BATTRE.

e, to beat. B. Battant, *beating.* C. Battu, *beat.* (avoir.)

t-a,	bat-s,	bat.	Nous bat-tons,	-tez,	-tent.
t-tais,	-tais,	-tait.	Nous bat-tions,	-tiez,	-taient.
t-tis,	-tis,	-tit.	Nous bat-times,	-tites,	-tirent.
t-trai,	-tras,	-tra.	Nous bat-trons,	-triez,	-tront.
t-trais,	-trais,	-trait.	Nous bat-trions,	-triez,	-traient.
t person,	bat-s,	'bat-te	— bat-tons,	-tez,	-tent.
at-te,	-tes,	-te.	" nous bat-tions,	-tiez,	-tent.
at-tisse,	-tisses,	-tît.	" nous bat-tissions,	-tissiez,	-tissent.

gate thus verbs compounded of *battre*, as *combattre*, to fight.

BOIRE.

, to drink. B. Buvant, *drinking.* C. Bu, *drank.* (avoir.)

i-s,	boi-s,	boi-t.	Nous buv-ons,	-ez,	boiv-ent.
v-ais,	-ais,	-ait.	Nous buv-ions,	-iez,	-aient.
-s,	-bu-s,	-bu-t.	Nous bûmes,	-ûtes,	-u-rent.
-rai,	-ras,	-ra.	Nous boi-rons,	-rez,	-ront.
-rais,	-rais,	-rait.	Nous boi-rions,	-riez,	-raient.
person,	boi-s,	boiv-e.	— buv-ons,	-ez,	boiv-ent.
oiv-e,	-es,	-e.	" nous buv-ions,	-iez,	boiv-ent.
u-sses,	-usses,	-ût.	" nous bu-ssions,	-ssiez,	-ssent.

BRAIRE.

, to bray. B. Brayant, *braying.* C. wanting.

it,	<i>it brays.</i>	Ils braient,	<i>they bray.</i>
ra,	<i>it will bray.</i>	Ils brairont,	<i>they will bray.</i>
irait,	<i>it would bray.</i>	Ils brairaient,	<i>they would bray.</i>

CLORE.

to close. B. wanting. C. Clos, *closed.* (defective.)

-s,	tu clo-s,	il clo-t.	no plural.		
-rai,	-ras,	-ra.	nous clo-rons,	-rez,	-ront.
-rais,	-rais,	-rais.	nous clo-rions,	-riez,	-aient.
person	clo-s,	qu'il clos-e.	no plural.		
lo-se,	-ses,	-se.	no plural.		

The tenses of *faire* are often used with the inf. *clorre*.

ate thus *déclorre*, to unclose; *enclorre*, to enclose: *fermer*, to shut;
se, to stop up, are used for *clorre*: *ouvrir*, to open, for *déclorre*;
re, to surround, and *enfermer*, to shut up, for *enclorre*.

39.

CONCLURE.

A. Conclure, *to conclude.* B. Concluant, *concluding.* C. Conclu, *(concluded. (avoir.))*

F. Je concl-us,	-us,	-ut.	Nous conclu-ons,	-ez,	-ent.
G. Je conclu-ais,	-ais,	-ait.	Nous conclu-ions,	-iez,	-aient.
H. Je concl-us,	-us,	-ut.	Nous conclûmes,	-ûtes,	-urent.
I. Je conclurai,	-ras,	-ra.	Nous conclu-ront,	-rez,	-ront.
O. Je conclu-rai,	-rais,	-rait.	Nous conclu-rions,	-riez,	-raient.
Q. no 1st person,	-con-clus,	-clu.	— conclu-ons,	-ez,	-ent.
R. " je conclue,	-es,	-e.	" nous conclu-ions,	-iez,	-ent.
S. " je conclu-asse,	-asses,	-ût.	" nous conclu-sions,	-siez,	-aient.

Conjugate thus, *exclure*, to exclude.

40.

CONDUIRE.

A. Conduire, *to conduct.* B. Conduisant, *conducting.* C. Conduit, *conducted. (avoir.)*

F. Je cond-uis,	-uis,	-uit.	Nous conduis-ons,	-ez,	-ent.
G. Je conduis-ais,	-ais,	-ait.	Nous conduis-ions,	-iez,	-aient.
H. Je conduis-is,	-is,	-it.	Nous conduisîmes,	-îtes,	-irent.
I. Je conduirai,	-ras,	-ra.	Nous condui-ront,	-rez,	-ront.
O. Je condui-rai,	-rais,	-rait.	Nous condui-rions,	-riez,	-raient.
Q. no 1st person,	cond-uis,	-uise.	— conduis-ons,	-ez,	-ent.
R. " je conduis-e,	-es,	-e.	" nous conduis-ions,	-iez,	-ent.
S. " je conduis-isse,	-isses,	-ît.	" nous conduis-issions,	-issiez,	-issent.

Conjugate thus verbs ending in *uire*, as *nuire*, to annoy; *luire*, and *reluire*, to shine, have no preterite, and, with *nuire* make in the participle *lui*, *relui*, and *nui*.

41.

COUDRE.

A. Coudre, *to sew.* B. Cousant, *sewing.* C. Cousu, *sewed. (avoir.)*

F. Je coud-s,	coud-s,	coud.	Nous cous-ons,	-ez,	-ent.
G. Je cous-ais,	-ais,	-ait.	Nous cous-ions,	-iez,	-aient.
H. Je cous-is,	-is,	-it.	Nous cousîmes,	-îtes,	-irent.
I. Je coud-rai,	-ras,	-ra.	Nous coud-ront,	-rez,	-ront.
O. Je coud-rai,	-rais,	-rait.	Nous coud-rions,	-riez,	-raient.
Q. no 1st person,	couds,	-couse.	— cous-ons,	-ez,	-ent.
R. " je cous-e,	-es,	-e.	" nous cous-ions,	-iez,	-ent.
S. " je cous-isse,	-isses,	-ît.	" nous cousi-sions,	-siez,	-aient.

Conjugate thus, *découdre*, to unsew; *recoudre*, to sew again.

42.

CONNAÎTRE.

(avoir.)

A. Connaître, *to know.* B. Connaissant, *knowing.* C. Connu, *known.*

F. Je conn-ais,	-ais,	-ait.	Nous connais-sions,	-ez,	-ent.
G. Je connais-ais,	-ais,	-ait.	Nous connais-sions,	-iez,	-aient.
H. Je conn-us,	-us,	-ut.	Nous connûmes,	-ûtes,	-urent.
I. Je connaît-rai,	-ras,	-ra.	Nous connaît-ront,	-rez,	-ront.

Q. Je connaît-rai,	-rai,	-rait.	Nous connaît-rions,	-riez,	-raient.
Q. no 1st person, conn-ais,	-aisse	—	connais-s-ions,	-ez,	-ent.
R. " je connais-e,	-es,	-e.	" nous connais-s-ions,	-iez,	-ent.
S. " je conn-usse,	-usses,	-ût.	" nous connuss-ions,	-iez,	-ent.

Conjugate thus *apparaître*, to appear; *comparaître*, to make one's appearance; *disparaître*, to disappear; *méconnaître*, not to know, to disown; *paraître*, to appear; *reconnaître*, to acknowledge; *reparaître*, to appear again; *se méconnaître*, to forget one's self.

43.

CROIRE.

A. Croire, to believe. B. Croyant, believing. C. Cru, believed. (avoir.)

F. Je crois,	crois,	croit.	Nous cro-yons,	-yez,	-ient.
G. Je cro-yais,	-yais,	-yait.	Nous cro-yions,	-yiez,	-yaient.
H. Je crus,	crus,	-crut.	Nous cr-ûmes,	-ûtes,	-urent.
I. Je croi-rai,	-ras,	-ra.	Nous croi-rions,	-rez,	-ront.
O. Je croi-rai,	-rais,	-rait.	Nous croi-rions,	-riez,	-raient.
Q. no 1st person, crois,	"croie.	—	cro-yons,	-yez,	-ient.
R. " je croi-e,	-es,	-e.	" nous cro-yions,	-yiez,	-ient.
S. " je cr-usse,	-usses,	-ût.	" nous cru-ssions,	-ssiez,	-ssent.

44.

CROÎTRE.

A. Croître, to grow. B. Croissant, believing. C. Crû, grown. (avoir.)

F. Je croî-s,	croî-s,	croî-t.	Nous croi-ssons,	-ssez,	-ssent.
G. Je croi-ssais,	-ssais,	-ssait.	Nous croi-ssions,	-ssiez,	-ssaient.
H. Je cr-ûs,	cr-ûs,	cr-ût.	Nous cr-ûmes,	-ûtes,	-ûrent.
I. Je croît-rai,	-ras,	-ra.	Nous croît-rions,	-rez,	-ront.
O. Je croît-rai,	-rais,	-rait.	Nous croît-rions,	-riez,	-raient.
Q. no 1st person, croi-s,	croi-ss-	—	croi-ssons,	-ssez,	-ssent.
R. " je croi-ss-	-sses,	-sse.	" nous croi-ssions,	-ssiez,	-ssent.
S. " je cr-ûsse,	-ûsses,	-ût.	" nous crû-ssions,	-ssiez,	-ssent.

Conjugate thus, *accroître*, to increase; *décroître*, to decrease; part. *past accru* and *décrû*.

45.

ECLOIRE.

A. Eclorre, to hatch, to blow, to open. B. wanting. C. écloûs, hatched, &c. F. Il éclôt; ils éclôrent. I. Il écloûra; ils écloûront. O. Il écloûrait; ils écloûraient. R. Qu'il éclosse; qu'ils éclosent.

S'ouvrir, and *paraître*, are used for the other tenses.

46.

ECRIRE.

A. Ecrire, to write. B. écrivain, writing. C. écrit, written. (avoir.)

F. J'écri-s,	écri-s,	écri-t.	Nous écriv-ions,	-ez,	-ent.
G. J'écriv-ais,	-ais,	-ait.	Nous écriv-ions,	-iez,	-aient.
H. J'écriv-is,	-is,	-it.	Nous écriv-îmes,	-îtes,	-irent.
I. J'écri-rai,	-ras,	-ra.	Nous écri-rions,	-rez,	-ront.
O. J'écri-rai,	-rais,	-rait.	nous écri-rions,	-riez,	-raient.
Q. no 1st person, écri-s,	écri-ve.	—	écriv-ions,	-ez,	-ent.
R. " j'écriv-e,	-es,	-e.	" nous écriv-ions,	-iez,	-ent.
S. " j'écriv-isse,	-isses,	-ît.	" nous écriv-issions,	-ssiez,	-ssent.

Conjugate thus, *circonscrire*, to circumscribe; *décrire*, to describe; *prescrire*, to prescribe; *inscrire*, to inscribe; *proscrire*, to proscribe; *récrire*, to write again; *souscrire*, to subscribe; *transcrire*, to transcribe.

47.

FAIRE.

A. Faire, to make. B. Faisant, making. C. Fait, made. (avoir.)

F. Je fai-s,	fai-s,	fai-t.	Nous fai-sons,	fai-tes,	f-ont.
G. Je fais-ais,	-ais,	-ait.	Nous fais-ions,	-iez,	-aient.
H. Je fi-s,	fi-s,	fi-t.	Nous f-îmes,	-îtes,	-irent.
I. Je fe-rai,	-ras,	-ra.	Nous fe-ront,	-rez,	-ront.
O. Je fe-rai-s,	-rais,	-rait.	Nous fe-rions,	-riez,	-raient.
Q. no 1st person,	fai-s,	fa-sse.	— fai-sons,	fai-tes,	fa-sseut.
R. " je fa-sse,	-sses,	-sse.	" nous fa-ssions,	-ssiez,	-ssent.
S. " je fi-sse,	-sses,	fi-t.	" nous fi-ssions,	-ssiez,	-ssent.

Conjugate thus all verbs compounded of *faire*.

48.

FRIRE.

A. Frire, to fry. B. wanting. C. Frit, fried. (avoir.)

F. Je fri-s,	fri-s,	fri-t.	No plural.		
I. Je fri-rai,	-ras,	-ra.	Nous fri-ront,	-rez,	-ront.
O. Je fri-rai-s,	-rais,	-rait.	Nous fri-rions,	-riez,	-raient.

To supply the other persons and tenses, use *faire*, with the infinitive; as, *faites frire*, fry; literally, make fry.

49.

LIRE, TO READ.

A. Lire, to read. B. Lisant, reading. C. Lu, read. (avoir.)

F. Je li-s,	li-s,	li-t.	Nous lis-ons,	-ez,	-ent.
G. Je lis-ais,	-ais,	-ait.	Nous lis-ions,	-iez,	-aient.
H. Je lu-s,	lu-s,	lu-t.	Nous l-îmes,	-îtes,	-urent.
I. Je li-rai,	-ras,	-ra.	Nous li-ront,	-rez,	-ront.
O. Je li-rai-s,	-rais,	-rait.	Nous li-rions,	-riez,	-raient.
Q. no 1st person,	li-s,	li-se.	— lis-ons,	-ez,	-ent.
R. " je lis-e,	-es,	-e.	" nous lis-ions,	-iez,	-ent.
S. " je lu-sse,	-sses,	lu-t.	" nous lu-ssions,	-ssiez,	-ssent.

Conjugate thus *élire*, to elect; *relire*, to read again.

50.

METTRE.

A. Mettre, to put. B. Mettant, putting. C. Mis, put. (avoir.)

F. Je met-s,	met-s,	met.	Nous mett-ons,	-ez,	-ent.
G. Je mett-ais,	-ais,	-ait.	Nous mett-ions,	-iez,	-aient.
H. Je mi-s,	mi-s,	mi-t.	Nous m-îmes,	-îtes,	-irent.
I. Je mett-rai,	-ras,	-ra.	Nous mett-ront,	-rez,	-ront.
O. Je mett-rai-s,	-rais,	-rait.	Nous mett-rions,	-riez,	-raient.
Q. no 1st person,	met-s,	mett-e.	— mett-ons,	-ez,	-ent.
R. " je mett-e,	-es,	-e.	" nous mett-ions,	-iez,	-ent.
S. " je m-isse,	-isses,	-it.	" nous m-issions,	-issiez,	-issent.

Conjugate thus verbs compounded of *mettre*, as *omettre*, to omit.

51.

MOUDRE.

A. Moudre, to grind. B. Moulant, grinding. C. Moulu, ground. (avoir.)

F. Je mou-ds,	-ds,	-d.	Nous mou-l-ons,	-ez,	-ent.
G. Je mou-l-ais,	-ais,	-ait.	Nous mou-l-ions,	-iez,	-aient.
H. Je mou-l-us,	-us,	-ut.	Nous mou-l-âmes,	-âtes,	-urent.
I. Je mou-d-rai,	-ras,	-ra.	Nous mou-d-r-ons,	-rez,	-ront.
O. Je mou-d-raïs,	-rais,	-rait.	Nous mou-d-r-ions,	-riez,	-raient.
Q. no 1st person,	mouls,	moule.	— mou-l-ons,	-ez,	-ent.
R. " je mou-l-e,	-es,	-e.	" nous mou-l-ions,	-iez,	-ent.
S. " je mou-l-usse,	-usses,	-ût.	" nous mou-lu-sions,	-assiez,	-aient.

Conjugate thus *émoudre*, to grind, to set on edge; *remoudre*, to grind again.

52.

NAÎTRE.

A. Naître, to be born. B. Naissant, being born. C. Né, born. (être.)

F. Je nai-s,	nai-s,	nai-t.	Nous nais-s-ons,	-ez,	-ent.
G. Je nais-s-ais,	-ais,	-ait.	Nous nais-s-ions,	-iez,	-aient.
H. Je na-quis,	-quis,	-quit.	Nous naqu-îmes,	-îtes,	-irent.
I. Je nai-t-rai,	-ras,	-ra.	Nous nai-t-r-ons,	-rez,	-ront.
O. Je nai-t-raïs,	-rais,	-rait.	Nous nai-t-r-ions,	-riez,	-raient.
Q. no 1st person,	nai-s,	nai-ss-e.	— nai-s-sons,	-assez,	-assent.
R. " je nais-s-e,	-e,	-es.	" nous nais-s-ions,	-iez,	-ent.
S. " je naqu-i-ss-e,	-isses,	-ît.	" nous naqu-i-ss-ions,	-issiez,	-issent.

Conjugate thus *renaitre*, to renew, no participle past; *paitre*, to feed; participle past *pu*, which has no preterites; *repaitre*, to feed, preterite *je repus*, S. preterite *que je repus*; *manger*, and *nourrir*, are used according to the sense.

53.

PEINDRE.

A. Peindre, to paint. B. Peignant, painting. C. Peint, painted. (avoir.)

F. Je pein-s,	pein-s,	pein-t.	Nous pei-g-nons,	-gnez,	-gnent.
G. Je pei-g-naïs,	-gnais,	-gnait.	Nous pei-g-nions,	-gniez,	-gnaient.
H. Je pei-g-nis,	-gnis,	-gnit.	Nous pei-g-nîmes,	-gnîtes,	-gnirent.
I. Je peind-rai,	-ras,	-ra.	Nous peind-r-ons,	-rez,	-ront.
O. Je peind-raïs,	-rais,	-rait.	Nous peind-r-ions,	-riez,	-raient.
Q. no 1st person,	pein-s,	"pei-g-ne.	— pei-g-nons,	-gniez,	-gnent.
R. " je pei-g-ne,	-gnes,	-gne.	" nous pei-g-nions,	-gniez,	-gnent.
S. " je pei-g-nisse,	-gnisses,	-gnit.	" nous pei-g-nissions,	-gnissiez,	-gnissent.

Conjugate thus verbs ending in the pres. inf. in *-aindre*, *-cindre*, and *-sindre*.

54.

PLAIRE.

A. Plaire, to please. B. Plaisant, pleasing. C. Plu, pleased. (avoir.)

F. Je plai-s,	plai-s,	plai-t.	Nous plais-ons,	-ez,	-ent.
G. Je plais-ais,	-ais,	-ait.	Nous plais-ions,	-iez,	-aient.
H. Je plu-s,	plu-s,	plu-t.	Nous pl-âmes,	-âtes,	-urent.
I. Je plai-rai,	-ras,	-ra.	Nous plai-r-ons,	-rez,	-ront.

O. Je plai-rai,	-rais,	-rait.	Nous plai-rions,	-riez, -raient.
Q. no 1st person,	plais,	"plaise.	— plai-sons,	-sez, -sent.
R. " je plais-e,	-es,	-e.	" nous plais-ions,	-iez, -ent.
S. " je pl-usse,	-usses,	-ût.	" nous plu-ssions,	-siez, -sent.

Conjugate thus *complaire*, to humour; no part. pres. *déplaire*, to displease; *taire*, to silence; and *se taire*, to be silent.

55.

PREDIRE.

(avoir.)

A. Prédire, to foretell. B. Prédisant, foretelling. C. Prédit, foretold.

F. Je préd-is,	-is,	-it.	Nous prédis-ons,	-ez, -ent.
G. Je préd-iais,	-iais,	-isait.	Nous prédis-ions,	-iez, -aient.
H. Je préd-is,	-is,	-it.	Nous préd-îmes,	-îtes, -iront.
I. Je préd-irai,	-iras,	-ira.	Nous préd-irons,	-irez, -iront.
O. Je préd-irais,	-irais,	-irait.	Nous préd-irions,	-iriez, -iraient.
Q. no 1st person,	prédis,	-ise.	— préd-isons,	-isez, -issent.
R. " je préd-ise,	-ises,	-ise.	" nous préd-isions,	-isiez, -issent.
S. " je préd-isse,	-isses,	-ît.	" nous préd-issions,	-issiez, -issent.

Conjugate thus *circonscire*, to circumscribe, part. past, *circonscris*; *suffire*, to suffice, part. past *suffi*; *confire*, to preserve, and verbs compounded of *dire*.

Dire and *redire* make, in the second pers. plu. ind. and imperative, *dites* and *redites*.

56.

PRENDRE.

A. Prendre, to take. B. Prennant, taking. C. Pris, taken. (avoir.)

F. Je prend-s,	prend-s, prend.	Nous pren-ons,	-ez, -nent.
G. Je pren-ais,	-ais, -ait.	Nous pren-ions,	-iez, -aient.
H. Je pri-s,	-pri-s, -pri-t.	Nous pr-îmes,	-îtes, -irent.
I. Je prend-rai,	-ras, -ra.	Nous prend-rons,	-rez, -ront.
O. Je prend-rai,	-rais, -rait.	Nous prend-rions,	-riez, -raient.
Q. no 1st person,	prends, "prenne.	— pren-ons,	-ez, -nent.
R. " je pren-ne,	-nes, -ne.	" nous pren-ions,	-iez, -nent.
S. " je pr-isse,	-isses, -ît.	" nous pr-issions,	-issiez, -issent.

Conjugate thus verbs compounded of *prendre*, as *apprendre*, to learn.

57.

RESOUDRE.

(avoir.)

A. Résoudre, to resolve. B. Résolvant, resolving. C. Résolu, resolved.

F. Je ré-sous,	-sous, -sout.	Nous résolv-ons,	-ez, -ent.
G. Je résolv-ais,	-ais, -ait.	Nous résolv-ions,	-iez, -aient.
H. Je résol-us,	-us, -ut.	Nous résol-ûmes,	-ûtes, -urent.
I. Je résoud-rai,	-ras, -ra.	Nous résoud-rons,	-rez, -ront.
O. Je résoud-rai,	-rais, -rait.	Nous résoud-rions,	-riez, -raient.
Q. no 1st person,	résou-s, résolv-e.	— résolv-ons,	-ez, -ent.
R. " je résolv-e,	-es, -e.	" nous résolv-ions,	-iez, -ent.
S. " je résol-usse,	-usses, -ût.	" nous résol-ussions,	-ussiez, -ussent.

Conjugate thus *dissoudre*, to dissolve; *absoudre*, to absolve; which have no preterit, and make their part. past *absous* m., *absoute* f., *dissous* m., *dissoute* f.; *résoudre*, meaning to dispel, makes part. past *résous*, no fem.

RIRE.

to laugh. B. Riant, *laughing.* C. Ri, *laughed.* (avoir.)

-s,	ri-s,	ri-t.	Nous ri-ons,	-ez,	-ent.
-ais,	-ais,	-ait.	Nous ri-ions,	-iez,	-aient.
-s,	ri-s,	ri-t.	Nous ri-îmes,	-îtes,	-irent.
-rai,	-ras,	-ra.	Nous ri-rons,	-rez,	-ront.
-rais,	-rais,	-rait.	Nous ri-rions,	-riez,	-raient.
st person,	ri-s,	qu'il ri-e.	— ri-ons,	-ez,	-ent.
ri-e,	ri-es,	ri-e.	" nous ri-ions,	-iez,	-ent.
r-issee,	-issee,	-ît.	" nous ri-issions,	-issiez,	-issent.

Conjugate thus, *sourire*, to smile; *se rire de*, to laugh at. (être.)

SUIVRE.

to follow. B. Suivant, *following.* C. Suivi, *followed.* (avoir.)

ti-s,	sui-s,	sui-t.	Nous suiv-ons,	-ez,	-ent.
ti-v-ais,	-ais,	-ait.	Nous suiv-ions,	-iez,	-aient.
ti-v-is,	-is,	-ît.	Nous suiv-îmes,	-îtes,	-irent.
ti-v-rai,	-ras,	-ra.	Nous suiv-rons,	-rez,	-ront.
ti-v-rais,	-rais,	-rait.	Nous suiv-rions,	-riez,	-raient.
st person,	suis,	suive.	— suiv-ons,	-ez,	-ent.
suiv-e,	-es,	-e.	" nous suiv-ions,	-iez,	-ent.
suiv-issee,	-issee,	-ît.	" nous suiv-issions,	-issiez,	-issent.

Conjugate thus *poursuivre*, to pursue; *s'ensuivre*, to result, to follow, used in the third pers. sing. and plu.; when used unipersonally, by the third pers. sing.

TRAIRE.

(avoir.)

to milk. B. Trayant, *milking.* C. Trait, *milked,* defective.

rai-s,	trai-s,	trai-t.	Nous tra-yons,	-yez,	traient.
ray-ais,	-ais,	-ait.	Nous tra-yions,	-yez,	-yaient.
rai-rai,	-ras,	-ra.	Nous trai-rons,	-rez,	-ront.
rai-rais,	-rais,	-rait.	Nous trai-rions,	-riez,	-raient.
st person,	trai-s,	trai-e.	— tra-yons,	-yez,	traient.
trai-e,	-es,	-e.	" nous tra-yons,	-yez,	traient.

Conjugate thus verbs compounded of *traire*, as *distraindre*, &c.

VAINCRE.

(avoir.)

to vanquish. B. Vainquant. C. Vaincu, *vanquished.*

vainc-s,	vainc-s,	vain-c.	Nous vainqu-ons,	-ez,	-ent.
vainqu-ais,	-ais,	-ait.	Nous vainqu-ions,	-iez,	-aient.
vainqu-is,	-is,	-ît.	Nous vainqu-îmes,	-îtes,	-irent.
vainc-rai,	-ras,	-ra.	Nous vainc-rons,	-rez,	-ront.
vainc-rais,	-rais,	-rait.	Nous vainc-rions,	-riez,	raient.
st person,	vainc-s,	vain-que.	— vainqu-ons,	-ez,	-ent.
vainqu-e,	-es,	-e.	" nous vainqu-ions,	-iez,	-ent.
vainqu-issee,	-issee,	-ît.	" nous vainqu-issions,	-issiez,	-issent.

Conjugate thus *convaincre*, to convince.

62.

VIVRE.

A. Vivre, to live.	B. Vivant, living.		C. Vécu, lived.	(avoir.)	
F. Je vi-s,	vi-s,	vi-t.	Nous viv-ons,	-ez,	-ent.
G. Je viv-ais,	-ais,	-ait.	Nous viv-ions,	-iez,	-aient.
H. Je vécus,	-us,	-ut.	Nous vécûmes,	-ûtes,	-urent.
I. Je viv-rai,	-ras,	-ra.	Nous viv-rons,	-rez,	-ront.
O. Je viv-raïs,	-rais,	-rait.	Nous viv-rions,	-riez,	-raient.
Q. no 1st person,	vi-s,	viv-e.	— viv-ons,	-ez,	-ent.
R. " je viv-e,	viv-es,	"viv-e.	"nous viv-ions,	-iez,	-ent.
S. " je véc-usse,	-usses,	-ût.	"nous véc-ussions,	-ussiez,	-ussent.

Conjugate thus *survivre*, to survive; *revivre*, to live again.

Exercises on the Irregular Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation.

EXERCISE LXI.

She makes you believe *anything she likes*; I have
faire accroire tout ce qu'elle veut
 concluded the bargain with your steward; tell me what are
^{e³²} ^{marché m. e⁷} ^{intendant e⁴⁸} ^{quels}
 your designs; do not contradict your father; what are you
^{e²¹} ^{contredire e²} ^{que}
 doing? we are frying the fish; do you think ^{he} will grind
^{e⁶⁰} ^{frir e²⁰} ^{e⁶⁶ que moude}
 the five sacks of wheat to-day? do not let that man grind
^{sac m. e⁶³} ^{laisser e¹ émoudre}
 those knives; he filled his mind with vain hopes; has that
^{e³} ^{repaitre esprit m. e¹⁸} ^{..... espérance f.}
 young man determined ^{to} change his conduct? she
^{e³} ^{e¹ résoudre de changer de e⁹}
 undertakes *too many* things at ^{once}; this change does not
entreprendre trop de chose f. art. fois f. changement m.
 surprise me; we will paint your lobby ^{next} week; ^{you}
surprendre peindre corridor m. art. e⁵⁴ semaine f.
 always slander your neighbour; he has renounced ^{the}
^{e⁸} ^{médire e⁶} ^{se dédire de}
 bargain.
^{e⁶¹}

EXERCISE LXII.

Have you *put out* the candle? do you know that lady?
^{éteindre e¹¹} ^{connaître e¹}
 I think ^{she} will never go to the country; do you know ^{the}
^{e⁶⁶ que e⁶⁴} ^{campagne f. e⁸⁸ art.}
 French? do you tell the truth? allow me ^{to} offer you some
^{e²⁸} ^{e⁴⁸} ^{e¹⁷ permettre e² de offrir}

anges; this stranger has annoyed ^{all} the town with his
f. ^{e¹¹} nuire à ^{e⁹} ^{e²⁷} ^{e⁷}
 titions; the sun has not yet dispelled the mist; he thinks
 icet m. ^{e¹} encore résoudre brouillard m. ^{e⁶¹}
 nself a man of consequence; why have you not put any
^{e¹} conséquence f. pourquoi mettre
 far in my tea? they are always complaining; I have given up
^{e¹} ^{e²⁶} ^{e³} se plaindre se démettre
 this charge; we are surprised; what do you wish ^{to} drink?
 place f. ^{e⁶¹} ^{e⁶¹} vouloir à
 will drink¹ some water; when you have preserved the
 boire ^{e¹} ^{e²²} confire
 awberries, preserve some apricots.
^{e⁴} ^{e⁶²} abricots m.

EXERCISE LXIII.

They do not contradict his testimony; ^a virtue shines in
^{e⁶¹} témoignage m. art. ^{e¹} luire ^{e¹}
 adversity; we cut down all the oak trees; ^a trouble attends
 malheur m. abbatre ^{e⁹} chêne art. peine f. suivre
 hes; our income increases; shall we be admitted? he
¹⁰ revenue m. accroître admettre
 peared to him in a dream; see how that vessel struggles
 rature ^{e¹} songe m. ^{e²⁶} comme ^{e¹} se débattre
 h the storm; I should have wished that you had concluded
 tre tempête f. ^{e⁶²} ^{e²³}
 t business sooner; he has conducted himself very well;
 affaire f. plutôt conduire ^{e⁷} ^{e³}
 se narcissus grow very fast; do you believe him? I do not
 narcisses f. croître ^{e⁷} vite ^{e²⁷}
 rays believe what he says; fear him who fears not God;
^{e³} ^{e²⁷} ^{e⁴⁸} dire craindre celui ^{e⁶³} Dieu
 re you entered that in your journal? it is necessary that he
 écrire ^{e¹} ^{e¹}m. ^{e⁶⁰}
 ould be elected; follow his advice, and you will learn fast;
 R. élire suivre avis m. apprendre ^{e⁶³}
 rn a verb every day.
²³ verbe m. ^{e⁹}

EXERCISE LXIV.

Would you transmit your property to ^a strangers; I should
 transmettre ^{e⁴⁸} ^{e¹⁰} ^{e¹¹}
 re wished that he had written to his mother; that spinney*
^{e⁶²} écrire v. ^{e²} ^{e²¹}

* Mill is a wrong term, or those who worked in them would be called millers;
 who work in a spinney are spinners. In French we say *fil*, a thread; *fileur* m.
est a spinner or maker of thread; *filature*, a place where thread is made—hence a
 very.

is to be ^Δ sold; who made this gasalier?* his enemies pursue
 — à ^{e²⁶} ^{e⁶¹} K. gazolier m. ^{e⁶²} poursuivre
 him on all sides; take a glass of wine; how I pity that
 de ^{e³} coté m. prendre ^{e²} ^{e²} que plaindre
 misguided youth; it is time ^Δ I should return this newspaper;
 jeune égaré ^{e¹⁴} que ^{e²⁷} R. gazette f.
 he has closed the entrance; your jackass brays from ^Δ morning
 close entrée f. âne braire art. ^{e²}
 till night; I was born in Leghorn, the 12th May, 1825; never
 au ^{e²¹} naître ^{e²⁴} douze ^{e⁶¹}
 laugh without a cause; milk the cows before ^Δ you go to the
 rire ^{e⁴⁴} — raison f. traire ^{e³} ^{e²⁵} de — ^{e⁴⁴}
 fair; I am convinced; from this proposition it follows that you
 foire f. convaincref. s'ensuire
 are in the right; she promises but ^Δ never keeps her word.
 avoir raison promettre elle tenir ^{e¹⁶}

OF THOSE IRREGULAR VERBS,

*Either seldom used, or only in particular cases and in certain tenses.
 Each is prefixed by a letter referred to in the list of Irregular Verbs.*

- A. *Abstraire*, to abstract, like *traire*; little used, it is better to say *faire abstraction de*.
- B. *Accroire*, to make believe; used only in the pres. inf. with *faire*, as, *il vous fait accroire cela*, he makes you believe that.
- C. *Apparoir*, to appear; a law term, used only in the inf. or unipersonally, in the 3d pers. sing. pres. ind.
- D. *Attraire*, to attract, to allure; seldom used but in the inf. otherwise it is conjugated like *traire*; *attirer* is preferred.
- E. *Bruire*, to make a confused noise; used in the pres. inf. and 3d pers. sing. and plu. of the imperfect, as *il bruyait*, *ils bruyaient*; *faire du bruit* is used instead; *bruyant* is an adjective.
- F. *Choir*, to fall, with *être*; seldom used but in poetry, and only in the inf. and sometimes in the part. past—*tomber* is now used.
- G. *Comparoir*, to appear; a law term, used only in the pres. of the inf. *il est assigné à comparoir*, he is summoned to appear.
- H. *Conquerir*, to conquer, like *acquérir*, but only used in the pres. inf. part. past, and preterite of the ind. and subj.

* If a better word in French or English shall be proposed we will adopt it; but *gas-lustre*, *gas-chandeller*, are very improper terms.

essiller, to try colours by boiling; seldom used but in es. inf. with *faire*, like *bouillir*, and in the part. past. *essuoir*, to make one desist; a law term, only used in present inf.

survoir, to leave unprovided; used only in the pres. and comp. tenses—part. past, *dépourvu*.

essillir, to boil away; seldom used but in the pres. inf. *essaire*, like *bouillir*, and part. past, *ébouilli*.

essuoir, to stir up; seldom used but in the pres. inf. ind. and subj. and in its compound tenses, like *essir*.

debarlore, to debar, like *clore*; a law term, only used in es. inf. and part. past.

essaire, to forfeit; a law term, used only in the pres. and comp. tenses—part. past, *forfait*.

essir, to lie down; used only as follows: pres. *il gît, gissons, ils gissent*; imp. *il gissait*. *Gisant* is used as an adjective; *ci gît*, here lies, is generally used at the end of epitaphs.

essir, to hate; regular except in the sing. pres. ind. *Je te hais, il hait*—it has no preterites.

essir, to issue from, is only used in the part. past, as *d'une famille ancienne*, descended from an ancient

essir, to do wrong; used only in the pres. inf. and comp. tenses—part. past, *méfait*.

essir, to curse, is only irregular because the inf. ends in *ir*; otherwise it is conjugated like *punir*, except the part. past, which makes *maudit*.

essir, to dawn; like *peindre*, but only used in the pres. and future.

essir, to promote; used only in the pres. inf. and part. past *promu*—*avancer* is used for the other tenses.

essir, to fetch, used only in the pres. inf. with *aller*, *envoyer*; it is familiar.

essir, to have or get again; used only in the present inf.

essir, to shut up; used in the pres. inf. and in its compound tenses—part. past, *reclu*.

essir, to reconquer, to regain; seldom used but in its compound tenses.

essir, to belong to; a law term, regular like *punir*.

essir, to break; and its derivatives are regular, changingly the radical letter *d* in *vendre* into *p*, and taking an initial *t* in the 3d pers. sing. pres. ind.

- DD. *Sailir*, to gush out; regular like *punir*, but only used in the 3d person.
- EE. *S'ébattre*, seldom used in the present infinitive, it is supplied by *se divertir*, *se réjouir*.
- FF. *Seoir*, to sit; part. pres. *séant*, sitting; part. past, *sé*, Anglicised by situated—*être situé* is better.
- GG. *S'enquérir*, to enquire; like *acquérir*, but only used in the present of the inf.—*s'informer* supplies it.
- HH. *S'ensuivre*, to follow from hence; like *suiure*, but only used in the 3d person singular and plural, and sometimes unipersonal, *il s'ensuit*, hence it follows.
- II. *Soudre*, to solve or resolve; obsolete—*résoudre* is used instead.
- KK. *Sourdre*, to spring out; used only in the pres. inf. with *faire*, sing. and plu. pres. ind.—*sortir* is used instead.
- LL. *Tistre*, to weave; used only in its comp. tenses, part. past, *tissu*—*tisser* is now used for the other tenses.

GENERAL LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

	Page	M.		Page	M.
<i>Abbatre</i> , to pull down.....	133	35	<i>Cueillir</i> , to gather.....	123	7
<i>Absoudre</i> , to absolve.....	138	57	<i>Choir</i> , to fall.....	142	7
<i>Abstraire</i> , to abstract.....	142	A.	<i>Circonscrire</i> , circumscribe...	135	46
<i>Accueillir</i> , to make welcome	123	7	<i>Circoncire</i> , to circumcise...	138	55
<i>Accourir</i> , to run to.....	122	6	<i>Circonvenir</i> , to deceive.....	125	18
<i>Accroire</i> , to make believe...	142	B.	<i>Clore</i> , to close.....	133	38
<i>Accroître</i> , to increase.....	135	44	<i>Combattre</i> , to fight.....	133	35
<i>Acquérir</i> , to acquire.....	121	3	<i>Commettre</i> , to commit.....	136	50
<i>Adjoindre</i> , to adjoin.....	137	53	<i>Comparaitre</i> , to appear.....	134	42
<i>Admettre</i> , to admit.....	136	50	<i>Comparoir</i> , to appear.....	142	6
<i>Aller</i> , to go.....	120	1	<i>Complaire</i> , to humour.....	137	54
<i>Apparaître</i> , to appear.....	134	42	<i>Comprendre</i> , to understand...	138	56
<i>Apparoir</i> , to appear.....	142	C.	<i>Compromettre</i> , compromise...	136	50
<i>Appartenir</i> , to belong.....	125	18	<i>Conclure</i> , to conclude.....	134	39
<i>Apprendre</i> , to learn.....	138	56	<i>Concourir</i> , to concur.....	122	6
<i>Assaillir</i> , to assault.....	122	4	<i>Conduire</i> , to conduct.....	134	40
<i>Asseoir</i> , to sit.....	129	27	<i>Confire</i> , to preserve.....	138	55
<i>Astreindre</i> , to force.....	137	53	<i>Conjoindre</i> , to conjoin.....	137	53
<i>Atteindre</i> , to reach.....	137	53	<i>Connaitre</i> , to know.....	134	42
<i>Attirer</i> , to attract.....	142	D.	<i>Conquérir</i> , to conquer.....	142	7
<i>Aveindre</i> , to reach.....	137	53	<i>Consentir</i> , to consent.....	125	15
<i>Avenir</i> , to happen.....	125	18	<i>Construire</i> , to construct.....	134	40
B.			<i>Contenir</i> , to contain.....	125	18
<i>Battre</i> , to beat.....	133	35	<i>Contraindre</i> , to constrain...	137	53
<i>Boire</i> , to drink.....	133	36	<i>Contredire</i> , to contradict...	138	55
<i>Bouillir</i> , to boil.....	122	5	<i>Contrefaire</i> , to counterfeit...	136	47
<i>Braire</i> , to bray.....	138	37	<i>Contrevenir</i> , to infringe.....	125	18
<i>Bruire</i> , to make a noise....	142	E.	<i>Convaincre</i> , to convince.....	139	61
C.			<i>Corrompre</i> , to corrupt.....	143	25
<i>Ceindre</i> , to gird.....	137	53	<i>Convenir</i> , to agree.....	125	18

	Page.	M.		Page.	M.
to sew.....	134	41	<i>Empeindre</i> , to imprint	137	53
to run.....	122	6	<i>Enceindre</i> , to surround.....	137	53
to cover.....	124	14	<i>Enclore</i> , to inclose.....	133	38
, to fear.....	137	53	<i>Encourir</i> , to incur.....	122	6
to believe.....	135	43	<i>Endormir</i> , to lull asleep....	128	8
to grow.....	135	44	<i>Enduire</i> , to plaster.....	134	40
to do by fire.....	134	40	<i>Enfreindre</i> , to infringe.....	137	53
D.			<i>Enjoindre</i> , to enjoin	137	53
, to debate.....	133	35	<i>Entreprendre</i> , to undertake ..	138	56
ir, to try colours....	143	1.	<i>Entrevoir</i> , to have a glimpse	130	32
to unclose.....	133	38	<i>Entr'ouvrir</i> , to open ajar....	124	14
, to discomfit.....	138	55	<i>Entretenir</i> , to entertain....	125	18
, to unsew.....	134	41	<i>Envoyer</i> , to send.....	121	2
ir, to discover.....	124	14	<i>Epreindre</i> , to squeeze out ..	137	53
to describe.....	135	46	<i>Equivaloir</i> , to be equivalent	130	31
to decay.....	127	20	<i>Eteindre</i> , to extinguish.....	137	53
, to decrease.....	135	44	<i>Etreindre</i> , to bind fast.....	137	53
to retract.....	138	55	<i>Exclure</i> , to exclude.....	134	39
to deduce.....	134	40	<i>Extraire</i> , to extract.....	139	60
, to fall to decay ..	123	9	F.		
to undo.....	146	47	<i>Faillir</i> , to fail.....	123	9
, to disjoin.....	137	53	<i>Faire</i> , to make.....	136	47
r, to belie.....	125	15	<i>Falloir</i> , to be necessary	128	22
, to disjoint.....	136	50	<i>Feindre</i> , to feign.....	137	53
nir, to make desist..	143	κ.	<i>Fleurir</i> , to flourish.....	123	10
, to distribute.....	125	15	<i>Forclorre</i> , to debar.....	143	o.
re, to describe.....	137	53	<i>Forefaire</i> , to forfeit.....	143	p.
re, to part.....	138	56	<i>Frîre</i> , to fry	136	48
, to displease.....	137	54	<i>Fuir</i> , to run away.....	124	11
nir, to leave unprov.	143	l.	G.		
nir, to unprejudice.	125	18	<i>Gésir</i> , to lie down.....	143	q.
endre, to unlearn...	138	56	H.		
e, to discolour.....	137	53	<i>Haïr</i> , to hate.....	143	z.
r, to take away.....	125	17	I.		
to detain.....	125	18	<i>Inscrire</i> , to inscribe	135	46
to destroy.....	134	40	<i>Induire</i> , to induce	134	40
to become.....	125	18	<i>Instruire</i> , to instruct.....	134	40
to strip.....	126	19	<i>Interdire</i> , to interdict.....	138	55
say.....	138	55	<i>Interrompre</i> , to interrupt ..	143	cc
nir, to disagree.	125	18	<i>Intervenir</i> , to intervene.....	125	18
r, to discourse	122	6	<i>Introduire</i> , to introduce.....	134	40
re, to disjoin.....	137	53	<i>Issir</i> , to issue from.....	143	s.
tre, to disappear....	134	42	<i>Joindre</i> , to join.....	137	53
, to divert from....	139	60	L.		
e, to dissolve.....	138	57	<i>Lire</i> , to read.....	136	49
to sleep.....	123	8	<i>Luire</i> , to shine.....	134	40
E.			M.		
, to boil away.....	143	m.	<i>Maintenir</i> , to maintain.....	125	18
to be due.....	128	21	<i>Maudire</i> , to curse....	143	v.
to hatch.....	135	45	<i>Méconnaître</i> , not to know ..	134	42
e, to reject.....	134	40	<i>Médire</i> , to slander.....	138	55
to write.....	135	46	<i>Méfaire</i> , to do wrong.....	143	r.
elect.....	136	49	<i>Mentir</i> , to lie	125	15
, to grind.....	137	51	<i>Méprendre</i> , to mistake.....	138	56
r, to stir up.....	143	n.	<i>Mésoffrir</i> , to underbid.....	124	14

	Page M.		Page M.
<i>Mettre</i> , to put.....	136 50	<i>Reconquérir</i> , to reconquer...	143 44
<i>Moudre</i> , to grind.....	137 51	<i>Recoudre</i> , to sew again.....	134 41
<i>Mouvoir</i> , to move.....	128 23	<i>Recourir</i> , to have recourse to	122 6
<i>Mourir</i> , to die.....	124 12	<i>Recouvrir</i> , to cover again...	124 14
N.		<i>Récrire</i> , to write again.....	135 46
<i>Naître</i> , to be born.....	137 52	<i>Recuire</i> , to cook again.....	134 40
<i>Nuire</i> , to annoy.....	134 40	<i>Redefaire</i> , to undo again....	136 47
O.		<i>Redevenir</i> , to become again.	125 18
<i>Obtenir</i> , to obtain.....	125 18	<i>Redire</i> , to say again.....	128 55
<i>Offrir</i> , to offer.....	124 14	<i>Redormir</i> , to sleep again....	123 8
<i>Oindre</i> , to anoint.....	137 53	<i>Réduire</i> , to reduce.....	134 40
<i>Omettre</i> , to omit.....	136 50	<i>Refaire</i> , to do again.....	136 47
<i>Oùir</i> , to hear.....	124 13	<i>Refleurir</i> , to flourish again..	123 10
<i>Ouvrir</i> , to open.....	124 14	<i>Rejoindre</i> , to join again.....	137 53
P.		<i>Relire</i> , to read again.....	136 49
<i>Paitre</i> , to feed.....	137 52	<i>Reluire</i> , to shine again.....	134 40
<i>Paraître</i> , to appear.....	134 42	<i>Remettre</i> , to put back.....	136 50
<i>Parcourir</i> , to run over.....	122 6	<i>Remoudre</i> , to grind again....	137 51
<i>Partir</i> , to set off.....	125 15	<i>Renaître</i> , to renew.....	137 53
<i>Parvenir</i> , to attain to.....	125 18	<i>Rendormir</i> , lull asleep again	123 8
<i>Peindre</i> to paint.....	137 53	<i>Rentraire</i> , to darn.....	139 60
<i>Permettre</i> , to permit.....	136 50	<i>Renvoyer</i> , to send back.....	121 3
<i>Plaire</i> , to please.....	137 54	<i>Repaître</i> , to feed.....	137 52
<i>Plaindre</i> , to pity.....	137 53	<i>Reparaître</i> , to appear again	134 42
<i>Pleuvoir</i> , to rain.....	128 24	<i>Repartir</i> , to set out again....	125 15
<i>Poindre</i> , to dawn.....	143 v.	<i>Repeindre</i> , to paint again....	137 53
<i>Poursuivre</i> , to follow.....	139 59	<i>Reprendre</i> , to take back.....	138 56
<i>Pourvoir</i> , to provide.....	129 26	<i>Reproduire</i> , to reproduce...	134 40
<i>Pouvoir</i> , to be able.....	128 25	<i>Requérir</i> , to require.....	121 3
<i>Prédire</i> , to foretell.....	138 55	<i>Résoudre</i> , to resolve.....	138 57
<i>Prendre</i> , to take.....	138 56	<i>Restraindre</i> , to restrain.....	137 53
<i>Prescrire</i> , to prescribe.....	135 46	<i>Ressentir</i> , to resent.....	125 15
<i>Pressentir</i> , to foresee.....	125 15	<i>Ressortir</i> , to go out again...	125 15
<i>Prévoir</i> , to foresee.....	130 32	<i>Ressortir</i> , to belong to.....	143 22
<i>Prevenir</i> , to prevent.....	125 18	<i>Retenir</i> , to retain.....	125 18
<i>Prévaloir</i> , to prevail.....	130 31	<i>Retraire</i> , to redeem.....	139 60
<i>Produire</i> , to produce.....	134 40	<i>Revenir</i> , to return.....	125 18
<i>Promettre</i> , to promise.....	136 50	<i>Revaloir</i> , to repay.....	130 31
<i>Promouvoir</i> , to promote.....	143 w.	<i>Revêtir</i> , to clothe.....	126 19
<i>Proscrire</i> , to proscribe.....	135 46	<i>Revivre</i> , to revive.....	140 62
<i>Provenir</i> , to proceed from..	125 18	<i>Revoir</i> , to see again.....	130 33
Q.		<i>Rire</i> , to laugh.....	139 58
<i>Quérir</i> , to fetch.....	143 x.	<i>Rompre</i> , to break.....	143 00
R.		<i>Rouvrir</i> , to open again.....	124 14
<i>Rabatre</i> , to abate.....	133 35	S.	
<i>Rapprendre</i> , to learn again.	138 56	<i>Saillir</i> , to project.....	125 16
<i>Ratteindre</i> , to overtake.....	137 53	<i>Saillir</i> , to gush out.....	144 00
<i>Ravoir</i> , to have again.....	143 y.	<i>S'abstenir</i> , to abstain.....	125 18
<i>Rebattre</i> , to beat again.....	133 35	<i>S'asseoir</i> , to sit down.....	129 37
<i>Reboire</i> , to drink again.....	133 36	<i>Satisfaire</i> , to satisfy.....	136 47
<i>Reclure</i> , to shut up.....	143 z.	<i>Savoir</i> , to know.....	129 38
<i>Rebouillir</i> , to boil again....	122 5	<i>S'émouvoir</i> , to be merry.....	144 22
<i>Recueillir</i> , to gather.....	123 7	<i>Se complaire</i> , to take delight	137 54
<i>Reconduire</i> , to lead back....	134 40	<i>Secourir</i> , to assist.....	122 6
<i>Reconnaître</i> , to acknowledge	134 42	<i>Se dévêtir</i> , to undress.....	126 19

	Page M.		Page M.
<i>Se départir</i> , to deist.....	125 15	<i>Soumettre</i> , to submit.....	136 50
<i>Se débattre</i> , to struggle.....	133 35	<i>Sourire</i> , to smile.....	139 58
<i>Se dédire</i> , to retract.....	138 55	<i>Souscrire</i> , to subscribe.....	135 46
<i>Se démettre</i> , to give up.....	136 50	<i>Soustraire</i> , to subtract.....	139 60
<i>Séduire</i> , to seduce.....	134 40	<i>Soutenir</i> , to support.....	125 18
<i>Se méconnaître</i> , to forget one's self.....	134 42	<i>Subvenir</i> , to relieve.....	125 18
<i>Se méprendre</i> , to mistake.....	138 56	<i>Suivre</i> , to follow.....	139 59
<i>S'émouvoir</i> , to be concerned.....	128 23	<i>Suffire</i> , to suffice.....	138 55
<i>S'en aller</i> , to go away.....	120 1	<i>Surfaire</i> , to overcharge.....	136 47
<i>S'endormir</i> , to fall asleep.....	123 8	<i>Surprendre</i> , to surprise.....	138 56
<i>S'enfuir</i> , to run away.....	124 11	<i>Surseoir</i> , to supersede.....	129 30
<i>S'enquérir</i> , to inquire.....	144 66	<i>Survenir</i> , to happen.....	125 18
<i>Sentir</i> , to feel, to smell.....	125 15	<i>Survivre</i> , to survive.....	140 62
<i>S'ensuivre</i> , to follow.....	144 111	T.	
<i>S'entremettre</i> , to intermeddle.....	136 50	<i>Taire</i> , to silence.....	137 54
<i>S'éprendre</i> , to be smitten.....	138 56	<i>Teindre</i> , to die.....	137 53
<i>Se rasseoir</i> , to sit again.....	129 27	<i>Tenir</i> , to hold.....	125 18
<i>Seoir</i> , to sit.....	144 77	<i>Traduire</i> , to translate.....	134 40
<i>Seoir</i> , to suit, or to be situ- ated.....	129 29	<i>Traire</i> , to milk.....	139 60
<i>Se rendormir</i> , to fall asleep again.....	123 8	<i>Transcrire</i> , to transcribe.....	135 46
<i>Se repentir</i> , to repent.....	125 15	<i>Transmettre</i> , to transmit.....	136 50
<i>Servir</i> , to serve.....	125 17	<i>Tressaillir</i> , to start.....	122 4
<i>Se ressentir</i> , to feel yet.....	125 15	<i>Tistre</i> , to weave.....	144 11
<i>Se ressouvenir</i> , to remember.....	125 18	V.	
<i>Se souvenir</i> , to remember.....	125 18	<i>Vaincre</i> , to vanquish.....	139 61
<i>Se taire</i> , to be silent.....	137 54	<i>Valoir</i> , to be worth.....	130 31
<i>Sortir</i> , to go out.....	125 15	<i>Venir</i> , to come.....	125 18
<i>Soudre</i> , to solve.....	144 11	<i>Vêtir</i> , to clothe.....	126 19
<i>Sourdre</i> , to spring out.....	144 11	<i>Vivre</i> , to live.....	140 62
<i>Souffrir</i> , to suffer.....	124 14	<i>Voir</i> , to see.....	130 32
		<i>Vouloir</i> , to be willing.....	130 33
		Y.	
		<i>Y avoir</i> , there to be.....	131 34

OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs serve to restrict or extend the signification of verbs, adjectives, or participles, and even other adverbs.

The simple adverb consists of one word, as *bien*, well; the compound adverb of several words, as *en vérité*, indeed.

FORMATION OF ADVERBS.

1st. Adverbs of manner, which in English end in *ly*, are generally formed in French by adding *ment* to the adjective.

2d. When the mas. adjective ends with a vowel, *ment* is added to it, as *joli*, *joliment*, prettily; *sage*, *sagement*, wisely;* and the adjectives *aveugle*, *commode*, *conforme*,

* Except *nouveau*, *beau*, *fou*, *mon*, which, though ending in a vowel, form their adverbs from their feminine, as *nouveau*, *nouvellement*; and *impunt* makes *impunément*.

énorme, incommode, and *opiniâtre*, take a close accent over *é*, before taking *ment*, as *aveuglement, commodément, &c.*

3d. When the mas. adjective ends in a consonant, *ment* is added to the feminine of the adjective, as—

mas. *heureux*; fem. *heureuse*; adv. *heureusement*, happily.*

4th. Adjectives ending in *ant* or *ent*, form their adverbs by changing *nt* into *mment*, as—

const-ant—const-amment. | prud-ent—prud-emment.†

* Adverbs may be divided into nine classes, namely—

OF TIME.

<i>à l'instant,</i>	instantly.	<i>autrefois,</i>	formerly.
<i>à cette heure,</i>	at this time.	<i>bientôt,</i>	soon.
<i>aujourd'hui,</i>	to-day.	<i>tard,</i>	late, soon.
<i>hier,</i>	yesterday.	<i>de tems en tems,</i>	now and then.
<i>maintenant,</i>	now.	<i>tems,</i>	
<i>depuis peu,</i>	of late.	<i>alors, &c.</i>	then, &c.

OF PLACE.

<i>ici, là,</i>	here, there.	<i>dessus,</i>	upon.
<i>en haut,</i>	up stairs.	<i>dessous,</i>	under.
<i>en bas,</i>	down stairs.	<i>y, par ici, &c.</i>	there, this way.

OF NUMBER AND RANK.

<i>premièrement,</i>	first.	<i>souvent,</i>	often.
<i>secondement,</i>	secondly, &c.	<i>de suite,</i>	one after another.
<i>ensuite,</i>	afterwards.	<i>rarement,</i>	seldom.
<i>tour à tour,</i>	by turns.	<i>devant, &c.</i>	before, &c.

OF QUANTITY.

<i>guères,</i>	but little.	<i>tant, plus,</i>	so much, more.
<i>assez,</i>	enough.	<i>trop, moins,</i>	too much, less.
<i>au moins,</i>	at least.	<i>davantage,</i>	more.
<i>tout-à-fait,</i>	quite.	<i>beaucoup,</i>	much.
<i>bien, peu,</i>	much, little.	<i>quelque, &c.</i>	some, &c.

* But *genti* makes *gentiment*. The nine following adverbs, formed from the fem. adjective, take *é* close instead of *e* mute.

communément.
confusément.
diffusément.

expressément.
importunément.
obscurément.

précisément.
profondément.
profusément.

† The only exceptions are *lent*, slow, which makes *lentement*; and *présent*, present, which makes *présentement*.

OF AFFIRMATION.

<i>oui</i> ,	to be sure, yes.	<i>vraiment</i> ,	truly.
<i>oute</i> ,	without doubt.	<i>d'accord</i> ,	agreed.
<i>ers</i> ,	willingly.	<i>soit, &c.</i>	be it so, &c.

OF NEGATION.

<i>e</i> ,	no or not.	<i>nullement</i> ,	by no means.
<i>,</i>		<i>nulle part</i> ,	no where.
<i>et</i> ,		<i>point du tout</i> ,	not at all,
<i>is</i> ,	no.	<i>&c.</i>	&c.

OF COMPARISON.

<i>noins</i> ,	more, less.	<i>autant</i> ,	as much.
	better.	<i>presque</i> ,	almost.
<i>aux en</i>	better and bet-	<i>ainsi</i> ,	thus.
<i>ux</i> ,	ter.	<i>pis, &c.</i>	worse, &c.

OF INTERROGATION.

<i>m</i> ,	how much.	<i>comment</i> ,	how.
<i>où</i> ,	where, whence.	<i>quand</i> ,	when.
<i>comment</i> ,	which way.	<i>pourquoi, &c.</i>	why, &c.

OF QUALITY AND MANNER.

<i>à tort</i> ,	in the wrong.	<i>à regret</i> ,	with regret.
<i>à la hâte</i> ,	in haste.	<i>précisément</i> ,	precisely.
<i>à la mode</i> ,	fashionably.	<i>aisément, &c.</i>	easily, &c.

douter, perhaps or may be, is the only adverb of doubt
certainty.

EXERCISE LXV.

is reposing *quietly* under that tree; your letter is very
se reposer doux ^{e³⁸} ^{e⁷} ^{e¹} ^{e⁷}
 written, I *am afraid* you have written it *in haste*;
^{e⁶⁴} ^{e⁶²} *que* ^{R.} ^{e⁶⁴} *à la hâte*
 were dangerously wounded; *what is done* with
^{H.} *dangereux blessé ce qui se fait* ^{e⁷}
 dness is generally well done; that ship will probably
^{r m.} *ordinaire* ^{e³} ^{e⁶⁵} *bâtiment m. probable*
 in a fortnight; you do not come to see me often²
ile ^{e¹} — *quinze jours* ^{e⁴⁸} ^{e⁶⁵} ^{e⁸}
¹; I have always acted conformably to the rules of
^{e³} ^{e²¹} *conformable* ^{e²⁴}
 ur and justice; they answered wisely, but not prudently;
f. ^{e²⁰} *sage* ^{e⁵} *non pas prudent*

apply yourself constantly, and you will certainly succeed;
s'appliquer *constant* *certain* *e²²*
 I always thought [^] you had acted honourably towards your
e⁸ *e¹⁸* *que* *e²¹* *honorable* *envers*
 partner; I am perfectly well this morning.
e²⁴ *se porter parfait* *e³* *e⁵²*

EXERCISE LXVI.

She works very slowly, and behaves very foolishly; we
e¹⁷ *e⁷* *lent* *se comporter* *e⁷* *fou*
 stopped expressly [^] to see you; he has crept softly to the
e⁵⁹ *expres* *pour* *e³⁶* *se glisser* *doux*
 fire side; this ship is newly arrived; we cannot advance that
e³ *coin* *m.* *navire* *nouveau* *e¹⁰* *e⁵⁸* *avancer*
 money conveniently; she is dressed elegantly; Benjamin
e⁶ *convenable* *habiller* *élégant*
 used to sing very prettily; Mr. D. speaks strongly but
e¹⁴ *G.* *e⁷* *joli* *e¹⁷* *fort* *e⁷*
 incorrectly; we are entirely satisfied; you are arrived precisely
incorrec *entier* *satisfait* *e¹⁰* *précis*
 at the hour appointed; Racine is a great French² tragic³ poet.
:heure *f.* *convenu* *e¹³* *français* *tragique* *poète*
 his pieces are regularly beautiful, purely expressed, and
f. *régulier* *e⁸* *pur* *exprimé*
 delicately conceived; she always answers with naïvety; I own
délicat *pensé* *e⁸* *e³⁰* *naïf* *e³⁸*
 it frankly; that furniture is confusedly packed.
franc *e⁶¹* *confus* *emballé*.

OF PREPOSITIONS.

A preposition is an indeclinable word or expression, which serves to denote the relations words have with one another, and in French it always precedes the word which it governs, though sometime placed after it in English, as,

<i>De qui parlez-vous?</i>		of whom are you speaking?
<i>De quoi parlez-vous?</i>		what are you speaking about?

The prepositions *à*, *de*, *en*, are generally repeated before the words which they govern, as,

Il vient de Lyon ou de Paris, he comes from Lyons or Paris.
J'ai été à Bath et à Bristol, I have been at Bath and Bristol
Il va en France et en Russie, he is going to France and Russia

ple prepositions govern their complement without the
any other preposition.

	to or at.	<i>excepté,</i>	except, but.
	after.	<i>hormis, hors</i> (number)	except, but
	before (the time.)	<i>malgré,</i>	in spite of.
	with.	<i>moyennant,</i>	by means of.
presence,)	at, to, on, among.	<i>nobobstant,</i>	notwithstanding.
	against.	<i>outré,</i>	besides, beyond.
(definit)	in, into.	<i>par,</i>	by, through.
	of, from.	<i>parmi,</i>	among.
(time)	since, from.	<i>pendant,</i>	during.
e,	behind.	<i>pour,</i>	for, to, in order to.
	on, upon.	<i>sans,</i>	without, but for.
(time)	from.	<i>selon,</i>	according to.
(in front,)	before.	<i>sous, dessous,</i>	under, beneath.
,	during.	<i>suivant,</i>	according.
(indefinite)	in, into.	<i>sur, dessus,</i>	on, upon, above.
	between.	<i>touchant,</i>	concerning, about.
	towards.	<i>vers,</i>	towards.
1 (time.)	about.	<i>vu,</i>	seeing.

EXERCISE LXVII.

glory comes *after* ^{e²⁹} a virtue; the coach will arrive *before*
^{e⁴⁸} art. ^{e¹} ^{e³} ^{e¹⁸}
team-boat; we are sometime foolish *with* knowledge,
^{e²⁶} on sing. ^{e²⁶} *sot* ^{e³} *esprit m.*
with judgment; I will call *on* you to-morrow; he is
^{e⁴} ^{e³¹} *passer*
at home; have the courage ^{e⁴} not to be *against* reason,
luim. *de* art. ^{e³¹}
se reason is *against* you; they went *towards* the river,
art. ^{e³¹} ^{e⁴⁴} ^{e²⁸}
returned *about* dinner time; you will find your
^{e⁶⁰} art. *heure du dîné* *trouver*
chief upon the table, or under; we promise according
^{e⁵} ... f. ^{e²} ^{e⁶⁴}
r hopes, and we fulfil according to our fears; you will
^{e⁶¹} *tenir* ^{e²²}
his grammar among my books; he resided among the
^{e⁶⁰} ^{e¹} *demeurer*
rs for upwards of 10 years; they were all saved except a
... ^{e⁸} *plus* ^{e⁴⁰} ^{e⁹} *sauver*
oldiers; you may hide all things but the truth; all the
us ^{e¹} *cacher* ^{e⁶} ^{e⁶¹} ^{e¹⁷} ^{e⁹}
sophers of antiquity, except a few, have believed the
sophe art. *antiquité m. petit nombre* ^{e⁶⁷}
to be eternal.
e m. *éternel*.

OF CONJUNCTIONS.

The conjunction is an indeclinable word which serves to unite words or sentences.

The simple conjunction is expressed by one word.

The compound conjunction is composed of several words.

The principal simple conjunctions are—

<i>aussi,</i>	therefore.	<i>or,</i>	now.
<i>car,</i>	for, because.	<i>pourtant,</i>	however.
<i>cependant,</i>	yet, however.	<i>puisque,</i>	since.
<i>comme,</i>	as, since, like.	<i>quand,</i>	when, though.
<i>et,</i>	and.	<i>que,</i>	that, till, until.
<i>lorsque,</i>	when.	<i>quoique,</i>	although.
<i>mais,</i>	but.	<i>si,</i>	if.
<i>ni,</i>	neither, nor.	<i>pourquoi,</i>	why, for what.
<i>néanmoins,</i>	nevertheless.	<i>ou,</i>	or.

The principal compound conjunctions are—

<i>à moins que,</i>	unless.	<i>de crainte que,</i>	for fear.
<i>au cas que,</i>	in case that.	<i>en cas que,</i>	in case that.
<i>à cause que,</i>	because.	<i>jusqu'à ce que,</i>	till, until.
<i>à condition</i>	“ on condition.	<i>non seulement,</i>	not only.
<i>à mesure que,</i>	in proportion as.	<i>par conséquent,</i>	consequently.
<i>au lieu que,</i>	whereas.	<i>pour peu que</i>	} if ever so little.
<i>bien loin que,</i>	far from.	<i>si peu que,</i>	
<i>de même que,</i>	as, just as.	<i>peut être,</i>	perhaps.
<i>d'abord que,</i>	as soon as.	<i>faute de,</i>	for want of.
<i>d'autant que,</i>	whereas.	<i>au lieu de,</i>	instead of.
<i>de peur que,</i>	lest.	<i>bien loin de,</i>	very far from.
<i>pendant que,</i>	} while or whilst.	<i>parce que,</i>	because.
<i>tendis que,</i>		<i>ou bien, &c.</i>	or else, &c.

EXERCISE LXVIII.

^A Wisdom, learning, *and* virtue are man's true wealth; do
 art. *esprit* m. *science* f. ^{e¹} ^{e¹ r³} ^{e⁵} *bien* m.
 you go on foot or on horseback? I ^A like *neither* the beginning
^{e⁶⁴} *à pied* *à cheval* *ne* ^{e¹⁹} *commencement* m.
 nor the end; it is fine, *but* it is cold; he cannot succeed, *for*
fin f. *faire* ^{e⁵} *faire* ^{e³⁵} ^{e⁶⁰} ^{e²²}
 he has neither money nor credit; I will go to the country
^{e⁵} ^{e⁶⁴} *crédit* m. ^{e⁶²}
unless it ^A rains; he speaks French *like* a Frenchman; *while*
ne ^{e⁶⁸} R. ^{e¹⁷} ^{e²⁶} *français*

you are speaking, he is learning his lesson; I will not *set out*
^{e¹⁷} ^{e⁶³} ^{e¹³} ^{e⁶⁶}
 till I [^] have breakfasted; we commit many [^] faults *when*
^{ne} ^{R.} ^{e³⁶} ^{e⁶⁷} *faire bien des fautes* f.
 we are young; conduct yourself prudently, *in order* that [^]
^{e⁷} sing. ^{e³} *se conduire* *sagement* *on* sing.
 you may be esteemed; let us not speak so loud, *for fear* they
 — — ^{e¹⁷} ^{e¹⁷} ^{e³⁰}
 should hear us; he will perish *unless* they [^] come to his
^{e³⁶} ^{e²²} ^{on ne e⁴³} ^{R.}
 assistance.
^{e³⁶} m.

OF INTERJECTIONS.

Interjections are used to express the various emotions of the mind. The interjection takes place in a sentence naturally, as the person using it feels.

For the principal interjections, see the end of simple syntax.

Part Fourth.

SYNTAX.

INTRODUCTORY REMARKS.

As it is our intention in this grammar to lead the learner progressively to a knowledge of the French language, without confusing his mind with abstruse rules, learned disquisitions, and with those nice distinctions known, and perhaps only necessary to the native literati, we shall endeavour to divest our syntax of every thing that may tend to retard his progress, by too intensely occupying his mind in wading through difficulties, which, at this stage of his study, would be unprofitable if not hurtful. We have, however, for the advanced scholar and the curious, collected such of these particular rules as we have considered useful in a fifth part, under the head of *Syntax Raisonnée*, each rule being marked with numbers corresponding with those of Syntax, may easily be referred to when required.

Syntax being considered the code of the established institutes of a language, by which the sentences are constructed, so as to express our ideas agreeably to the genius and polite customs of a nation, we shall endeavour to explain those laws as they relate to the French language, and we shall do this in the order which appears to us most convenient for the learner, and best calculated to exhibit to his mind the difference between the French and English language.

CHAPTER FIRST.

OF THE ARTICLE.

REMARKS.—Strictly speaking there is but one article in the French language, and words considered as common nouns, when used definitely, can only require the use of the article; the article does not impart, but only points out this definite sense; we, however, consider it necessary to treat of other words, termed by some grammarians, *article indefinite* and *article partitive*, under the same head, for the accomodation of those who have been accustomed to this association.

GENERAL RULE OF THE ARTICLE *LE, THE*.

The article must be used in French before common nouns, and before every part of speech used as such, whenever they are the names of things spoken of, as subjects or objects of verbs; nouns being in that definite state, of necessity require an article, unless preceded by some other word which performs the same function, and must express things in a general, limited, or particular sense.

A GENERAL SENSE implies that the whole of a species or kind is signified by the word expressed, as when we speak of men, horses, gold, houses, &c., as,

<i>l'homme est enclin au vice,</i>		man is prone to vice.
<i>la vertu mérite nos hommages,</i>		virtue deserves our praise.

where we speak of men and virtues in general, without alluding to any individual part of the species or kind.

A LIMITED SENSE implies some restriction, experienced or felt, and pointed out either by a determinate adjective, or an accidental circumstance, which renders the noun spoken of the signification of something limited in its extent, as,

<i>l'homme vertueux modère ses passions,</i>		the virtuous man moderates his passion.
<i>la vertu la plus rare est la justice,</i>		the most uncommon virtue is justice.

The same nouns that were before taken in a general sense, are now restricted, the one by *vertueux*, the other by the circumstance, *la plus rare*, which sufficiently points out the sense to be limited.

A particular or individual sense, is simply the name of things considered in the singular as a sole object, or forming an individual part of a species, as—

<i>avez-vous vu la lune ce soir?</i>		have you seen the moon to-night?
<i>la reconnaissance est une belle vertu,</i>		gratitude is a great virtue.

In the first example, *lune* is a sole object; in the second, *reconnaissance* is an individual member of *vertu*.

The article is not used before nouns considered in a vague indeterminate sense, or as terms of qualifications; not so much considering their substance or individuality, as the quality or restriction they impart to the thing spoken of, as—

<i>vous souffrez—mais n'êtes-vous pas homme?</i>		you suffer—but are you not a man?
--	--	-----------------------------------

une maison de bois,
un homme d'esprit,

a house of wood.
a man of sense.

In the first instance it is evident that *homme*, man, cannot be considered as the subject or thing spoken of, as it was in the preceding examples, but mentioned as a dignity attributive to the individual spoken to, in order to raise him in his own estimation, to enable him to suffer with more fortitude. In the other examples, *bois* and *esprit* are evident qualities; the one particularising the house by denoting its substance, the other pointing out the kind of man by his principal attribute.

CASES IN WHICH THE ARTICLE IS USED.

RULE I.—61.* 1°. The article is used before nouns taken in a general sense, as—

les chiens sont sujets à la rage, | dogs are subject to madness.
les femmes aiment l'admiration, | women love admiration.

2°. The article is used before nouns serving to name things in a limited or restricted sense, as—

les femmes anglaises sont belles, | English women are handsome.
J'ai vu l'homme dont je vous | I have seen the man of whom
ai parlé, | I spoke to you.

3°. The article is used before nouns taken in a particular sense, when spoken of as subjects or objects of verbs, as the names of metals, virtues, vices, mountains, rivers, winds, languages; and of individual objects, such as heaven, earth, water, air, sun, moon, &c., as—

le platine est plus dur que l'or, | platina is harder than gold.
la terre, l'air, le feu, et l'eau, | earth, air, fire, and water, are
sont les quatre éléments. | the four elements.

4°. The mas. article is used before the infinitives of verbs, adjectives, prepositions, or any part of speech used as a noun, as—

J'aime beaucoup le bleu, | I like blue very much.
le nécessaire avant l'utile, | what is necessary before the useful.
le manger est nécessaire, | eating is necessary.

Note.—The figures in the English line of the following Exercises refer the sentences before which they are placed, and those following, to the different parts of the rule so numbered.

* This second number indicates the corresponding rule on the same subject in *Syntax Raisonnée*.

EXERCISE I.

1°. Sciences console us in adversity; pleasures arise
f. *consoler* dansé f. *plaisir* m. *naitre*
 taly from wants; Benjamin *was fond of* horses; write injuries
ne^s que besoin m. *aimer* cheval *écrire* injure
 * *Ne* invariably precedes the verb.
 upon sand, and favours upon marble; man is born for
sur sable m. *bienfait* m. e¹ *marbre* m. *homme naitre* pour
 society; 2°. great drinkers and madmen *resemble one another*;
société f. *grand buveur* *fou* *se ressembler*
 charity is the greatest of Christian² virtues¹; crime is a torrent
é e¹ *chrétien* *vertu*m.m.
 whose course is rapid; glory,* riches, nobility, and power, are
dont cours m.e *gloire* f. *richesse* f. *noblesse* f. *puissance* f.
 only imaginary² names¹; 3°. I am going to learn Latin and
 e¹ *imaginaire* nom *aller apprendre* ...m.
 French,† afterwards I shall learn German and Italian; platina
ensuite e¹ *platine* m.
 as much harder than gold or silver, but not so hard as
beaucoup dur or m. *argent* m. *mais non point si* e¹
 diamond; the moon is not so distant from the earth as the
diamant m. *lune* f. e¹ *éloigné* *terre* f.
 sun; 4°. he who buys *what is superfluous*, will soon be obliged
soleil m. *celui acheter* *superflu* m. *bientôt obligé*
 to sell *what is necessary*; eating and drinking are
de vendre *nécessaire* m. *manger* m. *boire* m.
 indispensable; truth and beauty are the objects of the arts.
 *vrai* m. *beau* m. *objet* m.m.

CASES IN WHICH THE ARTICLE IS NOT USED IN FRENCH.

RULE II.—63, 64. 1°. The article is not used before proper names of divinities, persons, animals, cities, or particular places, as,—

Dieu est bon,
J'ai été à Londres,

God is good.
I have been to London.

But the article is used when the proper names are restricted

* The repetition of the article is strictly necessary before each noun in the same sentence, one of its functions being particularly to point out the gender and number of each noun; from this principle every word which is declinable, such as the article, the partitive word *some*, the possessive and demonstrative pronouns, and even adjectives, must be repeated before every noun when expressed before the first; subject to such exceptions as are hereafter mentioned.

† For proper names and adjectives of countries, cities, towns, rivers, mountains, &c., see Appendix.

by an adjective, or a circumstance, unless the adjective be considered as a surname, then the article is used, as,—

<i>le Dieu des chrétiens,</i>	the God of Christians.
<i>ce n'est pas le Kemble que</i>	that is not the Kemble I
<i>j'ai vu,</i>	have seen.

2°. Neither the article *le, la, les*, nor the adjective *un, une*, are used before common nouns, when governed by the preposition *en*, or when, with the preposition that governs them, they form adverbial expressions, as,—

<i>votre père est en ville,</i>	your father is in town.
<i>il faut vivre avec économie,</i>	we must live with economy.

which is more elegant than *économiquement*.

3°. The article is not used before nouns taken adjectively, or when denoting the substance or use of another noun, as,—

<i>c'est un homme à talent,</i>	he is a man of talent.
<i>le mensonge est bassesse,</i>	lying is baseness.
<i>où est votre tabatière d'or,</i>	where is your gold snuff-box.
<i>mettez le dans le grenier à foin,</i>	put it in the hay loft.

4°. Nor when used as an interjection, an apostrophe, or in maxims and proverbial phrases, as,—

<i>paix! ou nous serons vus,</i>	silence! or we shall be seen.
<i>amis! suivez moi,</i>	friends! follow me.
<i>contentement passe richesse,</i>	content surpasses riches.

5°. Neither the article *le, la, les*, nor the adjective *un, une*, are used before the ordinal or cardinal numbers, when preceded by the noun in quotation, nor when used in the form of the title of a book, pamphlet, map, page, chapter, sign, or an address, as,—

<i>livre premier,</i>	book the first.
<i>plan de Londres,</i>	a plan of London.
<i>George trois,</i>	George the Third.
<i>hôtel des étrangers,</i>	hotel for strangers.

EXERCISE II.

1°. I do not like the character of Alexander*; the Alexander
aimer *caracter* m.
 of the north has acquired our admiration; a statue was erected
nord m. *conquérir* f.f. *élevé*

* Most proper names ending in *andre*, become French by changing *or* into *re*, and ancient names ending in *o*, by changing *o* into *on*.

to the God of war; Alexander the Great was a powerful
Dieu art. *guerre* f. *e*¹ *puissant*
monarch; Cicero, Horace, and Virgil, will live *for ever* in their
monarque *vivre éternellement par*
writings.—2°. Mrs. Melvill is *gone out* in a coach; he acts
écrit m. *sortir en voiture* f. *agir*
like a good father; he has behaved *prudently*; your brother is
en bon père *se conduire avec prudence* f. *frère*
not in town; do not put yourself in a passion against a man of
*e*² *ville* f. *se mettre* *e*² *colère* f. *contre* *e*¹
sense. 3°. He has built a stone house; leather gloves are
esprit m. *bâtir pierre* f. *maison* f. *peau* f. *gant* m.
more agreeable than silk gloves; put that on the card table.
agréable *soie* f. *e*² *mettre cela e*¹ *jeu* f.
4°. Man, whosoever thou art, listen; silence in the pit;
*e*¹ *qui que* *écouter* m. *à parterre* m.
glory to my country. 5°. Philip the Second, king of Spain,*
*e*¹ *patrie* f. *e* *roi*
married Mary queen of England; this book is entitled a
épouser Marie reine *livre* m. *intitulé*
dictionary of the academy; he lives on the quay Voltaire, or
dictionnaire m. *academie* f. *demeurer* — *quai* m. *ou*
in the street Saint Jaques.
— *rue* f.

CASES IN WHICH THE ARTICLE IS USED AND NOT USED BEFORE THE
NAMES OF COUNTRIES, &c.

RULE III.—1°. The article is used before the names of
kingdoms, countries, provinces, rivers, seas, islands, mountains,
particular places, and the four parts of the world, when used
definitely as subject or objects of verbs, as,—

<i>la France est un beau pays,</i>	France is a beautiful country.
<i>J'aime beaucoup l'Angleterre,</i>	I like England very much.
<i>l'Amérique est beaucoup plus</i>	America is much larger than
<i>grande que l'Europe,</i>	Europe.

2°. The article is not used before the names of countries;
when as terms of qualification or restriction, title or dignity,
they are used in the sense of an adjective, and are governed
by *de*, as,—

<i>le vin de France n'est pas cher,</i>	French wine is not dear.
<i>J'ai vu la Reine d'Angleterre,</i>	I have seen the Queen of Eng- land.

* Proper names of nations, provinces, rivers, mountains, &c., will be found at the
end of the grammar.

3°. The article is not used before the names of countries when, as adverbs of place, they serve to point out the country in which a person resides, travels, is going or sending to, coming or receiving from, in which case *in*, *into*, *to*, or *at* are rendered by *en*, and *of* or *from* by *de*, but the article is used after *de*, before the names of the four parts of the world, as,—

Je demeure en Italie,
il revient d'Allemagne,
envoyez la en Espagne,
Je l'ai reçu de l'Amérique,
J'ai été en Amérique,

I live in Italy.
he returns from Germany.
send her to Spain.
I received it from America.
I have been in America.

4°. In this case, countries little known, or out of Europe, generally require the article, and *in*, *to*, or *into*, are rendered by *au*, *à la*, *aux*, as,—

il naquit à la Jamaïque,
il arrive du Canada,

he was born in Jamaica.
he is just arrived from Canada.

5°. The article is not used before the names of countries when they bear the same name as their capital, as—

Naples est un beau pays,

Naples is a fine country.

EXERCISE III.

1°. The Pyrenees separate France from Spain; last² year I
 séparer *dernier année f.*
 crossed three great rivers, the Rhone, the Rhine, and the
traverser *e¹ fleuve m.*
 Danube; the eruption of Vesuvius is often the cause of great
 é.....f. *souvent causer e¹*
 devastation; Sicily is the granary of Italy; America is much
 ravage m. *grenier m.* *e¹*
 larger than Europe; 2°. Madeira wine is dearer than French
grand *vin m.* *cher*
 wine; the Emperor of Russia visited the Queen of England in
 e² empereur *visiter* *e²* *e¹*
 1844; 3°. my daughter has resided in Germany; when do you
 fille *demeurer e²* *quand*
 go to Scotland; I am just arrived from Africa; I am
 e¹ *arriver*
 travelling in Europe, and I am going to Asia; 4°. he intends
voyager *e¹* *se proposer*
 to go to India soon; my correspondent in Trinidad is very
de *e¹* *e¹* *très*

careless; I shall send him to Martinico; 5°. Genoa is a
negligent *envoyer*
 maritime state; Venice is a weak dominion.
état m. *faible^s état^s m.*

OF THE PARTITIVE WORD *SOME* OR *ANY*, *DU*, *DE LA*, *DES*.

RULE IV.—69. 1°. When an indeterminate and individual whole is intended to be expressed, *un*, *mas. une*, *fem.* is used before the noun, as *un pain*, a loaf; *une orange*, an orange. But if only a part of the one, or an indefinite number of the other is intended to be spoken of, the partitive particle *du*, *de la*, or *des*, must be used whether the word *some* or *any* be expressed or only understood in English, as—

'du pain, | *some bread.* || *des oranges*, | *oranges.*

But should an adjective precede the noun, use *de* only, as—

J'ai de bon pain, | *I have some good bread.*

2°. When a noun is preceded by any word expressing, in a direct or indirect manner, plenty, scarcity, or exclusion, as—
beaucoup, much, a good deal, a great many; *peu*, little; *assez*, enough; *autant*, as much, as many; *tant*, so much, so many; *trop*, too much, too many; *plus*, more; *moins*, less; *que*, for *ombien*, how much, how many; *pas* or *point*, not or no; *amais*, never, &c.; *quantité*, quantity, being expressed or understood, as—

plenty.....	<i>il a beaucoup d'esprit</i> ,	he has much sense.
scarcity....	<i>J'ai peu de plaisir</i> ,	I have little pleasure.
exclusion...	<i>elle n'a pas de chagrin</i> ,	she has no sorrow.

3°. But should the noun be preceded by *bien*, much, many; *la plupart*, most, or the greatest part of; or particularised by any subsequent words, the article must be used, as—

<i>Elle a bien de la grâce</i> ,	she is very graceful.
<i>la plupart des hommes sont ambitieux</i> ,	most men are ambitious.
<i>Donnez moi un peu du vin que j'ai goûté hier</i> ,	give me a little of the wine I tasted yesterday.

4°. *De* is also used without the article, or the adjective *un*, *ne*, after the words *sorte*, sort; *genre*, kind; *espèce*, species; *mélange*, mixture; and such like indefinite expressions; and *an* used in English after of, is omitted in French, as,—

Quelle sorte de fromage est-ce? | *what kind of a cheese is this?*

EXERCISE IV.

1°. Bring me a knife and fork; bring me some knives and
apporter moi couteau m. fourchette f. e⁴ e⁴ e⁴
 forks; send me a quire of paper, and some pens; shall I help
e⁴ e³ e⁴ main f. papier m. plume f. servir
 you to some wine, beer, or cyder? passion for gambling
e³ bierre f. e³ cidre m. f. de jeu m.
 creates innumerable misfortunes¹. 2°. My friend has no patience;
causer incalculable malheur m. ami f.
 I have seen everywhere a great deal of wretchedness; never
voir partout beaucoup misère f.
 give advice that it would be dangerous to follow; I have very
donner avis m. B. dangereux de suivre e²
 little wheat, hay, or fruit this year; how much sorrow you will
peu blé m. foin m. ... m. e³ f. que chagrin m.
 have to suffer; if we had sufficient will; we would generally
à souffrir assez volonté f. ordinairement
 have sufficient means; there are a great many ships at sea.
e⁴ moyen y avoir beaucoup vaisseau m. en mer
 3°. There are arrived a great many ships that were expected;
e⁴ e³ e⁴ e⁴ qu'on attendait
 she has much difficulty to make herself understood; the
bien peine à se faire comprendre
 greater part of animals have more courage than man.
plupart plus e¹
 4°. There are all kinds of animals; not to love is a kind of
e⁴ sorte f. aimer espèce f.
 non-existence; what sort of a man have you brought us.
néant m. genre m. e¹ amener

OF THE ADJECTIVE *UN, UNE, A OR AN (ONE)*.

RULE V.—71. 1°. The word *un* is not used, as in English, before nouns expressing the country, title, trade, profession, &c. of individuals, in the sense of attributes, as,—

<i>il est Français,</i>		he is a Frenchman.
<i>son frère est négociant,</i>		his brother is a merchant.

2°. If these attributes be restricted by an adjective, or are used as absolute pronouns, then *un* should be used, as,—

<i>c'est un Français illustre,</i>		he is an illustrious Frenchman
<i>son frère est un négociant de</i> <i>Liverpool,</i>		his father is a Liverpool mer- chant.

3°. *Un* is not used after *quel*, *quelle*, &c. what, used as an exclamation, as—

quel beau cheval! | what a fine horse!

or after *demi*, half, placed after the noun to which it refers.

une once et demie de tabac, | an ounce and a half of snuff.

4°. The article *a*, or *an*, used in English before nouns of measure, weight, and number, when speaking of the price or value of an article, are rendered in French by *le*, *la*, *les*, as—

quatre shellings la verge, | four shillings a yard.
six sous la douzaine, | sixpence a dozen.

EXERCISE V.

1°. I have been a soldier and a sailor; my father was an
soldat *matelot* *e*²
Englishman and a merchant; he was elected member of
anglais *marchand* H. *élu* *membre*
parliament in 1852; everybody takes him for an Irishman;
parlement *e*² *tout le monde prendre*
Livy was an historian, Apelles a painter, Phidias a sculptor,
Tite live *historien* *peintre* *sculpteur*
and Socrates a distinguished² philosopher.¹ 2°. His father
..... *distingué* *philosophe* *e*²
was an unfortunate emigrant. 3°. What a charming house,
malheureux émigré *charmant* *e*²
and what a delightful prospect! what a dreadful noise those
beau perspective f. *vilain bruit m.*
carts make! buy me a dozen and a half of oranges. 4°. I
charrette f. faire *e*¹ *e*⁴
have some beautiful oysters at two shillings a hundred; Rose!
beau *huitre f.* *chelin m.*
how much did* you pay a pound for that butter; I sold the
combien avoir *donner livre f.* *beurre m.* *e*¹
apples at four shillings a bushel, and the apricots at ninepence
pomme f. *e*⁵ *boisseau m.* *abricot m.* *sous*
a dozen.

CHAPTER SECOND.

OF NOUNS.

Nouns in language are used either as subject, object, or apostrophe.

* Did is often used in English for have, it should in that case be rendered by *avoir*.

Nouns are subjects whenever they are the person or thing of which something is affirmed, as—

<i>l'homme raisonne,</i>	man reasons.
<i>la brute ne raisonne pas,</i>	the brute does not reason.

homme and *brute* are subjects, because of the first it is affirmed that he reasons, and of the second, that he does not reason.

Nouns are objects when they are in the immediate dependence of another word whose meaning they serve to determine or restrict. A noun may be the object of a verb, an adjective, a preposition, or another noun, as—

il faut honorer la loi de Dieu, | we must observe the law of God.

What must we observe? *loi*, law; it is, therefore, the object of the verb *honorer*. Whose law? or of whom? *de Dieu*, of God; *Dieu* is, therefore, the object of the noun *loi*, which is linked to its complement *Dieu* by means of the preposition *de*.

Nouns are apostrophes when they are the names of persons or things called on or appealed to, as,—

<i>conducteur, apportez mes effets,</i>	guard, bring my luggage.
<i>répondez! cieux et mer; et vous</i>	answer! ye heavens and sea;
<i>terre, parlez!</i>	and you, earth, speak!

GENERAL RULE.—In the French language, when two words have a dependence on each other, the principal word *generally* precedes the subordinate word, hence the adjective is placed after the noun, the adverb after the verb, &c. In conformity with this general principle, which is, however, subject to exceptions when a noun is governed by another, the governing noun as the subject spoken of, must precede the governed noun, as the object or restricting word, and they are generally connected by aid of the preposition *à* or *de*, which must be repeated before every noun, as,—

il a des boucles d'or, et d'argent, | he has gold and silver buckles.

OF THE UNION OF NOUNS.

RULE VI.—72. Nouns are united by prepositions. 1°. By *de*, with or without the article, when the second noun in French serves to define or limit the first noun by imparting to it a quality, property, or dependence, as,—

<i>un homme d'honneur,</i>	a man of honour.
<i>ils sont ennemis de la vertu,</i>	they are the enemies of virtue.

2°. By *de*, with or without the article, when in English the 's is added to the subordinate noun to express possession, as John's hat, or when one thing is supposed to belong to another, as, the house door, which are rendered in French as if it were the hat of John, *le chapeau de Jean*; the door of the house, *la porte de la maison*.

In all cases where the subordinate noun with 's is followed by two or more nouns, with or without 's, forming an indivisible sense, transpose the English properly, then translate it literally, thus, the king's minister's speech will make the speech of the minister of the king, *le discours du ministre du roi*.

3°. Nouns are united by *de*, without the article, when the second or subordinate noun in French expresses the matter or substance of the first noun, as,—

une chaîne d'or, a gold chain. || *des bas de soie*, silk stockings.

EXERCISE VI.

1°. The corruption of the heart is often the cause of the
f. cœur m. e³ ... f.
 corruption of the mind; to-morrow will be a happy day; when
 f. esprit m. demain m. bonheur m. jour m. e³
 the Latin master went out the music master entered; Mr. G—'s
m. matre e² musique f. e³ entrer
 country house is a one mile from the London road; I have seen
 campagne f. à mille m. route f. e⁴
 a spring day's frost destroy the produce of a month's fine
 printemps m. e³ gelée f. détruire produit m. mois m. beau
 weather; Augustus' steel pens are not good; Diana's anger
 temps m. Auguste acier m. e⁴ e² Diane colère f.
 was Acteon's death, and Helen's beauty was Troy's destruction;
 causer ...é... mort f. Hélène beauté f. G f.
 a mother's tenderness and a father's care are nature's gifts for
 mère tendresse f. e² soin m. don m.
 man's advantage; Miss D'Esprit's straw hat has fallen into
 e¹ avantage m. paille f. chapeau m. tomber
 the water; my brother's stable door was broken open last
 eau f. e² écurie f. porte f. enfoncer hier
 night; the captain's servants' house has been burned; he
 soir m. capitaine domestique m. e² brûler
 gave me a silver watch, a gold chain, and a cornelian seal. .
 e⁴ e¹ montre f. e¹ chaîne f. cornaline f. cachet m.

RULE VII. 1°. Nouns are united by the preposition *à*, without the article, when in French the second noun denotes

of the first the use to which it is applied, what it is fit for, or what it is intended to contain; also, when the second points out the means by which the first is impelled, as—

use.....	<i>la salle à manger,</i>	the dining room.
fitness.....	<i>le grenier à foin,</i>	the hay loft.
containing...	<i>une bouteille à vin,</i>	a wine bottle.
impelling....	<i>un bateau à vapeur,</i>	a steam boat.

2°. Nouns are united by *à* with the article, making *au*, *à la*, *aux*, when in French the second noun points out the principal ingredient of which the first is composed; or, being a vessel, it actually contains the thing mentioned, whether liquid or eatables; or if the principal noun be man, woman, fair, or market, as—

<i>des tartes aux pommes,</i>	apple tarts.
<i>des œufs au lait,</i>	custards.
<i>le pot à l'eau,</i>	the water jug.
<i>l'homme aux lapins,</i>	the rabbit man.

3°. OBSERVE.—There are numbers of anomalous expressions which cannot be classed under any of the preceding rules, as—

<i>un cheval de bataille,</i>	a war horse.
<i>la fille de chambre,</i>	the chambermaid.
<i>une table de nuit,</i>	a night table.
<i>un bonnet de nuit,</i>	a nightcap.
<i>des boucles d'oreille,</i>	earrings.
<i>des vaisseaux de guerre, &c.</i>	war ships, &c.

EXERCISE VII.

- 1°. Put my work bag in my dining room; I will give you my
e² ouvrage m. sac m. manger salle f. e⁴
 wind-mill for your steam-boat; there is a rat nest in that hay loft;
vent m. moulin m. vapeur f. bateau m. e⁴ nid m. e⁹ m. grenier m.
 for want of gunpowder my fire-arms are useless to me;
faute canon m. poudre f. feu m. arme f. ne peuvent me servir
 I told you to bring me a tea cup, and you have brought me a
dire e⁴ thé m. tasse f. e⁴
 coffee cup; give me six wine bottles out of the wine cellar.
café m. e⁷ e⁴ e³ bouteille f. — e³ cave f.
 2°. Hand me that eel pie; you have broken the oil flask; the
passer anguille f. paté m. casser huile f. bouteille f.
 corn market is on your right, the poultry market on your
blé m. marché m. à droite f. volaille f. e⁷ e⁷
 left, and the horse fair is before you; call the rabbit man and
gauche f. e¹ pl. foire f. devant appeler lapin m. e¹

butter woman. 3°. Tell the chambermaid to place this
e' femme *re fille de mettre*
 er candlestick on my night table; I will take off my
chandelier m. *nuitt f.* *oter*
 rings before I put on my nightcap.
avant - de e' — e' bonnet m.

CHAPTER THIRD.

OF ADJECTIVES.

ADJECTIVES of themselves impart no reality to the mind, it an indeterminate idea of a quality which requires the addition of a noun to render it positive in its signification; hence it is that an adjective in a sentence cannot stand without a noun or pronoun expressed or understood, with which it must agree in gender and number.

OF THE GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

GENERAL RULE.—Adjectives which impart an absolute quality to the noun require no complement, as—

votre frère est un bon garçon, | your brother is a good boy.

bon is considered absolute, as it requires no complement to complete its signification; but in the following phrase—

il n'est pas capable, | he is not able.

capable, able, has an indeterminate signification, requiring a complement to determine what he is able to do, and this complement must be added to the adjective preceding, by means of the preposition *à* or *de*, as—

les malheurs sont utiles à | misfortunes are useful to man.

l'homme,

votre frère est digne de récompense, | your brother is worthy of reward.

There are some adjectives that require *pour*, *en*, *dans*, *encore*, *sur*, &c., a list of which will be found in the Appendix.

OF THE AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

RULE VIII.—74. 1°. An adjective must agree in gender and number with its noun or pronoun, however it may be divided from it. If it relate to two or more nouns, it is put in

the plural and masculine, if they are all masculine or of different genders; and feminine plural only when they are all feminine, as—

<i>son château et sa ferme sont</i>	his castle and his farm are
<i>submergés,</i>	under water.
<i>la grammaire et l'histoire sont</i>	grammar and history are
<i>aussi agréables qu' utiles,</i>	agreeable as they are useful.

2°. *Nu*, bare, or naked; and *demi*, half; take the sign of gender and number only when they come after the noun, as—

<i>tête nue,</i>	head uncovered.	<i>pieds nus,</i>	bare-footed.
<i>nu tête.</i>	bare-headed.	<i>nu pieds,</i>	bare-footed.
<i>une demi heure,</i>			half an hour.
<i>une heure et demie,</i>			an hour and an half.

Feu, late, has no plural, and takes the sign of the feminine only when preceded by an article or a possessive pronoun.

feu ma mère, ma feu mère, | my late mother.

EXERCISE VIII.

1. The christian² religion¹ is true, holy, and consoling; the
^{e¹} f. *vrai saint* *consolant*
 calumniator is the most cruel of wild, and the flatterer the
calomniateur m. *féroce bête* f. *flatteur*
 most dangerous of tame animals; grammar and history are as
 *eux* *privé bête* f. *grammaire* f. *histoire* f.

agreeable as useful; music and drawing appear to me very
 *é.....* *qu'ils sont utile* ^{e⁶} *dessein* m. *paraître* me ^{e⁷}
 amusing; he slept with his head and arms uncovered.
amusant *dormir avec* *tête* f. *bras* m. *découvert*

2. The Siamese go bare-headed and bare-footed; in half an
Siamois ^{e¹} ^{e⁸} *pieds* m.

hour I will give you a guinea and a half; he will do it in half
^{e⁴} ^{e⁵} *guinée* f. — ^{e⁶}

a¹ day for half² a¹ crown; send me two pounds and a half of
journée f. *couronne* f. ^{e⁴} ^{e⁵} —

tea; I left the garden and house shut; my late mother left a
^{e⁷} *laisser* *jardin* m. ^{e²} *fermé* ^{e⁶} ^{e⁸}

large fortune; not only should comparisons be just, but they
^{e²} *non seulement* *devoir* f. *comparaison* f.

must also be neither vulgar, nor worn, nor too often
falloir encore *qu'elles ne soient ni bas ni usé* ^{e⁸} ^{e⁶} ^{e²}

repeated, nor employed without necessity; the late Queen
répété ^{e⁸} *employé* *sans* *é.....é* f. ^{e²}

Dowager was much regretted.

Douarière ^{e¹} *regretté*

OF THE PLACE OF ADJECTIVES.

SE IX.—76. 1°. Adjectives are generally placed after the following are more generally placed before, when done with the noun, and taken in their literal sense.

, full.	<i>grand,</i>	great.	<i>petit,</i>	little.
, old.	<i>gros,</i>	big.	<i>principal,</i>	principal.
, any.	<i>habile,</i>	skilful.	<i>saint,</i>	holy.
, fine.	<i>joli,</i>	pretty.	<i>sot,</i>	silly.
, good.	<i>jeune,</i>	young.	<i>triste,</i>	sad.
, brave.	<i>mauvais,</i>	bad.	<i>vaste,</i>	vast.
, dear.	<i>méchant,</i>	wicked.	<i>vieil,</i>	old.
, mean.	<i>meilleur,</i>	better.	<i>vieux,</i>	old.
, worthy.	<i>moindre,</i>	less.	<i>vilain,</i>	ugly.
, sundry.	<i>nouveau,</i>	new.	<i>vrai,</i>	true, real.

When more than one adjective qualify a noun they are all placed after, and the last is united by the conjunction, and; though often omitted in English, as—

enfant grand et beau, | a tall handsome child.
temps beau et agréable, | agreeable fine weather.

When an adjective qualifies several nouns, and precedes it must be repeated before each noun, as—

z moi de bon fromage et | give me some good bread and
bon pain, | cheese.

SERVE.—Other words which in the English language precede the noun, follow the same order in French, such as possessive and demonstrative adjective pronouns. Cardinal and ordinal numbers are placed before or after the noun as in English.

EXERCISE IX.

Bad maxims are worse than bad actions; virtuous
mauvais maxime f. pire e⁹f. vertueux
 are always worthy of esteem; that singer has an
toujours digne estime f. chanteur
 harmonious voice; Madame La Touche has a benign temper;
si doux voix f. benin humeur f.
 there are some dried almonds; laurels are the real balm for
si sec amande f. laurier m. vrai baume m.
 the rich miser is the principal cause of the ill
riche f. avaref. mauvais

* In the sense of affection see list in the appendix.

success of my vast speculations; a regular life is the best
succès m.f. *régulier* vie f. *meilleur*
 philosophy; great men commit great faults; a pure conscience
*phie* f. *e¹* *e¹* *faire* *e¹* *faute* f.f.
 is the best law; a sober, regular, laborious life strengthens
meilleur loi f.*re* *e²* *laborieux* *fortifier*
 health; she is a good virtuous woman. 3°. A big fat woman,
santé f. *e²* *e²* *e¹* *gros* *gras* *e¹*
 with a little girl and boy, is asking for you; I have just bought
e⁸ *petit* *filles* *garçon* *demande* — *venir* *de* *e⁸*
 that beautiful garden and orchard; that pretty boy and girl
e⁸ *e⁸* *verger* m. *joli* *e⁸* *e⁸*
 are the grandson and grand-daughter of M. Longchamp.
petit-fils *petite-fille*

OF ADJECTIVES OF NUMBER.

CARDINAL, or RADICAL numbers, are those from which all others are derived, and are used in making ordinary calculation, as *un*, *deux*, *trois*, one, two, three. ORDINAL numbers are those which point out order or rank, as *premier*, *second*, *troisième*, first, second, third.—See page 51, &c.

RULE X.—79. 1°. *Cent*, a hundred, and *vingt*, in *quatre-vingt*, eighty, take the sign of the plural; except when they are followed by another number, when used as a date, or when standing for *vingtième*, *centième*, as—

<i>trois cent mille,</i>	three hundred thousand.
<i>page deux cent (centième),</i>	page two hundred (hundredth).
<i>deux cent quatre vingts,</i>	two hundred and eighty.

2°. *Mille*, a thousand, never takes the sign of the plural, and, in the form of a date, is written *mil*.

Nouns of number take the sign of the plural, and we say—*les premiers*, *les trois quarts*, *deux douzaines*, *quatre millions*.

3°. *Et*, and; is used to join *un*, one; to *vingt*, *trente*, *quarante*, *cinquante*, *soixante*, otherwise it is not used, as we say *vingt-et-un*, *vingt-deux*, *quatre-vingt-un*, &c.; this conjunction is not used as in English, to join several members of one number together, as, *deux-cent-quarante*, two hundred and forty; but it is used in adding two sums together, as, *deux et trois font cinq*.

4°. *Un*, one, is not used before *cent* or *mille*, as,—
mille-cent-cinquante, | one thousand one hundred and fifty.

Note.—Half *a* or *an*, coming before a noun, is rendered by *a*, or *une demi*, but *un* or *une* is omitted if *demi* comes after the noun, as,—

<i>une demi heure,</i>		half an hour.
<i>deux livres et demie,</i>		two pounds and a half.

EXERCISE X.

1°. The king has eighty horses in his stable; the queen has
^{e²} eighty in hers; out of ^{e¹} six hundred crowns which I ^{e⁶} received, I ^{e²}
 have spent three hundred and eighty two; you will find it
^{écu m.} ^{recevoir K.}
^{dépenser} quoted page three hundred, chapter eighty. 2. In the year
^{cité} ^{chapitre m.} ^{e³}
 one thousand six hundred and seventy three the sun was
^{e¹}
 darkened; there were ten thousand ^{A A} infantry and three thou-
^{sécours m.} ^{homme de infanterie f.}
 sand ^A cavalry before the battle, but ^A three-fourths were killed
^{de cavalerie f. e⁷} ^{bataille f. e¹} ^{art. quart m.} ^{tué}
 or wounded; send me three dozen pairs of stockings; I should
^{blessé e²}f. ^{bas m.}
 be content with two-thirds of your income. 3. They say he
 ^{de tier m.} ^{revenu m.} ^{dire}
 has three hundred and eighty votes; twenty-one and forty make
^{voix f.}
 sixty-one; the price of this cloth is thirty-one shillings.
^{prix m.} ^{drap m.} ^{e⁶}
 4. Tell him to send me one hundred pounds of tea in two hours
^{e¹} ^{e²} ^{e⁵} ^{e¹ e¹} ^{heure f.}
 and a half.

OF THE ADJECTIVES OF DIMENSIONS.

De haut, high; *de large*, wide; *de profond*, deep; *de long*, long, &c.

RULE XI.—1°. Adjectives of dimensions may be rendered in French by the adjectives as above, or by the noun always preceded by *de*, as *de hauteur*, *de largeur*, *de profondeur* (*de profond* is never used) *de longueur*, &c.

six pouces de large, or *de largeur*, | six inches wide.

and the verb *avoir* is used in preference to the verb *être*, to be;

the noun being considered more elegant than the adjective.

cette table a trois pieds de hauteur, | this table is three feet high.

2°. Should the verb *être* be used, or the word of number be immediately preceded by a verb, then *de* is placed before the word of number, as,—

<i>cette table est de trois pieds</i>	<i>this table is three feet high.</i>
<i>de hauteur.</i>	

<i>J'ai une table de trois pieds de hauteur,</i>	I have a table three feet high.
--	---------------------------------

<i>J'ai une table de trois pieds de hauteur,</i>	I have a table three feet high.
--	---------------------------------

de hauteur,	high.
-------------	-------

3°. In sentences where the two sentences are united by *et*, by, the *de* is omitted before the noun of number in the second part, but not if united by *et*, and; as,

<i>J'ai une table de trois pieds</i>	I have a table three feet
<i>de largeur sur (or et de)</i>	wide by (or and) five feet
<i>cinq pieds de longueur,</i>	long.

<i>de largeur sur</i> (or <i>et de</i>)	wide by (or and) five feet
--	----------------------------

cinq pieds de longueur, | long.

Observe that it is better to repeat the words of space or measure in the second part of a sentence, though frequently omitted in English, as,—

ce tapis a trente pieds de long, | *this carpet is thirty feet long,*
et douze pieds de large, | *and twelve wide.*

et douze pieds de large, and twelve wide.

EXERCISE XL

1°. The Tyber is three hundred feet wide at Rome; the walls of Algiers are sixteen feet ^{*pied m. large*} thick, and thirty feet high. _{*mure m.*} _{*e*¹¹} _{*e*¹¹}

ped m. large

walls of Algiers are sixteen feet thick, and thirty feet high.
mure m. *e*¹¹ *e*¹¹

2°. We were stopped in our march by a river three hundred
arrêter f. rivière f.

arrêter

...**ef.**

***rivière* f.**

feet wide. 1°. *There were* two women six feet high. 2. *Make*

*e*¹¹ *e*⁴ *e*⁷ *e*¹¹ *e*¹

me a table twelve feet long, four feet wide, and thirty inches
 e^4 ... f. e^{11} e^{11} *POUCE* *IN.*

high; the beautiful column on the place Vendôme in Paris, is
e^s colonne f. e^s ...f. à être

es c

F. e^o

...f. .

 α

two hundred feet high; we went to ^{e¹} fish in a small boat, ^{e¹} art. *pêche* f. ^{e²} ^{e¹}

$$e^{11}$$
$$e^1$$

62

twelve feet long and four wide, on a bank sixteen fathoms deep.

$$e^{11}$$

toise f.

3°. This stone is four feet wide by six feet long; there is a well
 e^2 e^{11} e^{11} puit m.

 ϵ^2

France five hundred feet deep, by sixty feet in diameter;
 is picture is to be six feet high, and four and a half wide.
 portrait m. doit

OF THE ADJECTIVES OF SIGNIFICATION.

There are three degrees of signification (see etymology) the positive, the comparative, and superlative.

OF THE COMPARATIVE.

RULE XII.—80, 81. 1°. The Comparative of equality is formed in French by putting *si* or *aussi* before the adjective, and *si*, *aussi*, *autant*, or *également*, before a participle, and the *as* that follows is rendered by *que*, as—

Il est aussi savant que vous, | he is as learned as you.
Il est autant aimé que sa sœur, | he is as much loved as his sister
 as much or so much, as many or so many, are rendered by
autant de, before a noun, and, as is rendered by *que*, as—

<i>il a autant de papier, or,</i>	he has as much paper, or as
<i>autant d'amis que vous,</i>	many friends as you.
<i>il n'a pas tant* de papier, or,</i>	he has not so much paper, or
<i>tant d'amis que vous,</i>	so many friends as you.

aussi is also used with an adverb, as—

il court aussi vite que vous, | he runs as fast as you.

2°. The Comparative of superiority is formed by putting *plus*, more, before the adjective or participle, or *er* after it, or *plus de* before a noun, and *que* after, in either case, as,—

le savoir est plus utile que l'or, learning is more useful than gold.

J'ai plus d'argent que vous, I have more money than you.

3°. The Comparative of inferiority is formed by putting *moins*, less, before the adjective or participle, and *moins de* before a noun, and than is rendered by *que*, as—

la lune est moins brillante	the moon is not so brilliant as
que le soleil,	the sun.
elle n'a pas tant de pratiques	she has not so many customers
que vous,	as you.

Observe *plus* or *moins* must be repeated before every adjective.

* In negative sentences *tant* and *si* are more frequently used than *autant* and *aussi*.

EXERCISE XII.

1°. Socrates was as wise as [^]_^ valiant; he is as clever as
sage il était habile
 his brother; *there are* no fools so troublesome as those who
^{e²} ^{e⁴} ^{sot} ^{e¹} *incommode ceux*
 have wit; this diamond is worth as much as this ruby; this
esprit m. e¹ valoir rubis
 ship holds as many tons as yours; she speaks French as well
^{e⁴} *contenir tonneau m. parler Français bien*
 as his sister. 2°. Hypocrisy is a weapon more sure, more
^{sœur} ^{.....sie f.} ^{arme f.} ^{.à...}
 dangerous, and more employed than [^] violence; Mr. Dupré
^{e⁴} ^{e³} ^{art. f.} ^{....}
 has more money than us; nothing is more gratifying to
^{argent m.} ^{rien m.} ^{agréable}
 the mind than the light of truth; you have not as much
^{e²} ^{lumière f.} ^{vérité f.}
 judgment as sense. 3°. Ambition has not so many slaves as
jugement m. e²f. esclave m.
 idleness; Africa is not so populous as Europe; the rose is less
paresse f. pleuplé ...f.
 gaudy than the tulip; she is less suspicious than her niece;
brillant ...pe f. soupçonneux
 there are less inhabitants in Paris than in London.
^{e⁴} ^{habitant m.} ^{.....}

OF THE SUPERLATIVE.

The Superlative is the quality expressed by the adjective, carried to a very high, or to the highest degree; to a very low, or to the lowest degree, of which there are two kinds; the *relative*, so called because it relates by comparisons to other objects; and the *absolute*, so called because the quality expressed by the adjective is superlative without relation to any other object.

RULE XIII.—82. 1°. The superlative relative is formed by placing, 1st, the article *le, la, les*, before the adverbs *mieux* or *moins* that precedes the adjective, as *le mieux calculé*, the best calculated; or, *le moins sage*, the least wise; 2d, by placing *le, la, les, or mon, ma, mes, &c.* before *plus* or *moins* that precedes the adjective, as, *le (or mon,) plus sage ami*, the (or my) wisest friend; *le moins (or mon moins) sage ami*, the least (or my least) wise friend; 3d, by placing *le, la, les, or mon, ma, mes, &c.* before *meilleur, mieux, moindre, or pire*, as—
c'est sa moindre faute, (it is his least fault.

c'est la meilleure pomme, | it is the best apple.

2°. Should the adjective in the superlative come after the noun, the article must be repeated before each, as—

c'est l'homme le plus savant de la ville, or, *que je connaisse,* | he is the most learned man in town, or, that I know.

3°. The superlative absolute is formed by prefixing to the adjective *fort, très, bien, infiniment, extrêmement,* as—

voire montre est très-belle, | your watch is very beautiful.

Note.—When *le plus, le moins,* or *le mieux* qualify several adjectives in the same preposition, they must be repeated before each.

EXERCISE XIII.

1°. My greatest torment is idleness; the surest means are
^{e¹} *tourment* m. ^{e¹} *oisiveté* f. ^{sur} ^{e⁴}
 the least glaring; it is his least fault; the best of men is he
^{éclatant} ^{ce} ^{e²} ^{e¹} ^{e¹}
 who has the least vice; you have done your task without the
 ...m. ^{faire} ^{devoir} m. ^{e³}
 least attention; the least excusable of all errors is that which
 f. ^{erreur} f.
 is wilful; the greatest reputations are not always the best
^{volontaire} ^{ré}.....f. ^{e³}
 grounded; the worst of states is a despotic government;
^{fondé} ^{e³} ^{le} ^{despotique} ^{gou}.....m.
 unaffected civility is the best courtesy, and temperance the
^{simple} ^{honnêteté} f. ^{politesse} f.é.....f.
 best doctor. 2. The most learned men are not the most
^{médecin} ^{savant} ^{e¹}
 virtuous; these are the finest pictures I have ever seen; novels,
^{e³} ^{voici} ^{e³} ^{tableau} m. ^{e⁴} ^{roman} m.
 even the purest, are hurtful; jealousy is the greatest of evils,
^{même} ^{pur} ^{faire} ^{du} ^{mal} m. ^{jalousie} f. ^{e¹} ^{e³}
 and that which creates the least pity. 3. Constantinople is a
^{celui} ^{inspirer} ^{pitié} f.
 very fine city; Mr. M.'s family is exceedingly happy; the style
^{e³} ^{e³} ^{ville} f. ^{famille} f. ^{infiniment} ^{heureux} ...m.
 of Fénelon is very rich and very harmonious; he visits the
 ^{e³} ...e. ^{e³} ^{coulant} ^{fréquenter}
 richest and most distinguished families.
^{rich} ^{noble} ^{e¹²}

CHAPTER FOURTH.

OF PRONOUNS.

OF STATES AND CASES.

As there are positively no cases in the French language, we have adopted the word *state*.

The *First State*, or subject, corresponds to the nominative of the Latin.

The *Second State*, always expressed by *de*, answers to the genitive or ablative.

The *Third State*, always expressed by *à*, to the dative.

The *Fourth State*, object or complement, to the accusative.

Before the learner proceeds, it will be necessary that he make himself familiar with the differences of these states, and of the exact import of subject and object, as also how to distinguish between the direct and indirect object; for, without this knowledge, the rules, and those of the pronouns in particular, will not be clear, and his progress thereby considerably retarded.

The first state, or nominative, is the subject of a proposition simply affirmed, and is a noun, or one of the pronouns with which a verb is conjugated in any form.

The fourth state is the complement of another word by which it is governed; it is the direct object of an active verb, when completed without the aid of a proposition, neither expressed nor understood, as—

<i>il loue son père,</i>		he praises his father.
--------------------------	--	------------------------

Il, he, is the subject; *loue*, praises, is the verb; and *père*, father, the direct object, being the person praised.

It is the indirect object when it requires the association of the preposition *de* or *à*, either expressed or understood, as—

<i>il donna cette lettre à son frère,</i>		he gave this letter to his brother.
---	--	-------------------------------------

<i>il lui donna cette lettre,</i>		he gave him this letter.
-----------------------------------	--	--------------------------

Il, he, is the subject; *donna*, gave, the verb; *lettre*, letter, the direct object, being the thing given; and *à son frère*, to his brother, and *lui*, him, for *à lui*, to him, the indirect objects being governed by the preposition *à*, expressed in the first case, and understood in the second.

SECTION I.

OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS AS SUBJECTS.

RULE XIV.—83. Among the personal pronouns *nous* and *us* never vary, whether subject or object, direct or indirect; but in particular cases *je, tu, il, ils*, as subjects of verbs, are rendered by *moi, toi, lui, eux; elle*, she, and *elles*, they, fem. remaining the same.

1°. When joined to a noun or pronoun, or when coming after each other as a kind of enumeration, as—

<i>lui et son fils sont malade,</i>	he and his son are ill.
<i>lui et elle iront en ville,</i>	he and she will go to town.

OBSERVE.—When a verb is accompanied by two or more subjects of *different* persons, the resuming pronoun, *nous* or *vous*, is generally used to represent them, and the verb is made to agree with the one used, *nous* or *vous*. If any of the pronouns are of the first person, *nous* must be used; and *vous*, if any are of the second person, and none of the first. These resuming pronouns are always understood in English, as—

<i>eux et moi nous sommes d'accord,</i>	they and I (we) are agreed.
<i>vous et votre sœur, vous avez</i>	you and your sister (you)
<i>gâté ce livre,</i>	have spoiled this book.

2°. When used immediately with the relative pronouns *qui* or *que*; the conjunction *que*, than or as, after a comparison; the word *seul*, alone; or a participle present, as—

<i>c'est moi qui vous le dis,</i>	it is I who tell you so.
<i>lui seul reviendra,</i>	he alone will return.
<i>eux, que j'aime tant!</i>	they, whom I loved so much!
<i>moi, voyant son repent, &c.</i>	I, seeing his repentance, &c.
<i>il est plus grand que moi,</i>	he is taller than I.

3°. When used with the verb *être*, preceded by *ce*; and in answering a question, *être* and *ce* being understood, as—

<i>qui a fait cela? lui,</i>	who has done that? he.
<i>c'est lui qui a fait cela,</i>	'tis he who has done that.
<i>ce n'est pas moi qui ai fait cela,</i>	'tis not I who have done that.

4°. When used in the second part of a sentence, as a contrast to the first, or when pointing out the different parts that persons have taken in an action, in which case *je, tu, il, ils, elle, elles*, are elegantly introduced as pleonasms, as—

<i>l part, et moi, je reste;</i>	he sets out, and I remain.
<i>mon fils et moi nous sommes</i>	my son and I are partners, he
<i>associés, lui vend et moi</i>	sells and I write.
<i>j'écris,</i>	

EXERCISE XIV.

1°. My brother and I will accept your kind invitation; they
^{e²} *se rendre aimable*f.
 and I are agreed; I, thou, and he are all guilty; he is not
^{e²} *d'accord* ^{e²} *tout coupable*
 so strong as they; she is as good as thee; thou, who
^{e¹} *fort* ^{e²}
pretendest to be so ^{e¹} brave, would'st thou dare go there? they,
^{e¹} *faire tant* ^{e¹} *le* ^{e¹} *oser* ^{e¹} *là*
 seeing that you did not return, *went away*; he, whom I love,
^{e⁴} *revenir s'en aller* ^{e⁴}
 to treat me thus! they alone saw the enemy's colours. 3°. It
^{e⁴} *battre* ^{e⁴} *ainsi* ^{e⁴}ie m. *drapeau* m. ^{e¹³}
 is not he who is the master, 'tis I; who is the *guilty one*?
^{e⁶} *coupable* m.
 thou. 4°. I serve my country with zeal, but thou betrayest
^{e²} *servir* ^{e²} *zèle* m. ^{e¹} *trahir*
 her interest; you like the country, and I ^{e¹} the town; thou
^{e²} *intérêt* m. plu. ^{e²} *campagne* f. ^{e²} *j'aime* ^{e²}
 tramplest *on*² the laws¹, I respect them; I will gain a name by
^{e⁹} *fouler aux pieds* ^{e⁹} *respecter* ^{e¹} *faire* ^{e¹}
 my glorious exploits, and you will live ^{e¹} in posterity by your
^{e²} *glorieux*m. ^{e²} art.é f.
 learned writings.
^{e¹³} ^{e²}

RULE XV.—84. 1°. *It*, used with the verb *to be*, impersonally, is rendered in French by *il* or *ce*. 1°. By *il* when the verb is followed by an adjective without a noun, in reference to something following, as—

<i>il est difficile d'apprendre sans</i>	it is difficult to learn without
<i>précepte,</i>	<i>precept.</i>

2°. By *ce* when *it* relates to something previously mentioned or understood, or when the verb *être* is followed by a pronoun or noun, though preceded by an adjective, as—

<i>c'est bien malheureux,</i>	it is very unfortunate.
<i>c'est un pauvre enfant,</i>	it is a poor child.
<i>c'est lui qui parle,</i>	it is he who is speaking.

3°. Nouns of trades, professions, adjectives of countries, &c., considered as absolute nouns, require *ce* before the verb; but *if they are considered as attributes of persons or qualifications,*

ne personal pronoun of the third person must be used as in English, as—

c'est un français,
il est français,

it is a Frenchman.
he is a Frenchman.

In the first instance *français* is a noun, and absolutely denoting a person, as if it were in answer to—Who is there? it is a Frenchman, a baker, an officer. But in the second, *français* is an attribute, to distinguish the person spoken of, as if it were in answer to this question—What countryman is your brother? he is a Frenchman; what trade, what profession? he is a baker, an officer; in this latter case *a* or *an* is omitted in French.

EXERCISE XV.

1°. It is impossible for ^Δ man ^Δ to say *what* he will be in a
..... à art. ^{e¹} *de* ^{e¹⁰} *ce que* ^{e¹}
quarter of an hour; it is difficult ^Δ to believe the truth from a
^{e¹⁰} *quart m. — difficile de croire* ^{e¹²}
bar; it is a shame ^Δ to do what we are ashamed ^Δ to own.
^{e¹³} *honteux de* ^{e¹⁵} *on avoir honte f. de avouer*
2°. It is a shameful thing ^{Δ Δ} to set the son against the father;
honteux chose f. que de armer fils ^{e²} ^{e²}
it is a man ^Δ I cannot bear; have you heard of their death?
^{e¹} *que pouvoir souffrir* ^{e¹} ^{e⁶}
yes, it is very unfortunate; it is the first time ^Δ I have sung
^{e³} ^{e⁶} *oui fois f. que chanter*
this song; it is you who force me to quit this country; it is
chanson qui obliger me quitter ^{e³} ^{e⁶} *pays m.*
patience and perseverance that enable us to overcome ^Δ
..... f.é..... f. *faire surmonter* art.
adversity; it is a *sad thing* ^Δ to be ill and ^Δ to have no friend;
.....té f. — *triste de malade de* ^{e⁴}
it is too difficult, it is an Italian who composed it; you thought
^{e⁸} ^{e¹⁵} *composer* ^{e⁴} ^{e⁴} *croire*
^Δ he was a German, but he is a Pole; who is with your nephew;
que ^{e⁸} ^{e⁸} *neveu*
it is a minister; what is your father? he is a lawyer.
ministre ^{e²} ^{e²} *avocat.*

OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS AS OBJECTS.

RULE XVI.—85. 1°. Personal Pronouns, as objects of verbs, are placed immediately before the verb, whether object direct or indirect, and the preposition understood.

DIRECT OBJECTS.

me, me; *te*, thee; *le*, him or it; *la*, her or it; *les*, them.

Je te vois, | I see thee. || *il la grondera*, | he will scold her.

Indirect object and the preposition understood.

me, to me; *te*, to thee; *lui*, to him or to her; *leur*, to them.

elle me parle, | she speaks to me. || *Je lui parle*, | I speak to him.

2°. They are placed after the verb, if the preposition be expressed, then *moi*, *toi*, are used as the equivalent of *me*, *te*.

Indirect object and the preposition expressed.

à moi, to me; *à toi*, to thee; *à lui*, to him; *à elle*, to her.

à eux, m., *à elles*, f., to them.

<i>Je pensais à toi,</i>		I was thinking of thee.
<i>Je dépends de lui ou d'elles,</i>		I depend on him or her.

3°. In the imperative mood, except in the third persons, the pronouns are placed after the verb, but if a negative attend the verb, they are placed before the verb, as—

<i>parlez moi, ne me parlez pas,</i>		speak to me, do not speak to me
<i>qu'il lui parle, qu'il ne lui</i>		let him speak, or not speak to
<i>parle pas,</i>		him.

EXERCISE XVI.

You suspect me *without reason*; I have assisted them; it
soupçonner mal à propos secourir
 is he who gave them to me; do you bring me good news? he
^{e⁴} ^{e⁴} ^{R.⁴} ^{e²} *nouvelle f.*
 spoke with a power that astonished me. 2. I do not like that
^{e¹²} ^{e⁸} *force qui étonner* ^{K.} ^{e²}
 bull which is coming towards me; I was thinking of thee
taureau qui s'approcher de songer à
 when they began to speak of him; Mrs.— sends her
^{e³} ^{venir à} ^{e¹²} ^{e³}
 compliments to you and her; my son will not stay with him.
m. ^à ^{e¹⁵} *vouloir rester* ^{e⁸}
 3. Tell me the truth; send them some fruit from your orchard;
^{e⁷} ^{e¹²} ^{e³}m. ^{e³}
 do not send them bad fruit; see them, but do not speak to
^{e³} ^{e⁴} ^{e³} ^{e⁴} ^{e¹} ^{e¹²}

hem; throw it *out of* the window; let him tell her [^] to come
jetter par fenêtre f. e⁷ de venir
 at 6 o'clock; go and fetch me some ink, but do not bring it
heure f. e¹ — chercher encre f. e¹ e⁴
 thick.
épais

RULE XVII.—86. As from the preceding rules it will be observed that the preposition *à*, with the personal pronoun, is sometimes expressed and sometimes understood, the following are the five particular cases in which *à* must be expressed:—

1°. With *avoir*, used with *affaire*, *égard*, *recours*, *rapport*, as—

<i>Il aura affaire à moi,</i>		he shall be answerable to me.
<i>J'aurai recours à lui,</i>		I will have recourse to him.

2°. With *être*, when used unipersonally with *ce*, or when used in the sense of *appartenir*, to belong; as—

<i>c'est à moi à parler,</i>		it is my turn to speak.
<i>ce chapeau est à lui,</i>		this hat is his (i.e. belongs to him.)

3°. With the following verbs, *aller*, to go; *penser*, and *songer*, to think of; *voler*, to fly; *marcher*, to walk, in the sense of going towards; *viser*, to aim at, or see to; *courir* and *accourir*, to run towards; *venir*, to come to, except when used unipersonally, as—

<i>Je ne pensais pas à lui,</i>		I was not thinking of him.
<i>il vient à moi,</i>		he is coming to me.
<i>il me vient une idée,</i>		an idea occurs to me.

4°. When two indirect objects in the third state are united by a conjunction, as—

<i>Je parle à lui et à elle,</i>		I speak to him and to her.
----------------------------------	--	----------------------------

5°. When a reflexive verb governs its indirect object in the third state, having its direct object before it, as—

<i>il s'adressa à moi,</i>		he applied to me.
----------------------------	--	-------------------

OBSERVE.—When a verb governs a pronoun by any other preposition than *à*, the preposition must be expressed, and placed after the verb, except in the case of *y* and *en*, as will be seen in the following rules, as—

<i>il se plaint de vous,</i>		he complains of you.
<i>Je parlerai pour vous,</i>		I will speak for you.

EXERCISE XVII.

1°. I will not have recourse to him; I will not have anything
^{e¹⁶} *recours* ^{e¹⁶}
to do with you; this has relation to you. 2°. It is *your* ^{e¹³} *affaire* ^{e¹³} *à* ^{e¹³} *rapport* ^{e¹³} *m.* ^{e¹³} *à* ^{e¹³} *vous*
to deal; this apple is his, and *not* yours. 3°. He came to ^{e¹⁶}
^{e⁵} *faire* ^{e⁵} *non pas* ^{e¹⁶}
and begged me ^{e¹} *de* ^{e¹} *à* ^{e⁸} *to go with him, but I would not trust myself* ^{e¹} *vouloir* ^{e¹} *se fier*
to him; your brother came to us when we were not thinking
^{e²} ^{e¹⁶} ^{e³} *penser*
of him; it is proper ^{e¹⁶} *bon de* ^{e¹⁶} *soi* ^{e¹} ^{e¹⁶} *de*
think only of oneself. 4°. He applied to me as a magistrate
^{e¹⁶} ^{e¹} ^{e¹⁷} *s'adresser comme* —
and said ^{e¹⁰} *que* ^{e⁶} *the watch* 1° was his. 4°. It is strange ^{e¹⁰} *étonnant que* ^{e⁶} *he should*
trust to him, and not trust to his father. 5°. I will give it ^{e¹⁷} *R.* ^{e¹⁷} *lui* ^{e¹⁷} *R.* ^{e²} ^{e⁴}
her and to you, *that* you may *both* think of me; I will speak
^{e¹⁶} *afin que* ^{e¹⁶} *tout deux* ^{e¹⁶} *R.* ^{e⁴} ^{e¹¹}
of you to the minister; my French teacher always complains
^{e¹⁶} ^{e¹²} ^{e⁶} ^{e⁹} *se plaindre*

OF THE RELATIVE SUPPLYING PRONOUNS EN AND Y.

They are so called because they always relate to something preceding, and supply the place of other words.

RULE XVIII.—87. 1°. *En* is used instead of *de lui, d'elle*, of him, of her, of it; *d'eux, d'elles*, of them; when they relate to things, whatever may be the preposition used in English, providing the verb or adjective govern the preposition *de* in French. It is sometimes used in relation to persons, as—

vous en parlez toujours, | you are always speaking of it.
J'en suis fâché, | I am sorry for it.

2°. When with adjectives of number, and with the words another, some, any, none, or words of quantity, the words, of it, of them, are understood, *en* must be expressed in French, as—

J'ai vu six vaisseaux, vous en | I saw six ships, and you have
avez vu sept, | seen seven (of them).
si vous avez du vin donnez | if you have any wine give me
m'en, | some (of it).

3°. *Y* is used instead of *à lui*, *à elle*, to it; *à eux*, *à elles*, to them, in relation to things; it may relate to persons when used indefinitely, or when answering a question, as—

<i>voilà mon habit mettez y un bouton,</i>	there's my coat, put a button to it.
<i>pensez-vous à ma sœur? oui j'y pense,</i>	do you think of my sister? yes, I do.

Observe that *en* and *y* always precede the verb, subject to the same exception as *lui*, *leur*.

EXERCISE XVIII.

1°. This illness is dangerous, he might [^]die of it; I will tell you a secret, if you will promise [^]not to speak of it; flattery is a poison, we must dread [^]the use of it; a mother who has virtuous children looks on them as her richest ornaments. 2°. Are there any vessels [^]arrived? I do not think so, for I have not seen any; I want some ink, give me a little; if your grammar is printed, send me twenty copies. 3°. Love study, devote yourself to it entirely; when a man is dead he is seldom [^]thought of; avoid law-suits, conscience is often strained in them—health is [^]impaired by them—property is [^]wasted by them; do you trust to him? no, I do not trust to him; in studying men, we find more [^]vice than [^]virtue in them.

maladie f. e⁴ pouvoir bien mourir e¹²
e⁷m. si promettre de e¹²
.....rie f.m. e⁸ craindre de faire usage e⁸
e⁹ enfant m. fait de — e¹³
parure f. e⁴ e⁴ de arriver
e¹⁵ le car e⁴ avoir besoin de e¹⁵ e⁴ e¹⁵
e⁴ e¹⁸ e⁸ imprimer e³ e⁴ exemplaire m.
e⁴ étude f. se livrer entièrement e³ e¹
mort on rarement e¹⁷ lui fuier procès m.f.
e³ blessé e² e⁹ s'altérer à
bien m. se dissiper e¹⁸ e¹⁷ e²¹
e¹⁷ e² approfondir e¹ e¹⁰ de ...m.
de e¹ e²

OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS USED WITH *MÊME*.

RULE XIX.—88. 1°. The reduplicate word *même*, self, is added to *moi*, *toi*, *lui*, *elle*, *nous*, *vous*, *eux*, *elles*, *soi*; when we wish to enforce anything, or to add energy to an expression, as—

*Je le ferai moi-même,
elle leur parla elle-même,
nous irons là nous-mêmes,*

I will do it myself.
she spoke to them herself.
we will go there ourselves.

2°. The first and second person singular and plural used with *même*, can only relate to persons; but when speaking of persons in a vague or general sense, *soi* is used for the third pers. sing. anglicised by himself, herself, oneself, and is generally preceded by an indefinite expression, such as *chacun* each; *on*, one, they, people, &c., as—

chacun agit pour soi, | each acts for himself.

But *soi* may answer to ourselves and themselves, when preceded by *on*, an unipersonal verb, or the present of the infinitive of any verb, as—

on est toujours content de soi,

we are always pleased with ourselves.*

il ne faut pas parler de soi,

we must not speak of ourselves.*

3°. Alluding to persons in a definite sense, as subjects of a verb, himself, herself, themselves, when governed by a preposition, are rendered by *lui-même*, *elle-même*, *eux-mêmes*, *elles-mêmes*; and when referring to things or to persons in an indefinite sense, by *soi*, though *elles-mêmes* is sometimes used in reference to things, but *soi* is preferable.

Observe that the pronouns myself, thyself, &c., as objects of reflective verbs, are rendered by *me*, *te*, &c., see page 38.

EXERCISE XIX.

1°. Have you seen that yourself? I should like to see your
 e^4 e^2 e^2 e^4
 master myself, before Δ I pay this bill; let us go there our-
 e^6 e^7 Δ e^1 y
 selves; tell them Δ to write this letter themselves. 2°. Whoever
 e^7 Δ e^1 e^1
 loves but himself is unworthy Δ to live; we love only ourselves,
 e^4 Δ e^2 e^{15} e^4 e^1
 and we ought to fear only ourselves. 2°—3°. We are satisfied
 e^{15} Δ e^1 e^{15} Δ
 with ourselves when we have done no wrong, but no man Δ
 e^{10} e^3 e^{15} e^{13} Δ e^1 — Δ e^1 — Δ e^1

* Ourselves, plural, is used as a correlate to we, so *soi*, sing., is used to correlate with *on* and *il*, both singular.

† *Ne* invariably precedes the verb.

night ^{e¹⁹} *pas* to be satisfied with himself till he ^{e¹⁹} has done some ^{e¹⁰} *avant — de* ^{e¹³}
 good. 3°. Of itself vice is odious; it depends always on ^{e⁹} *odieux dépendre* ^{e¹⁰} *rien m.* ...m.
 myself ^{e²} to act honourably; the love of ourselves is a senti- ^{e¹⁰} *de honorablement amour m.*
 ment, self-love an opinion—by the one we love ourselves, ^{e¹⁵} *amour-propre m.f. par s'aimer*
 by the other we esteem ourselves; that young lady is always ^{e⁹} *autre s'estimer demoiselle*
 speaking of herself; loadstone draws iron to itself; gold² is not ^{e¹} *aimant m. attirer fer m.*
 an evil in itself. ^{e¹} *de*

REPETITION OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

RULE XX.—89. 1°. Personal pronouns, as subjects, may be repeated or not, as taste and harmony may require; but they must be repeated, of whatever persons they are, when the verb is affirmative and the other negative, as—

<i>Je dis et déclare, or je dis et je déclare que cela est vrai, je courbe, mais je ne romps pas.</i>	I say and declare, or I say and I declare that that is true. I bend, but I do not break.
--	---

2. Pronouns of the first and second person are more frequently repeated than others, and must be so when the verbs are in different tenses, as—

vous me flattez et me louez,	you flatter and praise me.
vous grondez et vous gronderez toujours,	you scold and will always scold.

3°. But pronouns of the third person are seldom repeated even when they are in different tenses, as—

il l'aime, et l'aimera toute sa | he loves, and will love her as
vie, | long as he lives.

4°. Pronouns, objects of verbs, are generally repeated before every verb, as—

il l'aime, l'honore, et le respect, | he loves, honours, and respects
him.

5°. *On* must be repeated before every verb, as—

on parle souvent d'une manière | we often speak one way and
et l'on agit d'une autre, | act another.

EXERCISE XX.

1°. She is not rich, but young and beautiful; he does not speak when it ^{e¹²}is ^{e³}necessary, and speaks when it ^{e¹²}is not ^{e³}falling ^{e¹²}fallor ^{e³} necessary; I think, and will always think the same; I ^{e²⁰}maintain, and shall always maintain, that we cannot be happy ^{e¹⁷}dire ^{e⁹}without a practising ^{e²⁰}virtue; she is, a and a will always be ^{e¹⁵}art. ^{e¹}pratique f. ^{e¹⁵}de la ^{e¹}obligeant le ^{e⁹}kind. 3°. He took a towns, conquered a provinces, and subdued ^{e⁵}— ^{e⁴} ^{e²} ^{e⁴}conquérir ^{e²}.....f. ^{e¹⁷}subjuguer a nations; a son well educated never rebels against his father, ^{e⁴}.....f. ^{e¹⁵} ^{e¹²} ^{e¹²}élevé ^{e²}s'armer ^{e²} ^{e³}3°—4°. he loves, honours, and respects him. 4°. Man ^{e⁴}embellishes nature itself; he cultivates, extends, and polishes ^{e¹⁴}embellir ^{e¹}.....f. ^{e¹}même ^{e¹}cultiver ^{e¹}étendre ^{e¹}polir it. 4—5. They praise, threaten, and caress him, yet ^{e¹}on ^{e¹}louer ^{e¹}menacer ^{e¹}caresser ^{e¹}cependant cannot alter his indolent² disposition¹. 5°. Men think they ^{e¹⁵}changer ^{e¹⁵}..... ^{e¹}caracter m. ^{e¹}are not deceived, yet are so at every moment. ^{e²⁰}tromper ^{e¹⁸} ^{e¹⁸}tout ^{e¹}..... m.

OF THE ORDER OF PRONOUNS, AS OBJECTS COMING BEFORE VERBS.

RULE XXI.—1°. Should several pronouns require to be placed before a verb of which they are the object, the following table will indicate the order they must follow, whether the sentence be affirmative, negative, or interrogative.

1. *me—te—je—nous—vous.*
2. *le—la—les.*
3. *lui—leur.*
4. *y.*
5. *en, as—*

Je le lui dirai,
le lui dirai-je?
Je ne le lui dirai pas,

I will tell it to him.
 shall I tell it to him?
 I will not tell it to him.

Le is the direct object, and *lui* the indirect object of *dirai*, and *le* precedes *lui*, inasmuch as by reference to the above table *le* is in the second line, and *lui* in the third, and as two naturally comes before three, so *le* precedes *lui*.

ADDITIONAL EXAMPLES.

<i>Il demande ces livres vous</i>	If he asks for these books you
<i>les lui donnerez,</i>	will give them to him.
<i>vous en enverrai demain,</i>	I will send you some to-morrow.
<i>vous vais vous les envoyer,</i>	I am going to send them to you.
<i>vous les leur avez promis,</i>	you promised them to them.
<i>vous les y enverra,</i>	he will send them to you there.
<i>et lui en a envoyé quatre,</i>	they have sent him four.
<i>vous y en enverra,</i>	he will send you some there.
<i>elle me le donnera ce soir,</i>	she will give it to me to-night.

EXERCISE XXI.

Mr. — has received a letter from your brother; he will
^{e¹⁰} ^{e¹⁹} ^{e²}
give it to you if you ask him for it; he will not give it to me;
^{e⁴} ^{e¹⁸} ^{e²} ^F ^{lui} — ^{e¹⁶} ^{e⁴} ^{e¹}
do you like bread without salt? no, but we will soon accustom
^{e²} ^{pain} m. ^{e⁸} ^{sel} m. ^{e²¹} ^{e¹} ^{e¹} ^{s'accoutumer}
ourselves to it; if I go to the concert I will take you there,
^{e¹} ^Fm. ^{mener} ^{e¹⁹}
but I will not take her there; did you not speak to him of it?
^{e²¹} ^{e¹⁹} ^{e¹²}
no, but I did not promise it to him; are my boots finished?
^{e¹⁸} ^{avoir} F ^{e¹⁸} ^{botte} f. ^{finir}
no, sir, but I will send them to you to-morrow; where are the
^{e¹} ^{e⁴} ^{e⁸} ^{où}
examples which you promised me? go to the gardener and he will
^{e⁶} ^{que} ^{e¹⁸} ^K ^{e¹} ^{jardinier}
send them to you; we are short of water on board, we will
^{e⁴} ^{manquer} ^{e⁸} ^{e⁷} ^{bord} m.
bring you some there to-night; your beer would be good if you
^{e¹⁹} ^{ce} ^{soir} ^{e⁴} ^{e²} ^{e¹⁸}
bring me more malt into it.
^{e²} ^{de} ...m. ^à

RULE XXII. In the imperative mood, the above pronouns are placed after the verb, except in the third person, or when the verb is negative; then the pronouns come after the verb, and *moi* is used instead of *me*, and *le*, *la*, *les*, come before *moi*, as—

<i>promettez le moi,</i>	promise it to me.
<i>qu'il me le promette,</i>	let him promise it to me.
<i>ne me le promettez pas,</i>	do not promise it to me.

Y and *en* coming after the imperative, follow as in other cases, all other pronouns, as—

menez-les-y—donnez-nous-en, | take them there—give us some.

But, to avoid a disagreeable coalition of sounds, we must say—*menez-y-moi*, instead of *menez-moi-y*, take me there; *donnez m'en*, instead of *donnez-moi-en*, give me some; and when the second person singular ends in a vowel, an *s* is added to the verb before *y* or *en*, as *vas-y*, instead of *va-y*, go there; and *donnes en à ton frère*, give some to thy brother.

3°. When two imperatives are united by the conjunctions *et* or *ou*, accompanied with the same pronoun as object, it is more elegant to place the second pronoun before the verb, as—
prenez le et le mangez, | take it and eat it.
prêtez le moi ou me le vendez, | lend it to me, or sell it to me.

EXERCISE XXII.

1°. *Here is* our luggage, send it to us to-morrow; if you
^{e⁹} *effets plu.* ^{e⁸} plu. ^{e⁸}
 have lent him any money, ask him for it and he will return it
prêter ^{e¹²} ^{e⁹} *rendre*
 to you; sell me your harp; no, I will not sell it to you; sell it
^{e¹}pe f. ^{e²¹} ^{e¹⁶} ^{e¹} ^{e¹}
 to me, or sell it not to me, that is indifferent to me. 2°.

Madam, will you have some apricots? yes, send me six dozen
me ^{e¹⁶} A. ^{e⁶} ^{e¹⁵} ^{e³}
 of them, but if they are not ripe I will send them back to you;
^{e¹} *mur renvoyer*
 you have a very fine aviary, show it to me; do not show it to
^{e³} ^{e⁶} *volière f. montrer* ^{e²²}
 me just now, I will bring my sister, and you will show it to
à présent ammener ^{e¹²} ^{e²²}
 us then; if you go to the exhibition, take me there; I will not
alors ^{e¹}f. ^{e²¹} ^{e¹⁹} ^{e¹⁶}
 take you there, because you have not written your exercise.
^{e²¹} ^{e¹⁹} *parce que* ^{e¹} *thème m.*

3°. Write it and correct it before two o'clock; write to him,
^{e¹} *corriger* ^{e⁷} ^{e¹}
 and tell him to answer me by return of post.
^{e⁷} *de répondre* ^{e¹⁹} *le premier courier.*

SECTION II.

OF POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

Possessive pronouns are either adjective possessive or relative possessive.

OF THE ADJECTIVE POSSESSIVE PRONOUN.

RULE XXIII.—90. 1°. The adjective possessive pronoun *reces*, as a pronoun, with the noun possessing, to which it relates; and, as an adjective, with the noun possessed, before which it is placed, as—

ma maison, } singular as to the possessor, and singular as
my house. } to the thing possessed.

mes maisons, } singular as to the possessor, and plural as to
my houses. } the thing possessed.

notre maison, } plural as to the possessor, and singular as to
our house. } the thing possessed.

nos maisons, } plural as to the possessor, and plural as to
our houses. } the thing possessed.

2°. The article *le, la, les*, is used instead of the possessive adjective pronoun, when the part of the body mentioned as object of the verb forms a portion of the subject of the verb; or when any attribute of that body, such as voice, reason, is a constituent part of the subject of the verb, as—

<i>elle baisse les yeux,</i>		she casts down her eyes.
<i>elle a perdu l'esprit,</i>		she has lost her reason.

Here the article is used instead of the pronoun, because *yeux*, eyes, belonged to her that cast them down, and reason to her that lost it; and as she could not cast down the eyes, or lose the reason of any other person, the articles become sufficient: Otherwise, and to avoid ambiguity, the pronoun should be used, as—

Je vois que mon bras enfle, | I see my arm is swelling.

Mon, my, is used, because I could see the arm of another person swelling.

3°. The preposition *à* is added to the article when used with the verb *avoir mal*, which is expressive of a sensation of pain, whether rendered in English by ache, pain, or sore; whether used with the verb to have or to be, as—

<i>J'ai mal à la tête,</i>		my head aches.
<i>J'ai mal aux yeux,</i>		my eyes are sore.
<i>J'ai mal au côté,</i>		I have a pain in my side.

When *mal* is accompanied by an adjective, it is better to use *un* before it, and *de* before the noun, instead of the third state of the article, as—

J'ai un grand mal de tête, | I have a great headache.

EXERCISE XXIII.

- 1°. Express my entire satisfaction to your brother; he
témoigner entierf. *e²*
 introduced his son and daughter to me. 2°. It is disagreeable
présenter e¹⁵ e³ désagréable
 to see a person sleep with their eyes or their mouths
de e⁴ personne f. e⁸ e⁸ œil m. bouche f.
 opened; at the sight of that monster she turned away her
ouvrir vue f.tre f. détourner
 head and shut her eyes; I think you have lost your memory;
e⁸ fermer e²³ croire perdre mémoire f.
 it is not in my power to lose my memory; look at my hand,
e² pouvoir m. de e²³ e²³ regarder main f.
 how red² it is!¹ do me the favour to accept my arm; he is
comme rouge e¹³ plaisir m. de accepter e⁸
 very unfortunate, he falls on his back and breaks his nose.
e³ e⁵ e⁸ e¹ dos m. se casser nez m.
 3°. When I saw your niece, she had a pain in her side; my
e³ e⁴ ...è... coté m.
 throat is sore, and my ears ache; I have a violent toothache
gorge oreille f. dents m. pl.
 this morning.
matin m.

RULE XXIV.—1°. When the verb expresses an action, or any impression whatever, on any part of the body or its attributes, as objects of the verb, then the personal pronoun of the third state singular, *me, te, lui*, plural *nous, vous, leur*, are placed before the verb and the article before the noun, as—

<i>Je lui casserez le cou,</i>	I will break his neck.
<i>coupez nous les cheveux,</i>	cut our hair.
<i>vous lui avez gâté l'esprit,</i>	you have destroyed his mind.

2°. Should the verb express an action which the subject inflicts on itself, the verb becomes reflexive, and the same pronouns are used as in reflexive verbs, also the article, as—

<i>vous vous couperez le doigt,</i>	you will cut your finger.
<i>il s'est cassé la jambe,</i>	he has broken his leg.

3°. Observe that custom and politeness require that when we address or answer friends, and persons whom we look up to with deference, the possessive pronoun, omitted in English, should be expressed in French, as—

<i>mon frère, où êtes-vous?</i>	brother, where are you?
<i>mon Capitaine, je vous suis,</i>	captain, I follow you.

4°. The same reason requires, that in speaking to our equals : superiors of their relations, Monsieur, Madame, &c., should be added to the possessive pronouns, as—

J'ai vu Monsieur votre frère | I have seen your brother and
et Mademoiselle votre sœur, | your sister.

Note.—For *its* and *their* see Syntax Raisonnée, Rule 91.

EXERCISE XXIV.

1°. He cannot stir, the gout has swelled his legs; you have
e¹⁵ remuer goutte f. enfler jambe f.
 trod on my foot; they cut off his head for having plotted
marcher e¹ e¹¹ e²⁰ trancher e⁸ e⁹ tramer
 against his king and country; these boots pinch my feet; I am
e² e² e² e²¹ serrer e¹¹
 sorry that your charming cousin has hurt her tongue, for her
faché aimablene f. se faire mal langue f. e¹⁸
 conversation is always agreeable and instructive. 2°. I have
..... f. e⁹é..... instructif se
 cut my chin with this bad razor; he has hurt his left
couper menton m. e⁸ e⁹ rasoir m. se meurtrir gauche
 shoulder trying to jump like a harlequin. 3°. Brother, give
épaule f. vouloir sauter comme e² e⁴
 me a guinea; I cannot, but I will ask a cousin St. Ange;
guinée f. e¹⁵ e¹ e⁹ à e⁴
 Colonel, I am at your service; friend, I cannot help you.
.....m. e⁴ e¹⁶ aider
 4. Your father requested me to deliver this to your mother;
e² charger K de remettre ceci e⁶
 my mother is not at home; well then, give it to your brother.
e⁶ à la maison eh bien e⁴ e²

OF THE RELATIVE POSSESSIVE PRONOUN.

RULE XXV.—92. 1°. The relative possessive pronoun always agrees with the noun its antecedent.—See page 39.

2°. When the relative possessive pronoun mine, yours, &c. is used with the verb to be, in the sense of to belong, the same form is used in French as with the verb to belong; the personal pronoun, with the preposition à, being used instead of the relative possessive, as—

ce livre est à moi, à vous, &c. | this book is mine, yours, &c.

4°. OBSERVE.—My own, thy own, &c. standing for mine, thine, &c., are rendered in French simply by the relative possessive *le mien, le tien, &c.*, and when coming before a noun, by the adjective possessive, as—

ma maison, | *my own house.*

EXERCISE XXV.

1°. Your children will be delighted ^{i¹⁸} to form acquaintances ^{*charmé de faire connaissance*} with ours; your carriage is at the door, mine will be here ^{e⁸} ^{*carrosse m.*} ^{e⁶} ^{*ici*} half² an¹ hour; your fortune is made, but ours is very ^{e¹⁰} ^{.....f.} ^{e⁵} ^{e⁹} uncertain; I will try your grammar, for I am tired of mine ^{*in..... essayer*} ^{e⁸} ^{e¹⁸} ^{*las*} besides, I shall be more attentive to yours; prudent people ^{*d'ailleurs*} ^{e¹³} ^{*attentif*} ^{.....gens} keep their friends, fools lose theirs. 2°. To whom does it ^{*conserver*} ^{e⁴} ^{*fou m.*} ^{e²³} belong? it is his; if it were mine I would sell it; ^{e⁷} ^{*appartenir*} ^{e¹⁸} ^{e¹} patent is not yours, having bought it, it is mine; but it is ^{.....te f.} ^{e¹} ^{e¹} not theirs to sell. 3°. Here is a purse, is it yours? yes, it ^{e¹} ^{*voici bourse f.*} ^{e¹⁵} mine; I took your hat, thinking ^{e⁶} ^{e⁸} ^{e²⁸} ^{*que*} ^{e¹³} it was mine. 4°. If I have lost your handkerchief, here is one of my own; I ^{e²³} ^{*mouchoire m.*} ^{e²⁵} ^{plu.} send you my brother's horse; I ^{e³} ^{e²} ^{e¹} ^{*aimer mieux*} would rather have your own send me your own gig by your own servant. ^{e³} ^{*cabriolet m.*} ^{e¹⁹} ^{e⁶}

SECTION III.

OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

GENERAL RULE.—When *ce*, mas. *cette*, fem. this or that and *ces*, plu. these or those, precede a noun, they are termed adjective demonstrative pronouns, and must be repeated before every noun, with which they must agree in gender and number. When this, that, these, those, have a reference to a noun previously mentioned, they are rendered in French *ce, celui, celle, ceux, celles*; which, except *ce*, must agree in gender and number with the noun they represent.

RULE XXVI.—98. 1°. *Ci* and *là*, added to a noun preceded by *ce*, *cette*, *ces*, and *là* placed after the verb *être*, used with *ce*, only serve to demonstrate the object in a more decided manner, and are frequently used to point out some distinction between different objects; *ci*, here, points out the nearest object, and *là*, there, the farthest object, as—

<i>J'aime beaucoup cette maison</i>	I like that house much.
<i>là,</i>	
<i>Jardin-ci n'est pas à vendre,</i>	this garden is not for sale.
<i>et ce là monsieur votre père?</i>	is that your father?

2°. *Ci* and *là* are also added to *celui*, *celle*, *ceux*, *celles*, to point out some distinction or contrast between objects previously mentioned, as—

<i>J'admire ces tableaux, mais je</i>	I admire these pictures, but
<i>préfère celui-ci à celui-là,</i>	I prefer this to that.

3°. When *ci* and *là* are added to *ce*, they serve to point out things not mentioned, but only alluded to, as—

<i>Ceci est beau, mais cela est</i>	this is beautiful, but this is
<i>encore plus beau,</i>	still more beautiful.

4°. Observe that the latter and the former, in reference to nouns before mentioned, are expressed by *celui-là* for the former, and *celui-ci* for the latter, as—

<i>Celui-là fut mon ami,</i>	the former was my friend.
<i>celui-ci fut mon ennemi,</i>	the latter was my enemy.

EXERCISE XXVI.

1°. This horse, this ass, that cow, and these sheep, will be sent

^{e¹} <i>âne</i>	^{e²} <i>vache</i>	^{e³} <i>brebis</i>	^{e⁴}
-------------------------------------	---------------------------------------	--	--------------------------

to market to-morrow; this oak tree is not so high as that ash;

^{e⁵}	^{e⁶}	^{e⁷} <i>chêne m.</i>	^{e⁸} <i>haut</i>	^{e⁹} <i>frêne m.</i>
--------------------------	--------------------------	--	--------------------------------------	--

this book is very amusing, but that book is insipid; these

^{e¹⁰}	^{e¹¹}	^{e¹²}	^{e¹³}	^{e¹⁴}	^{e¹⁵}	^{e¹⁶}	^{e¹⁷}	^{e¹⁸}
---------------------------	---------------------------	---------------------------	---------------------------	---------------------------	---------------------------	---------------------------	---------------------------	---------------------------

children are mine; is that your father? 2°. *Here are* several

^{e¹⁹}	^{e²⁰}	^{e²¹}	^{e²²}	^{e²³}	^{e²⁴}
---------------------------	---------------------------	---------------------------	---------------------------	---------------------------	---------------------------

cloths, choose this or that; this horse is old, and that is young,

^{e²⁵} <i>choisir</i>	^{e²⁶}	^{e²⁷} <i>vieux</i>	^{e²⁸}
--	---------------------------	--	---------------------------

but I prefer that to this. 3°. This will please you better than

^{e²⁹} <i>préférer</i>	^{e³⁰}	^{e³¹} <i>plaire</i>	^{e³²} <i>mieux</i>
---	---------------------------	---	--

that; look how this is spoiled; what shall I do with all this?

^{e³³}	^{e³⁴}	^{e³⁵}	^{e³⁶}	^{e³⁷}	^{e³⁸}	^{e³⁹}	^{e⁴⁰}
---------------------------	---------------------------	---------------------------	---------------------------	---------------------------	---------------------------	---------------------------	---------------------------

Such are the ordinary advantages that talents have over

^{e⁴¹} <i>tel</i>	^{e⁴²}	^{e⁴³} <i>sing.</i>	^{e⁴⁴} <i>ordinaire</i>	^{e⁴⁵}	^{e⁴⁶}	^{e⁴⁷} <i>.....m.</i>	^{e⁴⁸} <i>sur</i>
--------------------------------------	---------------------------	--	--	---------------------------	---------------------------	--	--------------------------------------

It and *so* are frequently only understood in English, but in French they must always be expressed.

The following sentence will display the varied application of *le, la, les*—

Qui verrait un roi de Pologne dans la pompe de sa majesté royale le croirait le prince le plus absolu de l'Europe; c'est cependant celui qui l'est le moins.—Vol.

EXERCISE XXVII.

1°. If you have the *newspaper*, 2°. give it to me.
^{e¹⁸} ^{e⁴}
gazette f. moi
 2°. Your trunks are arrived, I will send them to you; I know
malle f.é e³ connaître
 her very well by sight. 3°. Madam are you the governess of
^{e³} ^{e¹²} ^{e²³} ^{e³}
de gouvernante
 these young ladies? yes, I am; young ladies are you pleased
^{e¹⁹} ^{e¹⁵} ^{e³}
mesdemoiselles satisfait
 with your governess? yes, we are; are your daughters
^{e³} ^{e²⁷} ^{e³}
 married? the eldest is, and the youngest will be in a short
marrier aînée e²⁰ bientôt
 time; I am the cause of his grief; I am so only because I
^{e³} ^{e²³}
^{.....f. chagrin m.}
 blame his conduct. 4°. Zara are you a christian? yes, I am;
blamer conduite f. Zaire e¹ e¹⁵
 are you a widow? I am; are you the king's widow? I am not;
^{e³} ^{e²⁷}
veuve
 can you sell your father's property? I can; Madam, are you
^{e¹⁴} ^{e¹} ^{e²} ^{e¹⁸} ^{e¹⁵} ^{e³}
..... e
 mistress of this house? I am not; Madam, are you the mistress
maitresse e³e e²⁷
 of this house? I am.
^{e³}

SECTION IV.

OF RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

RULE XXVIII.—93. 1°. Who, that, which, are expressed by *qui*, when the subject of the following verb; and whom, that, which, by *que*; when the direct object, they represent either persons or things, and are generally placed immediately after the word they relate to, called the antecedent, whose gender, number, and person they represent, as—

vous, qui parlez, venez ici, | you who speak, come hither.

Qui is used as the subject of the verb *parler*, put in the second person plural, because *qui*, with which it agrees, relates to *vous*, its antecedent of the second person plural.

la fille que j'ai perdue, | the daughter whom I have lost

Que is used as being the direct object of *ai perdue*, and is third person singular feminine, because *fille*, to which it relates, is third person singular feminine.

2°. Should *qui* or *que* be divided from its antecedent by a noun, and any uncertainty arise as to which of the two nouns it may relate, use *lequel*, *laquelle*, &c., instead of *qui*, as—

c'est un effet de la Providence. | it is an effect of Providence
lequel attire l'admiration | which draws forth the admiration
de tout, | of every body.

Here *lequel* is used in preference to *qui*, as a doubt might arise whether it is *effet* or *Providence* it relates to.

When two nouns of the same gender come together, the relative *lequel*, *laquelle*, &c., relate to the first; but if the adjective or participle sufficiently indicates to which of the two nouns the pronoun relates, use *qui* or *que*, which are more elegant than *lequel*, *laquelle*, &c.

3°. Observe, *qui* or *que*, in all its forms, should be expressed in French, though only understood in English, and *qui* or *que* be repeated before every verb; however, the repetition of it depends greatly on taste.

EXERCISE XXVIII.

1°. The man who speaks too much often lies; the stars which you observe are fixed and luminous; the ladies whom you saw yesterday are Mr. Percival's sisters; you blame us, we who took your interest so warmly; you who know our intentions be always our friend. 2°. The king's daughter, who is very affable, has promised to take charge of your petition; I called yesterday on that poor woman's husband, who seems to me dangerously ill; that shoe-maker's daughter who appears

e^1 e^{12} $trop$ e^3 $mentir$ $étoiles$ f.
observer *fix* *eux* *dame*
 e^4 *hier* e^{12} e^{27}
 e^6 e^{14} *vivement* *savoir*
..... f. e^6 e^4 e^2 e^3
 e^3 e^{13} *de se charger* *placet* m.
passer e^{28} *chez* *pauvre* e^7 *mari* e^6
dangereusement e^{14} *cordonier* e^3 e^6

innocent is very cunning. 3°. She is a *young lady* who
 e^3 *malin* e^{19}
 igs well, speaks French fluently, and who is admired by
 e^{13} e^1 *coulamment* e^{27}
 ery body; *that* is a vessel Δ I admire *very much*; the man
 e^1 *voici* e^4 *que admirer beaucoup* e^1
 he loves and respects you will not compare your eyes to stars
 e^4 e^{14} *comparer* e^{23} e^{28}
 or your lips to Δ roses.
lèvre une

RULE XXIX.—94. *Qui*, in the second, that is, when
 governed by the preposition *de*, is rendered by *dont*, of
 them, of which, whose, and is placed immediately after its
 antecedent, as—

l'homme dont je parle, | the man of whom I speak.

Then divided from its antecedent by a noun and a preposition,
de du quel, de la quelle, &c., to avoid ambiguity; it then, as
 well as *dont*, may relate to all kinds of objects, as—

le prince à la protection | the prince to whose pro-
duquel..... | tection.....

Duquel is used instead of *dont*, as it is divided from its
 antecedent by *à la protection*, which might create ambiguity,
 avoided by *duquel*, agreeing with prince.

3°. *De qui* may be used instead of *dont*, but only in
 reference to persons, and must be preferred to it when answer-
 ing to the Latin ablative, from whom, expressing a kind of
 transfer, as—

l'homme de qui j'ai reçu | the man from whom I re-
l'or, | ceived the gold.

EXERCISE XXIX.

1°. *This is* the house of which I spoke to you; the
voici e^2 e^{12} K.
young lady of whom I have complained is very passionate;
 e^{19} e^{17} e^3 *emporté*
 the cotton from which you expected Δ great profits has fallen
coton m. *attendre g. de* e^1 m. *baisser*
) per cent. 2°. Men to whose protection we aspire are
 % e^1 f. e^{15} *aspirer*
 ten despised; Virgil, of whose Δ birth Mantua has Δ reason
 e^3 *mépriser* *art. naissance f.* *art. droit m.*

^A to be proud, was born 70 years before the Christian era;
de se glorifier ^{e¹} H. an m. ^{e⁷} ^{e¹} ère f.
 the wise men to whose researches ^A society is much indebted
^{savant} ^{recherche} f. art.é f. ^{e¹} ^{devoir}
 are often neglected. 3°. The lady of whom I am speaking is
^{e³} ^{négliger} ^{e²⁸} ^{e¹²}
 Mr. Fréville's sister; the banker from whom you expected ^A
 ^{e¹²} ^{banquier} ^{e²⁰} ^{des}
 assistance has stopped ^A payment; I know the lady from
secours plu. *suspendre ses paiement* ^{e²⁸}
 whom you got this information.
recevoirf.

RULE XXX.—94. *Qui*, whom, in the third state, is rendered by *à qui*, *auquel*, *à laquelle*, &c. speaking of persons or things personified; but speaking of animals or of things simply, use *auquel*, *à laquelle*, only, as—

<i>les personnes à qui</i> (or <i>aux- quelles</i>), <i>vous vous ad- dressez</i>	the persons to whom you apply.
<i>les sciences auxquelles</i> (not <i>à qui</i>), <i>vous vous appliquez</i> ,	the sciences to which you apply.

2°. The same difference is observed when governed by any other preposition, persons being equally represented by *qui* or *lequel*, *laquelle*, &c., and things and animals by *lequel*, *laquelle*, &c. only, as—

<i>les amis sur qui</i> , or, <i>lesquels</i> ,	the friends on whom.....
<i>les raisons sur lesquelles</i> (not <i>sur qui</i>),	the reasons on which.....
<i>le cheval sur lequel</i> (not <i>sur qui</i>),	the horse on which.....

3°. Observe, the preposition placed often after the verb, in English, must in French precede the pronoun it governs, and the relative pronoun sometimes understood in English, must be expressed in French, as—

<i>la dame à qui vous parliez, est partie,</i>	the lady you were speaking to is gone.
<i>le cheval dont il parlait, est mort,</i>	the horse he was speaking of is dead.
<i>le monsieur après qui je cour- rais est mon cousin,</i>	the gentleman I was running after is my cousin.

EXERCISE XXX.

It is to you to whom I am speaking; I have not yet read
 a pamphlet to which you have replied; the garden to which
 I devote all my attention has just been flooded; the child to
 whom I'll yield is very unfortunate; we should choose well the
 persons to whom we intend to place all our confidence; I know
 the lady with whom you were walking; the wood into which
 we walked is thirty miles long; the protection on which he
 depended was weak; Cicero, by whom Rome was saved,
 deserved the name of father of his country. 3^d. It was an
 undertaking he was not qualified for; what train are you
 looking for; the studies I apply myself to do not leave me any
 leisure for a company.
brochure f. *répliquer* *encore lire*
donner e¹⁴f. *e⁹* *submergé e¹⁸*
e¹⁴ céder e³ *e⁵* *e¹⁹* *e²⁶* *e²⁰*
e²³ *e¹⁵ vouloir donner e¹⁴* *confiance f. e²⁷*
e²⁶ *se promener bois m. e⁵*
e²⁰ K dix lieues f. f. e¹
compter K e³ Ciceron e¹⁹ *H sauver*
mériter e¹ *e²* *e²* *ce G.*
entreprendre f. capable dont train m.
chercher e¹⁸ s'appliquer e⁸
loisir m. art. compagnie f.

SECTION V.

OF ABSOLUTE PRONOUNS.

These pronouns are principally used at the beginning of interrogative sentences, and having no antecedent, are called absolute.

RULE XXXI.—96. 1°. *Qui*, who, whom, refers only to persons, and may be either subject or object of verbs, as—

qui (i.e. *quelle personne*) *est là?* | who is there?
qui (i.e. *quelle personne*) *appelez-vous?* | whom do you call?

2°. When with the verb *être*, who, relates to the following noun, it may be expressed by *qui*, or *quel*, *quelle*, &c., as—

qui (or *quel*) *est cet enfant?* | who is that child?

3°. But if *who* is followed by an adjective without a noun, or any other verb than the verb to be, it is rendered by *quel*

est celui qui? quelle est celle qui? or by *qui*, only; but not by *quel*, *quelle*, *etc.*, as—

<i>qui</i> (or <i>quel est celui qui</i>), <i>est assez courageux pour monter?</i>	who is bold enough to ascend?
---	-------------------------------

<i>qui</i> (or <i>quelle est celle qui</i>), <i>peut coudre cela?</i>	who is she that can sew that?
--	-------------------------------

4°. *Que*, what, refers to things only: it precedes, and can never be used but as an object, as—

que (i.e. *quelle chose*) *dites vous?* | what do you say?

EXERCISE XXXI.

1°. Who will gain the first prize? whom do you want?
emporter *prix* m. *demandeur*
 whom do you try to please? miser! for whom dost thou
tâcher *e*²⁰ *e*⁹
 heap up so much money? 2°. Who are the men who
amasser *tant de* *e*¹² *e*¹
 assisted me at the hour of danger? who were the first
aider *e*¹⁰ *art.*m. H.
 Romans? who is that tall woman who speaks so loud? 3°. *grand* *e*⁷ *e*¹² *fort*
 Who among you is strong enough to carry this burthen?
de entre *fort* *e*⁴ *pour porter fardeau* m.
 who can say he was happy if he was not virtuous? ladies,
*e*¹⁵ *e*¹⁰ *que* H. *e*¹³ H. *e*⁹ *mesdames*
 who is going to read first? 4°. What can we fear when we
*e*¹ *e*³⁰ *art.* *que* *e*¹⁵ *e*¹⁵ *e*¹⁹ *e*³
 do not fear our conscience? what *did* the regicide do after
*e*¹⁹f. *e*³¹ .é..... *e*¹³ H *après*
 the murder of Louis the Sixteenth? he is at a loss what to do
assassinat m. — *ne plus savoir* *e*¹³
 or what to say? what do you want?
*e*¹⁰ *e*¹⁹ *vouloir*

RULE XXXII.—97. 1°. What or which, used immediately before a noun, or before the verb *être*, in reference to the following noun or pronoun, are rendered by *quel*, *quelle*, *etc.* as—

<i>quelle chambre préférez-vous?</i>	what room do you prefer?
<i>quelle est la chambre que vous préférez?</i>	which is the room that you prefer?

2°. Should the noun that follows *quel*, *quelle*, *etc.* be pre-

d by *de*, and any other word to limit or define it, such as article *les*, the demonstrative pronoun *ces*, or the possessive pronoun *mes*, then *le* is added to *quel*, *dec.* as—

<i>elle de ces deux chambres</i>		which of these two rooms do
<i>éférez-vous?</i>		you prefer?
<i>l de mes chevaux voulez-</i>		which of my horses will you
<i>us acheter?</i>		buy?

s, these, and *mes*, my, sufficiently demonstrate that *bres*, rooms, and *chevaux*, horses, are particular rooms horses, to require the definite absolute pronoun *lequel*, and of the indefinite *quel*.

Lequel is also used, if the noun is absolutely referred to mentioned before, as—

<i>avez vu mes chevaux,</i>		you have seen my horses,
<i>quel préférez-vous?</i>		which do you prefer?

is the same kind of sentence as the preceding, as *de mes* *ux* is understood after *lequel* as if it were *lequel de mes* *ux préférez-vous?* Conclude, then, that *lequel*, *dec.* is instead of *quel*, *dec.* whenever a definite word is used or stood before the noun.

Où is either a relative or absolute pronoun: when it has antecedent it is relative, when it has none it is absolute. *l*, *d'où*, and *par où*, are also adverbs of place.

EXERCISE XXXII.

What fault has she committed ^A to punish her so severely?

^{e°} *commettre pour punir* ^{e¹} *sévèrement*

^A shall we do? which is the richest family in this canton?

arti prendre ^{e¹³} ^{e¹³} *de*m.

1 is the steam-vessel that was nearly wrecked? 2°.

^{e¹} ^{e¹} H. *presque naufragé*

h of these two pictures do you like best? to which of

^{e¹³} ^{e²} *le mieux*

two ladies have you spoken? which of the towns of ^A

^{e²⁸} ^{e¹²} ^{e²} *art.*

ce is the most commercial? which of my sons do you

commerçant ^{e¹⁵}

the best informed? 3°. *Here are* two diamonds, which

er plus instruit ^{e²} ^{e¹}

you take? the most brilliant; of all the English poets,

^{e¹} ^{e¹⁴} *poète*

which do you think the most sublime? *that is* the door
^{e²³} ^{élevé} ^{voilà} ^{e⁸}
 through which the thieves [▲] entered; look not where thou
^{par} ^{voleur m. être entré k.} ^{e²³}
 comest from, but where thou art going to.
^{e¹⁶} ^{e¹} ^{e¹}

SECTION VI. OF INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

Indefinite pronouns are so called, because they refer to persons or things in a vague and indefinite manner. The one most in use is *on*, which is derived from the word *homme*, man: whenever, therefore, any of these indefinite words, *one*, *we*, *people*, *they*, *it*, can by reference be understood to signify the word *man* in an indefinite manner, the particle *on* must be used conformable to the French idiom.

RULE XXXIII.—101. 1°. *On*, one, we, people, &c., is always third person singular, and subject of a verb, although sometimes indicative of the plural, and must be repeated before every verb. It can only relate to persons.

<i>on dit que les turcs ont battu</i>	they say that the Turks have
<i>les Russes,</i>	beat the Russians.
<i>on mange, on rit, on dors,</i>	they eat, laugh, and sleep.

L' is used before *on* when it comes after the words *si*, *et*, *ou*, *où*, or *qui*; and after *que*, followed by a word beginning with *q* or hard *c*, to avoid the clash of consonants or harsh sounds, as—

<i>si l'on aimait la vertu.....</i>	if we loved virtue.....
<i>ce que l'on conçoit bien....</i>	what is well understood....

which is more euphonic than if we said—

<i>si on aimait la vertu.....</i>	<i>ce qu'on conçoit bien.....</i>
-----------------------------------	-----------------------------------

3°. OBSERVE.—If *et*, *si*, *ou*, are followed by *le*, *la*, *les*, *lui*, *on* is used without *l'* to avoid the clash of *l's*, as—

<i>si on lui a dit,</i>	if they told him.
<i>et on le lui dira,</i>	and they will tell it to him.

EXERCISE XXXIII.

1°. One is never happy at the expense of [▲] others; if you
^{e¹³} ^{dépens m. art.} ^{e¹⁹}
 desire to be rich, learn not only how [▲] to gain, know also how
vouloir ^{e¹} ^{e⁸} ^{e⁸} *comment on gagner* ^{e²³} *aussi* ^{e²³}

to save; we place ourselves on a level with an enemy
 e^{20} e^1 e^{18} — *niveau* m. e^8 *ennemi* m.
 then we *take revenge* for an offence; we rise above Δ him
trique se venger f. *s'élever audessus de*
 when we forget it. 2°. If they heard us they would scold us;
 e^2 *oublier* e^{18} *entendre* Δ *gronder*
 Men do not like Δ to see those to whom they are much indebted;
 e^1 e^3 Δ e^4 — e^1 e^{29}
 we learn better what we understand than what we do not
 e^1 e^{26} e^{16} e^4 e^{16}
 understand; if we are sensible Δ who we are, and to whom we
 e^4 e^{18} — *sentir bien*
 rise, we shall say in a letter only what we ought to say.
 e^1 e^{10} e^1 e^{19} e^1 e^{16} e^{19} e^{10}
 . And will say it in the manner *it ought to be said*.
 e^{10} e^{19} *manière* f. *dont on doit le dire*
 . Write your opinions and they will be read; he says that
 e^1 f. — e^{20} e^{10}
 by confound too often Δ education with Δ instruction.
confondre e^8 e^3 art. *é*.....f. *et* art. f.

Indefinite Pronouns are divided into four classes.

FIRST CLASS OF INDEFINITE PRONOUNS, NEVER JOINED TO NOUNS.

Quiconque, whoever, any person whatever.

RULE XXXIV. 1°. This pronoun is always singular, and generally masculine, it refers only to persons, as—

Quiconque est riche est tout, | whoever is rich is everything.

Autrui, others, or other people, neighbours.

2°. *Autrui* refers to persons only, it is always governed by the preposition *de* or *à*, and is never preceded by an article,
 —

le bien d'autrui, | the prosperity of others....
ne faites à autrui,..... | do not do to others.....

Chacun, every one or person, each person or thing.

3°. *Chacun*, in the sense of every one, or every person, is vague and indeterminate in its reference to persons, and is always mas., but when it means each person or thing, it takes gender, and is followed by the preposition *de*, as—

chacun a ses défauts,..... | every one has his fault....
chacune de ses médailles,.. | each of these medals.

Quelqu'un, some one, some body, *quelques uns*, some out of a number.

4°. *Quelqu'un* used absolutely, without reference to a noun, stands for persons only, and is indeclinable; but in the sense of some person or thing out of a number, it takes gender and number, as—

<i>quelqu'un me l'a dit,</i>	some one told it me.
<i>quelques unes de ses pierres</i> <i>sont fausses,</i>	some (a quantity) of these stones are false.

Personne, nobody, anybody, any one; *rien*, nothing, anything.

5°. *Personne* and *rien*, with *ne* before the verb, mean nobody, nothing; and with verbs expressing doubt or interrogation without negation, they mean anybody, anything, as—

<i>Je n'ai vu personne,</i>	I have seen nobody.
<i>Je n'ai rien,</i>	I have nothing.
<i>Je doute que personne soit....</i>	I doubt if any one would be...
<i>avez-vous jamais rien vu de</i> <i>pareille?</i>	have you ever seen anything like it?

EXERCISE XXXIV.

1°. Whoever does not observe this law shall be punished;
 he has promised ^{e²⁸} I. ^{e⁹} to protect him against whoever should ^{e²³}
 attack him. ^{e¹⁸} ^{e¹³} ^{e²} 2°. Expect from others what you do unto others;
^{e²⁹} ^{e¹⁶} ^{e¹³} *attaquer* he judges of others by himself. 3°. It was so warm at that
^{e¹⁰} ^{e¹⁹} ^{e¹} *juger* *soi-même* *faire* *chaud* ball that every one retired before midnight; I saw your sisters
bal m. ^{e⁷} ^{e⁴} ^{e¹³} *se retirer* *minuit* m. at the ball, each of them had a different dress. 4°. Do you
^{e³⁴} ^{e²⁷} ^{e¹⁴} ^{e¹⁵} know any of these gentlemen? are your pupils returned?
there are some; somebody told me ^{e⁷} K. ^{e³} ^{e¹⁵} the Queen was ill. 5°. *écolière* f. *messieurs*
 Has any one ever related more naturally than La Fontaine! *jamais raconter naïvement*
 to tell the truth can never abase any one; nothing is so easy
^{e⁷} ^{e¹²} ^{e¹⁶} ^{e⁹⁸} *avilir* ^{e¹³} ^{e¹} as *to be mistaken*; the worst of ^{e¹³} situations is that of a man
de se tromper art. *état* m. who has nothing ^{e¹²} ^{e¹³} ^{e¹³} to do.

SECOND CLASS OF INDEFINITE PRONOUNS ALWAYS JOINED TO NOUNS.

Chaque, each.

RULE XXXV. 1°. *Chaque* is always singular, and precedes a noun, as—

Chaque pays a ses préjugés, | each country has its prejudices.

Quelque, or *du*, *de la*, *des*, some, any, a few.

2°. *Quelque* agrees in number with the noun to which it is joined; in the singular it means an indeterminate person or thing, in the plural an indefinite number, as—

<i>est arrivé quelque accident,</i>	some accident has happened.
<i>quelques personnes sont de cet avis,</i>	some persons are of that opinion.

but when the noun is taken in a partitive sense, use *du*, *de des*, as *du pain*, bread; *des pommes*, apples.

Quelconque, whatever.

3°. *Quelconque* means any or no person or thing whatever; it is always placed after the noun, and when used without a preposition is sometimes in the plural, as—

<i>il n'y a aucune autorité quelconque,</i>	there is no authority whatever.
<i>prenez un ami quelconque,</i>	bring any friend whatever.
<i>et deux domestiques quelconques,</i>	two servants whatever.

EXERCISE XXXV.

1°. They have numbered *each* house; *each* science has its

^{e20} *numéroter* ^{e2}f.
principle; *each* thing has its value. 2°. *There are some*

faculties in building the new bridge; we have received *some*
^{e15} *prix* m. ^{e4}
.....té f. ^{e3} ^{e2} *nouveau pont* m. ^{e10}

books from London; *there is* merit without elevation, but
^{e4} ..é...m. ^{e8} *élé*.....f. ^{e1}

there is no elevation without *some* merit; say *something*
^{e4} *de* ^{e8} ..é...m. ^{e10} ^{e15}

it is better than silence, or say *nothing*; I saw *some* ladies
^{e108} R.m. *se taire* ^{e4} ^{e28}

the green gloves and *pink* shoes; that man possesses
vert ^{e2} *couleur de rose soulier* m. ^{e1} *avoir*

noble feelings and religious principles; with bread and
honnête sentiment m.eux ^{e36} ^{e8} ^{e21}

water we may sustain ourselves. 3°. He is sure ^{e^s} ^{e¹⁵} ^{e¹⁶} ^{se} ^{soutenir} ^{e¹³} ^{de} ^{réussir} to succeed in any way whatever; there is no man ^{e¹⁹} ^{un} ^{manière} ^{f.} ^{e⁴} ^{de} ^{e¹} ^{whatever} ^{powerful} ^{qui} ^{soit} ^{e²} enough¹ to intimidate me; he will submit to no authority ^{e⁴} ^{pour} ^{intimider} ^{e¹⁶} ^{se} ^{soumettre} ^{aucun} ^{autorité} whatever.

THIRD CLASS OF INDEFINITE PRONOUNS, SOMETIMES JOINED TO NOUNS, SOMETIMES NOT.

Nul, or *aucun*, no one; *pas un*, not one.

RULE XXXVI.—104. 1°. *Nul*, *aucun*, and *pas un*, require *ne* before the verb that accompanies them; they make *faux* *nulle*, *aucune*, *pas une*.

<i>il n'a nulle connaissance,</i>	he has no knowledge.
<i>aucun de vous ne l'a vu,</i>	none of you saw him.
<i>mesdames, pas une de vous n'ira,</i>	ladies, not one of you shall go.

In interrogative sentences, and expressive of doubt, *any* is rendered by *aucun* and *ne* is omitted, as—

aucun de vous l'a-t-il vu? | has any of you seen him?

Plusieurs, several, many.

2°. *Plusieurs* is always plural, and of both genders; when used as a noun it relates to persons only, when used as an adjective it relates to persons or things.

<i>plusieurs le croient,</i>	many believe it.
<i>J'ai perdu plusieurs livres,</i>	I have lost several books.

Tel, *telle*, such; *un tel*, *une telle*, such a one.

3°. *Tel*, when used in the sense of such, or such a one, or without a noun, is an indefinite pronoun, as—

<i>tel part qui ne reviendra jamais,</i>	such go away who will never return.
<i>J'ai vu un tel, or, une telle,</i>	I have seen such a one.

In other cases it is an adjective, and the *a* or *an* that comes after it in English must precede it in French, or be omitted, as—

<i>une telle conduite est inexplicable,</i>	such a conduct is unaccountable.
<i>il n'y pas de tel animal,</i>	there is no such an animal.

EXERCISE XXXVI.

1°. *No man is happy; there is not a vice but what is odious;*
^{e¹} ^{e¹⁵} ^{e⁴} ...m. ^{e¹⁹} *qui ne soit*
is a great misfortune ^{e¹} ^{e⁴} ^{e¹⁵} ^{e⁴} *not to be able to suffer any;*
^{e¹} ^{e⁴} ^{e¹⁵} ^{e⁴} *que de ne en*
re despise all those who have not one virtue; what prevents
^{e¹⁵} ^{e¹⁴} ^{e¹²} ^{e¹} *ce qui empêcher*
is often from abandoning ourselves to one vice, is that we
^{e²} ^{e²} *s'abandonner* ^{e¹} ^{e¹} *seul ...m. ce*
have several; he had bought a quantity of horses, but several
^{e²⁸} ^{e¹} ^{e¹} ^{e²⁸} *—té f.*
died on the road. 3°. *Why has such an author written such*
^{e²⁸} ^{e¹} ^{e¹} ^{e²⁸} *— e pour quoi écrivain e¹*
book? his memory is such that he never forgets any thing;
^{e²} ^{e²⁸} ^{e²⁸} ^{e²⁸} ^{e¹} *rien*
nothing can make him such; call on such a one, and tell him
^{e¹²} ^{e¹⁵} ^{e²⁸} ^{e²⁸} ^{e¹} *rendre — e¹*
I expect him at 6 o'clock; such as she is, she does not fail
^{e²⁸} ^{e¹⁵} ^{e¹⁵} *que e²⁸ tâcher e¹⁹ laisser*
to please; endeavour to be such as you ought to be;
^{e¹} ^{e²⁸} ^{e¹⁹} *que de e²⁸ tâcher e¹⁹*
there is not in this country any such a custom.
^{e⁴} ^{e¹⁵} ^{e¹⁵} ^{e¹⁵} *e¹⁵ de coutume f.*

Autre, other; *un autre*, another.

RULE XXXVII.—105. 1°. These words are either pronouns or adjectives; indefinite pronouns when they relate to an indeterminate person, and are said of persons only, as—

<i>Aut autre vous punirait,</i>	any other would punish you.
<i>Un autre vous punirait,</i>	another would punish you.

They are adjectives when joined to nouns or relating to one,

<i>Un autre vaisseau est arrivé,</i>	another ship is arrived.
<i>J'en ai vu un autre (vaisseau),</i>	I saw another, or a different ship.

L'un l'autre, les uns les autres, one another, each other.

2°. The singular relates to two only, the plural to several; placing any preposition that may occur before *autre*, it takes gender, as—

<i>Ils se frappent l'un l'autre,</i>	they strike one another.
<i>Les se haïssent les uns les autres,</i>	they hate one another.
<i>Ils se moquent l'un de l'autre,</i>	they laugh at each other.

L'un et l'autre, both; *les uns les autres*, all.

3°. *L'un et l'autre*, in the singular is rendered by both, and *les uns et les autres*, by all, or all of them; if governed by a preposition, it must be placed before *l'un*, and repeated before *l'autre*, as—

<i>l'un et l'autre sont venus,</i>	they are both come.
<i>les uns et les autres sont arrivés,</i>	they are all arrived.
<i>elle a reçu des cadeaux de l'une</i>	she has received presents
<i>(dame) et de l'autre,</i>	from both.

Ni l'un, ni l'autre, neither; *l'un ou l'autre*, either.

4°. *Ni l'un, ni l'autre*, requires *ne* before the verb, as—

<i>ni l'un ni l'autre ne savent le</i>	neither the one nor the other
<i>français,</i>	know French.
<i>l'un ou l'autre m'écrit,</i>	either will write to me.

EXERCISE XXXVII.

1°. If we had not ^{e¹⁸} so much pride we would not complain ^{e²¹} *orgueil* f. ^{e¹¹}
 so much of that of others; another ^{e²¹} will tell you better than
^{e²¹} I; what other thing do you wish from me. 2°. They spoil
^{e¹⁵} one another; is it edifying ^{e¹⁵} to see ^{e¹⁵} christians warring against
^{e¹⁵} *édifiant de* ^{e⁴} *des* ^{e¹} *déchaîné* ^{e²}
 one another. 3°. These two officers are very valiant, both
^{e¹⁵} *.....ier* ^{e³} *vaoureux*
 have contributed to the victory; all have united against the
^{e¹⁵} *contribuer* ^{e¹⁵} *victoire* f. ^{e²} *se réunir* ^{e²}
 common enemy; there are few ^{e²³} persons who make equal
^{e²³} *commun* ^{e⁴} *guère de* ^{e²³} *également*
 use of both hands; I have read your two lectures, both appeared
^{e²³} *se servir* ^{e³⁰} *discours* m. ^{e¹}
 to me replete with excellent precepts; do you wish me to
^{e¹⁰} *rempli* ^{e¹⁰} *.....é...m.* ^{e¹⁰} *vouloir*
 write to your steward or your banker? you had better write
^{e¹} *intendant* ^{e²⁰} ^{e²⁶} ^{e¹}
 to both. 4°. Neither is incorrect in the style; either will do
^{e¹} *ne pêche contre* ^{e¹⁰} ^{e³}
 it but neither will say when.
^{e¹} ^{e¹⁶} ^{e¹⁰} ^{e³}

FOURTH CLASS OF INDEFINITE PRONOUNS REQUIRING *QUE*.

que, whoever (whatever person); *quoi que*, whatever (thing).

RULE XXXVIII.—106. 1°. These two pronouns require verb in the subjunctive, as—

<i>qui que vous soyez.....</i>		whoever you may be.....
<i>quoi que nous mangions,</i>		whatever we may eat.

Quoi que must be written in two words to distinguish it from the conjunction *quoique*, although.

Quoi que ce soit, whoever it be; when used with negation, means nobody whatever, or not any body, as—

<i>Je n'ai vu qui que ce soit,</i>		I saw nobody whatever.
------------------------------------	--	------------------------

Quoi que ce soit, whatever (it be that), when used with a negation, means nothing whatever, as—

<i>ne me plains de quoi que ce soit,</i>		I complain of nothing whatever.
--	--	---------------------------------

Observe that in negative sentences *personne* is frequently used instead of *qui que ce soit*, and *rien* instead of *quoi que soit*.

Quelque, whatever, whatsoever, however.

2°. In this sense *quelque* is an adverb and indeclinable; it is joined to adjectives separated from their nouns, as—

<i>quelque riches que soient les misères ils ne donnent à personne,</i>		however rich misers may be they give to no one (whatever).
---	--	--

When joined to a noun, with or without an adjective, in the sense of whatever be the, it takes the sign of the plural, as—

<i>quelques efforts que vous fassiez,</i>		whatever endeavours you may make.
---	--	-----------------------------------

Tel, telle, tels, telles, such as, or like.

3°. *Tel*, used to indicate a comparison between persons or things, requires *que* after it, and is made to agree with the noun compared, as—

<i>C'est un garçon tel que sa sœur,</i>		he is a youth such as his sister.
<i>C'est une fille telle que son frère,</i>		she is a girl such as her brother.

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

1°. *Whoever* it is, say that I am too busy ^{e¹⁷} ^{e¹⁰} ^{e⁸} *occupé pour paraître*
whatever you may say to him he will not do it; I went to the
^{e¹⁵} ^{e¹⁰} ^{e¹³} ^{e¹}
 Tuilleries and ^{ne} ^{e⁴} [—] saw nobody *whatever*; you have been ^à
 fishing and [—] [—] caught *nothing whatever*; whoever you may
pêche f. vous ne attraper ^{κ.}
 be, I do not fear you; he ^{is} ^{ne} [—] ^{e¹⁴} ^{e²⁷} is not respected by anybody
^{e¹⁹} ^{ne} [—] ^{e¹⁴} ^{e²⁷}
whatever [—] happens, write to me *immediately*; *whoever*
^{qui arriver} ^{e¹} ^{sur le champ}
 father may be, he is an honour to him. 2°. *However* powerful
^{e²} ³⁴ [—] ^{honneur} ^{m.}
[—] they may be, I do not fear them; *whatever* knowledge
^{que} ^{e¹⁹} ^{lumière}
whatever perception [—] one may have, nothing is more ^e
^{trait d'esprit} ^{m.} ^{que l'on} ^{e¹²} ^{si}
 than ^{to be mistaken.} 3°. She is *like* her father; I am
^{de} ^{e²⁴} ^{e²}
such as you think; young men seldom *come out* of a cap
^{e²⁵} ^{e²⁰} ^{gens} ^{e¹⁸} ^{sortir} ...
such as they [—] entered ^{it} ^{1.}
^{être entré} ^y

OF THE WORD *TOUT*.

RULE XXXIX.—107-108. *Tout* is either a pronoun, a noun,
 . an adjective, or an adverb.

Tout, all, every (thing), a pronoun.

1°. *Tout*, used indefinitely, is a pronoun, and indeclinable
 as—

<i>tout est perdu,</i>		all is lost.
<i>il est prêt à tout,</i>		he is ready for everything.

Le tout, the whole; a noun.

2°. *Le tout*, the whole; is a noun and indeclinable, as—

<i>le tout vous amusera,</i>		the whole will please you.
<i>prenez le tout,</i>		take the whole.

Tout, all, the whole, the whole of, an adjective.

3°. *Tout*, *toute*, *&c.*, all; the whole, before a noun
 adjectives, and are rendered by *tout* followed by an article.

possessive or demonstrative pronoun, which, with *tout*, must be in gender and number with the noun they precede, as—

<i>les dames et tous les</i>	·	all the ladies and gentlemen
<i>seigneurs sont arrivés,</i>		are arrived.
<i>mes amis sont arrivés,</i>		all my friends are arrived.

et, wholly, entirely, quite, however, although, an adverb.

The adverb *tout* is indeclinable before adjectives and adverbs, except when they are feminine and begin with a vowel, as—

<i>elle est tout étonnée,</i>		she was quite astonished.
<i>elles ont toutes changées,</i>		they were entirely changed.
<i>j'aime cette demoiselle toute</i> <i>ingratitude qu'elle soit,</i>		I love that young lady al- though she is ungrateful.

EXERCISE XXXIX.

A man should have seen every thing, and read every

— *il falloir* ^{e⁴} ^{e³⁰}

to decide on every thing; to hope every thing ^{e¹} ^{e³⁰} is

pour décider ^{e¹} ^{e³⁰} ^{e³⁰} ^{e³⁰}

to enjoy every thing. 2°. The whole is not worth a

jouer de ^{e¹²} —

ed pounds; if you do not give her the whole she will not

é⁵ é¹ é⁴

satisfied; the whole was burned; how much do you ask for

é¹⁹ H é⁶ é⁶ é⁹

hole? 3°. Great men are so neither at all times nor

é¹ é¹ ne le ni art. moment m. é⁸

things; in order not to lie we must tell the whole

é¹⁶ pour é²⁸ é²⁰ . é⁷ tout art.

4°. Love is all eyes, and is generally blind;

é¹⁹ é²⁸ e n'en a pas un ordinairement de bon

ladies seem entirely resigned; however good such

é²⁸ é¹⁸ é⁸ consolé é² que de é²⁶

may appear to you, I consider them quite hurtful;

é f. é⁸ juger nuisible

she her quite astounded; those children are all quite (wet).

é⁴ interdit é¹⁸ mouillé

CHAPTER FIFTH.

OF VERBS.

verb is the most essential word; it is called in French *le verbe* *par excellence*; by it we are enabled to declare our exist-

ence, to relate an action, to express our feelings, to announce the state of a being, either in a past, present, or future time, by means of moods and tenses.

RULE XL.—109. 1°. A verb must agree in person and number with its subject, whether it be a noun or pronoun, and if it be the relative pronoun *qui*, reference must be made to its antecedent for its number and person, as—

<i>vous parlez trop,</i>	you speak too much.
<i>les enfants qui méprisent</i>	children who despise their
<i>leurs parents sont</i>	parents are.....

2°. Subjects of the third person singular united by *ou*, or, require the verb to be in the singular; and if united by the conjunction *et* or *ni*, it must be in the plural; and should these subjects be pronouns, or a noun or pronoun, of different persons, the resuming pronouns *nous* or *vous*, evidently understood in English, is placed before the verb, which must agree with the one used, as—

<i>le soleil ou la lune les éclaire,</i>	the sun or the moon lights them.
<i>le vice et la vertu ont des suites contraires,</i>	vice and virtue have opposite consequences.
<i>ni mon oncle ni ma tante ne viendront,</i>	neither my uncle nor my aunt will come.
<i>votre mère et moi nous irons à la campagne,</i>	your mother and I (we) will go to the country.

OBSERVE.—Though custom sanctions the use of the plural after *ou*, when the verb is accompanied by the resuming pronoun *nous* or *vous*, it were better when practicable to give another turn.

<i>lui ou moi nous vous paierons,</i>	he or I (we) will pay you, or
<i>or l'un de nous deux vous paiera,</i>	one of us (two) will pay you.

3°. The verb is also put in the singular when such expressions as *chacun*, *nul*, *personne*, *rien*, *tout*, follow several nouns, which they unite under their collective sense, or if the adversative conjunction *mais* precede the last noun.

<i>le tems, les biens, la vie, tout est à la patrie,</i>	time, property, life, all belongs to our country.
<i>non seulement mon bois mais mon château fut brûlés,</i>	not only my forest but my country-seat was burned.

EXERCISE XL.

1°. Religion observes private crimes, laws observe public
f. *veiller privé*m. e^9 e^{40}
 as; it was not I who made that pie; no, but it was you who
 e^{17} F. e^5 e^7 e^{21} e^1 e^{13} F.
 med it; I have two brigs which *are just* arrived from the
 ' K. *brigantin* m. e^9 e^{18}
 ist² Indies.¹ 2°. A king or a tyrant is not always the
 riental *Indes* e^2 e^9
 me thing; patience and success always travel together;
 e^{20} e^{16} f. e^9 e^9 *marcher ensemble*
 ndour and frankness *are the indication of* a pure soul;
ndeur f. *franchise* f. *indiquer* *âme* f.
 ither gold nor dignities Δ make us happy; your aunt and I
 e^{20} e^1 *ni grandeur* f. *ne* e^{36} e^{13} *tante*
 ame your conduct; you and he have acted *without thought*;
 e^{27} e^{27} e^2 *inconsidérément*
 u or he will be obliged Δ to pay him. 2°. Wealth, dignities,
 e^1 *de* e^{19} *richesse* f. *té* f.
 mours, everything disappears at the hour of death; the
 e^{26} *tout* *disparattre* e^{10} e^8 —
 eat, the rich, the low, the poor, none Δ can escape Δ
 e^1 — e^{13} — *petit* — e^{28} *nul ne* e^{16} *se soustraire à*
 death; not only all his riches, and all his honours, but all
 e^6 e^8 e^8 e^{14} e^1 e^{14} e^{28} e^1 e^{14}
 s virtue disappeared; king, minister, magistrate, people,
 e^1 *s'évanouir* e^2 e^{15} *t* *peuple* m.
 very one thinks he has a right to make laws.
chacun se consider en droit e^5 e^9

PLACE OF THE SUBJECT OF THE VERB.

RULE XLI.—111. 1°. The subject of a verb, noun, or
 pronoun, is generally placed before the verb, as—

<i>vous aimez le bon vin,</i>		you love good wine.
<i>le chat aime la crème,</i>		the cat loves cream.

2°. In interrogative sentences the pronoun is placed after
 the verb, and in compound tenses after the auxiliary, as—

<i> aimez-vous le gibier?</i>		do you like game?
<i> avez-vous vu la reine?</i>		have you seen the queen?

3°. As an interrogation cannot be formed in French by
 inposing the noun, the noun in such cases remains before

the verb, and a pronoun of the third person corresponding with the noun is placed after the verb to form the interrogation, as if there were no noun, as—

<i>cette dame danse-t-elle bien?</i>		does that lady dance well?
<i>ce merle chante-t-il bien?</i>		does that blackbird sing well?

as if it were, this lady does she dance well? this blackbird does it dance well? But should the noun be preceded by *quel*, *quelle*, &c., no pronoun is required after the verb, as—

<i>quel enfant pourrait trahir son père?</i>		what child could betray his father?
--	--	-------------------------------------

4°. When an interrogation is formed, and by the sentence being preceded by an absolute pronoun, such as *que*, *de qui*, *à qui*, *de quoi*, *à quoi*, or by an adverb of interrogation, as *où comment*, &c., the suppression of the pronoun is allowed, and the noun is placed after the verb in simple tenses, and after the participle in compound tenses, as—

<i>à quoi s'occupe ce singe?</i>		what is that monkey busy at?
<i>comment se port le capitaine?</i>		how is the captain?
<i>où sont allés les pêcheurs?</i>		where are the fishermen gone?

If the interrogation is formed with a personal pronoun, it follows the general rule.

EXERCISE XLI.

1°. A philosopher defines celebrity³ very¹ well², when he
^{e⁶} *définir* ^{e³} *celebrité* f. ^{e¹²} ^{e³}
 says, it is the advantage of being known by those who do not
^{e¹⁰} *que* ^{e¹⁷} ^{e⁶} ^{e²⁷} ^{e¹⁹}
 know you. 2°. Do you think to deceive us by false promises;
^{e²⁷} ^{e²⁵} *abuser* ^{e¹⁹} *de vain promesse* f.
 have they been to the opera to hear Madame Pasta? is he
 ...é...m. *voir*
 come with us? 3°. Is peace made with Greece? are the steam-
^{e¹⁶} ^{e³} *paix* ^{e⁵} ^{e⁷}
 boats gone? are the towns burned? do the bankers give
^{e⁷} *parti* ^{e²} ^{e⁶} ^{e²⁹} ^{e⁴}
 two and a half per cent? what king could maintain his
^{e²⁹} *quel* ^{e²} ^{e¹⁵} *maintenir*
 authority without the consent of his people? what news were
^{e³⁵} f. ^{e³} *aveu* m. ^{e⁴⁰} ^{e³¹} ^{e¹⁶}
 the ladies telling you when I saw you this morning? 4°. Of
^{e²⁸} ^{e⁷} ^{e³} ^{e⁴} K ^{e²³} ^{e¹⁸}

nat *avail* is ^A merit without protection? what does your
 moi. *sort* art. ..é... e^s f. est —
 ster-in-law say of this dreadful event? how is the
 belle-sœur e^{lo} *fâcheux événement* m. *comment se porte*
 duke? how are you?
 Duc est

PLACE OF THE OBJECT OF THE VERB.

RULE XLII.—112. For the difference of subject, object direct, and object indirect, see page 176.

1°. When the direct object, or the indirect object, with the preposition understood, is a pronoun, it is placed before the verb.

direct.....	<i>il vous trompe,</i>		he deceives you.
indirect ...	<i>je lui parle souvent,</i>		I often speak to him.

2°. A noun as object is placed after the verb, except when preceded by the interrogative pronoun *quel, quelle, &c.*, then, whether the noun be object or subject, it is placed before the verb.

obj...	<i>il donne de bonnes rai- sons,</i>		he gives good reasons.
obj...	<i>quelles raison donne-t-il?</i>		what reasons does he give?
subj...	<i>quelle raison triomphe du préjugé?</i>		what reason overcomes preju- dice?

3°. The indirect objects of active or neuter verbs are governed by *de* or *à*, or some other preposition; those of passive verbs by *de* or *par*. *Par* should not be used before *Dieu*, to avoid the semblance of an oath.

<i>Céline donne tout à sa mère,</i>		Celina gives all to her mother.
<i>Il jouit de son bien,</i>		he enjoys his wealth.
<i>et enfant est aimé de son maître,</i>		this child is loved by his master.
<i>et enfant est battu par son maître,</i>		this child is beat by his mas- ter.

OBSERVE.—A noun or pronoun governed by any preposition expressed, must never be placed before the verb of which it is the indirect object, unless it is a noun preceded by an interrogative pronoun.

à quelle église allez-vous? | to what church are you going?

EXERCISE XLII.

1°. I tell you *beforehand* that you will lose her friendship
^{e⁷} ^{d'avance} ^{e²³} ^{amitié m.}
 if you refuse her the favour [^] she asks of you; the crown of
^{refuser} ^{grace f.} ^{que} ^{e⁹} — ^{e³}
 kings neither protects them [^] from the sun, nor from the rain,
^{e²} ^{ne} ^{e³⁴} ⁿⁱ ^{e¹} ^{e⁸} ^{pluie f.}
 nor from the thunderbolt. 2°. God looks at [^] pure hands, not
^{e⁸} ^{foudre f.} ^{e²} ^{e²³} ^{art.} ^{e²³}
 at [^] full hands; what essay have you written? 3°. He has
^{art.} ^{plein} ^{e²³} ^{i m.} ^{e¹}
 ordered the attack to his troops; a sweet and docile child is
^{commander} ^{attaque f.} ^{troupe f.} ^{doux} ^{e¹⁸}
 loved by his parents; I have been deceived by the man whom
^{e⁴} ^{e²⁷} ^{e²⁰} ^{e¹⁹} ^{e¹}
 I considered [^] my best friend; the city of Troy was
^{regarder} ^{g.} ^{comme} ^{e⁹} ^{e⁴} ^{e¹³} ^{H.}
 destroyed by the Greeks; to what science do you apply your-
^{e⁶} ^{e³²} ^{f.} ^{e³⁰}
 self? of what man do you complain? our garden has been
^{e³¹} ^{e¹} ^{e¹⁷} ^{e⁸}
 spoiled by the rain.
^{e²⁶} ^{e¹⁹} ^{e⁴²}

OF PERSONS AND NUMBER.

RULE XLIII.—1°. In French as in English there are three persons singular and plural, and *vous*, you, is by courtesy used for *tu*, thou; and though the verb agrees with *vous*, you, the adjective or participle does not take the sign of the plural, unless *vous* absolutely refers to the plural, as—

mademoiselle, vous êtes malade (not *malades*), | miss, you are ill.

2°. In French, *tu*, thou, is a strong mark of affection and familiarity, hence it is constantly used in families, between friends, brothers and sisters, man and wife, and by parents to their children; it is also used as a great mark of contempt, as—

ma sœur vas tu venir?
ne t'inquiètes pas mon ami,
tu es un gredin,

sister, are you coming?
 friend, don't trouble yourself.
 you are a mean rascal.

3°. The third person is elegantly used instead of the second,

when addressing strangers, or persons for whom we have a great regard or respect, without familiarity, as—

<i>madame se propose-t-elle</i>	madam, do you propose to
<i>d'aller à Londres?</i>	go to London?
<i>monsieur désire-t-il du vin?</i>	do you wish for wine, sir?

In writing a letter of request, or a petition, the third person is also used for the second, as a mark of respect, as—

<i>monsieur me rendra un grand service,</i>	you will do me a great favour, sir.
---	-------------------------------------

EXERCISE XLIII.

- 1°. Madam, are you pleased at the arrival of your son?
^e *content de*^e f. ^e¹⁶
- 2°. I had acquired a right over thy affection, thou wert
acquérir des droit m. ^e²⁰ *cœur* m. ^e¹
 necessary to me, and I was prepared [^] to go³ and join³ thee¹;
^e¹⁹ *prêt à* ^e¹ — *joindre*
 when I left [^] Smyrna I commissioned my friend Ibben to send
^e *partir de* *charger* ^e⁴ *faire tenir*
 thee a box containing some presents for thee; thou wilt receive
botte f. où il y avait ...^e¹ m. ^e¹⁰
 this letter by the same conveyance; three vessels have arrived
^e¹⁹ ^e¹⁹ ^e²⁰ *voie* f. *navire* m. *être* ^e¹⁸
 here without bringing any [^] intelligence from thee; art thou
^e²⁰ ^e² ^e⁴ *de tes nouvelle* f. pl.
 ill? or dost thou take pleasure in making me uneasy? 3°.
^e¹⁶ ^e² *se plaire* ^e² *inquiéter*
 Has his lordship had the goodness [^] to think of what he
monseigneur *bonté* f. *de* ^e¹⁷ *à* ^e¹⁶
 promised me? [^] Would³ you, madam,¹ only condescend to
^e¹⁸ *si* ^e¹⁷ ^e¹ —^e⁸ *daigner*
 afford me an interview, you would be convinced of the truth
donner — *audience* f. *persuadé* ^e¹²
 of the fact; ah! you grumble, you little rascal.
fait m. *raisonner* — ^e⁹ *polisson*

OF MOODS AND TENSES.

Moods are the various manners of employing a verb.

There are five moods, the infinitive, the indicative, the conditional, the imperative, and the subjunctive.

The indicative has eight tenses, four simple and four com-

pound, which express with affirmation the past, present, and future.

RULE XLIV. 113—118. The present tense is used to impart what is, or what is occurring at the time we are speaking, or what is habitually performed and still continued, as—

<i>Je chante parce que cela me</i>	I sing because it pleases me.
<i>plait,</i>	
<i>Je chante tous les jours,</i>	I sing every day.

2°. The imperfect serves to express something that was passing during the time something else was actually done, or something habitually performed in a past time, not fixed or indefinitely specified, as—

<i>Je chantais quand vous en-</i>	I was singing when you en-
<i>trâtes,</i>	<i>tered.</i>
<i>quand j'étais à Paris nous</i>	when I was in Paris we went
<i>allions souvent à la comédie,</i>	<i>often to the play.</i>

3°. The preterite serves to express something done at a time completely passed, of which no part remains unexpired, hence, it cannot be used speaking of any thing done during the present day, week, month, or year, as—

<i>Je le vis lundi dernier,</i>	I saw him last Monday.
---------------------------------	------------------------

4°. The future tense marks that a thing shall or will be done at a time not yet arrived, as—

<i>il vous paiera demain,</i>	he will pay you to-morrow.
-------------------------------	----------------------------

EXERCISE XLIV.

1°. The weather is fine, I hasten and ^A depart; God is
^{e⁸} ^{e⁸} *se dépêcher* ^{e²} *je partir* ^{e²}
 eternal, his power is boundless, and his clemency is great.
^{e¹} ^{e¹} *sans borne* ^{e¹} *clémence f.* ^{e¹}
éternel

2°. When Henry the Fourth was on the throne, France was
^{e³} ^{e³} *quatre* ^{e¹} *trône m.* ^{e¹}
^{e¹⁵} ^{e¹⁷} ^{e³⁰} ^{e²⁸} ^{e⁴} ^{e⁵} ^{e²⁶}
 happy; as I was walking yesterday, I saw a charming lady,

whose ^A features, ^A complexion, and ^A dress, combined all
^{e¹} ^{e¹} *art. trait m. art. teint m. art. habit m. réunir* ^{e⁴}
 the graces. 3°. We went yesterday to the theatre; ^A you

^{e¹} ^{e²⁸} ^{e¹} ^{e²}
 ...à...f. ^{e¹} ^{e²⁸} ^{e¹} ^{e²}
 remember the place where you were born; 1°. 2°. 3°. are
souvient de lieu m. pl. où ^{e²}

en that generous man who [^] saved my life at the moment
généreux mortel me e²⁰ la e⁹m.
 when I was going to perish? 4°. I will send you the interest
où e¹ périr e³ e¹⁴ pl.
 of your money as soon as I shall have received it; the man
fonds m. pl. aussitôt e¹⁰ e¹
 truly wise will always expose his life for the public³ good¹,
vraiment e¹³ exposer e⁹ e⁵
 and [^] to defend his country.
pour défendre e¹⁵

RULE XLV. 113—118. The four compound tenses of the indicative are the four simple tenses of the verb *avoir*, or *être*, added to the participle past of another verb.

1°. The compound of the present serves to express something done during a period of time not yet expired, or during a period not pointed out or not yet expired, as—

<i>nous l'avons vu aujourd'hui,</i>		we saw him to-day.
<i>J'ai été en France,</i>		I have been in France.

2°. The compound of the imperfect is used to express an act past, previous to another act done in a period past or still existing, as—

<i>J'avais déjeuné quand vous vîtes me demander,</i>		I had breakfasted when you came to ask for me.
<i>J'avais travaillé beaucoup ce matin quand vous me vîtes,</i>		I had worked a great deal this morning when you saw me.

3°. The compound of the preterite points out a thing done at a time completely expired, but previously to another also complete, it is generally accompanied by an adverb or a conjunction, as—

<i>and nous eûmes dîné nous nous en allâmes,</i>		when we had dined we went away.
--	--	---------------------------------

4°. The compound of the future expresses that when a thing shall have occurred, another will happen or shall be over, as—

<i>que j'aurai fini je viendrai,</i>		as soon as I shall have done I will come.
--------------------------------------	--	---

EXERCISE XLV.

1°. I have learned [^] to speak French; you have mislaid a
e¹³ à e¹² e¹² égarer
time; we have been three times in the country this summer;
e m. e¹⁵ e³ e¹⁴ été m.

I have sent ^{e³} him for ^{e³} oysters. 2°. If I had wished to have ^{e³} that place I could ^{e³} have asked for it; we ^{e³} were afraid that ^{e³} some stranger ^{e³} would come and make the conquest of the ^{e³} island of Crete. 3°. He had scarcely perceived me than he ^{e³} came to me; when I had said my lesson you began; as soon ^{e³} as they had left the city the fever ceased; when thou shalt ^{e³} have concluded the bargain, it will ^{e³} no longer be time to ^{e³} consider; when the castle mill will be finished, they will ^{e³} wings to it; as soon as we shall have dined we will go and ^{e³} see our friends.

emploi m. e¹⁶ P solliciter — craindre a
quelque étranger m. ne e¹⁶ s — e⁶ conquête f.
île f. ...è... à peine appercevoir
e¹⁶ e³ e¹⁰ leçon f. commencer e⁴
abandonner e¹³ fièvre f. cesser e³
conclure marché m. ne plus e³ de
réfléchir e³ château f. e⁷ terminer adapter
aile f. dès dîner e¹

RULE XLVI. 113—118. The conditional expresses affirmation, dependent on a condition not yet existing. There are two tenses, the present and compound of the present.

1°. The present affirms that a thing would be, or would be done, on a certain condition being accomplished, as—

*Je serais heureux si j'étais** | I would be happy if I were in
dans ma patrie, | my own country.

2°. The Compound of the present marks that the thing would have been done had the conditions on which it depended been fulfilled:

il serait venu si vous l'aviez | he would have come if you
invité, | had invited him.

3°. The imperative affirms at the same time that it expresses the act of commanding, praying, or exhorting; sometimes expressing a present, sometimes a future time, as—

pardonnez lui cette fois, | pardon him this time.
venez me voir demain, | come to see me to-morrow.

* The imperfect is generally used after *si*, *if*, when it denotes a condition or supposition.

EXERCISE XLVI.

1°. If thou hadst any friendship for me thou wouldst write
 to me oftener; if the season was not so far advanced we
 would undertake this journey; if he asked this favour they
 would grant it to him; if I were the Prince I would not
 allow the wicked to infringe the laws. 2°. If I had
 known that, I would have stopped my work; we would have
 pitied your misfortune if we had known it; you would have
 seen wonders had³ you¹ come. 3°. Remember I am the
 only one who served thee at the time when every purse and
 heart were closed; cut that tree, and give it the shape that
 will appear the most suitable to you; do not turn a
 workshop into a negro-house.

e¹ *e²* *e³* *e⁴* *e⁵* *e⁶* *e⁷* *e⁸* *e⁹* *e¹⁰* *e¹¹* *e¹²* *e¹³* *e¹⁴* *e¹⁵* *e¹⁶* *e¹⁷* *e¹⁸* *e¹⁹* *e²⁰* *e²¹* *e²²* *e²³* *e²⁴* *e²⁵* *e²⁶* *e²⁷* *e²⁸* *e²⁹* *e³⁰* *e³¹* *e³²* *e³³* *e³⁴* *e³⁵* *e³⁶* *e³⁷* *e³⁸* *e³⁹* *e⁴⁰* *e⁴¹* *e⁴²* *e⁴³* *e⁴⁴* *e⁴⁵* *e⁴⁶* *e⁴⁷* *e⁴⁸* *e⁴⁹* *e⁵⁰* *e⁵¹* *e⁵²* *e⁵³* *e⁵⁴* *e⁵⁵* *e⁵⁶* *e⁵⁷* *e⁵⁸* *e⁵⁹* *e⁶⁰* *e⁶¹* *e⁶²* *e⁶³* *e⁶⁴* *e⁶⁵* *e⁶⁶* *e⁶⁷* *e⁶⁸* *e⁶⁹* *e⁷⁰* *e⁷¹* *e⁷²* *e⁷³* *e⁷⁴* *e⁷⁵* *e⁷⁶* *e⁷⁷* *e⁷⁸* *e⁷⁹* *e⁸⁰* *e⁸¹* *e⁸²* *e⁸³* *e⁸⁴* *e⁸⁵* *e⁸⁶* *e⁸⁷* *e⁸⁸* *e⁸⁹* *e⁹⁰* *e⁹¹* *e⁹²* *e⁹³* *e⁹⁴* *e⁹⁵* *e⁹⁶* *e⁹⁷* *e⁹⁸* *e⁹⁹* *e¹⁰⁰*

RULE XLVII. 113—118. The subjunctive mood, so called from its dependence on a preceding verb, without which it forms an incomplete sense, has four tenses—the present, preterite, and two compounds.

1°. The present expresses either a present or a future, distinguished only by the sense in which it is considered, as—

Je suis ravi que cela soit ainsi, | I am delighted that it is so.
Je désire qu'il réussisse, | I hope he will succeed.

2°. The preterite expresses a present or a future in reference to an act already past, as—

Je désirais que vous vinssiez, | I was wishing you would come.
il souhaitait que vous ne vinssiez que demain, | he was wishing you would not come till to-morrow.

3°. 4°. The compounds of the present and preterite express actions past, and complete with regard to the action of the

first verb, and must be used according to the tense that precedes them, they may also express a future, as—

<i>Je suis enchanté que vous ayez</i>	I am delighted that you have
<i>fait sa connaissance,</i>	formed his acquaintance.
<i>Je voudrais que vous eussiez</i>	I would wish you to have
<i>fini quand je reviendrai,</i>	done when I return.

EXERCISE XLVII.

1°. Kings *require to be put in mind* sometimes of the mortal state, and flatterers *to be made* to repent of the perfidious counsels. 2°. I would wish that in future you would read only before me; he had forbidden that I should receive; if I went to-night to the theatre I should be afraid that my father might be displeased. 3°. I am delighted that he has written to you; these are the finest pictures I have ever seen; there are scarcely any novels but what have been hurtful to morals. 4°. Aristides had been just before Socrates had said what justice was; if it were I had committed that fault you would not pardon me.

OF THE INFINITIVE.

RULE XLVIII.—The infinitive serves to affirm indefinite an action or a state in general, without regard to persons or number; there are five tenses, the present, the participle present, the past, the comp. pres., and comp. part. pres.

1°. The present infinitive expresses a present, a past, or future, according as the preceding verb by which it is governed expresses one of these tenses, and the preposition that comes before the present of the infinitive is in consequence of the preceding verb requiring such or such a preposition before the next infinitive, as—

pres. elle aime à parler, | she likes to speak.

past. *je le vis venir,* | I saw him coming.
 fut. *vous l'entendrez parler,* | you will hear him speak.

2°. The compound present infinitive expresses a time past with regard to the verb that precedes it, as—

Je croyais vous avoir entendu, | I thought I had heard you.

OBSERVE.—That all prepositions except *en*, and all verbs except the auxiliaries, govern the present of the infinitive.

EXERCISE XLVIII.

1°. What makes us love the country makes us love virtue;
e²⁸ e⁶ — e⁴ champs pl. e⁶ — e⁴ e¹
 all men are brothers, and ought to love one another as such;
e¹ e² e¹⁹ e¹⁹ e¹⁷ e²⁶
 avoid play for fear of making it a habit; one may be a
triste jeu m. e⁴ peur f. prendre en le :habitude f. e¹⁵
 hero without ravaging the world; however enlightened, our
..t.. e⁸ ravager terre f. quelque éclairé que
 teachers may be, they ought to labour incessantly, to
instituteur e¹⁶ e¹⁹ travailler sans relache à
 extend their knowledge; I am tired of always repeating the
e²⁰ e²⁸ e²⁶ e⁹ vous répéter
 same thing. 2°. I thought I had heard him laugh; follow
e²⁰ e¹⁶ e²⁶ e³³ K. rire e⁴
 the expedition, and you will have the honour of having
....é.....f. e³⁸
 contributed in exterminating the pirates; I thought I heard
e³⁷ e² exterminer e¹⁶ K. e³³ D.
 you say you were going to Paris.
e¹⁰ que e⁴

RULE XLIX.—126, 127. 1°. The participle present always ends in *ant*; it is known to be a participle, and therefore undeclinable, when it expresses an act, when it has an object expressed or understood, or when governed by the preposition *en*, expressed or understood, as—

et enfant, en caressant son | this child, whilst caressing his
chien, fut mordu, | dog, was bit.
Je l'ai vu regrettant sa splen- | I saw him regretting his rank
 | and meditating continually.

Caressant in the first example expresses an act, is governed by the preposition *en*, and has *chien* for its direct object. *regrettant* and *méditant* are also governed by the preposition

en understood, the first having *splendeur* for its direct object, the second having *méditation* understood for its direct object.

2°. When the participle present serves to point out the qualities, the state, or situation of the noun or pronoun it modifies, it takes the nature of an adjective, and is declinable.

elle paraît être une femme obligeante, | she appears to be an obliging woman.

Obligéante cannot be governed by *en*; it has no object, and expresses a quality, and not an action, *participating* in the nature of an adjective, and therefore declinable.

EXERCISE XLIX.

1°. We *lower ourselves* to a level with the vulgar when we
^{e¹⁵} *se rabaisser* ^{le} ^{e³³} *cannaille* f. *en* —
 dispute with them; nature in giving us two ears and one
se disputer ^{e⁸} *elle*f. ^{e²} ^{e⁴} ^{e²³} *seul*
 mouth, wished to inform us that we must listen² more¹ than
^{e²³} ^{e³⁷} *faire connaître* ^{il} ^{e⁸} ^{e²} *plus*
 speak; *how many* ² women³ I know¹, loving parties, balls,
^{e¹²} *que de* ^{e⁷} ^{e²⁷} ^{e⁴} *cercle* m. ^{e²⁴}
 and preferring their pleasure to their duty! a mother trembling
^{e²⁸} ^{e¹} *devoir* m. ^{e⁸} *trembler*
 to displease her son, is weak, and *thinks herself* affectionate.
de déplaire à ^{e¹⁵} ^{e³} *se croire* *tendre*

2°. I have seen that lady shining with a thousand various
^{e⁴} ^{e²⁸} *brillant* ^{e¹⁰} *diver*
 attractions, delighting society by her prepossessing manners;
attire m. *charmer* ^{e¹} *prévenant* ^{e²³} f.
 these two savages were brought alive; we saw them living in
sauvage ^{e⁴} *vivant* ^{e⁴} ^{e²} ^{e⁸}
 perfect union; I have received a sum amounting to 280 francs;
parfait ... f. ^{e¹⁰} *somme* f. *montant*m.
 at the flood tide we will embark for Dover.
montant marée f. *s'embarquer*

RULE L. 128—135. 1°. The participle past, when used without an auxiliary verb, takes the nature of an adjective, and agrees with the word it serves to qualify, as—

du pain cuit, des pommes cuites, | baked bread, baked apples.

2°. The simple tenses of the verb *avoir*, added to the participle past of an active verb, serve to form all its compound tenses; and the participle agrees in gender and

number with the direct object, when that object precedes the verb, as—

<i>Il a rencontré ces dames et</i>		he met those ladies and ac-
<i>les a accompagnées,</i>		companied them.

Rencontré does not agree with *dames*, because *dames*, the object, comes after the verb, but *accompagnées* agrees with *les*, which is the direct object coming before the verb, and stands for *dames*, fem. plu.

3°. The participle past never agrees with the subject of *avoir*, nor with the object when it is indirect, though it should precede, as—

<i>elles ont offensé leur père,</i>		they have offended their father.
<i>elle leur a nui,</i>		she has been hurtful to them.

EXERCISE L.

1°. *Every where* we saw trees *rooted up*, rivers *dried up*,
^{e⁴} ^{e⁴} ^{e⁴⁸} ^{e¹¹} ^{tari}
 and cities consumed by the fire of heaven. 2°. The best
^{e¹³} ^{consumé} ^{e⁷} ^{ciel m.}
 speeches are those which the heart has dictated; Peter the
harangue f. ^{e⁶} ^{dicter} *Pierre*
 Great has forced nature in *every thing*, and the arts which he
^{e¹} ^{forcé}f. ^{e⁴⁰}m.
 has transplanted have rendered testimony of his genius, and
ter *rendre témoignage* m. ^{e¹⁷} ^{génie} m.
 have immortalised his memory; I like the French language, I
^{éterniser} ^{e²³} ^{e¹²} ^{langue} f.
 have studied it for two years; *how many* people remember
^{étudier pendant} ^{e²⁹} ^{e⁴⁹} ^{e²⁵} ^{se rappeler}
 too well the wrongs that have been done them, and yet it
^{trop injustice} f. on ^{e¹³} K à ^{e²⁰}
 is delightful and glorious to pardon the offences we have
^{doux} ^{e¹⁴} ^{de pardonner}f. ^{que}
 received; what pleasure we felt in seeing you; they have
^{e¹⁰} ^{joie} f. ^{éprouver} K ^{e²} ^{e⁴}
 lived happy; they appeared to us very prudent.
^{e²} M ^{e¹⁵} ^{e²} M ^{fort sage}

RULE LI. 128—135. 1°. The participle past of an active verb, conjugated with *être*, forms what is termed the passive voice, and agrees in gender and number with the subject of the verb, whether preceding or coming after the verb; neuter verbs conjugated with *être*, follow the same

rule, but when used with *avoir* they are always indeclinable, as—

<i>elles sont offensées,</i>	they are offended.
<i>votre mère est sortie,</i>	your mother is gone out.
<i>ma sœur lui a parlé,</i>	my sister has spoken to her.

Offensées agrees with *elles*, being the subject of an active verb used in a passive sense; and *sortie*, with *mère*, being the subject of a neuter verb used with *être*; but *parlé* does not agree with *sœur* nor with *lui*, as *parler* is a neuter verb, conjugated with *avoir*, and cannot have a direct object.

EXERCISE LI.

1°. My sisters *were gone* to walk when you *arrived*;
^{e¹²} ^{e¹} L *la promenade* f. ^{e³} (^{e¹⁸} K with *être*)
the chills are passed and the fine days are returned; this
frimas m. *passer* ^{e⁶} ^{e⁶} ^{e¹⁴}
fashion has *passed away* as soon as it appeared, it lasted
mode f. *passer* ^{e⁴⁵} ^{e⁸} K *ne durer* K
but a day; all men of law have agreed on this point; by whom
^{e⁶} ^{e³⁸} ^{e⁹} *être convenir* ^{e¹⁸} ...m.
were the books² sent¹ which you *have just* received? the nation
^{e²} ^{e³} ^{e⁹}f.
which is not controlled by any law, is condemned to live
ne — assujettir aucun ^{e⁹} *condamné à* ^{e²}
very unhappily; crime is hated, but virtue is not loved; the
^{e³} *malheureux* ...m. *détesté* ^{e¹} ^{e¹} ^{e⁴}
greatest empire has been overturned by young men, or
^{e¹} ...m. *renversé* ^{e²⁰} ^{e³⁸}
preserved by old ones; what are become of the cherries
conserver des vieillards devenir cerise f.
which you gathered; concealed virtue is often oppressed; all
cueillir K *obscur* ^{e¹} ^{e³} *opprimé* ^{e¹⁴}
our evils are come from the sad Pandora.
^{e⁶} ^{e¹⁶} *triste*re

RULE LII. 128—135. The compound tenses of all reflexive verbs are conjugated with *être*,* and the participle past must agree with the direct object of the verb that precedes it, as—

elles se sont blessées, | they have hurt themselves.
whom have they hurt? themselves; *se* for *elles*, being the

* *Être* is here used by gallicism for *avoir*, and the participle past of the reflexive verbs follows the rule of active verbs used with *avoir*, by agreeing with the direct object that precedes the verb.

rect object of the verb, and as it precedes the participle past, *essées* agrees with it in gender and number.

2°. The participle past does not agree with the pronoun that precedes an active verb, accidentally reflective, when the rect object comes after the verb, as—

Ils se sont dit mille injures, | they greatly abused one another.

It does not agree with *se*, because *se* stands for *à eux*, to them, and is the indirect object, *injures* being the direct object, and coming after the verb. When the noun, as direct object, comes before the verb, the participle past is declinable, as—

Les robes qu'elles se sont achetées, | the gowns which they bought.

What did they buy? *robes*, gowns, the direct object before the verb; hence *achetées* is feminine plural, and does not agree with *se*, standing for *à elles*, to themselves, the indirect object.

3°. Neuter verbs may be accidentally reflective, but as of their nature they do not admit of direct objects, their participle past is indeclinable, as—

elles se sont parlé, | they spoke to one another.

Parlé being the participle past of a neuter verb, does not agree with *se*, standing for *à elles*, to them, indirect object.

EXERCISE LII.

1°. She took it into her head ^à to give me a *smack on the face*;
s'avis ^{e⁴} *de* ^{e⁴} *soufflet* m.
 these ladies fancied they ^à would succeed; these two *fish-women*
^{e²⁸} *se flatter* — *de* ^{e²⁸} *poissarde*
 fought and abused one another; the strings of this guitar are
se battre κ. *se dire des injures* κ. *corde* f. *e* f.
 black; Joan of Arc rendered herself celebrated by her high
noir κ. *se rendre* κ. *célèbre* ^{e¹⁹} ^{e²⁸}
 deeds, 2°. she obtained for herself an immortal glory; they
^{e¹} *fait* m. *se procurer* — *el* ^{e¹}
 paralleled with ^à great obstinacy, they disputed the victory
se disputer κ. *un extrême acharnement* m. ^{e²⁹} κ. ^{e²⁷}
 with ^à extraordinary ardour. 3°. These men hate one another
^{e¹} *un inoui ardeur* f. ^{e¹} *se haïr* —
 so much, that they have injured one another all their lives;
un tel point *se nuire* — ^{e¹}
 so epic poets have always taken pleasure in describing
épiques ^{e²⁸} ^{e¹} ^{e²⁸} *à décrire*

battles; failures have succeeded one another with [▲] *dr*
^{e¹⁰} *faillite* f. *se succéder* ——— *un effr*
 rapidity; did you not observe that these ladies *whisper*
^{té} f. ^{e⁶} ^{e²⁸} K. ^{e²⁸} *se parl*
 one another.
l'oreille K.

OF VERBAL SIGNS.

RULE LIII.—136. 1°. Do, before a verb, is gene used as a sign of the pres. ind. in interrogative phrases, i seeching, when we wish to express opposition or contradic or to affirm the present more forcibly. It is rendere French by the termination of the present tense.

<i>pourquoi n'écrivez-vous pas</i>		why do you not write
<i>des thèmes? j'écris des</i>		cises? I do write exerc
<i>thèmes,</i>		

But when do signifies to make, to execute, it is rendere *faire*, as—

il fait beaucoup d'affaires, | he does a great deal of busi

2°. The present tense of the verb to be, with the part present, is used also in English in interrogative phrases to express the present tense more forcibly, or that a thi actually being performed at the moment we are speaking dered also in French by the terminations of the tense, as
écrivez-vous? oui, j'écris, | are you writing? yes,

3°. Did is either a sign of the past, or a particle of the to make, also expressive of the past, as—

<i>nous le visitons certainement</i>		we certainly did visit
<i>quand nous étions à Bath,</i>		when we were in Bath
<i>J'ai fait mon devoir,</i>		I did my duty.

Observe, that did is very often used in English inste the verb to have, particularly in interrogative phrases; such is the case, the corresponding part of *avoir* must be in French, and not the imperfect tense, as—

avez-vous vu l'éléphant? | did you see the elepha

4°. The past tense of the verb to be is also used wit *participle* present, but expressive of an imperfect past as—

J'allais chez vous, | I was going to your ho

Observe, that do, did, and other verbal signs, are elliptically used in English in answer to questions, or to express assent, but in French the verb is either expressed, or the elliptical words *oui, non, point, &c.* are used.

<i>parlez-vous Français?</i>	<i>oui, je</i>	do you speak French? yes, I
<i>parle Français,</i>		do (speak French).
<i>s'il faisait beau, iriez-vous à</i>		If it were fine would you go
<i>Windsor? non pas,</i>		to Windsor? I would not.

EXERCISE LIII.

1°. Do you intend ^{e³} ^{de} ^{e¹} to go to the country? I do intend ^{e¹⁴} ^{e³} ^{de} ^y to go, but not to-day; do you speak French? I ^{e¹} ^{e¹} ^{e¹⁷} ^{aujourd'hui} ^{e¹²} ^{e¹²} ^{le} ^{e¹²} do speak a little; why do you not go to church? I ^{e⁴} ^{e²⁶} ^{e¹} ^{église f.} ^y ^{e¹} ^{tous les dimanche m.} do go every Sunday; do well, and let God do the rest; with order and time we shall ^{e¹³} ^{e¹²} ^{e⁸} ^{e²} ^{e¹³} ...e m. ^{e⁸}re m. ^{e²⁸} find time to do³ all things¹, and ^{e¹⁰} ^{e²⁶} ^{de} ^{e¹³} ^{e⁴⁰} ^{de} ^{e¹³} ^{e⁴⁰} ^{e¹²} to do all things well.

2°. Do not disturb me, I am writing exercises for my new ^{tourmenter} ^{e¹} ^{e²³} ^{e³⁵} grammar. 3°. Did you see the French troops embark for ^{e⁸} ^{e⁵} ^{e⁴} ^{e¹²} ^{e⁴³} ^{e⁴⁰} ^{e¹} Algiers; after the death of his partner he did nothing ^{e²¹} ^{e⁸} ^{associé} ^{e¹³} ^{e¹²} ^{de bien,} right.

4°. I was gathering flowers in the garden; do you think ^{e²¹} ^{e⁸} ^{fleure f.} ^{e⁸} ^{e²⁵} ^{que} public education is favourable to liberty? yes, I do ^{e¹⁵} ^{le}; would é.....f. R...vo.....e f. ^{e¹⁵} ^{le} you subscribe to the tunnel if you had money? no, indeed, ^{souscrire} ^{tuyau m.} ^{e¹²} ^{e²¹} ^{en vérité} I ^y would not.

RULE LIV.—137, 138. 1°. Will and shall; signs of the future, are rendered in French by the termination of that tense, as—

<i>Je parlerai à votre frère,</i>	I shall speak to your brother.
<i>il parlera à votre frère,</i>	he will speak to your brother.

2°. Would, could, should, may, might, as signs of the con-

ditional, are rendered in French by the termination of that tense, as—

<i>J'irais en Italie si j'avais de l'argent,</i>	I would go to Italy if I had money.
<i>nous vous donnerions de l'argent si nous étions riches,</i>	we would give you some money if we were rich.

3°. May and might, coming after the conjunction *que*, that, are signs of the subjunctive, rendered in French by the termination of that tense, as—

<i>prêtez moi votre grammaire afin que j'apprenne ma leçon,</i>	lend me your grammar, that I may learn my lesson.
<i>Je souhaitais que vous ne vinsiez que demain,</i>	I was wishing that you might not come until to-morrow.

4°. Will and could, in the sense of being willing, are rendered by the corresponding tense of *vouloir*, as—

<i>il veut aller à Londres,</i>	he will go to London.
<i>il voulait aller à Londres,</i>	he would go to London.

5°. May, might, can, could, expressing power to do, to perform, are rendered by *pouvoir*; and ought, which implies duty, and should, in the same sense, are rendered by *devoir*, as—

<i>Je ne puis vous parler,</i>	I cannot speak to you.
<i>il pourrait acheter cette maison,</i>	he could, or might buy that house.
<i>vous devriez me payer,</i>	you ought to, or should pay me.

For the sign *let*, in the imperative, see the verbs.

EXERCISE LIV.

1°. You shall love God with all your heart; the soldiers will do their duty; shall we not prefer glory to pleasure, and honour to riches? 2°. Though the miser should possess all the gold in the world, still he would not be satisfied. 3°. From the contents of my sister's letter I am afraid my mother may die; your friend was afraid that you might not return.

4°. Pride will not be in debt, and selfishness will not pay;
^{e²⁷ m.} ^{e²⁹} ^{e¹⁹} ^{e¹⁹}
 would you have the goodness to take this letter for me. 5°.

It may happen that the insolent wicked man appears happy,
^{se pouvoir} ^{éfronté} ^{e⁴⁶} ^{e³ R.} ^{e¹³}
 but he cannot be so, and his pillow can know it; we
^{e¹} ^{se pouvoir qu'il le soit} ^{oreiller m.} ^{e¹⁵} ^{e²⁸}
 should never swerve from the paths of virtue; you should pay
^{jamais s'écarter} ^{sentier m.s.} ^{e¹} ^{e⁸ O.} ^{e¹⁹}
 your debts, or you ought to be punished.
^{dette f.} ^{e¹⁹ O.} ^{e²²}

CHAPTER SIXTH.

OF ADVERBS.

THE adverb serves principally to modify the verb, and is also used to modify adjectives and other adverbs; adverbs are either simple, that is, expressed by one word, as *simplement*, simply; or compound, that is composed of several words, as, *à la hâte*, in haste.

RULE LV.—139. 1°. Simple adverbs are placed after the verb in simple tenses, and after the auxiliary verb in compound tenses, as—

<i>il parle souvent de vous,</i>	he often speaks of you.
<i>il a souvent parlé de vous,</i>	he has often spoken of you.

2°. Compound adverbs and those which govern or can govern a noun with the preposition *à* or *de*, come generally after the participle in compound tenses, as—

<i>vous avez jugé à la hâte,</i>	you have judged hastily.
<i>il a agi conformément à ces principes,</i>	he has acted in conformity with those principles.

3°. Adverbs expressive of a definite period of time, such as *hier*, yesterday; *demain*, to-morrow; and those of order and rank, such as *premièrement*, in the first place; *ensuite*, afterwards; are generally placed after the participle in compound tenses, and either before or after the verb in simple tenses, as—

<i>elle a demandé de vos nouvelles ce matin,</i>	she inquired after you this morning.
--	--------------------------------------

*d'abord il lui donna sa li-
berté,
demain je viendrai vous voir,*

at first he gave him his lib-
erty.
to-morrow I will come to see
you.

OBSERVE—The adverb must be placed in general, before the participle or adjective which it modifies.

EXERCISE LV.

1°. She has always spoken in your favour; have you ever
seen a pedant more ridiculous and vain; the mind will almost
always be in the right, and the heart will never own its fault;
one cannot judge of the happiness of a man, until he has
successfully finished his course. 2°. This act was passed
previous to the other; the nobility have acted differently from
the people; I shall have finished at latest by six o'clock. 3°.
Fulfil all your duties to-day, you are not sure to live to-morrow;
to-morrow I shall go to Bath, afterwards I shall return to
France; your uncle was attacked yesterday by robbers; it is
fine weather to-day; to-morrow it will rain; though you had
arrived yesterday, you would not have seen him.

RULE LVI. 1°. *Bien*, well; *mieux*, better; *mal*, badly;
trop, too much, are generally placed before the present of the
infinitive, but if the sense or harmony require it, they may be
placed after; but *plus*, in the sense of no more, no longer,
must always precede the infinitive, as—

<i>il est agréable de bien chanter,</i>	it is agreeable to sing well.
<i>Je suis fâché de la voir se mal conduire,</i>	I am sorry to see her behave so ill.
<i>Je suis décidé à ne plus vous voir,</i>	I am determined to see you no more.

2°. The five following adverbs of interrogation are always placed before the verb: *pourquoi*, why; *comment*, how; *où*, where; *combien*, how many; and *quand*, when, as—

comment se porte votre frère? | *how is your brother?*
pourquoi êtes-vous si triste? | *why are you so sad?*

3°. Observe that we say *assez souvent*, not *souvent assez*, often enough; *beaucoup trop*, not *trop beaucoup*, too much; and such expressions as *très-beaucoup*, very much, *si beaucoup*, so much, are not used.

Bien, before another adverb, means very, much, quite, as—

J'en ai bien assez, | I have quite enough.

but when *bien* comes after, it means well, as—

votre thème est assez bien, | **y**our exercise is pretty well.

EXERCISE LVL

1°. The authority of kings *is destroyed* by wishing to
^{e²⁵} ^{e²} ^{se détruire en} ^{e³⁷}
 establish itself *too much*; to speak well is sometimes to do ill;
 établir ^{e²⁸} ^{e¹²} ^{e¹²} ^{e⁴⁷} ^{e¹³} ^{e⁶}
 Miss Murray has sung well, but she might sing better; it is
^{e¹⁶} ^{e¹²} ^{e¹} ^{e¹⁸} ^{e¹⁶} ^{e²⁶}
 not necessary to eat much, but to eat well; he who boasts of
^{e²⁰} ^{e¹} ^{e⁴} ^{e¹} ^{e¹} ^{e¹²} ^{se vanter}
 having no more faults contradicts himself. 2°. Do you wish
 défaut m. ^{se contredire} ^{e³⁷}
 to know how ^à to give? put yourself in the place of him who
^{e²⁸} ^{e³³} ^{falloir} ^{e⁴} ^{e²}f. ^{celui}
 receives; it is loving little ^à ^à to say *how much* we love;
^{e¹⁰} ^{ce} ^{e⁴} ^à ^{e⁴} ^{que de} ^{e¹⁰} ^{e⁵} ^{on} ^{e⁴}
 where hatred prevails truth is sacrificed; though *you possessed*
^{e⁴} ^{haine} f. ^{prévaloir} ^{e¹²} ^{sacrifié} ^{e³⁵} ^{tout serait}
 all things, would you be the more happy? how did the
^{à vous} — ^{e¹³} ^{e³³}
 custom-house officers behave themselves? why should we
 douannier ^{se comporter} ^{e³⁶} ^{on}
 pride ourselves on ^à birth, since it is the mere effect of
 l'enorgueillir ^{de sa} ^{e²⁹} ^{puisque} ^{pur effet} m.
 chance? 3°. Your sister has a *great deal too much* pride; a
 hasard m. ^{e¹²} ^{e⁴} ^{e²⁸} ^{e⁵¹}
 soul has always quite enough ^à sense ^à to be wicked.
^{e⁹} ^{bien} ^{e⁴} ^{de} ^{e²} ^{pour} ^{méchant}.

OF NEGATIVE ADVERBS.

- The particles *pas*, *point*, *plus*, *jamais*, are only negative by being associated with the real negative *ne*, either expressed or understood, to which they impart degrees or kinds of negation.

<i>Je n'ai pas d'argent,</i>	I have no money.
<i>Je n'ai point d'argent,</i>	I have no money at all.
<i>Je n'ai plus d'argent,</i>	I have no more money.
<i>Je n'ai jamais d'argent,</i>	I never have any money.

OBSERVE.—No more, followed by than, is expressed by *plus*, as—

il n'a pas plus de cinq livres, | he has not more than 5 pound

From the above examples it will be observed that *pas* is not exclusive a negation as *point*; *je n'ai pas d'argent* signifies that you have no money at present or to spare, or that you are not willing to give any; but *je n'ai point d'argent* signifies I am destitute, I have no money—none at all.

RULE LVII.—140. 1°. The negative *ne* is placed before and the accompanying particle after the verb, as may be seen in the preceding examples; but with the infinitive they are generally placed together, as—

<i>Je vous prie de ne pas faire cela—</i>	I request you will not do that—
<i>de ne plus aller chez lui—</i>	not to go any more to his house—
<i>de ne jamais venir chez moi,</i>	never to come to my house.

2°. *Jamais* is sometimes used at the beginning of a sentence, with *ne* before the verb, as—

Jamais je n'ai vu de pareille chose | I never saw such a thing

Observe, that *ne* always precedes the verb, and is placed after the subject and before the object, as—

Je ne vous ai pas vu, | I did not see you.

3°. *Rien*, nothing; *aucun*, none; *pas un*, not one; *personne*, nobody; *nul*, not any; *nullement*, by no means; also require *ne* before the verb they accompany, whether they come before or after the verb, as—

<i>il ne vous a rien donné,</i>	he has given you nothing.
<i>vous n'avez aucune preuve,</i>	you have no proof whatever
<i>pas un de mes amis n'est venu,</i>	not one of my friends came
<i>il n'est venu personne,</i>	nobody came.

*e ne m'attendais nullement** | I did not at all expect the
au plaisir de vous voir, | pleasure of seeing you.

4°. When the restrictive negative word *only*, or *but*, in the sense of *only*, *no more*, *nothing else*, *nobody else*, comes after a verb accompanied by its subject, it is generally rendered by *ne* before, and *que* after the verb, as—

il n'a que seize ans, | he is only (or but) sixteen.
ne pensez qu'à mes enfants, | think only of my children.

In the first example *ne...que*, *only* or *but*, stands for *no more than*, in the second for *nobody else*; but *only*, before a verb, or to express surprise, is rendered by *seulement*, and *but*, at the beginning of a phrase, by *mais*, as—

pensez seulement à mes enfants! | only think of my children!
Je viendrai, mais je ne puis rester, | I shall come, but cannot stay.

EXERCISE LVII.

1°. *There are some men who ought never to have been born,*
others never to have died; never say that you will never be
of such an opinion; the rich are not always happier than
— others. 2°. The future never gives all that it promises.
3°. He has rendered me no service; nothing is more common
than death, and nothing is more uncommon than
surprised by it; he is not at all informed of this business; no
laurels have shaded their brows. 4°. It is only to virtue that
we owe happiness; he does nothing but laugh; not only the
prince granted the pardon of the culprit, but also promised
all that was asked; harmony not only strikes the ear, but
the mind.

* We are of opinion that *ne*, with *nul* or *nullement*, is a real pleonasm, and should be omitted, or the phrase changed.

CHAPTER SEVENTH.

OF PREPOSITIONS.

RULE LVIII.—147, &c. Prepositions may be classed into three kinds: 1st, Those which govern their complement without the aid of a preposition; 2d, Those which require *de*; 3d, Those which require *à*.

1°. Those which govern a complement without a preposition are expressed in one word.—See page 151.

J'irai malgré vous, | I shall go in spite of you.
vous avez agi contre mon avis, | you have acted on my advice.

2°. Those which require *de* before their complement are the nine following, and all those preceded by *à*, *au*, *aux*, except *à travers*:

<i>en dépit,</i>	in spite of.	<i>hors,</i>	out.	<i>le long,</i>	along.
<i>ensuite,</i>	after.	<i>loin,</i>	far.	<i>proche,</i>	nigh.
<i>faute,</i>	for want.	<i>près,</i>	near.	<i>vis-à-vis,</i>	opposite.

Excepté, *hors*, and *hormis*, in the sense of except, or excluded from, are not followed by *de*.

3°. The following require *à* before their complement:—

attendant, | adjoining. || *jusque,* | as far as.
par rapport, | with respect. || *quant,* | as for (*sauf* before an inf).

Jusque is sometimes followed by another preposition, as—

jusque dans Paris, | as far as, or, even into Paris.

EXERCISE LVIII.

1°. Do not content thyself by being virtuous according to
se contenter de ^{e⁹} *selon*
the law, it cannot embrace *everything*; you have acted
^{e⁹} ^{e¹⁵} *embrasser* ^{e⁴⁰} ^{e²}
contrary to my opinion. 2°. He rambled a long time around
contref. *rôder* - ^{e²⁶} *autour*
the park; he is always near her; I have been nearly six
...c m. ^{e⁹}
months in Paris; the Prince ought to be above others, and
^{e⁹} ^{e²} ^{e¹⁹} ^{e³³} art. ^{e¹⁹}
the law above him; I shall lodge below Mr. Davidson; I
^{e⁹} ^{e³³} *demeurer au-dessous de* ^{e⁴}

n through the hedge; this fruit is out of season; he was
au travers *haie* f. ...m. *e⁴⁶*
 t of the house when the fire began; I leave all the furniture
e² *e³* *e⁷* *e⁴⁵* *e⁸* *e¹⁴* *meubles* m.p.
 cept six chairs; *everything* is lost except honour; all was
chaise f. *e⁴⁰* *e²³* *e³⁸* *e¹⁴*
 od except God himself. 3°. As for him he will be
e¹ *e²* *quant à*
 ansported; this news had not yet reached him.
déporté *e¹⁶* *e²⁰* *venir jusque à*

CHAPTER EIGHTH.

OF CONJUNCTIONS.

CONJUNCTIONS serve to unite words, thoughts, and propositions, and are indeclinable. Conjunctions are either simple or compound; simple when they are expressed by one word, as *mais*, *et*; *donc*, therefore; compound when composed of several words, as *à moins que*, unless.

RULE LIX.—157, &c. Conjunctions, in reference to the different operations of the mind, may be divided into eleven classes, namely,

1st. The copulative, used only to unite words or sentences.

et, | and. || *ni*, | nor.

2d. The alterative point out an alterative or distinction, in the sense of the thing spoken of.

ou, ou bien, | or, else. || *tantôt*, | sometimes.
si non, | if not. || *soit que*, | whether.

3d. The conditional unite by the supposition of a condition necessary for the junction.

quand, sauf, | if, when, save. || *à moins que* or *de*, | unless that.
survu que, | provided that. || *à condition que*, | on condition“

4th. The adversative denote some opposition or difference between the words and sentences which they unite.

mais, quoique, | but, although. || *au moins*, | at least.
néanmoins, | yet. || *au lieu de*, | instead of.
nonobstant, | nevertheless. || *pourtant*, | however.

least as a friend. 3°. We cannot be happy unless Δ we
moins e^{27} — e^4 e^{55} e^{15} e^{13} *de* —
 practise virtue; I would write in verse if I could do it properly.
attaquer e^1 e^1 e^2 *vers m.* e^{15} e^{13} *convenablement*
 . It is not places which *add dignity* to men, but men
ce sontf. *honorer* — e^1 e^1 e^1
 he *add dignity* to places; you *are amusing* yourself, yet Δ
 e^{20} f. *s'amuser* art.
 me flies; if you do not do that yourself, at least order it
 e^{26} *fuir* e^{13} e^2 *faire*
 to be done. 5°. A man is not happy nor rich as long as he
 e^{13} e^{20} e^{13} e^{40} e^{13} e^{18}
 thrives Δ to be more so; we will be friends until Δ death.
efforcer de *davantage* e^{18} e^4 art. e^8

EXERCISE LIX.—PART II.

6°. Nature is imperishable, whilst *every thing* changes and
f. *impérissable* e^{40} *changer*
 perishes. 7°. We foolishly prefer *what* pleases to *what* is
 e^{14} e^{15} *follement* e^{26} e^{26} e^{26} e^{26}
 useful, as wit to good sense, grace to virtue. 8°. Ferocity
 e^8 e^{12} e^2 *sens m.* ... f. e^1 té f.
 is discernable by the crispation of the lips, especially of the
reconnaître e^{18} f. *lèvre f. spécialement*
 upper; conduct yourself prudently that Δ you may be esteemed.
supérieur e^2 *sagement* *l'on* — e^{50}
 F. They applaud all Δ Δ he says, hence his tone of
 e^{20} *admirer* e^{14} *ce que* e^{10} *ton m.*
 importance; you will do *what you like*, as to me, I am
réussance f. e^{13} e^{15} *il vous plaira*
 determined Δ to go to America. 10°. Those who desire,
décidé *de* e^1 e^{55} *désirer*
 dream Δ although Δ they sleep not. 11°. The law ordains it,
titre des songes que e^8 e^2 *ordonner*
 therefore we must obey; fortune is inconstant, therefore we
 e^{20} *obéir*f.
 must not trust to it.
 e^{20} e^{17} e^{21}

CHAPTER NINTH.

OF INTERJECTIONS.

*An interjection being the spontaneous expression of a
 elementary emotion, cannot be controlled by the laws of*

grammar; the only point necessary to be observed is, never to place them between words which custom has rendered inseparable.

RULE LX. Interjections are divided as follows:—

FOR GRIEF, AFFLICTION, PAIN, OR FEAR.

French.	English.	French.	English.	French.	English.
<i>ah!</i>	ah!	<i>ouf!</i>	pho!	<i>ahi!</i>	ay oh!
<i>aie!</i>	ay!	<i>helas!</i>	alas!	<i>hé! oh!</i>	oh!

FOR JOY AND ASTONISHMENT.

<i>oh!</i>	oh!	<i>bon!</i>	well!	<i>ah!</i>	ah!
------------	-----	-------------	-------	------------	-----

FOR DISAPPROBATION, AVERSION, OR CONTEMPT.

<i>pouha!</i>	pah!	<i>fi donc!</i>	for shame!	<i>fi!</i>	fie!
---------------	------	-----------------	------------	------------	------

FOR DERISION.

<i>oh!</i>	oh!	<i>hé!</i>	he!	<i>zest!</i>	pshaw!
------------	-----	------------	-----	--------------	--------

FOR ADMIRATION, APPROBATION, AND APPLAUDING.

<i>oh!</i>	oh!	<i>très-bien!</i>	well!	<i>biz!</i>	encore!
<i>bravo!</i>	bravo!	<i>ah!</i>	ah!	<i>huzza!</i>	huzza!

FOR ENCOURAGING.

<i>ça!</i>	well!	<i>allons!</i>	come on!	<i>courage!</i>	cheer up!
------------	-------	----------------	----------	-----------------	-----------

TO WARN, TO MAKE PEOPLE STAND ASIDE.

<i>holà!</i>	hallo there!	<i>hem!</i>	hem!	<i>gar!</i>	take care!
--------------	--------------	-------------	------	-------------	------------

FOR SILENCE.

<i>chut!</i>	hush!	<i>st!</i>	hist!	<i>paix!</i>	silence!
--------------	-------	------------	-------	--------------	----------

FOR SALUTATION.

vive la reine! God save the Queen!

Certain words, not interjections of themselves, must be considered such when used to express any emotion, as—

<i>de grâce!</i>	for heaven's sake!	<i>bon Dieu!</i>	good heavens!
<i>miséricorde!</i>	mercy on me!	<i>salut!</i>	hail!
<i>tenez ferme!</i>	hold fast!	<i>écoutez!</i>	hark!
<i>tout beau!</i>	softly!	<i>parbleu!</i>	zounds!
<i>vive la joie!</i>	huzza!	<i>voyez!</i>	look! look!

EXERCISE LX.

Ah! the cowards, exclaimed Bekir in a rage; *oh! un lâche m. s'écrire* *e² — colère f.*

onds, my poor diamonds; *alas!* said Békir, that happy
 e^{28} e^1 e^{10} e^{15}
 nsoles me for all $\Delta \Delta$ we have suffered; who fills the air,
 n. e^1 e^1 e^{14} *ce que* e^4 e^{56} ...pl.
heavens! with its mournful cries; *ah!* you are there!
 e^{10} *triste* *accent* e^{14}
 not expect you; *oh dear!* what are you going to do?
 e^{29} e^{31} e^1 e^{13}
 you are going to strangle me; *O* unfortunate Calypso!
 e^1 *étrangler* e^5
 wilt thou do? *pah!* how hideous it is; you say that he is
 e^{13} *affreux* *ce* e^{10}
 against me, *well!* *ah!* madam, do not believe it; *well!*
 e^2 *me* e^{15}
 during my absence; *O* my son! adore God, and
killer pendantf. e^{15} er e^2
 seek to know him; I have *sought every corner* of this
 e^{30} e^{27} *parcourir* —
 tful island, but, *alas!* I have found nothing but sorrow.
in e^{45} e^1 e^{10} e^{12} e^4

END OF SYNTAX.

Part Fifth.

SYNTAX RAISONNÉE.

IN this part of our grammar we have extended the rules of Syntax for the use of the advanced scholar, and also as a book of reference for the younger pupil, who, though still in the first part of Syntax, might feel inquisitive on some particular points; however, we have thought it unnecessary to enter into those nice distinctions which can alone be understood by native scholars, or by those strangers who have acquired what may be considered a thorough knowledge of the French language. To such it will be more profitable to consult grammar *in*, as well as on the French language; at the same time, we trust we have omitted nothing to enable any stranger, with moderate attention, to acquire a perfect knowledge of the French language.

CHAPTER FIRST.

OF THE ARTICLE.

From the observation into which we were necessarily led in introducing the subject in syntax, we have little else to remark generally, but to state some particular cases which require the use of the article, or reject it; this distinction requires a nice discrimination, and some knowledge of the language, as otherwise we should often be led to express what we did not mean, or become ambiguous, a fault in direct opposition to the genius of the French language.

CASES IN WHICH THE ARTICLE IS USED.

Note.—The second number in the following rules indicates the corresponding rule on the same subject in syntax.

RULE LXI.—1. 1°. In reference to this rule of syntax we find that common and abstract nouns are liable to extension or restriction, according to the sense in which they are considered, and which the article serves to point out; if we wish

in to be considered in its full extent, as in saying man,
we want to imply all men, all sciences, we must use
article, as—

<i>le doit songer à la mort,</i>		man must think of death.
<i>nces nous consolent,</i>		sciences console us.

If these nouns become restricted by the association of
things or circumstances, they still require the article which
to point out their limited sense, as—

<i>le vertueux doit songer</i>		the virtuous man must think
<i>mort,</i>		of death.
<i>nces que je cultive me</i>		the sciences I cultivate console
<i>olent,</i>		me.

If the noun of which we are speaking serves to name an
usual member of the species, as charity, which is an indivi-
dual member of virtue; or if it serves to name individual ob-
jects such as the sun, the moon, life, death, which have no
article they are considered as used in a particular sense, and
require an article, as—

<i>ille ne convient à per-</i>		pride becometh no man.
<i>ie,</i>		
<i>erre gronde,</i>		the thunder roars.

EXERCISE LXI.

Divine love is the principle of every virtue; science and
i..... e¹⁹ e³⁵ e²⁰ e¹f.
 make the glory, the ornament, and the consolation of
e⁶ e¹m.f.
 idleness is the mother of every vice; children obey
e¹² e³ e²⁰ ...m. e¹⁸ e³⁹
 , wives husbands: this is monarchy; nature is the
femme e²³ monarchie f.f.
 d throne of Divine majesty. 2°. The sciences which I
ur e⁴⁴ ..i..... magnificence f.f.
 e the most, are history and geography; the fortune of
e⁸ géographie f.
 h, the glory of heroes, the majesty of kings, all ends
 : pl. *e¹ héroé f. e³ e¹⁴ e²¹*
 here lies." 3°. Do not give alms only, but also charity;
ci git faire aumône f.s. e³ e¹ e³³é f.
 r is the greatest ornament of a woman, and firmness
f. e¹é...m. e¹ fermeté f.

that of a man; the thunder shatters the cedar on the mountain;
^{e¹} *tonnerre brisser cèdre m. montagne*
 the scythe cuts the violet under the grass; misfortune reaches
faux f. trancher ...tte f. sous gazon m. e⁴ atteindre
everywhere; true heroism, passion for glory, love of justice,
^{e⁴} ^{e⁸} *héroïsme m. f. e⁴ e¹ e¹⁰ f.*
 frankness, generosity, filial piety, *these are* the simple virtues
^{e⁴⁰} *..é..é.....é f.é..é f. voilà e¹*
 of nature, which the ancient³ bards⁴ have¹ sung².
f. *barde e¹⁶*

RULE LXII.—In addressing persons, no article is used before *monsieur* or *messieurs*, but, in speaking of them the article is used when not accompanied with a proper name, unless before several of the same name, as—

<i>monsieur est-il fatigué?</i>		are you fatigued, sir?
<i>les messieurs sont arrivés,</i>		the gentlemen are come.
<i>les messieurs Lafitte sont riches,</i>		Messrs. Lafitte are rich.

2°. The possessive pronouns forming part of the word *madame*, *mesdames*, *mademoiselle*, *mesdemoiselles*, *monseigneur*, *messeigneurs*, are omitted when the article is used, as—

<i>la dame, les demoiselles,</i>		the lady, the young ladies.
<i>les dames, les seigneurs,</i>		the ladies, the lords.

3°. The same rule is applicable if the words be accompanied by a demonstrative pronoun, or the adjective *un*, *une*, as—

<i>cette dame, une demoiselle,</i>		this lady, a young lady.
------------------------------------	--	--------------------------

Monsieur cannot be attended with an adjective preceded by *mon*, except when used in terms of ridicule, as—

<i>cher monsieur, not mon cher monsieur,</i>		my dear sir.
<i>ah! mon beau monsieur,</i>		ah! my fine fellow.

we also say *ma chère dame*, not *chère madame*.

4°. When speaking of titles, dignities, or learned professions, the article is used, whether preceded or not by the words *monsieur*, *madame*, *monseigneur*, as—

<i>madame la comtesse, or la comtesse de,...</i>		the countess of....
<i>monsieur le général, or le général de.....</i>		General
<i>monseigneur l'Evêque, or l'Evêque de.....</i>		the bishop of.....

The article is also used before nouns after *monsieur*, *madame*, *&c.*, to express ridicule, reproach, or blame, as—

Monsieur le fripon! M. le menteur! | Mr. thief! Mr. liar!
Mademoiselles les paresseuses! | you lazy girls!

EXERCISE LXII.

1°. The gentleman ^{que} ^{e⁴ K} you saw yesterday is gone; do you ^{e²⁸} ^{partir}
 attend, sir, to call on Messrs. Melville? when I shall go to ^{e¹}
 Paris I shall visit ^{e²⁸} Messrs. Rothschild and son; in France
 ^{passer chez} ^{e¹⁸}
 the ladies do not leave the company of the gentlemen after ^{e³¹ art.}
 dinner; ladies, I hope I have not made you wait ^{e²⁸} ^{e⁵ attendre long tems} long.
 2°. This is the gentleman ^{e²⁹} of whom I spoke to you; the poor ^{dont} ^{e¹²}
 lady is dying. 3°. A lady called at two o'clock; that lady ^{e²⁸ K} ^{e¹⁶}
 is ^{se mourir} in the first-class carriage are the richest in the ^{e¹} ^{.....e f. voiture f.} ^{e¹⁸} ^{e¹⁹}
 country; my dear sir, I had the pleasure of seeing your lady ^{e¹⁸} ^{e¹} ^{e⁴}
 last week. 4°. ^{e¹ semaine f. monsieur} Colonel, shall you be of ^{art. nôtres} our party
 to-night? the Duchess of Baden is on a visit at ^{e³¹} ^{e²⁸ -e chez monseigneur} the
 Duke of Hamilton's; ^{e¹} the dukes and peers have assembled;
 ^{messeigneurs} ^{pair} ^{s'assembler}
 here is my lady, and the lady ^{e²⁸} ^{que} ^{e⁷ K} you told me to bring. ^{e²²}

CASES IN WHICH THE ARTICLE IS NOT USED.

Common nouns do not take the article, when used in that definite state that the mind does not attribute to the word the infinite meaning which it might have were it employed in a general or limited sense; in which case, an attentive pupil will readily observe that it performs the function of a restricting term, rather than imparts its original absolute meaning, as when we say *un marchand de vin*, a wine merchant; the real import of the word *vin*, wine, does not occur to me as when I say *le vin est préférable à la bière*, wine is preferable to beer; but

the word *marchand*, merchant, strikes my mind as the principal word, and *vin* is only considered as a restricting term to point out what kind of a merchant is spoken of. All common nouns used without an article, or any other word that performs the same function, may be considered in that restricting or qualifying state that may be easily discerned.

GENERAL RULE.—No article is used before the second of two nouns when it serves to qualify the first, by specifying its manner of being, origin, species, profession, destination, kind, use, or substance, in which case they are connected by *à* or *de*; but the article is used before the second noun, if the first has a rotation of appurtenance or dependence with the second.

WITHOUT THE ARTICLE.

des rideaux de croisée,
window curtains.
il a une belle boîte d'or,
he has a fine gold box.
tu n'es pas fils de roi,
thou art not a king's son.
un bon maître de langue,
a good teacher of languages.

WITH THE ARTICLE.

les rideaux de la croisée,
the window curtains.
la beauté de l'or,
the beauty of gold.
tu n'es pas le fils du roi,
thou art not the king's son.
un des professeur des collèges,
one of the professors of the

RULE LXIII.—2. 1°. As the function of the article in French is to point out the definite sense of the noun, and as in proper names that sense is sufficiently pointed out, no article is necessary; and when in such cases it is used, it belongs to and agrees with a noun understood, as before the names of Italian poets and painters, thus:—*le Tasse*, *le Titien*, for *le poète Tasse*, *le peintre Titien*; except *Michael-Ange*, *Raphaël*, *Pétrarque*, and *Bocasse*. Before the names of saints, when it is intended to point out a festival, as—

la St. Jean, for *la fête de St. Jean*, | St. John's Day.

It is this elliptical kind of expression which causes the article to be used before proper names which otherwise would reject the article, such as the names of countries, rivers, mountains, &c., as *le Rhin*, for *le fleuve* called *Rhin*; *la Clyde*, for *la rivière* called *Clyde*; *le Parnasse*, for *le mont* called *Parnasse*; *la France*, for *la province* called *France*, France having been a province of Rome.

2°. We also say, *les Buffons et les Voltaires sont rares*, for *les écrivains semblables à Buffon et à Voltaire sont rares*; Buffon and Voltaire being used for *écrivains*, are considered common nouns, and take the sign of the plural. But in the

following sentence:—*les Molière, les Racine, &c., ont étendu la gloire de notre langue*, they are considered as proper names, and take no sign of the plural; the article being in the plural is more emphatic. Proper names enumerated also take the sign of the plural, as *les deux Mithridates*.

It is from this cause we find the article forming part of the proper names of men, cities, &c., as *le Blanc, le Rond, la Rochelle*, for *l'homme blanc, l'homme rond, la ville Rochelle*.

3°. When the article forms part of a proper name, it is not contracted with the preposition *de* or *à*; but if the article is only used from custom, the person's profession being understood, the contraction takes place, as—

J'ai reçu des nouvelles de le Brun, I have heard from le Brun.
il a lu la poésie du Tasse, he has read Tasso's poetry.

EXERCISE LXIII.

1°. Many ^{e⁶³} ^{des} ^{e²³} ^{f.} ^{e⁴²} ^{e¹⁷} persons consider Tasso as the Homer of Italy;
Tasso's Jerusalem delivered, and Ariosto's *Orlando Furioso*
..... *délivrée* *Roland le furieux*
are two poems which will be for ever the glory of Italy; the
...*é*...*e m.* ^{e¹⁵} ^{e³⁴} ^{e¹}
ceremony will take place either at Midsummer or Michaelmas;
cérémonie f. avoir lieu ou Saint Jean f. Saint Michel f.
St. George is the champion of England, and St. Denis that
..... ^{e¹³}
of France; I shall be in Paris on the eve of St. Louis. 2°. ^{e²} — *veille f.* *f.*
Wieland was surnamed by his countrymen the Voltaire of
H *surnommé compatriote*
Germany; Virgils and Ciceros will always be scarce; it is
...*e*..... ^{e⁸⁰} ^{e⁹} *rare* ^{e¹³}
Molière, Boileau, Racine, &c., who carried into all nations the
..... ^{e³¹}*f.*
glory of our language; the two Corneilles have distinguished
^{e¹} ^{e⁶⁰} *se distinguer*
themselves in literature. 3°. Send me two copies of Le Fain's
république des lettres ^{e⁴} ^{e¹⁸}
dictionary; he asserts that the works of Dante are better
^{e²} *maintenir* *œuvre m.*
written than those of Tasso.
^{e¹}*e*

RULE LXIV.—2°. Though of or from does not admit of articles before names of countries, &c., when used as terms of qualification, yet if any word precede by which the country may be considered in its whole extent, the article must be used, as—

où sont les limites de la France? | where are the limits of France!

In the same manner we say *l'eau de la mer*, and *le poisson de mer*; in the first *mer* is considered in its whole extent; in the second *de* is used as restrictive of *poisson*, without any idea of extent. We also say on the same principle, *les peuples de l'Afrique et de l'Amérique*, and *les villes d'Afrique et d'Amérique*. Generally speaking, the article is used before nouns of countries when considered in their whole extent, and *de* only when used as restrictive of a preceding noun, and not considered in their extent.

2°. And though the article is not used before the names of countries when preceded by a verb that expresses residence or motion, as the going or sending to, and coming or receiving from a place, yet in such cases the article is used—

1st, When the verb, by what it expresses, requires any other preposition than *en* or *de*, as—

<i>il doit rester en France six</i>		he is to remain in France six
<i>mois,</i>		months.
<i>il doit partir pour la France,</i>		he is to go to France.

2d, When the countries named are out of Europe, then *to* or *at*, *in* or *into*, are rendered by *au*, *à la*, *aux*, and *of* or *from* by *du*, *de la*, *des*, as—

<i>il demeure à la Jamaïque,</i>		he lives in Jamaica.
<i>il arrive du Canada,</i>		he is just arrived from Canada.

3d, Before the names of mountains and rivers, and several provinces in France and Italy, as *les Alpes*, *la Perche*, *la Meuse*, *la Pouille*. Before names compounded, and particular places, as *les Pays bas*, the Netherlands; *la Nouvelle Ecosse*, Nova Scotia; *le Cape de Bonne Espérance*.

EXERCISE LXIV.

1°. The climate of America is very diversified; the limits
climat m. *e^s* *varié* *limites f.*
of France were not extended during the reign of Louis
H *e²⁰* *e³⁰* *règne m.* *.....*

Philippe; I have travelled *a great deal* in France, and from
 ^{e³} ^{e⁴}
 the extremity of Russia to the other; I like *salt-water*
^{e¹⁹} ^{e³} ^{mer f.}
bout m.
 fish better than *fresh-water* fish. 2°. *How long* did you
^{e²⁰} ^{e⁰⁴} ^{combien avoir}
oisson m. ^{e²⁰} <sup>rivière f.
 reside in Turkey? three years, and I returned from Egypt
^{e³} ^{e²⁰} ^{e¹⁴}
 last summer; we were shipwrecked in going to Jamaica;
^{e³} ^{e⁴⁵} ^{e¹³ H} ^{e¹} <sup>naufage m.
 we then went to St. Lucia, and were again wrecked in
^{e¹} ^{e¹³ H} ^{e⁰⁴} ^{encore}
 returning from Martinique; I was in Germany with my uncle,
^{e¹⁴} ^K ^{e³} ^{e⁴⁵}
 and we returned by Italy and France; I crossed Mont Blanc
^{e¹⁴} ^{e³}
 last summer; the governor of Canada is to return to England
^{e³} ^{e⁴⁵} ^{e¹⁹} ^{e¹⁴} ^{e⁴⁵} <sup>gouverneurm.
 in the spring; when do you mean to return to Newfoundland?
^{e⁶} ^{e³} ^{e³} ^{retourner}</sup></sup></sup>

RULE LXV. 1°. Though the article be denied to the preposition *en*, as being the indefinite of *dans*, yet in cases where an abstract noun is restricted by an attribute, the article is sometimes used with *en*; also for euphony, when the next word begins with a vowel; and frequently when the noun is minine, as—

<i>la présence du roi,</i>	in presence of the king.
<i>l'absence de votre frère,</i>	in the absence of your brother.

2°. When a noun is identified with a verb, so that the association gives rise but to one idea, the article is omitted; it occurs more frequently with the verbs *avoir* and *faire*, and is generally rendered in English by one word, as—

<i>avoir envie, faire peur,</i>	to desire, to frighten.
<i>rendre compte, livrer bataille,</i>	to account, to fight.

It is if the noun be restricted by an adjective, or other circumstances, the word *un, une*, may be used, as—

<i>a fait fortune aux Indes,</i>	he has made a fortune in India.
<i>a fait une grande fortune</i>	“ he has made a large fortune “

3°. Nor is the article used before a noun closely identified

with the verb by means of a preposition, denoting the means of the action, as—

<i>Je tremble de froid,</i>	I am trembling with cold.
<i>il est accusé de vole,</i>	he is accused of theft.

EXERCISE LXV.

1°. I cannot *go out* in the state I am² in;¹ she died in the bloom of ^{e¹⁵} youth; I will ^{e²} pay you in the ^{e³} absence of my ^{e¹⁸} *fleur* f. art. *Age* m. ^{e¹⁹}f. master. 2°. Those who flatter themselves ^{e⁶} to excite ^{e¹²} envy, ^{e¹³} *se* ^{e¹⁴} *de faire envie* f. often excite ^{e³} pity; the ^{e⁶⁵} *wise* man is ashamed of his faults, ^{e¹³} *sage* ^{e¹⁴} *avoir honte* f. ^{e²} but he is not ashamed ^{e¹} to correct himself; we must not ^{e⁶⁵} *avoir* ^{e¹} *de s'en corriger* ^{e³} hate men, but it is certainly allowed ^{e¹} to be afraid of them; ^{e¹} *hàir* ^{e¹} *bien permettre de avoir peur* f. *en* you frighten me; endeavour ^{e³⁶} to meet ^{e¹} your payments; ^{e³⁶} *faire peur* ^{e³⁶} *de faire face à engagement* m. the king and his ministers have been in council for two ^{e²} ^{e¹⁵} *tenir conseil* ^{e⁶⁰} hours; we are confused about *everything* when we are not ^{e¹⁰} ^{e¹⁵} *embarrassé* ^{e⁶⁵} ^{e⁴⁰} ^{e³} ^{e¹⁵} sincere in *anything*. 3°. I saw him ^{e²} shivering with cold; ^{e³⁶} *de bonne foi* ^{e²} ^{e³⁶} ^{e⁴} *qui frissonner* ^{e¹⁰} *froid* m. at the sight of his judge he trembled with fear; he no sooner ^{e²³} ^{e¹⁰} ^{e⁴⁸} *pas plutôt* had put his foot on shore than he leapt with joy. ^H ^{e²} ^{e¹¹} ^{e⁷} *terre* f. *sauter* ^{e¹⁰} *joie* f.

RULE LXVI. 1°. Nouns enumerated and used with *ni*, neither, or *ne que*, Anglicised by *nothing but*, are often used without the article, as—

<i>elle n'a ni grace, ni beauté,</i>	she has neither grace, beauty,
<i>ni talent,</i>	nor talent.
<i>Je n'ai vu qu' abandon et</i>	I saw nothing but desertion
<i>solitude,</i>	and solitude.

2°. When the word *soit* is repeated, or understood by ellipsis, the article is omitted before the noun, as—

<i>soit erreur, soit lâcheté, or soit</i>	whether from error or coward-
<i>erreur ou lâcheté, il suc-</i>	ice, he fell.
<i>comba,</i>	

3°. The article is also omitted before a noun repeated with a preposition, also before nouns used as proverbs, maxims, &c., as—

mot à mot, pieds contre pieds, | word for word, foot to foot.
contentement passe richesse, | content surpasses riches.

4°. When the noun is preceded by *jamais*, the article is seldom used, as—

jamais enfant ne fut plus docile, | never was child more docile.

EXERCISE LXVI.

1°. The pretended philosopher [^] can have neither faith nor
^{e⁹} ^{e¹⁵} *philosophiste* ^{e²⁰} ^{e³⁰} *ne* ^{e³¹} ^{e³} *foi* ^{e⁸}
law; we [^] must despise neither the old, the poor, nor the
^{e⁹} ^{e¹⁵} *ne* ^{e²⁰} ^{e³⁰} ^{e³¹} *pl. pauvre* ^{e³} *pl.*
lame; there's a speech that has neither beginning nor
^{e⁹} ^{e¹⁵} *estropier* ^{e²⁰} ^{e³⁰} *voilà discours* ^{e³¹} ^{e³} *pl. commencement* ^{e⁸}
end; that man [^] has neither vice nor virtue, neither talent nor
^{e⁹} ^{e¹⁵} *fin* ^{e²⁰} ^{e³⁰} *ne* ^{e³¹} ^{e³} *...m.* ^{e⁸} ^{e¹} ^{e³⁰} *.....m.* ^{e⁸}
defect. 2°. Whether from timidity [^] or fear, he dare not
^{e⁹} ^{e¹⁵} *défaut* ^{e²⁰} ^{e³⁰} *soit* — ^{e³¹} ^{e³} *.....é f. soit — crainte* ^{e⁸}
speak to you; either through neglect, or forgetfulness on his
^{e⁹} ^{e¹⁵} ^{e²⁰} ^{e³⁰} *part,* the bill was not paid *when due.* 3°. A house of straw
^{e⁹} ^{e¹⁵} ^{e²⁰} ^{e³⁰} *.....f. traite* ^{e³¹} ^{e³} *à son échéance* ^{e⁸} — ^{e²} ^{e⁶}
where we laugh, is better than a palace where [^] we cry;
^{e⁹} ^{e¹⁵} ^{e²⁰} ^{e³⁰} *valoir* ^{e³¹} ^{e³} *palais* ^{e²¹} ^{e¹⁵} *le* ^{e³} *pleurer*
I am not one of those who love [^] to return evil for evil, but
^{e⁹} ^{e¹⁵} ^{e²⁰} ^{e³⁰} ^{e³¹} ^{e³} *à* ^{e²²} ^{e⁶} ^{e⁵} ^{e¹}
I will always repel force by force; all wood is grey when [^]
^{e⁹} ^{e¹⁵} *repousser* ^{e²⁰} ^{e³⁰} ^{e³¹} ^{e³} *.....f.* ^{e⁸} ^{e¹} *gris* ^{e¹}
reduced to ashes. 4°. Never was ² a man ¹ more brave than
^{e⁹} ^{e¹⁵} *est réduit en cendre* ^{e²⁰} ^{e³⁰} ^{e³¹} ^{e³} *f.* ^{e⁴} ^{e¹} ^{e⁴⁰} *.....*
this young officer.
^{e²⁰} *officier*

ON THE REPETITION OF THE ARTICLE.

RULE LXVII. 1°. When the article is used before the first of a series of nouns, it must be repeated before each subsequent one, and the last linked by a conjunction.

la paix ramène le repos, la | peace brings back rest, tran-
tranquillité, et les richesses, | quillity, and riches.

2°. But, in order to render the style more rapid and energetic, the article and the conjunction are sometimes omitted, as—

<i>citoyens, étrangers, ennemis,</i>	citizens, strangers, enemies,
<i>peuple, rois, empereurs, le</i>	people, kings, emperors,
<i>pleignent et le révérent,</i>	pity and respect him.

3°. The article is also omitted when several nouns are united under one collective word, such as *tout, rien, chacun*, and the verb agrees with the collective word.

<i>jeux, conversation, spectacle,</i>	sports, conversations, sights,
<i>rien ne la distrait,</i>	nothing diverts her.

4°. The article is not repeated before a second noun, when the latter is a compound of the first, or when such nouns are nearly synonymous.

<i>le flux et reflux,</i>	the ebb and flood.
<i>les tours et sinuosités de cette</i>	the turns and windings of that
<i>rivière,</i>	river.

EXERCISE LXVII.

1°. We must declare war to five things: namely, ^{e⁸} *déclarer* ^{e²} ^{e¹⁶} *savoir* [^] *à* ^{e¹³} *maladies* of the body, [^] *ignorance* of the mind, [^] *passions* of the ^{e⁶} *corps* m. [^] *à*f. ^{e⁶} *à*f. heart, [^] *seditions* of cities, and [^] *discord* of families; towers, ^{e⁶} *à* ^{e¹³} *sé*.....f. ^{e¹³} *à*e f. ^{e¹³} *tour* f. huts, palaces, and churches, were overturned; ignorance is the ^{e⁶⁶} *cabane* f. ^{e⁶³}f. ^{e⁶¹}f. mother of admiration, error, doubt, wavering, superstition, ^{e⁶}f. ^{e¹³} *scrupule* m. ^{e¹³} *irrésolution* s.f.f. follies, and prejudices of all kinds. 2°. Citizens, strangers, ^{e¹⁴} *prévention* f. ^{e⁴} ^{e¹⁴} *citoyens* ^{e¹⁶} *ennemis*, people, kings, emperors, pity and revere him; glory, ^{e³³} ^{e⁴⁰} ^{e²} ^{e³} ^{e⁴⁶} *révérent* ^{e¹} riches, nobility, power, are only imaginary names. ^{e¹} *titre* m. ^{e¹} f. ^{e¹} ^{e¹} 3°. Prayers, exhortations, commands, threats, nothing ^{e¹³} *prière* f.f. ^{e¹³} *commendement* m. ^{e¹³} *menace* f. ^{e¹³} [^] can excite his emulation; ministers, generals, courtiers, ^{e¹⁵} *ne* ^{e¹⁵} *exciter* ^{e¹⁵}f. ^{e¹⁵} *é*..... ^{e¹⁵} *courtisan* all hastened ^{e¹⁴} *s'empresser* [^] *d'* ^{e¹⁴} *aller* ^{e¹⁴} *complimenter* ^{e¹⁴} *victorieux* ^{e¹⁴} *é*.....

RULE LXVIII.—When two adjectives qualify a noun, reference must be made to the idea we wish to express; if we wish to distinguish two distinct objects by the adjectives employed, we must use an article before each, but if we intend to distinguish only one object, of course only one article must be used, as—

<i>le beau et le mauvais tems,</i>	good and bad weather.
<i>je viens de passer chez le bon</i>	I have just called on the good
<i>et honnête Mons. Durval,</i>	and honest Mr. Durval.

In the first example two kinds of weather is alluded to, and consequently two articles are used; in the second only one person is understood, and however numerous the adjectives might otherwise have been, only one article would be used.

2°. When the adjectives are placed after the noun, an article is placed before the noun, and one before the second adjective, as required by the sense, as—

<i>la couleur blanche et la bleue</i>	white and blue produce a
<i>ont un joli effet,</i>	pretty effect.
<i>la robe blanche et bleue est</i>	the white and blue gown is
<i>finie,</i>	finished.

In the first sentence it is evident that two colours are alluded to, whereas in the second only one gown; but if we had written *la robe blanche et la bleue*, we must have concluded *elles sont finies*, as evidently two gowns would have been alluded to.

The same rule is applicable to the adjectives *un, une*, the possessive pronouns *mon, ma, mes, &c.*, and to the demonstrative pronouns *ce, cette, ces*.

3°. The article, possessive pronoun, &c., must be repeated in every case, when the noun is qualified by two adjectives in the superlative degree, as—

<i>voici la plus grande et la plus</i>	this is the largest and the
<i>jolie maison du village,</i>	prettiest house in the village

and not *la plus grande et plus jolie maison*, though evidently only one house is understood.

EXERCISE LXVIII.

1°. See that warehouse where an ignorant bookseller has
^{e⁴} *magazin m.* ^{e²¹} *libraire*
aped together all good and bad works, the sacred and
^{e²} *entasser* ^{e⁹} ^{e⁷} *sacré*

profane; he occupies the first and second floor; the old and
 occuper étage e²⁶
 new wines have been served up at the same time; a gentle
 e³⁵ e³ servis fois f. dous
 and happy repose is at last restored to us; the good and bad
 fortuné repos m. enfin rendu e² e¹
 prince reign in a very different manner; the large and small
 reigner — bien différemment e³ petit
 apartments of the palace are opened; the extensive and beautiful
 appartement m. e⁶⁶ e²³ vaste superbe
 gardens of the king are delightful. 2°. My black² and white³
 e³ e² admirable noir blanc
 hats¹ are at the hatter's; my black² and white³ waistcoat¹ is at
 e⁶ sing. chez chapelier e⁶⁸ e⁶⁸ gilet m. e¹
 the tailor's; yellow and blue produce
 tailleur la couleur jaune m. bleu m. produire
 disagreeable² effect¹; he is the most whimsical and charitable
 e²³ e⁶⁶ ce bizarre
 man I ever knew.
 e¹ que e³⁴ e²⁷ τ

OF THE PARTITIVE WORD *QUELQUE*, SOME, RENDERED BY
DU, DE LA, DES.

RULE LXIX.—4. 1°. *Quelque*, when singular, denotes an object; when plural, an indefinite quantity; and is rendered in English by the word *some*, or *a few*, as—

<i>quelque fripon m'a volé,</i>	some thief has robbed me.
<i>apportez moi quelques poires,</i>	bring me a few pears.

But *du, de la, des*, is now more elegantly used instead of *quelque*, with nouns used in a partitive sense, or only denoting part of a species.

2°. When an adjective precedes a noun, taken in a partitive sense, *de* is used instead of *du, de la, des*; but if the adjective and noun be so united in the sense as to form a kind of compound word, imparting but one idea, then *des* must be used in the plural, as—

<i>Je ferai bâtir de petites mai-</i>	I will build some small houses.
<i>sons,</i>	
<i>le roi fait bâtir des petites-</i>	the king is building asylums
<i>maisons,</i>	for lunatics.

In the first example *maisons* is restricted by the real adjective *petites*, and imparts a twofold idea, houses and their size.

hereas, in the second example, the two words impart but one idea, that of an asylum, and the adjective loses its real signification, again,

<i>Voilà de belles lettres,</i>	here are some beautiful letters.
<i>Il avait des belles-lettres,</i>	he was a man of literature.

3°. Should the noun, preceded by an adjective, be restricted by what follows, the article is used, or *du, de la, des*, if the preceding word requires *de*, not in the sense of some, but as the second state of the article, as—

<i>J'ai besoin de grand papier,</i>	I want some large paper.
<i>Je me suis servi du grand papier qui était dans le magasin,</i>	I made use of the large paper that was in the warehouse.

In the first example, *grand papier* is used in a vague, indefinite, partitive sense; in the second it is restricted and rendered definite by the words *qui est dans le magasin*, and therefore *du* is used; but take away the incidental words *qui est dans le magasin*, and you must use *de* instead of *du*; *je me suis servi de grand papier*.

4°. It may be difficult to distinguish when *du, de la, des*, are partitive words, or the second state of the article. The rule is, however, simple if observed: *du, de la, des*, are partitive words when they precede a noun that is either the subject or direct object of a verb, or governed by a preposition, and in other cases it is the second state of the article.

Subjects. { *du pain et de l'eau me suffisent.*
 { *de bon pain et de bonne eau me suffisent.*

Subjects. { *Je ne demande que du pain et de l'eau.*
 { *Je ne demande que de bon pain et de bonne eau.*

Governed by a { *on peut vivre avec du pain et de l'eau.*
preposition. { *on peut vivre avec de bon pain et de bonne eau.*

In these three cases *du, de la, des*, are partitive particles, because in the first they precede the subject, in the second the subject, and in the third the noun is governed by the preposition *avec*; but in the following—

la digestion du pain et de l'eau n'est pas difficile, or
la digestion du bon pain et de la bonne eau n'est pas difficile,

and *de la* are the second state of the article, because they precede neither the subject nor object of a verb, nor are they governed by a preposition.

EXERCISE LXIX.

A few pieces of cannon were placed on the surrounding hills; a few patrols were sufficient to maintain order; a fool never admires himself so much as when he has done some foolish thing; the prodigal disperses gold like dirt, and the miser gathers dirt like gold. 2°. Fine gentlemen and fine ladies are very disagreeable beings; I have seen robins in the month of August; there are fine women in England; she has some daughters-in-law in France. 3°. They have none but good paper in that work; he has parted with horses decorated with the statues of the great men who had served their country.

..à...f. canon m. H e⁷ sur environnant
colline f. patrouille f. suffire a e⁴¹ ordre m. e¹³,
e⁵⁴ s'admirer e⁸¹ e³ e¹³
sottise f. prodigue disperser e¹ e²⁴ fumier m.
e⁹ recueillir e⁶⁰ e²⁴ e¹ petit-maitre petites-
mattresses insupportable être e⁴ rouge-gorge
e⁸ août m. e⁴ e⁸ e⁷
belle-fille employe
que e² e⁴ e⁷ se défaire e¹⁰
e¹ que e¹ champs m.
orné e¹⁰f. e¹ e¹ a e¹⁴
la e²

OBSERVATIONS ON WORDS OF QUANTITY.

As the word *quantity*, whether implying bulk or number, requires the preposition *de* in French, and *of* in English, as—*quantité de beurre, de poules*, | a quantity of butter, of hens, so every expression in the French language, although not in English, that refers in any manner to this word, governs the same preposition, as—

un peu de vin, } equivalent to *{ une petite quantité de vin,*
 a little wine,... } a little quantity of wine.

RULE LXX. 1°. Among the words of quantity that exclude the article and take *de* before the noun, must be included words of measure, weight, number, &c., as *livre*, pound; *boisseau*, bushel; *une vingtaine*, a score; also words figuratively expressive of quantity, as—

un nuage de poussière, | a cloud of dust.

1. As words of quantity, *pas, point, plus, jamais, &c.*, it of only *de* before the noun, as—

Je n'ai point de livres, | I have no books.

interrogation be added to the negation, or if an adjective e after the noun, the article is used, as—

<i>Il n'a pas de l'esprit?</i>		has he not sense?
<i>Il n'a pas des manières aimables,</i>		he has not agreeable manners.

EXERCISE LXX.

2. This author embraces *too much* matter, too many facts

auteur e³⁸ *matière* f. e² — e⁴³
particulars; they were loaded with an enormous quantity
détail m. *charger* e¹⁰ *infinité* f.

spoils; a troop of nymphs were seated near her;
rouille f. e⁴⁰ f. e G *assis auprès de*

many great actions have² been related³ to us¹; how many
beau f. on — e²⁴ e⁴⁰

deeds have been registered in the records of virtue
me trait on — *consigné* *annale* f. e¹

the revolution has taken place, but also how many
is que ..é..... f. *s'est opéré* e²³ e⁴⁰

scenes, how many bloody scenes never to be forgotten; a
leur f. e⁴⁰ *sanglant* ...é.. f. *qui* e⁵⁴ I *oublié*

word of heroes crossed our passage. 2°. I have bought no
de f. e⁶¹ *se trouver* K *sur* m. e¹

this year; why have you not bought any books this
e² e²⁶ e¹ e²

? do you not take any wine? no, I do not take any wine;
e⁵ e² e⁵ e³

do not take any steps that might compromise you; do not
faire démarche f. e¹⁸ K *compromettre*

my manners that do not suit you.

convenir e²⁸

OF A OR AN, UN, UNE.

RULE LXXI.—5. 1°. When the verb *être*, used with *ce*, followed by a noun, expressive of a person's country, trade, profession, &c., either *un, une, le, la, les*, or *du, de la, des*, it precedes the noun, whether restricted or not, as—

<i>un officier,</i>		it is an officer.
<i>des marchandes de mode</i>		these are milliners.
<i>le médecin dont je vous</i>		this is the doctor I spoke to
<i>parlé,</i>		you of.

Un, une, is also used before nouns as above, when objects of the verb *faire de*, and a noun or pronoun, as—

Je ferai de mon fils un avocat, I will make a lawyer of my son.
J'aimerais mieux en faire un I would rather make him a
médecin. doctor.

2°. *Un, une*, is omitted, as also the article *le, &c.*, before nouns or incidental sentences used as restrictive or explanatory of what precedes,—

<i>le Duc de York, prince du sang,</i> <i>elle est très-malade, raison suffisante pour ne pas venir,</i>	the Duke of York, a prince of the blood. she is very ill, a sufficient cause for her not coming.
--	--

3°. Speaking of time, and the amount an individual ~~may~~ receive or earn during a stated period, *a* or *an* is rendered by *par*, as—

elle gagne 4 schellings par jour, | she earns 4 shillings a day.

4°. But if the amount be not expressed, and you wish to state in what portion of time a person performs an act, or in what proportion he obtains or disposes of anything, the third state of the article must be used, as—

<i>il travaille à l'heure,</i>	he works by the hour.
<i>il vend cela à la livre,</i>	he sells that by the pound.

5°. Speaking also of what is paid for admittance, or the attendance of a person, also for the amount charged by the proportion of time, *par* is generally used for *a* or *an*.

il faut payer 4s. par personne, combien prenez-vous par leçon? | you must pay 4s. a piece. how much do you charge a lesson?

Je loue cet appartement 30 francs par semaine, | I let this apartment at thirty francs a week.

EXERCISE LXXI.

1°. It is an officer of the guards who has fought a duel;
e¹³iere e⁶³ enm.
 who is come to town? it is a celebrated physician who wants
arriver e⁵⁵ e² e¹³ e⁶³ médecin demander
 me; it is the wine merchant. 2°. Nino, the founder of Nine-
e¹³ e³ e⁵ Ninus fondateur
 veh, married Semiramis the widow of one of his officers; I
e² — e²⁷ier

will make a merchant of my eldest son, and a sailor of the
 younger. 3°. I will give him three shillings a day, or a
 shilling the load; I have freighted a vessel of 300 tons for
 £150 a month. 4°. I have bought this wheat by the bushel;
 he has taken this farm by the year; the men employed in that
 manufacture, who work by the day, receive 25s. a week, those
 who work by the piece earn six guineas a month. 5°.
 How much do you charge a lesson for music? three guineas
 a dozen; we had an excellent dinner yesterday, wine included,
 for six francs a head.
m. e⁸

CHAPTER SECOND.

OF NOUNS.

A NOUN in language is of great importance, as it requires all the words dependent on it to assume its accidence. 1st, The article which determines it; 2d, The adjective and participle that qualify it; 3d, The pronoun that represents it; and 4th, The verb which points out the existence of the object which the noun denominates. But as the particular rules of the noun will be found incorporated in the rules of the other parts of speech dependent on it, little remains here to be observed.

RULE LXXII.—6. 1°. No noun in French can end with 's, sign of the second state in English; it is generally rendered by *de*, with or without the article, and the nouns, however numerous, transposed, as—

<i>le cheval de César,</i>		Cæsar's horse.
<i>la présence d'esprit du roi,</i>		the king's presence of mind.

2°. When of *the*, coming before a noun ending with 's, is preceded by *one*, it is expressed by *des*; but *des* is omitted if preceded by any other numerical adjective, as—

<i>un des chevaux du capitaine,</i>		one of the captain's horses.
<i>deux chevaux du capitaine,</i>		two of the captain's horses.

3°. A noun ending in 's, preceded by the verb *to be*, in the sense of *to belong*, must in French be preceded by *à*, with or without the article, as—

<i>cet oiseau est à ma mère,</i>	this bird is my mother's.
<i>« qui est cette maison? elle est</i>	whose house is this? it is my
<i>à l'oncle de ma mère,</i>	mother's uncle's.

4°. When 's at the end of a noun refers to something before mentioned in the first part of the sentence, the noun understood must be supplied by *celui de*, *celle de*, *ceux de*, *celles de*, and placed before the noun which in English ends with 's, as—

<i>mon chapeau est usé avant</i>	my hat is worn before my
<i>celui de mon frère,</i>	brother's.
<i>ce chapeau est meilleur que</i>	this hat is better than James's
<i>celui de James,</i>	

5°. The 's at the end of proper names, or titles referring to residence, is rendered by *chez* or *maison*; or when it refers to balls, routes, &c., such balls or routes are expressed in French, as—

<i>avez-vous passé chez Madame</i>	have you called at Madame de
<i>de Préal?</i>	Preval's?
<i>Je n'irai pas au bal du Duc</i>	I shall not be at the Duke's
<i>ce soir,</i>	to-night.

EXERCISE LXXII.

1°. An honest man's first care is to avoid the reproaches of
honnête e¹ e⁶ e⁴⁸ reproche f.
 his conscience; and his second, the world's censure. 2°. One
f. e⁶⁴f.
 of my brother's steam vessels was nearly lost last week; three
 e² e⁷ e⁴ e³² e²³ e³ e³³
 of Mr. Findlay's ships arrived from Trinidad on Thursday
 e⁴ e¹⁸ K — Jeudi m.
 last, but one of the ship's cargoes is not sold yet. 3°. The
 e³ e¹ e⁴ cargaison f. e¹ e³⁰
 house which you see with the balcony is my father's, and the
 e² e⁴ e⁸ balcon m. e²
 one next to it is Mr. Wood's. 4°. My Latin master and my
autre attenante e⁶
 brother's are gone to the country; your boat is much larger
 e² e¹ e¹⁴ e⁷ e³
 than Mr. Smith's, but does not sail so well as Mr. Dun-
celui e¹ courir e¹ e¹² celui

stan's; we went to the Duke of Wellington's (dinner) yesterday;
 ^{e¹} ^{e⁴¹} ^{e⁷¹} ^{e²⁸}
 Lady Sophia and I are going to Catalini's (concert) to-night,
 ^{ie} ^{e¹} ^{m.} ^{e²¹}
 afterwards we shall go to Mrs. Darlington's (ball).
 après quoi ^{e¹} ^{e²⁴}

RULE LXXIII.—7. 1°. When one noun is governed by another it must be joined to it by means of a preposition, principally by *de* or *à*, and sometimes by *pour*, which point out a variety of relations, as—

measure or containing,	<i>une bouteille de vin,</i>	a bottle of wine.
made to contain,	<i>une bouteille à vin,</i>	a wine bottle.
definite,	<i>la bouteille au vin,</i>	the wine bottle.
active, inclination,	<i>la passion pour le vin,</i>	a passion for wine.

2°. When *mode*, fashion, is the second of two nouns, they are united by *à la*, as—

un habit à la mode, | a fashionable coat.

And before an adjective, the word *mode* being understood, as—

un chapeau à l'Anglaise, | an English hat.

3°. When two nouns are united by *de* or *à*, and that the second noun merely denotes the nature, quality, or substance of the first noun, without any idea of plurality, it must remain in the singular, as—

les gants de peau, | leather gloves. || *des arbres à fruit,* | fruit trees.

But if there is any idea of plurality of things that could be numbered in the second noun, it must be in the plural, as—

<i>une assemblée de chrétiens,</i>		a meeting of christians.
<i>un joli pot à fleurs,</i>		a pretty flower pot.

We therefore say—

<i>les caprices de demoiselle.</i>		<i>une pension de demoiselles.</i>
<i>les bouquets de jasmin.</i>		<i>des bouquets de roses.</i>
<i>les gens de plume.</i>		<i>un marchand de plumes.</i>

In the first examples the second noun simply expresses the nature or quality of the first noun, without any idea of plurality, whereas, in the second examples, the second noun expresses a particular and determinate sense, with an idea of plurality.

4°. A noun, preceded by an adjective governing the preposition *de* or *à*, follows the same rule, as—

<i>plein de bonne volonté,</i>		full of good-will.
<i>plein de défauts,</i>		full of faults.

There is no idea of plurality in *good-will*, but there is as there can be in *faults*.

EXERCISE LXXIII.

1°. You have upset the basket of fruit; where are the nectrines? they are in the fruit basket. 2°. Your velvet is not fashionable; have you seen the queen Isabella's ambassador? yes, and though his dress is Spanish, his mamma are French; Bem wears a Turkish turban, and carries his sword like the Hungarians. 3°. He has brought a quantity of feathers of birds of paradise; I received a handsome pair of ear-rings from America, and a beautiful Indian shawl; I never travel without fire-arms. 4°. This child is full of good-will, but his father is full of faults; have the goodness to tell me where I shall find a lady's good boarding school.

renverser panier m. ...m. e²¹
brugnon m. ...m. e⁷³ velour m. e² Isabella e²¹
à la mode e⁴ e² Isabella e²¹
ambassadeur e¹⁵ e⁴ habillement m. R e²
..... porterm. e²¹
épée f. e²⁴ e⁴ —f. e¹
plume f. oiseau m. paradis m. e¹⁰ beau paire f. e²³ boucle f. e⁶⁸ schale m. e¹⁸
e³ e³ e⁷ e⁷ e¹⁸ rempli e² e⁴ e¹ e² e⁷³ e⁹ e²³
e⁷ e²¹ e¹⁰ demoiselle e² pension f. e²³

CHAPTER THIRD.

OF ADJECTIVES.

AGREEMENTS OF ADJECTIVES WITH THEIR NOUNS.

RULE LXXIV.—8. 1°. There is a great diversity of opinion respecting the agreement of the adjective coming immediately after several nouns. The simplest and only grammatical rule, however, is, that when two nouns are united by a conjunction, the adjective attending them must be put in the

lural, it being the only sign by which we are informed that the adjective qualifies both nouns, as—

<i>il avait le visage et le corps</i>	his face and body were
<i>noirs,</i>	black.

2°. The idea of unity which two nouns that are synonymous nearly so, have on the mind, rejects equally the union formed by a conjunction, and the sign of the plural in the adjective, but the adjective must agree in gender with the last noun, as—

<i>toute sa vie n'a été qu'un travail qu'une occupation continue,</i>	all his life has been a continual labour and occupation.
---	--

Travail and *occupation* being nearly synonymous, do not require the adjective *continue* to be in the plural, as the singular is sufficient to qualify the one idea of active employment imparted by the words labour and occupation.

3°. When several nouns are enumerated, and that the mind dwells more forcibly on the last, in consequence of its being more energetic, or because it forms a kind of climax, the adjective is made to agree with the last only, as—

<i>l'épée, le bandeau, la flamme</i>	the sword, the bonds, the
<i>est toute prête,</i>	torch is ready.

Observe, however, that we find many good writers using the copulative, and not making the adjective plural, as—

<i>(enfant) fait déplorer la misère et la perversité humaine.—J.J.R.</i>	he makes one lament the misery and perverseness of human nature.
--	--

4°. As the adjective cannot impose its accident on the nouns, so several adjectives cannot force the noun to assume the sign of the plural; in cases, therefore, where several adjectives attend a noun, the noun remains singular, as—

<i>l'enfant apprend la langue Française et l'Anglaise,</i>	he learns the French and the English language.
<i>première et la seconde classe,</i>	the first and second class.

as if it were *la langue Française et la langue Anglaise; la première classe, et la seconde classe.*

EXERCISE LXXIV.

1°. In most courtiers we find but an affected politeness
chez presque tous ^{e⁸⁷} ^{e¹⁵} ^{e¹⁰} ^{e¹⁹} *affecté politesse* f.
 and sincerity; he found the ponds and rivers frozen; his
sincérité f. ^{e¹⁰} *étang* m. ^{e¹¹} *gelé*
 gardener worked with ^{e²¹} ^{e⁶⁰} ^{e⁸} *un* ^{e⁶⁶} ^{e¹⁴} *adresse* f.
 This actor performs with much³ ^{e⁸} *charmant* ^{e¹} *taste* and ^{e²} *grace*; this
acteur jouer ^{e⁸} *gout* m. —f.
 hero displayed in danger an astonishing³ intrepidity¹ and
^{e⁶¹} *déployer*m. ^{e⁶⁶}é.....é f. —
 courage²; Augustus governed Rome with a continued³
m.te *gouverner* ^{e⁸} *continu*
 moderation¹ and mildness². 3°. The soldiers, officers, generals,
f. — *douceur* f. ^{e⁵}ier ..é..é.....
 the whole army is disbanded; the king, the queen, the princes,
entieré f. *licencié* ^{e²} ^{e²}
 the royal family is banished. 4°. He intends ^{e¹³} *banni* ^{e³} *de publier*
 course of literature of the French, Italian, and German
^{e¹}f.
 language; all their prayers were shared between the ^{e⁶⁰} *vœux* m. *se partager* a *entre* *chevalier* ^{e⁶⁶}
 and the white knight.
^{e⁶⁶} *chevalier*

RULE LXXV.—1°. When an adjective is used to modify a verb, it loses the character of an adjective, becomes an adverb, and is indeclinable, without any reference to the preceding noun, as—

Mlle. vous parlez trop haut, | Miss, you speak too loud.
cette tulipe ne sent pas bon, | this tulip has not a good smell.

2°. When an adjective positively qualifies a noun, it must agree with that noun without reference to any other noun with which it may be connected, as—

vous sœur a l'air content, | your sister appears satisfied.

Not *contente*, because it qualifies *air*, m., the appearance of the countenance, and not *sœur*, as we could say *vous sœur a le pied bien fait*, not *faite*, your sister has a well-made foot; but when the quality expressed by the adjective cannot assimilate with the noun, it is better to give another turn to the sentence, as—

vous sœur a l'air enrhumé, | your sister appears to be hoarse.

the abstract noun *air* cannot be nor appear *enrhumé*,
 verse, it is better to say *votre sœur a l'air d'être enrhumée*,
parait-être enrhumée.

3°. When the adjective is in the superlative degree, the
 un with which it agrees is sometimes understood, as—

printems est la plus agréable | spring is the most agreeable
des saisons, | of seasons.

if it were *le printems est la saison la plus agréable de
 des les saisons*.

EXERCISE LXXV.

1°. The rain fell hard and fast; the flowers ^A you had the
^{e¹³ f.} ^{e⁸} *dru* ^{menu} ^{e²³} ^{que} ^H
 xness ^A to send me were very fresh, and smell very sweet;
^{e¹³} ^{de} ^{e³} ^G ^{e³} *frais* ^{sentir} ^{e³} ^{bon}
 purchase too dear minds born ^A to grovel, and noble minds
^{e¹} ^{e³} ^{e³} *cœur m. né pour descendre* ^{élevé} ^{e¹⁶}
 never to be ^A bought; these young ladies speak a little
^{e¹⁴} — ^{à vendre} ^{e²⁰} ^{e¹⁹} ^{e¹²} ^{e⁴}
 low. 2°. This young lady appears scornful, and yet she
bas ^{e²⁰} ^{e¹⁹} *avoir l'air dédaigneux* ^{e²⁰}
 affable; your land seems already sown; his sister appears
 ^{terre f.} ^{e³} *déjà ensemencé* ^{e¹²} ^{e¹⁶}
 if she were humpbacked; I advise you, my friend, to
 — ^{bossu} ^{engager} ^{e⁴} ^à
 lieve this woman, she seems to be very unfortunate, and in
lager ^{e⁷} ^{e³} ^{e⁵} —
 at pain; I have lost my black silk stockings. 3°. Noyau
s-souffrant ^{e²³} ^{e²⁸} ^{e²} ^{e¹⁰} *Noyeau m.*
 the most agreeable ^A liquor ^A I know; Spain is the
^{e²} *des liqueur f. que* ^{e²⁷} ^R
 st fertile ^A country ^A I have seen; it is the finest ^A city
 ^{des} ^{e¹⁵} ^{que} ^{e⁴} ^T ^{e¹⁴} ^{e³} ^{des} ^{e¹⁵}
 the west of Scotland.
ouest m.

PLACE OF ADJECTIVES.

An adjective cannot be indifferently placed before or after
 noun. A few rules may fix the positive place of some
 actives, but in general the ear must be the guide. A well
 ght pupil will, in a few months, readily distinguish when
 adjective is properly or improperly placed, as the smooth

reading in the one case, and the grating sound in the other, will be very apparent, as, *une demoiselle belle et agréable* is more euphonic than *une belle et agréable demoiselle*.

OBSERVE.—The natural place of an adjective is after the noun, and when it precedes, it is because it is more closely united to the noun, so much so, that in some instances it forms but one idea; or, because for want of sufficient words to express every idea, the same adjective is made to produce different associations, according as we place it before or after the noun, as—

un brave garçon, | a good boy. || *un garçon brave,* | a brave boy

RULE LXXVI.—9. 1°. The adjectives mentioned in this rule of syntax as preceding the noun are sometimes placed after when they are restricted by an adverb, or when the adjective has a complement, as—

<i>une maison fort triste,</i>	a very dull house.
<i>un homme bon envers tout le monde,</i>	a man kind to every body.

On the other hand, if it be the noun that has a complement the adjective, if euphony will allow it, must precede the noun or come after the complement, that the noun and complement may not be divided.

<i>l'incomparable auteur de vert-vert,</i>	the incomparable author of
<i>une natte de jonc grossière,</i>	a coarse mat of rushes.

2°. Though when two adjectives come together they are placed after the noun they qualify, yet in some cases they may both precede the noun, if euphony requires it, or the noun be placed between them, which occurs when the first adjective and the noun are so closely united in the sense that a separation does not seem possible without altering the sense or that the adjective has a different signification, according to it is placed before or after the noun, as—

c'est un petit homme instruit, | he is a learned little man
Were *petit* placed after *homme* it would signify mean.

3°. Having given in Syntax a list of adjectives that generally precede nouns, and in the appendix a list of those that either precede or come after them, according to their meaning or harmony, it remains only to mention those that fr

1. Such are adjectives formed from verbs, as the participles of the past and present.

<i>est un pays très-peuplé,</i>	it is a very populous country.
<i>là un livre amusant,</i>	there is an amusing book.

atives of defects, form, colour, taste, or sound, and those antries, or when the noun or adjective expresses a kind ss, as—

<i>jez cet homme boiteux,</i>	relieve that lame man.
<i>z moi un bonnet rouge,</i>	give me a red cap.
<i>jère le vin doux,</i>	I prefer sweet wine.
<i>une voix harmonieuse,</i>	she has an harmonious voice.
<i>né d'un père Français,</i>	he is born of a French father.
<i>ne végétale,</i>	the animal kingdom.

EXERCISE LXXVI.

I have seen your *brother-in-law*; he is a very young
beau frère death is a misfortune common to all; the elegant
 ator of the Georgics sleeps in the cemetery of Père la
Georgique f. reposer cimetière m. ..
 e; its sides (Lochmond's) are irregularly covered with
pente f. inégalement recouvert
 of trees, green, black, or blue; *everybody* admired
 ajestic obelisk that has been raised on the ancient place
estueux obélisque m. élevé
 Cairo; the misfortune of a long and disastrous war has
 sted this fine country; she had long black hair. 3°. The
 was calm, there were seen but a few small
 r-coloured clouds like to russet vapours, which traversed
 h greater swiftness than that of birds. 4°. White
 to have been at all times the striking emblem of

iousness
ité f.

OF THE GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

GENERAL RULE.—Adjectives require to be joined to the complement by a preposition, and whatever preposition may be used in English, care must be taken to use the preposition particularly required by the French adjective, which being determined more by the law of custom than by principle, no very definite rule can be given; we have, therefore, introduced a long list of these adjectives, with their peculiar prepositions in the Appendix. The following general rules are the only ones that can be given. Adjectives whose signification is definite require no complement, as *ambitieux, courageux, estimable, &c. &c.*

ADJECTIVES GOVERNING THE PREPOSITION *DE*.

RULE LXXVII.—The adjectives which require *de* before their complements are—

1°. Those preceded by the verb *être*, used impersonally, whatever preposition they require in other cases, as—

<i>il est agréable de voir la campagne,</i>	it is agreeable to see the country.
<i>il est honteux de médire de son prochain,</i>	it is a shame to slander one's neighbour.

2°. Those expressing plenty, scarcity, or exclusion, as—

plenty..... <i>comblé de richesses,</i>	loaded with riches.
scarcity... <i>court de deux pouces,</i>	short by two inches.
exclusion.. <i>privé de tout,</i>	deprived of everything.

3°. Those expressing any sensation of desire or satisfaction, or any emotion of the mind, such as *joy, grief, anger, &c.*

desire..... <i>avide de richesses,</i>	greedy of wealth.
satisfaction.. <i>content de son bien,</i>	pleased with his wealth.
grief..... <i>désolé de sa perte,</i>	in despair at his loss.
fear..... <i>effrayé de tout le monde,</i>	afraid of everybody.

4°. Those expressing knowledge or ability, as—

knowledge... <i>instruit de tout,</i>	informed of everything.
ability..... <i>capable de parler,</i>	able to speak.

and in general those which in English govern of, from, with or by, as—

<i>il est fatigué de courir,</i>	he is fatigued with running.
<i>il est aimé de tout le monde,</i>	she is loved by everybody.

OBSERVE.—Two adjectives may have the same complement, providing they govern the same preposition, which need be expressed only after the second adjective, as—

il est utile et cher à sa famille, | he is useful, and dear to his family.

Both *utile* and *cher* govern *à*, but it would be incorrect to say *chéri et utile à sa famille*, because *chéri*, beloved, governs *de*, in such cases write *il est chéri de sa famille et lui est utile*, or, *il est utile à sa famille et en est chéri*.

EXERCISE LXXVII.

1°. It is not difficult to be a philosopher when one is without feeling; it is glorious to die for our country. 2°. Men insensible loaded with the gifts of fortune are like ships too heavily laden, which are in greater danger than others to founder; charged we censure the unfortunate to exempt ourselves from assisting them; his head is filled with errors and fancies. 3°. Others are seldom pleased with the man who is always pleased with himself; no man is satisfied with his own fortune, nor displeased with his own sense; it is so easy and convenient to doubt everything! we seek new friends when we are too well known by the old ones; I am not worthy, but very proud to receive you under my humble roof.

ADJECTIVES GOVERNING THE PREPOSITION *à*.

RULE LXXVIII.—1°. Adjectives denoting the inclination, fitness, or readiness of the mind to perform any act or fulfil any duty, govern the preposition *à* before their complement.

inclination... <i>enclin à vous servir,</i>	ready to serve you. he is fit for the place. ready to depart.
fitness..... <i>il est propre à la place,</i>	
readiness..... <i>prêt à partir,</i>	

2°. Adjectives that denote fitness, or any habit, either natural or acquired, as—

<i>il est sujet à la goutte,</i>		he is subject to the gout.
<i>il est adonné au (à le) jeu,</i>		he is inclined to gamble.

It would be an endless and a useless task to enter into an explanation of all the adjectives and their government; the learner will soon be enabled to avoid all errors on this subject. Suffice it to observe—

1st, That some adjectives govern a different preposition, according as their complement is a noun or a verb.

2d, That some adjectives govern one preposition before nouns of persons, and another before nouns of things.

3d, That the reverse of an adjective governs the same preposition as the adjective it is derived from, as—

capable de, et incapable de; sensible à, et insensible à.

EXERCISE LXXVIII.

1°. True politics are never opposed to the law of sound
e⁸ politique s. e²⁴ contraire e⁹ bon
 morality; the price of all that can be most dear to man is
morale f. e¹⁰ e¹⁴ e¹⁵ e³ e¹
 seldom too dear; the greatest happiness to which we can
e¹⁸ e⁸ e³ e¹ bien m. auquel e¹⁵ e²⁴
 aspire is to lead a life suitable to our state and inclination;
prétendre mener e⁹ conforme son e³ goût m.
 be quick to reward, slow to punish, compassionate to the poor,
prompt récompenser lent e²² compatissant envers e²³ pl.
 and God will be merciful to you; the presumptuous man
e² avoir pitié de présomptueux
 believes himself fit for everything, and is fit for nothing;
se croire propre e⁴⁰ bon e¹³
 ignorance is always ready to be satisfied with itself. 2°. He
f. *e⁹ e⁴³ e²⁷ e¹⁰ soi*
 is alive to compliments and dead to insults; let a child be
sensiblem. insensible injure f. e¹⁸ soi
 attentive to his studies, sensible of reprimand, and docile to
*e²⁵ e¹⁸ e f. soumis**
 his masters; attentions are less liable than services to
e⁶ égards m. sujetm.

* If *docile* be used in French, the word *ordre* must be introduced, as, *docile aux ordres de son maître.*

rateful returns. 3°. This may be useful to you, but
over des ingrats e^{24} e^{18} e^8
 ess to me.
 ile

OF ADJECTIVES OF NUMBER.

ULE LXXIX.—1°. *Un*, one, is seldom used before
 , a hundred, and *mille*, a thousand, and never when the
 exceeds a hundred; for, though we say *un cent d'huitres*,
 ndred of oysters, we cannot say *un cent-trente huitres*, a
 dred and thirty oysters, but *cent-trente huitres*, and *mille-*
c-cents, 1200.

°. In dates, the preposition *en*, in, and *an*, year, must not,
 n English, be used together; as, in the year 1800, must
 endered by *l'an mil-huit-cent-cinquante*, or *en* 1850.

°. After the names of sovereigns the cardinal numbers are
 without the article, as *George Trois*, George the Third;
William Quatre, William the Fourth; except with first, as
lippe Premier, Philip the First; but we say either *Henri*
nd, or *Deux*; *Charles Second*.

BSERVE.—In speaking of the Emperor Charles the Fifth,
 of Pope Sixtus Fifth, we say *Charles Quint*, *Sixte*
nt, but in no other case, for we say *Henri Cinq*.

°. When a cardinal number precedes a noun used with the
 y avoir, there to be, it requires *de* before the adjective or
 iciple that follows, as also if it be preceded by the relative
 oun *en* without a noun, as—

<i>a cent hommes de tués,</i>	there were 100 men killed.
<i>en eut dix mille de blessés</i>	there were 10,000 of them
<i>cinquante de tués,</i>	wounded and 50 killed.

EXERCISE LXXIX.

. Those whom we calumniate, or whom we slander, are
 e^{12} *calomnier* e^{66} *médiser*
 a a hundred times better than ourselves; the people prefer
 — e^{18} e^{26} *nous* e^{40} *aimer mieux*
 ave one king to a thousand tyrants; tell the green-grocer
 e^2 *que* e^1 *:herbiste*
 end me a hundred and a half of asparagus. 2°. The last
 e^2 *asperge* f.
 ich Revolution took place in the year 1848. 3°. King
..é.....f. fut effectué e^2

William the Fourth began ^{e⁴⁵} ^a to reign at the death of his-
 brother George the Fourth, on the 26th June, in the year-
^{e²} ^{Juin} 1830; Louis the First, son of Charlemagne, was surnamed
 ^{fils} the meek; Henry the Fourth, king of France, was murdered
 débonnaire Henri ^{e²} ^{H assassiné} by Ravallac. 4°. There will be three hundred copies of your
^{e⁴} ^{e¹⁸ m.} Grammar bound on Monday; I depend on it, for there are
^{e⁸} ^{relié} ^{Lundi} ^{e³⁰} 250 of them sold.
^{e⁶⁶} ^{e¹}

OF COMPARATIVES.

RULE LXXX.—12. 1°. Than and as, used to complete comparisons, are generally rendered by *que*, and *que de*, before a noun whose quantity is compared, as—

<i>il est aussi, or, plus savant</i>	he is as, or more, learned than
<i>que son frère,</i>	his brother.
<i>il a autant, or, plus de vertu</i>	he has as much, or more, vir-
<i>que de connaissance,</i>	tue as, or than, knowledge.

2°. Than and as are rendered by *que de*, or, *qu'à* for *que à*, before the infinitive, according as the first infinitive is governed by *de* or *à*, and by *que de*, if no preposition govern the first, as—

<i>il est aussi injuste de médire</i>	it is as unjust to slander as
<i>que de voler,</i>	to rob.
<i>ce n'est pas aussi facile à</i>	it is not so easy to do as to
<i>faire qu'à dire,</i>	say.
<i>J'aime mieux chanter que de</i>	I like to sing better than to
<i>danser,</i>	dance.

3°. Than, coming after a comparison of opposition, before any tenses of the indicative or conditional, is rendered by *que ne*, as—

<i>il est plus riche que vous ne</i>	he is richer than you think.
<i>pensez,</i>	

But if the first part of the sentence be negative or interrogative, or if a conjunction occur before the verb, the *ne* is omitted.—See Rule 148.

<i>Il n'est pas si riche que vous pensez, not ne pensez,</i> <i>Je suis plus riche que quand j'étais en France,</i>	he is not so rich as you think. I am richer than when I was in France.
---	--

However, if the negative expresses a comparison of equality, *ne* is still used.

4°. *Than*, before a cardinal number, and *by*, used to denote how much one thing exceeds or is less than another, are both understood by *de*, as—

<i>J'ai plus de vingt guinées,</i> <i>Elle est plus, or moins âgée,</i> <i>que son frère de deux ans,</i>	I have more than 20 guineas. she is older, or not so old, as her brother by two years.
--	--

EXERCISE LXXX.

1°. *As* virtue is more precious than riches, so the simplicity of nature is more pleasing than the embellishment of art; the miser is as poor from what he has as from what he has not. 2°. If it is as easy to do good as to do evil, why does he not behave better? it is not more just to lie than to rob. 3°. The river is much larger than it was yesterday, but not so large as it was the 12th May last year; the army is more healthy than it was in Egypt; who was ever more loved, my lord, than you are? 4°. The Goddess Calypso was taller than all her nymphs by the whole head; his sister, who is less than sixteen, is going to be married to Mr. D., who is more than sixty.

RULE LXXXI. 1°. In comparisons of proportion the article used in English before *more* or *less* is omitted before the corresponding words *plus* and *moins*, as—

<i>Plus je le vois moins je l'aime,</i>	the more I see him the less I like him.
--	--

2°. If the comparison runs between two nouns or adjectives, these nouns or adjectives must be placed after the verb, according to the laws of construction, which requires the object of verbs, except when pronouns, to be placed after the verb.

<i>plus je mange de fruit, moins</i>		literally—more I eat of fruit
<i>je bois de vin,</i>		less I drink of wine
<i>plus il est actif, plus il est</i>		“ —more he is active
<i>gai,</i>		more he is cheerful

3°. Observe, that though in such cases as the following the verb may be omitted in English, it must be expressed in French, as—

<i>plus la montagne est haute</i>		the higher the hill the colder
<i>plus l'air est froide,</i>		the air.

4°. The expressions, *so much the more*, *so much the less*, are expressed in French by *d'autant plus*, *d'autant moins*, and *than* and *as* that follow, are rendered by *que*.

EXERCISE LXXXI.

1°. The more we are raised, the more we ought to fear; the
^{e¹⁵} ^{e⁷⁶} ^{e¹⁵} ^{e¹⁹} ^{e¹⁹}
 bolt in its fall strikes the highest mountains; the more we
^{e⁴³} — ^{e⁶} B ^{e⁶⁷} ^{e²⁸} ^{e⁶¹} ^{e¹⁵}
 desire, the poorer we are. 2°. The more stormy passion has
^{e⁵⁰} ^{e²⁸} ^{e¹⁵} ^{orageux}f.
 been, the more we enjoy calm; the more unfortunate a people
^{e¹⁵} ^{gôûter}e ^{e⁵} ^{le} ^{e⁶}
 is, the more it is ^à ^{to be feared}; the fewer desires we have,
^à ^{craindre} ..é..... ^{e¹⁵}
 the fewer bonds we wear; the more tolerated his crimes are
^{moins} ^{chaîne} f. ^{e¹⁵} ^{e⁷³} ^{toléré}f.
 upon earth, the more terrible will be the vengeance which they
^{e¹} ^{e¹}f.
 will excite. 3°. The shorter the day the longer the night.
^{e⁶⁷} ^{court} ^{e⁶} ... — ^{e¹}
 4°. Man is so much the less poor as he has less desires; it is
^{e¹} ^{e²⁸} ..é.....
 so much the more necessary ^à ^{to be silent}, as *everything* is
^{nécessaire} ^{de} ^{se taire} ^{e⁴⁰}
 ill construed; he lavishes so much the more ^à ^{praise} on his
^{mal interprété} ^{prodiguer} art. ^{éloge} pl. à
 hero, as the latter loads him with favours.
^{e⁶¹} ^{comblér} ^{e¹⁰} ^{e¹}

OF THE SUPERLATIVE.

RULE LXXXII.—13. As in the relative or superlative degree there is an excess of comparison, the article coming before *plus* or *moins* is declinable, and agrees with the noun understood, as—

<i>quoique cette femme montre plus de fermeté que les autres, elle n'est pas pour cela la moins affligée,</i>	though this woman shows more fortitude than others, she is not on that account the least afflicted.
---	--

i.e. *elle n'est pas pour cela la FEMME la moins affligée.*

But as in the superlative absolute there is no comparison, though it expresses an excess, the article remains indeclinable, because it refers only to the adjective, as—

<i>cette scène est une de celles qui furent le plus applaudies,</i>	this is one of the scenes that were the most applauded.
---	--

In the application of this rule great attention must be paid as to what meaning is intended to be imparted by the sentence containing the superlative, in order to distinguish the relative from the absolute.

<i>les opinions les mieux établies,</i>	the best established opinions
or	of any, or
<i>les opinions le mieux établies,</i>	the best established opinions,

are of different imports: the first implies that there are other opinions well established, but that *these* are better so than any others—consequently are the best established opinions of any you know; the second implies, that as opinions may be badly or well established, worse or better, that these are as well established as any can be—none can be better so—though there may be some equally well established in the absolute superlative degree.

EXERCISE LXXXII.

We do not always weep when we are the most afflicted; the
^{e°} *pleurer* ^{e°} *affligée*
 lady who weeps less than the others is not the least afflicted;
^{e°} ^{e°} ^{e°}
 the waters the least rapid are generally the least wholesome;
^{e°} ^{e°} *salubre*
 bathe yourself in the place where the water is the least rapid;
^{e°} *baigner*f. ^{e°} ^{e°}
 she could not resolve to condemn them, even when they
^{e°} *se résoudre à* *condamner* *lors même que*

were the most guilty; let us not condemn to death all the
 criminals, let us only punish the most guilty; great minds are
 most liable to the illusions of systems; *there is* a turn
 be given to *everything*, even to the things that appear
 least susceptible of it; at a festival, at a theatre, this
 appears always the most beautiful, but it is at a tête-à-tête
 that she is the most amiable.

CHAPTER FOURTH.

OF PRONOUNS.

SECTION I.

OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS AS SUBJECTS OF VERBS.

RULE LXXXIII.—14. 1°. *Moi, toi, lui, elle; eux, elles;* are frequently used as reduplicates with *je, tu, il, elle; ils, elles;* and are placed either before or after the verb. This form is used either in familiar style, or to add energy to the sentence; also to express surprise. In this last case they are frequently used by themselves with the pres. inf.

fam..... <i>moi je dis, or je dis moi,</i>	I say, we must go.
<i>qu'il faut partir,</i>	
surp..... <i>lui! il a dit cela, or il a</i>	he said that!
<i>dit cela, lui!</i>	
surp..... <i>lui! trahir sa patrie, or</i>	he betray his country!
pres. inf... <i>trahir sa patrie, lui!</i>	

2°. *Moi, lui, elle, eux,* are also used in apposition to *me, le, la, les,* as—

<i>moi! vous me soupçonneriez</i>	me! you would suspect me of
<i>de vous trahir!</i>	betraying you!
<i>lui! vous le soupçonneriez de</i>	him! you would suspect him
<i>vous trahir!</i>	of betraying you!

3°. The resuming pronouns *nous* and *vous* are often used when the subjects are not all of the third person, as—

<i>vous et moi nous sommes, &c.</i>		you and I are, &c.
<i>vous et lui vous êtes, &c.</i>		you and he are, &c.

These two pronouns are also used for objects of verbs, as—

<i>est venu nous voir, mon frère et moi,</i>		he came to see us, my brother and me.
<i>est venu vous voir, vous et votre frère,</i>		he came to see you and your brother.

OBSERVE.—That *moi*, in conjunction with a noun or pronoun, must always be placed second, as in the above example, except with persons much our inferiors, as—

<i>moi et mon fils.</i>		<i>moi et mon chien.</i>
-------------------------	--	--------------------------

4°. The resuming pronoun may be omitted when the subjects of the verb are united by *ni*, when they come after the conjunction *que*, or are preceded by a relative pronoun, also to avoid the clash of similar pronouns.

<i>lui ni moi ne pouvons venir,</i>		neither he nor I can come.
<i>je vois que vous et votre sœur êtes fatigués,</i>		I see that you and your sister are fatigued.

But as there seems a want of concordance between the verb and the subject, the verb agreeing with the resuming pronoun understood, it is better to say *nous ne pouvons venir ni lui, ni moi; je vois que vous êtes fatigués, vous et votre sœur*; by which means we reconcile the law of concordance.

EXERCISE LXXXIII.

1°. Another would have been puzzled, but ^A I come to the
un autre *embarrassé moi toucher*
 went at once, and I tell you that your daughter is dumb;
et m. du premier coup apprendre ^{e³} ^{mu^{et}}
 betray the best of ^A friends; ^A you deceive me, and ^A
^{e¹⁴} ^{e²} ^{mes} ^{e⁴} ^{vous} ^{e²⁰} ^{lui}
 avoids me; ^A thou wilt come, I ^A hope, to own and repair
fuir ^{toi} ^{e¹⁶} ^{te} ^{e²⁰} ^{e¹⁵} ^{réparer}
 thy wrongs. 2°. Act unworthily—I! would you ruin me, I
^{tort m.} ^{faire une lâcheté f.} ^{perdre}
 our ally? 3°. He and I will, perhaps, be one day fortunate
^{allié} ^{peut-être} ^{e⁵} ^{heureux}
 enough to see you again; my brother and I are come to
^{se²} ^{revoir} ^{e¹⁴}

congratulate you on this happy event; your aunt and I
féliciter ^{e¹⁸} ^{e⁴¹} ^{e⁴⁰}
 your conduct. 4°. Neither he nor I can understand
^{e²⁷} ^{e³⁰} ^{e⁸} ^{e¹⁵} ^{e⁴}
 phrase; neither your parents nor we are satisfied with
f. ^{e³⁰} ^{e⁸} *ne* ^{e²⁷} ^{e¹¹}
 arrangement; I have just been told that my sister and
m. *on venir de me* ^{e⁷} ^{e¹²}
 ruined by this failure.
ruiné ^{e⁵²}

OF THE IMPERSONAL PRONOUNS *IL* AND *CE*.

RULE LXXXIV.—15. 1°. *Il*, it, is used in an impersonal sense, hence it is the characteristic of all unipersonal. When used with *être*, it renders that verb unipersonal, often replaced by *ce*, as mentioned in the corresponding of Syntax. *Ce* is more demonstrative than *il*, therefore is used when the verb *être* is followed by a noun or pronoun, whether they be accompanied by an article, adjective, and preposition, as—

art. & noun... <i>c'est le cordonnier,</i>	it is the shoemaker.
adj. & noun... <i>c'est la première</i>	it is the first time.
<i>fois,</i>	
pronoun..... <i>c'est elle, c'est moi,</i>	'tis she, 'tis I.
preposition..... <i>c'est à vous à parler,</i>	it is your turn to speak,
verb..... <i>ce serait l'autoriser,</i>	it would be authorizing,

2°. But with the word *tems*, time, and in pointing out the hour of the day, we use *il*, as—

<i>il est tems de manger,</i>	it is time to eat.
<i>il est une heure un quart,</i>	it is a quarter past one.

But if *tems*, time, be preceded by an article pointing out definite time, or if the hour be mentioned to show what thing has happened or will happen, *ce* is used, as—

<i>c'est le tems des vendanges,</i>	it is the vintage time.
<i>c'est à dix-heures qu'il a promis de venir,</i>	it is at ten o'clock that he promised to come.

EXERCISE LXXXIV.

1°. It was from the king that they obtained his pardon.
^g ^{e²} ^{l'on} ^{obtenir}

who can be ignorant how sweet² and glorious² it is¹ to assist
e¹⁵ ignorer combien doux e¹⁴ de e¹⁶
innocence and virtue; it is his place to decide; it is you,
.....f. e¹ à lui — de e²⁰
gentlemen, whom we must thank; it is authorising the idleness
e²⁴ e⁸ remercier autoriser e¹²
of children not to punish it; it is a crime to
e¹⁸ que de e²² ...m. que de se
behave ungratefully; there is often but one step from good
montrer ingrat e⁴ e³ e¹⁹ pas m. art. e⁵
to evil; it is the curate of the parish who wishes to speak
art. e⁵ curé paroisse f. demander à e¹²
to you. 2°. It is too late to be wise when we can
ne plus tems de e¹² e³ e¹⁵ e¹⁵
no longer be foolish; lazy people always know what² o'clock¹
plus fou fainéant e⁹ e²³ que l' e¹⁶
is; it is four o'clock; it is time to depart; it is the time
e¹⁰ e²⁶ de e⁴⁴ e²⁸
of the monsoons, so dangerous in the Indian seas.
mousson m. e⁴ Indes pl. e⁴

OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS AS OBJECTS.

RULE LXXXV.—16. 1°. Pronouns of the first and second person singular and plural can only be said of persons or things personified, whether subject or object.

2°. Personal pronouns of the third person are *le, la, les*, for the direct object; and *lui, leur*, with the preposition *à* understood, and *lui, elle, eux, elles*, with the preposition expressed, for the indirect object.

3°. *Lui, leur*, without a preposition, are equivalent to *à lui, elle, à eux, à elles*, to him, to her, to them. *Lui* and *leur* are not only said of persons and animals, but also of plants and things personified when used with verbs which, when properly employed, are used in speaking of persons, when alluding to a sword, you say, "I am indebted to it for my life;" here you use the verb, to be indebted, as if speaking of a living being, as—

*Le chien a soif donnez lui
à boire,
Les orangers vont périr si
vous ne leur donnez pas de
l'eau,*

your dog is thirsty, give him
some drink.
these orange trees will die if
you do not give them some
water.

In this last example, the verb *périr*, to perish or die, is a verb generally employed when speaking of persons, and therefore *leur* is used but in the following example, as—

abatez ces orangers et mettez y le feu, | cut down these orange trees and set fire to them.

Y is used instead of *leur*, because the verb is no longer one that renders the noun personified; so *y* is used for *lui*, to him, her, to it; and for *leur*, to them, when they relate to things which are not personified, and in which no idea of vitality exists.

EXERCISE LXXXV.

2°. If a woman gains admirers by her beauty she preserves them only by sweetness of temper; he spoke to them with warmth which astonished them; your sister is arrived, take her this book which I promised her. 3°. Go, tell them that on that condition I allow them to live; our crops were ripe when the army set fire to them; let the law be good or bad we must obey it; victory is faithful to us, we are indebted to it for our brilliant success; enjoy the pleasures of this world, I consent to it, but do not yield yourself up to them; self-love blinds us, it is to it that we must attribute the great errors into which we fall; the vine offers many advantages, let us devote to it all our care.

RULE LXXXVI.—17. *Lui*, him or it; *elle*, her or it; *eux*, *elles*, them; when governed by a preposition expressed, can only apply to persons or to things personified, by attributing to them that which is commonly attributive to persons, as in speaking of Heaven, Providence, some virtues and vices, or of an army or a river, as—

<i>Je vous aime, et je ferais</i>	I love your sister, and would
<i>tout pour elle,</i>	do anything for her.
<i>Le ruisseau entraîne avec elle</i>	this river carries with it all
<i>ce qu'elle rencontre,</i>	that it meets.
<i>Les plaisirs ne laissent souvent</i>	pleasures often leave nothing
<i>derrière eux que des regrets,</i>	after them but regrets.

When these pronouns in reference to things are governed by the preposition *de*, they are rendered by *en*, and by *y* when governed by the preposition *à*, but when governed by any other preposition than *de* or *à*, in reference to things, the pronoun is omitted, and the preposition becomes an adverb, if sufficient to be expressive of the sense, if not, the pronoun is expressed,

<i>Il y a un fauteuil, mettez vous</i>	there is an arm chair, sit on it.
<i>dessus, (not sur lui,)</i>	
<i>La sœur est dans cette loge,</i>	your sister is in that box, and
<i>M. D. est assis près d'elle,</i>	Mr. D. is sitting near her.

L'elle is correct, because speaking of a person; but speaking of a thing, such as fire, we must say *assis auprès, près de lui*.

Lui, elle, eux, elles, joined to a noun by *et* or *ni*, require *les*, to be placed before the verb that precedes it; if *moi* is joined to the noun, *nous* is placed before the verb, and *vous*, if joined to the noun, as—

<i>Je vous félicite, lui et ses amis,</i>	I congratulate him and his friends.
<i>Je les vois, eux et leurs maris,</i>	I see them and their husbands.
<i>Ils vous ont soulagé, moi et mon épouse,</i>	you have relieved us, me and my wife.

Lui, elle, eux, elles, be preceded by the preposition *à*, and placed before the verb, and *nous* or *vous* as in the preceding case, as—

<i>J'ai parlé, à lui et à son père,</i>	I spoke to him and to his father.
---	-----------------------------------

When a verb has a pronoun for its direct object, and a noun of a different person for its indirect object, the direct object is placed before the verb, and the indirect object after the verb, as—

<i>Il m'envoie à vous,</i>	he sends me back to you.
----------------------------	--------------------------

For though we can say *il vous renvoie, il vous parle*, we cannot say *il me vous renvoie*, but, *il me renvoie à vous*. The reflective verbs follow the same rule, for we say,

il se rend à vous, | *he yields to you.*

EXERCISE LXXXVI.

1°. If you wish to succeed ^{e¹⁶} you ^{e²⁵} must² apply³ to them¹,
^{e¹⁶} ^{e²⁵} *c'est — que* ^{e⁸} ^{e¹⁷}
 I love truth so much that I would sacrifice *everything* for it.
^{e⁴} ^{e¹²} *au point* ^{e¹⁶} ^{e²} *la*f. ^{e¹} ^{e⁴⁰} ^{e¹} *sacrifier* ^{e⁴⁰} ^{e¹}
 2°. To believe in a Providence ^{e¹⁶} ^{e²} *la*f. ^{e¹} ^{e⁴⁰} ^{e¹} *récompense* f. ^{e¹}
 crime does nothing but fear ^{e¹²} ^{e¹⁹} *avoir peur de* ^{e⁴⁰} ^{e¹}
 ...m. *savoir* ^{e¹²} ^{e¹⁹} *avoir peur de* ^{e⁴⁰} ^{e¹}
 peace, but the king was against it; when you go to church
^{e⁴¹} ^{e¹} ^{e²} ^{e¹} ^{e²} ^{e³} ^{e¹} ^{e³}
 with your sister you should always sit close to her; Miss
^{e⁸} ^{e¹²} ^{e⁸} ^{e⁹} *s'asseoir près de*
 Virginia draw near ^{e¹⁶} ^{e¹} *de* ^{e⁷} ^{e⁶⁸} *avoir de la bonté* f.
*ie* ^{e¹⁶} ^{e¹} *de* ^{e⁷} ^{e⁶⁸} *avoir de la bonté* f.
 quite close to it. 3°. I have seen them before at Madame
tout auprès ^{e⁴} ^{e⁷} ^{e⁶⁸}
 Tréville's, but I neither like ^{e¹} ^{e⁴²} ^{e⁴} ^{e⁸} ^{e²} ^{e¹⁶}
 to see Augustus and I; we have a great abundance of
^{e⁴} ^{e⁶} ^{e¹}f.
 strawberries, we will send some to you and the doctor. 4°. ^{e³} ^{e¹} ^{e³²}
fraise f. ^{e³} ^{e¹} ^{e³²} *en* ^{e³²} *docteur*
 When I had entered ^{e⁶} ^{e⁷} ^{e³²}
fus ^{e⁶} ^{e⁷} ^{e³²} *dans* ^{e³²}
 directed me to her ^{e¹²} to borrow some money.
adresser ^{e¹²} *pour emprunter* ^{e¹²}

OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUNS EN AND Y.

RULE LXXXVII.—18. For the particular cases in which *en* and *y* are used instead of the pronouns which they represent, see the two preceding rules—but they assume the character of adverbial pronouns when they impart an idea of locality; and as adverbs are frequently compounded of a preposition and a pronoun, so these are often represented by the compound words *y* and *en*, as—

<i>voulez-vous aller à la comédie?</i>	will you go to the theatre? no,
<i>non, j'y fus hier-soir,</i>	I was there (at it) last night.
<i>avez-vous été au village? oui,</i>	have you been to the village?
<i>j'en viens,</i>	yes, I am just come from there.
<i>irez-vous à l'opéra demain?</i>	will you go to the opera to-morrow? yes, I will.
<i>oui, j'irai,</i>	

J'y irai would have been correct, but the *y* is omitted to avoid the gap in the sound. From the preceding rule it must be concluded that when *there* or *thither*, relating to some locality mentioned before, stands for *at it*, or *to it*, *à lui*, or *à elle*, it is rendered by *y*, and when *hence* means *from here*, *from it*, it is rendered by *en*; and though these words may be omitted in English, they must, as also the verb, be expressed in French.

<i>serez-vous au concert ce soir?</i>	shall you be at the concert to-night? yes, sir, I shall (be there).
<i>oui, monsieur, j'y serai,</i>	
<i>est-il quitté Leith? non, et il n'en partira pas de sitôt,</i>	has he left Leith? no, nor will he go from it so soon.

EXERCISE LXXXVII.

We fly from idleness, but we always return to it; do you
échapper à ^{e¹²} ^{e¹} ^{e⁹} ^{e¹⁴}
 know the city of Rome? I went thither last year; we do not
^{e²⁷} ^{e¹³} ^{e¹} ^K ^{e³} ^{e³}
 know the city of Rome, we have not been thither, we shall
^{e²⁷} ^{e¹³}
 soon go;* Virgil has deprived the eclogues of their brightest
^{e¹} ^{e¹} ^e *priver* ^e ^{f.} *grand*
 ornaments, by excluding women from them; go not into
charme m. ^{e¹⁶} *bannissant* ^{e⁷} ^{e¹} *en*
 Russia, it is too cold there; the mountains are frequented in
^{e³⁴} ^{e³} *froid* ^{e⁶¹} *fréquenté* ^{e²}
 consequence of the air that is inhaled there; this house
 ^e ^{m.} *qu'on respirer* ^{e²}
 threatens to fall, go from it; is your father at home? no.
^{e²⁰} *ruine f. s'éloigner* ^{e³} *art. maison* ^{e²¹}
 madam, he is not (there); have you been to Edinburgh? if you
 ^e

* To avoid sacrificing principle to euphony, another turn may be given when possible, that both may be satisfied; as in this example we might say without offending *ther, nous devons y aller bientôt.*

cannot go there yourself, send your son there; if I send him
^{e¹⁵} ^{e¹} ^{e⁴} ^{e¹⁵} ^{e⁴}
 thither, he will not return (thence) for two months.
^{e¹⁴} ^{e⁴} ^{e⁶}

OF *SOI* AND *MÊME*.

RULE LXXXVIII.—19. 1°. *Soi*, to a French ear, conveys all the idea of an indefinite and indeterminate expression, and is therefore only suitable to such subjects; but it is only allowable when it prevents ambiguity, though the rule is often violated. *Le ministre en servant l'état avec ardeur ne travaille que pour lui*, is strictly correct, but *soi* is necessary to determine whether he serves the state or himself; *qu'il fasse autant pour soi que je ferai pour lui*, could not have been written differently, but otherwise it is doubtful if such violations are to be tolerated.

2°. *Même*, coming after a noun, takes the sign of the plural with the noun, and means *alike, the same*, as—

<i>J'ai vu les mêmes hommes,</i>	I saw the same men.
<i>c'est la même chose,</i>	it is the same thing.

3°. *Même* is also added emphatically to nouns, it takes the sign of the plural, and is rendered in English by *very, himself, herself, itself, themselves*, as—

<i>qu'elle est douce, c'est la bonté</i>	how mild she is, she is good-
<i>même,</i>	ness itself.
<i>les oiseaux mêmes chantaient</i>	the very birds sung with glad-
<i>d'allégresse,</i>	ness.

4°. But when *même* can be placed before or after a noun, and is Anglicised by *even* or *also*, it is an adverb, and indeclinable.

<i>les habitants, et même les sol-</i>	the inhabitants, and even the
<i>dats, furent chassés,</i>	soldiers, were driven out.

EXERCISE LXXXVIII.

1°. She walked with her mother, only [^] to draw upon
^{e²⁰} ^{e⁸} ^{e⁸} ^{e¹} [^] ^{e¹}
 herself every look; Cato had Rome² always in view,¹ and
^{e²⁰} ^{e⁴¹} pl. ^{e²} ^{e¹}
 Cicero thought only of himself; what creates so many, and
^{e¹⁰} ^{e¹} ^{e²⁴} ^{e⁴} ^{e¹} [^]

el contentions between men, Δ is that they do not all²
débat m. e^{74} e^1 *ce* e^{14}
the same beings with the same aspect, and from the
 e^{20} e^{60} *sous* e^{20} *face* f.
nt of view. 2°. He has still the same clothes Δ he
n. *vous* f. e^{24} e^{20} *habit* m. *que*
year. 3°. The Romans conquered the Greeks only
 e^2 e^{21} *vaincre* K e^{43} e^1
reeks themselves; animals themselves are alive to the
 e^{43} e^{78}
 Δ they receive from us; it was Hippocrates who
pl. *que* e^{10} e^{13} H
at his errors even should be Δ lessons. 4°. I know
 e^{13} e^{45} e^{27}
etters, Δ grammarians even, who violate the rule of
 e^{19} *des grammairien* *violier* *règle* f.
; the libertines, even the impious, tremble at the
n. *libertin* *impie* e^{40}
of death.
f. e^6

OF THE REPETITION OF PRONOUNS.

LXXXIX.—20. Though in the repetition of the much may be left to the taste of the learner, yet there are particular cases in which the pronoun must be repeated those mentioned in Syntax.

The pronoun, subject of the verb, must be repeated if verbs are joined by a conjunction, except *et* and *ni*.

<i>se récompensez si vous</i>		you will be rewarded if you
<i>é bien votre thème,</i>		write your exercise well.
<i>urbe ni ne romps,</i>		I neither bend nor break.

When the first verb is followed by a direct object, as—

<i>lez la lecture et vous</i>		you like reading, and are
<i>udieux,</i>		studious.

Pronouns of the third person, except *on*, are seldom repeated when a long incidental sentence intervenes between verbs perspicuity requires the repetition of the pro-

<i>épêche, et après avoir</i>		he goes to the fishing, and
<i>é deux on trois petites</i>		after having caught two or
<i>il revient chez lui</i>		three small trouts he re-
<i>et jusqu'aux os,</i>		turns home wet to the skin.

4°. Pronouns as direct and indirect objects are repeated before every verb, but not when the second verb denotes a repetition of the first; however, if the verbs be in different tenses, the pronoun must be repeated, as—

<i>il nous doit beaucoup et nous</i>	he owe us much and pays us
<i>paie d'injures,</i>	with insults.
<i>Je vous le dis et redis,</i>	I tell you so, and repeat it.
<i>il le faisait dans sa jeunesse,</i>	he did it in his youth, and
<i>et le refait dans sa vieillesse,</i>	does it again in his old age.

EXERCISE LXXXIX.

1°. I wish to see you happy, because I am attached to you;
desirer ^{e⁴} ^{e¹³} ^{e²²} *attacher*
 you will be truly esteemed if you are prudent and modest; I
^{e⁴⁴} *estimé* ^{e⁵⁰}
 read Homer, and feel myself elevated; I have adulators, and
^{e³⁰} *se sentir* *agrandis* *adulateur* *ai*
 not one friend; I neither hate nor love him; we receive her
^{e⁴} ^{e⁴²} ^{e⁶⁵} ^{e⁸} ^{e⁴} ^{e¹⁰}
 at our house, nevertheless we cannot endure her. 2°. Thou
chez nous *cependant* ^{e¹⁵} *souffrir*
 shalt love thine enemies, bless those who curse thee, do good
^{e⁴} ^{e²³} *bénir* *maudire* ^{e¹³} ^{e⁵}
 to those who persecute thee, and pray for those who calum-
persécuter *prier* *calom-*
 niate thee. 3°. He falls on his enemy, and after having seized
nier *fondre* ^{e⁶⁹} ^{e³³} ^{e³¹} *saisir*
 him with a victorious hand, he overturns him as the cruel
^{e¹⁰} ^{e⁶⁷} ^{e²³} ^{e⁷³} ^{e¹⁷}
 north wind beats down the tender crops that gild the
aquilon m. *abattre* *tendre* ^{e⁸⁵} *dorer*
 country. 4°. A son never takes up arms against a guilty
^{e¹⁴} ^{e¹⁵} *s'armer* ^{e²} ^{e¹⁴}
 father—he turns away his eyes, pities, and respects him.
^{e²} ^{e²³} ^{e²³} ^{e⁴⁶} *révéler*

SECTION II.

OF POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

RULE XC.—23. 1°. Though by this rule it was intended to establish that where circumstances took away all ambiguity, the possessive pronoun was useless, and the article was used, yet custom authorises such expressions as the following, in which no ambiguity could exist, and consequently the article *might have been considered sufficient*, as—

<i>Je me suis tenu toute la jour- née sur mes jambes,</i>	I have stood all day on my legs.
<i>Je l'ai vu de mes propres yeux</i>	I saw him with my own eyes.

2°. Also in speaking of habitual hailings, supposed to be previously known to the person spoken to, as—

<i>sa goutte l'a repris,</i>	his gout has returned.
------------------------------	------------------------

3°. The possessive pronoun is repeated before every adjective, provided they qualify different nouns, as—

<i>J'ai vendu mes vieilles et mes nouvelles maisons,</i>	I have sold my old and new houses.
--	---------------------------------------

As if it were, *mes vieilles maisons et mes nouvelles maisons.*

But the pronoun is not repeated if the adjectives qualify but one noun, as—

<i>J'ai vendu mes vieilles et vilaines maisons,</i>	I have sold my old and ugly houses.
---	--

As the same houses may be both old and ugly, there is but one plural noun understood, requiring but one plural pronoun.

EXERCISE XC.

1°. But nevertheless I saw him, saw him with my own eyes,
^{e¹} *enfin* ^{e⁴} ^{e⁴} — ^{e¹⁰} *propre* ^{e²³}
 tell you; 2°. I am sorry to see that the soreness of your
^{e⁷} ^{e²⁴} ^{e⁴} *mal* m.
 has not left you; he has always got, in addition to that,
^{e²³} ^{e⁶²} ^{e⁹} — *avec cela*
 is tooth-ache these six months; the public wish to know³
mal de dents depuis ^{e⁹} m. ^{e³⁷} ^{e³⁸}
 everything¹, either from a idle curiosity, or from an inward
^{e⁴⁰} ^{e⁶⁶} *un vain* *é f.* *secret*
 ite that loves a to feast its eyes on the faults of great
dignité f. ^{e⁴} *à repaître* ^{e²³} ^{e¹} ^{e⁹} ^{e¹}
 n; since I am returned to town my head-ache continues a
^{e⁷⁰} ^{e¹⁴} ^{e²} ^{e²} *migraine f.* *ne cesser de*
 torment me. 3°. We have renounced our former and our late
abjurer *ancien* *nouveau*
 ors; I cannot a resist a speaking of his great and
^{e¹³} *ne saurais me empêcher de* ^{e¹²} ^{e¹}
 morable actions; I have sold my books³, good² and bad¹.
 f. ^{e¹} ^{e²} ^{e²} ^{e³}

OF *ITS* AND *THEIR*.

RULE XCI.—1°. *Its* is expressed by *son, sa, ses*; and *their*, by *leur, leurs*, when in reference to inanimate objects they precede a noun, direct object of a verb, in reference to its subject in the same member of a phrase, as—

le parlement a ses droits, | parliament has its rights.

Here *ses* precedes *droits*, object of *a*, and refers to *parlement*, subject of *a* in the same member of the phrase.

2°. *Son, sa, ses*, and *leur, leurs*, are also used when the noun is governed by a preposition, as—

l'armée a perdu une partie de | the army has lost a part of its
ses soldats, | soldiers.

Here *ses* also refers to the subject of the verb, in the same member of the phrase, and is governed by a preposition.

3°. When *its*, or *their*, in reference to a preceding noun of things in another preposition, comes before a noun subject or object of a verb, they are expressed by *en** before the verb, and *le, la, les*, before the noun, as—

J'ai vu Glasgow, j'en admire | I have seen Glasgow, I admire
les riches magasins, | its rich warehouses.
voici des vaisseaux Anglais, | here are some English ships,
j'en admire la discipline, | I admire their discipline.

But if the noun, preceded by *its* or *their*, as subject, whether in the same member of a phrase as the noun to which they refer, or not, be accompanied by an adjective, or any restricting term, *son, sa, ses, leur, leurs*, must be used, as—

Edinburgh est une belle | Edinburgh is a fine city, its
ville, ses batiments réguliers | regular buildings please at
plaisent, au premier coup | first sight.
d'œil,

4°. Speaking of sciences, it is customary to use *son, sa, ses, leur, leurs*, because they are considered in a personified sense, and the above rules apply only to things absolutely, and neither to persons nor things personified.

Observe that it is a general rule, that when *its* or *their* can be changed into *of it*, *of them*, that *en* may be used with the article *le, la, les*, for in reality this *en* is the relative supplying pronoun standing for *of it*, *of them*, &c.

* *Y* is sometimes used in reference to place, as, *J'aimerais l'Ecosse, et les fleurs y étoient pas si humides.*

strative pronoun is omitted in French, and the relative possessive replaced by the simple possessive, as—

qu'avez-vous fait de mon livre? | what have you done with that book of mine?

Literally, what have you done with my book?

3°. The relative possessive are frequently used in French, without any relation to objects mentioned before, but used substantively and elliptically, that is, in reference to something understood, as—

Je ne demande que le mien, | I only ask for my own.
that is, *ce qui m'appartient*, what belongs to me.

EXERCISE XCIL.

1°. With respect to your master, it is his ^Δ to command
e¹⁷ l'égard de e⁶ Δ e²
and yours ^Δ to obey; whose turn is it ^Δ to play? it is mine;
Δ e²⁰ Δ qui — Δ jouer
she is accomplished, ^Δ good tempered, and tolerably rich; 'tis
acompli d'un e² naturel m. passablement ...
surely his ^Δ to be happy. 2°. Three servants of his have left
surement Δ e¹⁵ e⁶ e²
him; a friend of mine went into the country ^Δ to see a child
e⁴ e¹ e²¹ e¹⁴ pour e⁴ e¹⁵
of hers, and in her absence two sons of hers were killed; a
e²f. e¹⁵ H e¹⁰
daughter of his *has just been married* to a son of mine; two
e² e⁶ — e² e¹⁵
ships of mine *are just* arrived from Martinique; you should
e⁴ e⁶ e¹⁵ e⁰
not read that letter, *it is* no concern of yours. 3°. The general
e²⁰ e¹⁹ cela regarder — vous ...é...é...
was abandoned by his soldiers; what is thine, and what is
.....é e²⁷ les siens e³⁶ e²
mine are the cause of all our quarrels; I do not want ^Δ you
....f. e¹⁴ querelle f. e¹ Δ
oars, I shall use my own.
rame f. e³⁷

SECTION III.

OF RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

RULE XCIII.—28. 1°. Though in this corresponding rule of Syntax we have said that who, that, which, are rendered in French by *qui*, when the subject of the verb; there are cases

stands for whom, the direct object of the verb, in contradiction to this rule, but in reality it is the sub-verb understood, as—

<i>qui vous aimez,</i>		I know whom you love.
<i>qui j'aime,</i>		guess whom I love.

In elliptical sentences *qui* is considered the subject of *est*, understood *je sais qui est celui que vous aimez*; and when *qui* comes before the personal pronoun, or name, and stands for what person.

It has also been said that *qui* must come immediately antecedent, but it frequently occurs that no antecedent but let the sentence be analysed, and an antecedent may be found or understood, as—

<i>se d'un roi peu se</i>		who tires of a king may tire
<i>d'un père,</i>		of a father.

But, in this instance appears vague and indeterminate, it may pass for an absolute pronoun, having no antecedent, in analysis you will find *qui*, who, to relate naturally to *me*—*l'homme—celui qui se, &c.*—the person—the who tires, &c.

In this case, is always singular masculine.

qui may also be divided from its antecedent when the antecedent is qualified by an adjective or a restricting word, as—

<i>sensible et généreux</i>		a feeling and generous man
<i>avec un ingrat est à</i>		who meets an ingrate is to
<i>re,</i>		be pitied.

When the antecedent is a pronoun object of a verb, as—

<i>qui allait à la cam-</i>		I saw him going to the coun-
		try.

So sometimes meet the *qui* divided from its antecedent such Gallicism as the following—

<i>ils sont pas à plaindre</i>		they are not to be pitied who
<i>ont de la santé et de</i>		have health and employ-
<i>l'occupation,</i>		ment.

We condemn such a construction, and the following in all times be preferred—

<i>ont de la santé et</i>		those who have health and
<i>l'occupation ne sont pas</i>		employment are not to be
<i>à plaindre,</i>		pitied.

EXERCISE XCIII.

1°. Do you know whom Miss Constance is to marry? if I knew whom she was to marry I would tell you. 2°. Who serves well his country needs no ancestors; who loves himself alone, will be loved by himself alone; who discusses is right, and who disputes is wrong; "regret Rome who will, and remain faithful to her;" "I cannot avenge her, but I will expire with her."* 3°. Conscience is an incorruptible judge, who is never appeased; I see him coming in great haste towards us; it was necessary previous to any thing else to make you read in holy Scripture, the history of the people of God, which is the foundation of religion.

RULE XCIV.—29. 1°. *Qui*, governed by *de*, is rendered by *dont*, for of whom, of which, and whose, and relates to persons or things; it must be placed immediately after the noun it refers to; and if the noun that comes after it be the subject, it is placed immediately after *dont*, but if it be the direct object of the verb, it, the noun, comes after the verb, as—

<i>Homère, dont le génie sera admiré de tous les siècles...</i>	Homer, whose genius will be admired in all ages...
<i>la poudre, dont on redoute les terribles effets...</i>	gunpowder, the terrible effects of which are dreaded...

As *dont* can only be used when the antecedent is expressed, should it therefore only be understood, use *de qui*, and in allusion to things, use *de quoi*, as—

<i>dites moi de qui vous parlez,</i>	tell me of whom you speak.
<i>dites moi de quoi vous souhaitez avoir,</i>	tell me what you wish to have.

* Lines in inverted commas are to be rendered in French verse.

°. It may often happen that a verb governs the preposition *à*, in French, and not in English, in such cases the relative pronoun follows the rules prescribed for such pronouns, and is used with either of these two prepositions, as—

<i>homme dont il médit,</i>		the man he slanders.
<i>homme à qui je me fie,</i>		the man I trust.

°. *Qui*, as subject, and *que*, *dont*, as objects, should be read before every verb in French, though only understood in English, yet in many cases it may be elegant not to repeat it; taste and practice are the only guides, as—

<i>un homme qui est riche,</i>		he is a man who is rich who
<i>il aime sa femme est ses</i>		loves his wife and his chil-
<i>enfants, et qui est heureux,</i>		dren, and who is happy.
<i>un homme qui habite la ville et</i>		the man who lives in town,
<i>qui aime la campagne n'est pas</i>		and loves the country, is
<i>heureux,</i>		not happy.

°. Observe that though of whom may be rendered by *dont*, and whom is always rendered by *de qui*, as—

<i>l'homme dont je vous ai</i>		it is the man of whom I spoke
<i>parlé,</i>		to you.
<i>l'homme de qui j'ai reçu</i>		it is the man from whom I
<i>cette lettre.</i>		received this letter.

EXERCISE XCIV.

°. How cruel¹ it is¹ *à* to be offended by one of whom we
que *de* *offenser* ^{e¹⁰} *celui* ^{e¹⁵}
 not complain; to squander away time ^à is to waste the
^{e¹⁷} *dissiper* — ^{e²⁶} *ce* *user*
 material of which life is composed; religion, whose maxims
^{e f.} ^{e⁹} *fait*f.ef.
¹ little² followed,² is well calculated ^à to console men; I
^{on} ^{e⁴} ^{e⁴} ^{e¹²} *propre* ^à ^{e¹} ^{e¹}
 not know what you complain of; she spoke to me of you,
noter ^{e¹⁷} ^{e¹²} K
 I did not know *at the time* of whom she was speaking.
^{e²⁸} *alors* ^{e¹²}
 It is to him ^à we are indebted for all the advantages
^{que} *redevable* ^{e¹⁴} ^{e⁶}
 which we enjoy; all the dishes we eat of, come from the king's
^{e²⁰} ^{e¹⁴} *met* m. ^{e¹} ^{e¹⁶} ^{e³}
 2°.—3°. An author who is well informed, knows well
^{e⁷⁰} *sensé* ^{e²⁸} ^{e¹²}

his language, ponders well on his subject, works at leisure,
^{e²⁰} méditer ^{e¹³} — sujet m. ^{e²⁰} ^{e²⁰}
 and consults his friends, is almost sure of success. 4°. The
 — consulter ^{e⁴} presque ^{e¹³} réussir
 friends from whom you expected so many favours deceive you.
^{e⁴} ^{e²⁹} ^{e²⁸} service m. ^{e²⁰}

OF QUOI.

RULE XCV.—1°. *Quoi*, what, can only relate to things when standing for what things; and coming after a verb expressive of doubt or uncertainty, it is used without a preposition, as—

Je ne sais quoi lui dire, | I know not what to say to him.

2°. In other cases *quoi* is always governed by a preposition, and though used by some writers for *lequel*, *duquel*, and *auquel*, &c., the latter are more in use than *quoi* when its antecedent is a determinate noun, but *quoi* must be employed when *ce* or *rien* is the antecedent, as it has a vague signification best suited to these words, as—

<i>c'est à votre main à laquelle</i>	it is to your hand he aspires.
<i>il prétend.</i>	
<i>c'est de quoi il s'occupe,</i>	it is what he is occupied with.
<i>il n'y a rien à quoi je sois</i>	there is nothing to which I am
<i>plus disposé,</i>	more inclined.

But *rien*, used with the verb *y avoir*, there to be, requires *dont* instead of *de quoi*, as—

<i>il n'y a rien dont il ne soit</i>	there is nothing of which he
<i>capable,</i>	is not capable.

3°. *Quoi* may be governed by other prepositions when Anglicised by *that*, *what*, or *which*, with the word *thing* understood, as—

<i>dites moi sur quoi vous fondez vos prétentions,</i>	tell me on what (thing) your pretensions are founded.
--	---

4°. *De quoi*, wherewith, is used indefinitely, in allusion to what may be sufficient to perform anything, as—

<i>donnez moi de quoi écrire ma lettre,</i>	give me wherewith to write my letter.
<i>J'ai de quoi vivre à mon aise,</i>	I have sufficient to live comfortably.

EXERCISE XCV.

1°. There is in this business I know not what, that I do
^{e⁴} ^{e¹} ^{e⁵⁷} ^{e²⁸}
 not understand. 2°. The concert ended at eleven o'clock, after
^{e¹⁶} ^{e³¹}
entendrem. *conclure*
 which the ball began; the title to which you have so long
^{e²⁴} ^{e⁴⁵} *dignité* f. ^{e¹} *long tems*
 aspired is within your reach; there is nothing by which we
^{e²⁰} ^à *porté* f. ^{e⁴} ^{e¹³} ^{e¹⁸} ^{e¹⁵}
 are more affected than the loss of fortune; what the miser
^{e⁴⁰} *sensible* *perte* f.f. *la chose* ^{e⁹}
 thinks the least of is to assist the poor; the diseases of the
^{e¹⁷} *moins* ^à ^{e¹⁶} ^{e²⁸} pl. ^{e⁵⁷}
 soul are the most dangerous, we ought to labour to cure
^{e⁴⁰} ^{e⁴} ^{e¹⁹} ^{e⁴⁸} ^à *guérir*
 them, it is, however,² what¹ we labour very little at. 3°.
^{e¹³} *cependant* *ne* ^{e⁴⁸} *guères*
 These are conditions without which the thing would not have
^{e⁴⁷} *des*f. ^{e⁸} ^{e¹⁵} ^H
 been done. 4°. Give those children wherewith to amuse
^{conclu} ^{e⁴} ^à ^{e¹⁸} ^{e⁴⁰}
 themselves; he is rich, he has wherewith to be content; I

 would willingly buy that house if I had wherewith.
^{volontier} ^{e¹} ^{e²}

SECTION IV.

OF ABSOLUTE PRONOUNS.

RULE XCVI.—31. 1°. *Qui*, when the subject of an inter-
 rogation, may be said to be elliptically used for *qui est-ce qui*?

qui, or *qui est-ce qui est là*? | who is (it that is) there?

But when used as an object, *qui* alone can be employed, as—

qui croyez-vous? | whom do you believe?

Whose book is this? is rendered in French by *à qui est ce
 livre?* because the verb *être* is used in the sense of *appartenir*,
 to belong, which governs the preposition *à*.

Whose is also rendered by *à qui*, when inquiring whose turn
 it is to do a thing, because when analysed it will be found to
 mean, to whom *belongs* the turn to do such a thing, as—

qui est-ce à jouer? c'est à moi, | whose turn is it to play? mine
 (i.e.) the turn belongs to me.

2°. *Que*, meaning what thing, when the object of an interrogative verb, may also be said to be elliptically used for *qu'est-ce que?* what is it that? If *que* alone is used, the interrogation not being sufficiently formed, the pronoun, subject of the verb, is placed after the verb to complete it, as—

<i>que dit-il? que dit-elle?</i>		what does he (or she) say?
<i>qu'y a-t-il?</i>		what is the matter?

But the interrogation being complete in *qu'est-ce que?* the pronoun, subject of the verb, remains before the verb, as—

qu'est-ce quelle dit? | what does she say?

3°. Admiration and astonishment, which are nearly allied to interrogation, are expressed by *que*, Anglicised by *how*, *how much*, *how many*, placing the adjective which follows *how* after the verb in French, as—

<i>que vous êtes bonne!</i>		how good you are!
<i>qu'il est grand!</i>		how tall he is!

The same feeling is expressed by *quel*, *quelle*, when Anglicised by *what a*, *what an*, before a noun; the *a* or *an* being omitted in French.

quelle belle voiture il a! | what a beautiful coach he has!

What, used interrogatively, is also expressed by *quoi*, as—

quoi! vous ne parlez pas. | what! you do not speak.

What by itself is rendered by *quoi* or *comment*.

4°. OBSERVE.—*Quoi* and *que*, what, govern *de*, before the adjective that governs the verb expressed or understood, as—

<i>quoi de plus agréable?</i>		what is more agreeable?
<i>que dites-vous de nouveau?</i>		what news have you got?

EXERCISE XCVI.

1°. Who has performed these wonders? whom have you
 opérer *prodige* m.
 made [^] your confidant? do you know whose house? this?
prendre pour *te* *e*^{2s} *e*³
 is? whose place is it [^] to give the signal? whose business is
 *e*^{1s} *à* *e*⁴ m.
 it [^] to steer? it is [^] the pilot's. 2°. What is *there* [^] to
 à *gouverner* *e*^{1s} *à* *e*⁴ *à*
 gain from vice? suffering; what is there [^] to risk with virtue?
attendre ...m. *souffrance* f. *e*⁴ *à* *risquer* *e*⁴ *e*

What is there in that letter that can infuse into your soul
^{e⁴} ^{e¹} ^{e¹⁹} ^{e¹⁵} R ^{e⁶} ^{e⁴⁰}
 agitation and grief? 3°. What! it is only that? says gratified
f. ^{e²⁷} ^{e¹³} ^{e¹} ^{e²} ^{e¹⁰} *satisfait*
 desire; what is [^] [^] a philosopher? it is a man who opposes
 s...m. *ce que* ^{e⁶} ^{e¹³} ^{e¹} *opposer*
 nature to law, reason to custom, his conscience to opinion, and
f. ^{e⁹} *raison* f. *usage* m.f.f.
 a judgment to error. 4°. What more consoling for [^] parents
^{e¹²} ^{e¹³} ^{e⁴⁰} *satisfaisant des*
 can [^] children prudent and laborious? what have you
^{des} ^{e¹³} ^{e⁶⁰} ^{e⁹}
 reserved good, beautiful, and sublime in Homer?
remarquer e² ^{e⁶} ^{e¹} *Homère*

OF *où*.

RULE XCVII.—32. 1°. *Où*, with an antecedent, is a relative pronoun, and can only relate to things; it may be used instead of *duquel*, *dans lequel*, and *par lequel*, &c., when the verb metaphorically expresses residence or motion, as—

<i>à péril où</i> (or, <i>dans lequel</i>) <i>je m'engage,</i> <i>où les raisons d'où</i> (or, <i>des-</i> <i>quelles) il conclut,</i> <i>je sais les moyens par où</i> (or, <i>par les-quelles) il parvint</i> <i>à son but,</i>	the danger to which I expose myself. these are the reasons from which he concluded. I know the means by which he attained his object.
--	--

2°. But if the residence or place is absolute, *où* should be referred as more adverbially expressive of locality, as—

<i>à maison d'où je sors,</i> <i>à pays par où j'ai passé,</i> <i>Ecosse d'où il fut banni,</i>	the house I come from. the country through which I have passed. Scotland, from which he was banished.
---	---

d'où, however, must be preferred to *d'où*, when in reference to place or origin; it implies descended from, as—

le corps né de poudre, à la poudre est rendu.
l'esprit retourne au ciel, dont il est descendu.

3°. *Où* is an absolute pronoun when it has no antecedent, and is only used in interrogative sentences, as—

où irez-vous ce soir?
d'où venez-vous?
par où commencez-vous?

where will you go to-night!
whence do you come!
where do you begin!

EXERCISE XC VII.

1°. The moment in which we meet, and the moment in which
.....m. ^{e¹⁵} se trouver
we separate, are the two greatest epochs of life; there are
^{e¹⁵} se séparer ^{e¹} époque f. ^{e⁹} ^{e⁴}
many places where open frankness would become ridiculous,
^{e³³} endroit m. ^{e¹} plein franchise f. ^{e⁵¹} ridicule
and would be scarcely allowed; there is not an honest man
^{e⁴³} o ^{e¹} peu ^{e⁴} permis ^{e⁷³} ^{e¹}
who would make use of the means by which this intrigues
^{e¹⁷} o ^{e⁵} usage m. ^{e⁴} s. ^{e¹} intrigant
arrived at fortune. 2°. The different countries through which
^{e¹⁸} estf.é..... ^{e²⁶} ^{e³³}
he has passed have enriched his pencil with romantic
^{e⁵¹} pouvoir à crayon m. — romantique
scenery; the mountains from which gold is drawn are
scène pl. ^{e⁵¹} ^{e¹} on tirer
generally barren; Hymen still binds you to the gods, from
en général infertile art. ^{e⁵⁴} ^{e¹} ^{e²}
whom you are descended. 3°. You ask—where is God?
sortir f ^{e⁹} ^{e¹}
look around the universe, the most delightful object in nature
contempler univers m. charmant ^{e¹} ^{e¹}f.
is an amiable and virtuous woman, but where does this
^{e³²} ^{e⁹} ^{e⁷} ^{e¹}
celestial object conceal itself?
céleste ^{e¹} se cacher

SECTION V.

OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

RULE XCVIII.—26. 1°. When *this*, *that*, *these*, *those*, used with the verb *to be* in reference to what follows, can be construed into the pronoun *it*, or when the noun to which these demonstrative words refer, or the word *thing*, can be placed immediately after them, they are rendered in French by *ce*, used immediately before *être*.

c'est grand dommage,
c'est une très-bonne gram-
mairé,
c'est bien dessiné,

that (i.e. it) is a great pity.
this (i.e. grammar) is a very
good grammar.
that (thing) is well drawn.

2°. *Ce*, with *être*, represents both gender and number, and requires the verb to be of the same number as the noun or pronoun that follows; and if it be a verb that follows it must be in the pres. inf., as—

<i>ce sont des rapports très-agréables,</i>	these are very agreeable reports.
<i>c'est me rendre un grand service,</i>	this is doing me a very great service (<i>see Rule on ce and être</i>).

3°. Which, for which thing, in reference to something mentioned before in the first part of a sentence; and what, and that which, without reference to anything mentioned before, are rendered by *ce qui* for subject, *ce que* for object; what of, by *ce dont*, and what to, by *ce à quoi*, as—

<i>il boit beaucoup, ce qui est très-nuisible à sa santé,</i>	he drinks a great deal, which is very hurtful to his health.
<i>elle est très-douce, ce que j'aime beaucoup,</i>	she is very mild, which I like very much.
<i>ce dont il se plaint c'est d'être seul,</i>	what he complains of is being alone.
<i>ce à quoi il s'occupe sont des bagatelles,</i>	what he occupies himself at are trifles.

4°. *Ce qui*, *ce que*, &c., always govern the verb in the singular, therefore when the plurality of the noun to which *ce* refers requires the verb to be in the plural, another turn must be given to the sentence.

<i>cet appartement est orné de glaces et de tableaux, ornements qui sont très-essentiels dans une belle salle, and not ce qui sont des ornements.....</i>	this apartment is decorated with mirrors and paintings, which are very necessary ornaments in an elegant room.
---	--

EXERCISE XCIII.

1°. This is great news for the Irish; that is not a proper² book¹ for you to read; this is a very good thought. 2°. There are turbulent men that no concession would satisfy; this is speaking a little rashly. 3°. It has rained, pouring for three

^{e¹} ^{e¹⁶} ^{e¹} ^{fait}
^{e²} ^{e¹} — — ^{e³} ^{e³} ^{pensée} f.
^{factieux} ^{e³⁶}f. ne savoir o. contenter
^{e¹²} ^{e⁴} ^{inconsidérément} ^{e²⁴} ^{averse} ^{e³⁰}

days, which will do a *great deal* of harm to the crops; this
^{e⁶} ^{e¹³} *bien* art. *tort* m. ^{e²⁵} a.
 lady has a fine voice, and sings with taste, which I admire
^{e²⁸} ^{e⁶} ^{e⁹} ^{e¹⁵} ^{e⁸} ^{e⁷⁴} ^{e²⁸}
 very much; what I was afraid of has happened; what you
^{e²⁸} ^{e⁴⁵} G. — ^{e³⁸}
 apply to is useless; what astonishes is not always what
^{e³⁰} ^{e⁷⁸} ^{e¹⁶} ^{e⁹}
 pleases; his brother promises to correct himself of his
^{e²⁶} ^{e²} ^{e¹⁸} *de se corriger*
 faults, of which I despair, for it is what he thinks the least of
^{e⁹} ^{e¹⁸} ^{e¹⁷} ^{e⁸}
 4°. She plays on the piano, speaks French, and draws
^{e⁶³} ^{e¹⁸}m. ^{e¹²} *dessiner*
 uncommonly well, which are considered very fine accomplish-
parfaitement ^{e¹²} *considéré* ^{e³} ^{e⁶} *talent* m.
 ments in a lady.
^{e²⁸}

RULE XCIX.—26. 1°. *Celui*, he, him; *celle*, she, her; *ceux*,
celles, they, them; always refer to a noun preceding, in refer-
 ence to persons or things, and are followed by *de* in order to
 avoid the repetition of a preceding noun in the second part of
 a sentence, when another of the same kind is inferred as being
 the property of some other person, as—

voilà mon chien et celui de mon frère, | here is my dog and my brother's, or that of my brother.

Celui evidently does not stand for the identical dog mentioned before, but for another of the same kind, and pointed out by the preposition *de*.

2°. *Celui*, *celle*, *ceux*, *celles*, are sometimes used in reference to a noun understood, which can be of persons only, and are immediately followed by a relative pronoun, by *qui*, who or that, when the subject; by *que*, whom, that, when the object; by *dont* or *duquel*, of whom, of which, for the 2d state; and à *qui* or *auquel*, to whom, to which, for the 3d state.

Celui and *ceux* can alone be used absolutely, that is without reference to a noun expressed or understood, as—

celui qui est envieux n'est pas heureux, | he who is envious is not happy.
celle que j'aime ne m'aime pas, | she whom I love does not love me.

<i>ceux dont vous vous plaignez</i>		those of whom you complain
<i>sont innocents,</i>		are innocent.
<i>les à qui vous parliez ne</i>		they to whom you were speak-
<i>sont pas Françaises,</i>		ing are not French.

The relative pronoun in this instance must not be divided in its antecedent, though authorised in English.

<i>celui qui est content de son</i>		he is happy who is contented
<i>sort est heureux,</i>		with his lot.

By adding *là* to the demonstrative pronoun, the same form sometimes given as in English, as—

celui-là est heureux qui vit content de son sort.

It again, we consider this form of expression as inelegant, and not in use.

OBSERVE.—In proverbs and sayings *celui* is often omitted before *qui*, as—

heureux, qui vit content de son sort.

EXERCISE XCIX.

1°. The influence of luxury is spread over every
 *lux* m. — *se répandre* ^{e²⁶} ^{e²³}
 as throughout the state, even over that of the ploughman;
 f. pl. *de* ^{e²} ^{e¹³} ^{e²⁶} *laboureur*
 seldom succeed in acquiring great riches without making
^{e¹⁸} ^{e²⁵} ^{e⁴³} ^{e¹} ^{e¹} ^{e⁸} ^{e⁵}
 great sacrifices, that of peace, that of honour, and that of
m. ^{e⁴¹} ^{e²⁸}
 character; his horses are more beautiful than those of the
^{e²} ^{e¹} ^{e⁵}
 king; he has lost his purse and his sister's. 2°. He who does
^{e²⁸} ^{e²⁵} ^{e¹²} *rendre*
 kindness ought to forget it, he who receives it, remember
vice m. ^{e¹⁹} ^{e²³} ^{e¹⁰} ^{e⁴⁶} *de*
 those who make *men* happy are the real conquerors; he
^{e⁵} *des* *heureux* ^{e⁹} *conquérant*
 exposed to many errors who judges of others by himself;
^{e⁴⁴} ^{e²⁸} *des* ^{e¹³} ^{e²⁴} ^{e¹⁹} ^{e¹⁹}
 who is what he appears will perform what he promises; a
^{e⁸} *faire* ^{e¹⁸}
 resolution is a war made against those who have something
f. ^{e²} ^{e⁵} ^{e²} *quelque chose*
those who have nothing.
^{e¹²}

OF THE PRONOUN *CE* USED WITH *ÊTRE*.

'RULE C.—As *ce*, used with *être*, presents many difficulties, we have devoted an article to that subject, and though this may lead us into frequent repetitions, we have considered it necessary to render the subject clear and complete.

1°. *Ce*, with *être*, is often used instead of *il, elle, ils, elles*, in reference to something mentioned before, as—

<i>J'ai vu vos enfants ce (ils)</i>	I saw your children, they
<i>sont des jeunes gens très-</i>	are very amiable young
<i>aimables,</i>	people.

But if the noun be followed by an adjective, or a noun used adjectively, *il, elle, &c.* must be used, as—

<i>J'ai vu la ville d'Edimbourg,</i>	I saw the city of Edinburgh,
<i>elle est magnifique,</i>	it is beautiful.

2°. *Ce* is often indicative of the person or thing that is to follow, in which case it requires *que* before the noun, and *que* de before the next infinitive, as—

<i>c'est une grande vertu que la</i>	patience is a great virtue.
<i>patience,</i>	
<i>c'est une grande folie que de</i>	it is a great folly to wish to
<i>vouloir se tuer,</i>	kill oneself.

In the first instance it is evident that *ce* relates to *patience*, as if it were, *la patience est une grande vertu*; and in the second to *vouloir*, as if it were, *vouloir se tuer est une grande folie*, but *ce* is more elegant and peculiar to the genius of the French language.

3°. *Ce* is also used elegantly in reference to what follows—

<i>ce fut l'envie qui occasiona le</i>	it was envy that caused the
<i>premier meurtre,</i>	first murder.

As if it were, *l'envie occasiona le premier meurtre*.

4°. To add energy and elegance to a sentence, *ce qui, ce que, ce dont, ce à quoi*, used in the first part of a sentence, require *ce* to be repeated at the beginning of the second part, except when followed by an adjective or a participle past, without a noun, as—

<i>ce qui me révolte c'est de voir</i>	what irritates me is to see
<i>des trahîtres récompensés,</i>	traitors rewarded.
<i>ce dont je suis fâché c'est de</i>	what grieves me is to see you
<i>vous voir malade,</i>	ill.
<i>ce qui est vrai est beau,</i>	what is true is beautiful.

REMARK.—*C'est* in the second part governs *de* before the infinitive.

Should the first part of the sentence be short, or the noun allows *être* be in the singular, the *ce* may or may not be used, as taste may dictate, as—

<i>je dis est</i> (or <i>c'est</i>) <i>la</i>	what I say is the truth.
<i>té,</i>	
<i>il plait le plus est</i> (or	what pleases most is praise.
<i>il) la louange,</i>	
<i>le plus noble attribut des</i>	the noblest attribute of the
<i>dieux c'est</i> (or <i>est</i>) <i>la bien-</i>	gods is benevolence.
<i>veillance,</i>	

As in the last sentence, though *est* be followed by a noun, it is conformable to taste, the sentence being comparatively

Ce often stands for the word *chose*, restricted by the words that follow, as—

<i>il doit s'appliquer qu'à</i>	we ought to apply ourselves
<i>ce qui peut être utile,</i>	only to what is useful.
<i>Il n'est que à la chose qui peut être utile.</i>	

The verb *être* preceded by *ce*, and followed by a preposition with a noun or pronoun, singular or plural, is put in the same case with *que* before the complement, as—

<i>des charlatans que vous</i>	it is in quacks that you have
<i>confiés,</i>	confided.
<i>Celle que je désire parler,</i>	it is of her I wish to speak.

Ce can only be omitted when the preposition preceding the noun or pronoun can be transferred and put before the pronoun *qui*, as—

<i>C'est pour vous que je travaille,</i>	It is for you that I am work-
<i>c'est vous pour qui je</i>	ing.
<i>travaille,</i>	

Être preceded by *ce*, and followed by a plural, is put in the plural, but if followed by one or several singulars in it, it is in the singular, as—

<i>Il n'est que les ouvrages médiocres</i>	it is indifferent works that
<i>il faut abréger,</i>	must be abridged.
<i>C'est le menteur et le flatteur</i>	it is the liar and the flatterer
<i>qu'il faut craindre,</i>	that are to be dreaded.

OBSERVE.—That though we sometimes find the verb in the singular, followed by a plural, as, *est-ce vos enfants qui ont fait cela?* it is better to put the verb in the plural, but we never find a plural verb followed by a singular.

8°. *Être* with *ce*, followed by *nous* and *vous*, is put in the singular, but if followed by *eux* it is put in the plural, as—

<i>c'était nous qui étions malheureux,</i>	it was we who were unfortunate.
<i>c'est vous qui me condamnez,</i>	it is you who condemn me.
<i>ce firent eux qui abandonèrent leur roi,</i>	it was they who abandoned their king.

OBSERVE.—That the verb *être*, in the first part of a sentence, must correspond in tense with the second verb; to say, therefore, *c'est Cicéron qui sauva la république* is wrong, it should be, *ce fut Cicéron qui sauva la république*.

9°. In interrogative sentences the verb *être*, with *ce*, can only be put in the plural when it is in the imperfect and the two conditionals, as—

<i>est-ce eux qui dansent?</i>	is it they who are dancing?
<i>sera-ce vos fils qui iront?</i>	will it be your son that will go?

Sont-ce eux, and *seront-ce vos fils*, are too grating to the ear to be allowed, but we use the plural in the following:—

<i>étaient-ce eux qui chantaient?</i>	was it they who were singing?
<i>seraient-ce vos filles qui nous feraient cet honneur?</i>	would it be your daughters that would do us this honour?

EXERCISE C.—PART I.

1°. One of the things that struck me most among the
^{e¹⁵} Spartans ^{e⁶⁷} is their firmness, ^{chez} is their courage in adversity;
^{ce} ^{e⁶¹} ^{ce}m.tél.
the astronomers, who pretend to know the nature of the
^{astronome} ^{e¹⁴} ^{e²⁸}f.
stars, affirm that they are so many ^{e²⁸} ^{assurer} ^{autant de} ^{e¹} ^{e⁴} suns; I have seen your
^{e⁸} ^{e³} ^{e⁸} ^{e²} ^{e⁴} ^{e⁸}
grammar, it is a very useful book; I have seen your grammar,
^{e³} ^{e²} ^{écolier} ^{e²⁰} art.
it is very good for the learner of every ^{e⁴} degree. 2°. It is a

dreadful crime to prove ungrateful; it is acting wrong to
freuxm. se montrer e^{24} e^2 e^{19}
 regret our parents, it would be much worse to abandon them;
 e^{28} e^4 *pis de abandonner*
 lie, e^6 Δ is¹ to despise³ God³ and fear⁴ men⁵; dissimulation⁵
 e^{28} *ce* e^{28} e^2 e^{19} e^1 f.
 is¹ a necessary³ quality³ Δ to reign⁴. 3°. It was the thunder
nécessaireté f. pour e^{28} *foudre* f.
 at shattered that tree. 4. What we must attribute *so many*
 e^{61} e^{46} e^8 e^{28} e^{28}
 ills to, is the absence of morals; the sign of the corruption
 e^1 f. *morale* f.s. *signe* m.f.
 morals is the multiplicity of laws.
 e^{47} té f. e^9

EXERCISE C.—PART II.

4°. What aggravates me most is Δ to see powerful men
révolter *de* e^4 e^2 e^1
 abusing Δ their authority; what suits me best is Δ to live in
buser de e^{28} e^{70} *de* e^2 e^2
 the country; what is agreeable to our taste is often hurtful to
 e^{14} é... *le* e^{74} e^3 *contraire*
 our health. 5°. The thing that makes me angry Δ is your
 e^{16} *indigner* *ce*
 justice. 6°. It is to the entreaties of my protector that I
f. *solicitation* f. *protecteur*
 am indebted for my pension; it is to the Phœnicians that we
 e^{28} —f. e^{16}
 owe the invention of the alphabet. 7°. It was the horrors of
 e^{28} f.f. e^{10}
 battles, and of the consequences of war, that terrified me; it
combat m. *suite* f. e^2 *effrayer*
 my valour, ambition, and the love of glory that makes heroes.
avoué f.f. e^{19} e^1 e^5 e^{61}
 It is we who blame you; it was they who ordered the
 e^{27} *ordonner*
 ceremony of the king's burial; it is you, generous Athletes,
 e^{28} f. e^2 *enterrement* m. e^{44}
 who have fought gloriously; is it the English who have done
combattre glorieusement e^{13}
 at?

SECTION VI.

OF INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

ON, ONE, WE, PEOPLE, THEY, &c.

RULE CI.—33. 1°. Though *on* is always considered masculine singular, yet when it has a decided reference to the feminine, the adjective is made to agree with the noun in embryo, as—

<i>on n'est pas toujours jeune et jolie, A.C.A.</i>	one is not always young and handsome.
---	--

It may also be used with a plural noun, as a restricting term to the idea of the plural which *on* may indefinitely represent, as—

<i>on n'est pas des esclaves pour essuyer de si mauvais trait- ments, A.C.A.</i>	we are not slaves to endure such ill treatment.
--	--

Jeune and *jolie* are in evident allusion to a female, and *esclaves* to an assemblage of men lamenting at being used as slaves; but much as we value the authority of the French academy, we cannot yield a blind acquiescence to this absurd principle, that a singular can agree with a plural; as well might we say, *one is not slaves*—*nous ne sommes pas esclaves*, would have been better sense.

2°. *On* is of constant use in relating reports which are vague and general, or when we do not wish to mention by whom they were reported, as—

<i>on dit que nous aurons la guerre, on dit que M. D. a fait fail- lite,</i>	they say we shall have war. it is said Mr. D. has failed.
--	--

OBSERVE.—That here the English passive is changed into the French active sense by making *on* the subject of the verb, as if it were, *they say*, instead of *it is said*.

3°. Though apparent definite rules are given for the use of the euphonic letter *l* before *on*, yet we find numerous examples in the best writers in contradiction to them, as—

*souvent de ce qu'on a l'on néglige l'usage,
et de ce qu'on n'a pas, on est le plus tenté.*

Fr. de Neufch.

The *l'on* is used to avoid the hiatus, which would be a fault in prose, and a worse one in poetry.

EXERCISE CI.

1°. They fought *on both sides* with desperation; they all
^{e¹⁵} ^{e²³} *de part et d'autre en désespéré* pl. m. ^{e¹⁴}
 speak, and they all speak *at once*; whatever pretences ^{e¹³}
^{e¹⁴} ^{e¹³} *à la fois quelque mine f. que*
 we may make, we are always ^{e¹⁴} glad ^{e¹³} to be loved; we are
^{e¹⁵} f. ^{e¹⁸} ^{e¹⁵} f. *bien aise de* ^{e⁴} ^{e¹⁵} f.
 beautiful enough when we are good enough; we acquire the
^{e⁵} ^{e²³} ^{e³} ^{e¹⁵} ^{e²} ^{e¹³} ^{e¹⁵} ^{e¹³}
 favour of princes with difficulty, we preserve it with
^{e¹⁶} ^{e³} ^{e⁴} ^{e¹⁵} ^{e¹¹} ^{e³}
 uneasiness, we lose it with despair; do you *really* think, said
inquiétude f. ^{e¹⁵} ^{e²³} ^{e³} *désespoir* m. *de bonne foi* ^{e¹⁷} ^{e¹⁰}
 Amelia to Lucila, that when we are sensible and handsome
 ^{e³} ^{e¹⁵} *joli*
 we are ignorant of it? no, we know it *perfectly*; but if we are
^{e¹⁵} ^{e²⁴} — ^{e²¹} ^{e¹⁵} ^{e²³} *très-bien* ^{e¹} ^{e¹⁵}
 tenacious of a good name, we will not pride ourselves on
jalouse *sa* — *réputation* f. ^{e¹⁵} ^{e²³} ^{e¹⁸}
 these advantages. 2°. They say that the king is arrived;
^{e³} ^{e¹⁵} ^{e¹⁰} ^{e²} ^{e¹⁸}
 “on dit” is the gazette of fools. 3°. If one had always the
 ^{e¹³} ^{e¹⁵} *être* ^{e⁹} ^{e¹⁵} *dans*
 same feelings as when one arrives, one would never leave the
 — ^{e²⁵} *qu'on a* ^{e³} ^{e¹⁵} ^{e¹⁸} ^{e¹⁵} ^{e²⁴} *sortir de*
 place he was in.
^{e¹⁴} *où l'on a* —

RULE CII.—34. 1°. *Quiconque*, whoever, whosoever, when restricted in its definite application by some noun or pronoun, and when it refers absolutely to a woman, requires the adjective that follows in the feminine, as—

quiconque de vous sera assez hardie..... | whoever among you will be bold enough.....

Here *de vous* evidently makes *quiconque* definitely apply to some one among a certain number of females, and *hardie* is made to agree accordingly, otherwise it would be incorrect, and we must write *quiconque sera assez hardi*; as *quiconque* contains both the antecedent and relative, it cannot be followed by *il*, as—

quiconque est pauvre n'est rien, | whoever is poor is nobody.

As if it were *celui qui est pauvre n'est rien*, he who is poor is nobody, which could not admit of *il*, he.

2°. *Autrui*, others; as an indefinite word, does not admit of the possessive pronoun *son, sa, ses, leur, leurs*, to refer to it as a direct object, in that case the *en* is put before the verb, and *le* before the noun, as—

<i>en épousant les intérêts d'autrui nous ne devons pas en épouser les passions</i> (not <i>leurs passions</i> ,)	in espousing the interest of others, we ought not to espouse their passions.
---	--

Others, in relation to persons previously or subsequently mentioned, must be rendered by *autre* and not by *autrui*, as—*il ne faut ravir le bien des uns pour le donner aux autres* (not *autrui*); but if no such relation exists, *autrui* may be used always with a preposition.

3°. *Chacun*, in immediate reference to what precedes, is declinable with regard to gender, but is always singular, as—

<i>J'ai vu vos sœurs; chacune se plaint de son sort,</i>	I saw your sisters; each complains of her lot.
--	--

Chacun, followed by a noun or pronoun, governs the preposition *de*, and the following verb in the singular, as—

chacun de vos amis se plaint, | each of your friends complains.

When, after the sense of a phrase is completed, *chacun*, each, gives an idea of distribution, consequently of the singular, the pronouns *son, sa, ses*, are used; but if the complement of the verb comes only after the word *chacun*, the relation of the plural being undisturbed by the distributive word, they are rendered by *leur, leurs*, as—

<i>ils ont donné leur avis, chacun selon ses vues,</i> <i>ils ont donné, chacun, leur avis,</i>	they have given their opinion, each according to his views. they have each given their opinion.
--	---

In the first sentence *chacun* comes after *avis*, the complement of *ont donné*, it could not be left out, and is preceded only by a comma, whereas in the last sentence it is an incidental word introduced as a parenthesis coming before *avis*, the object of *ont donné*, it is between two commas, is only incidental, and might be omitted.

EXERCISE CII.

1°. *Whoever is all-powerful* is liked at all times; *whoever*
pouvoir tout aimable ^{e⁴} ^{e¹⁴} ^{e²⁶}
 expects a certain misfortune, may already call himself
^{e²⁰} ^{e⁴} *pouvoir* ^{e⁷⁶} *se dire*
 unfortunate; *which* of us would be mad enough, to go into
^{e⁵} f. ^{e⁸³} *fou* ^{e¹} ^{e⁶}
 that boat with you? 2°. The honest man is discreet, he
^{e⁷} ^{e⁸} ^{e⁷²} ^{e¹} *discret*
 observes the faults of *others*, but never speaks of *them*; in
^{e⁹⁶} ^{e⁹} ^{e¹} ^{e⁶⁴} ^{e¹²} ^{e⁶⁶} ^{e²}
 praising the virtues of *others*, we must take great care not
^{e²⁰} ^{e¹} ^{e³} *bien se garder* — *d'en*
 to praise their faults. 3°. Common² sense¹ is not a common²
^{e²⁰} ^{e⁹} ^{e³⁷} ^{e⁵⁹} ^{e³⁷}
 thing¹; *every one*, however, thinks he has enough of it; *each*
^{e¹⁶} *pourtant* ^{e²³} ^{e⁵⁸} ^{e⁸²}
 of those carts has lost its axle-tree; they have brought
^{e⁵} ^{e²³} *essieu* m. ^{e⁴}
 offerings to the temple, *each* according to *his* means; they
offrande f. m. ^{e⁵⁸} ^{e⁴} f.
 took *each* *their* coach, to travel over the country; they set out
^{e⁵} K ^{e²} *pour parcourir* ^{e¹⁶} f. *partir*
 all for London, *each* in *their* coach; all the judges have given
^{e¹⁴} ^{e¹} ^{e²} ^{e¹⁴} ^{e⁶⁵} *opiner*
their judgment, *each* according to *his* knowledge; the judges
^{e⁶⁸} ^{e³⁸} ^{e⁶⁵}
 have given *each* *his* opinion.
^{e⁴} *avis* m.

RULE CIII.—1°. *Quelqu'un*, some, any; when used relatively may refer to persons or things, it takes both gender and number, and implies an indefinite quantity, abstracted from an indefinite number expressed by the preposition *de*, placed before the noun that follows the verb, or by *en* before the verb not followed by a noun, being the personal pronoun in the second state, in reference to a noun mentioned before, as—

<i>Je connais quelques-uns de vos amis,</i> <i>connaissez-vous ces demoiselles? oui, j'en connais quelques-unes,</i>	I know some of your friends. do you know these young ladies? yes, I know some of them.
---	---

Quelqu'un is sometimes used elliptically, as—

ces fleurs sont belles, mais | these flowers are beautiful, but
quelques-unes sont des épines, | some of them have thorns.

Which evidently stands for *quelques-unes de ces fleurs, &c.*

2°. *Personne* is to persons what *rien* is to things, they are both masculine and singular, but *personne*, used as a noun, is always feminine singular or plural, as—

<i>personne n'est venu ici,</i>	nobody has been here.
<i>il ne m'a rien envoyé,</i>	he has sent me nothing.
<i>Je sais cette nouvelle d'une</i>	I know that news from a
<i>personne très-instruite,</i>	well informed person.

Rien is also used as a noun, in allusion to mere trifles, and is mas. plu. or sing., as—

<i>un rien le choque et l'afflige,</i>	the least thing starts and frets him.
<i>J'aime mieux ne rien faire</i>	I prefer doing nothing than
<i>que de faire des riens,</i>	such trifles.

Personne and *rien*, as pronouns, require *de* before the adjective or participle that follows them,* as—

<i>il n'y a personne d'arrivée,</i>	there is no person arrived.
<i>rien de beau que le vrai,</i>	nothing beautiful but the truth.

Ne is not expressed with *personne* and *rien* when elliptically used without a verb, as—

<i>qui est là? personne,</i>	who is there? nobody.
<i>qu'avez vous? rien,</i>	what ails you? nothing.

EXERCISE CIII.

1°. Do you know *any* of those gentlemen? I know *some* of
^{e²⁷} ^{e³⁴} ^{e²⁷}
them; among those ladies I observed *some* that were very
^{e⁶⁵} ^{e²⁸} ^{e³⁶} ^{e³}
sad; several of those ladies have promised me ^{e¹⁸} ^{e¹⁴} to come;
^{e⁵¹} ^{e²⁶} ^{e²⁸} ^{e¹⁸} ^{e¹⁴}
some ^{e¹⁶} will come²; those paintings are beautiful, *some* are
^{e¹} ^{e⁶} ^{e⁴³} ^{e¹⁰}
from our greatest masters. 2°. *No one* is so pleased with
^{e⁶⁰} ^{e¹⁰} ^{e⁷⁷} ^{e²⁷} ^{e¹⁰⁸}
his lot as with himself; I know *no one* so vain as a rich

* We consider, however, that *personne* and *rien* do not require *de* before the next adjective or participle, except as an expletive, which is not required when an adverb occurs before them, therefore *y a-t-il personne d'assez hardi* as given by this academy, would have been better written *y a-t-il personne assez hardi*

upstart; whom did you see at Madame St. Angé's? *nobody*;
parvenu e^4 κ e^{62}
 your mother is Δ very mild; *is there any thing* more delightful
 e^6 *personne* e^3 *doux* e^4 e^5
 than Δ union among Δ citizens? when a man is doing *nothing*
 art. ...f. e^{81} art. e^{67} e^{83} e^1 e^{13}
 we may say Δ he is doing Δ wrong; vanity, like insects,
 e^{15} e^{18} e^{10} *que* e^{13} *du* e^{19} é f. e^{24} te m.
 feeds on trifles; it is better Δ to say *nothing* than Δ to
se repaître de petit rien m. *valoir mieux ne* e^{10} *de*
 say Δ useless things.
 e^{10} *des* *riens* m.

RULE CIV.—1°. *Nul*, *aucun*, and *pas un*, have nearly the same signification.

Nul is more conclusive than *aucun* or *pas un*, and is rendered by no, or no one; when used absolutely, without reference to what precedes, it takes neither gender nor number, and has the meaning of *personne*, no one; but when joined to a noun it takes gender, and is always singular, as—

<i>nul</i> (<i>personne</i>) <i>n'est content</i> <i>de sa fortune,</i>	no man (no one) is pleased with his lot.
<i>vous ne trouverez nulle part</i> <i>de plus jolis tableaux,</i>	you will not find any where more beautiful pictures.

In the sense of void, useless, *nul* takes the sign of the plural, as—

toutes ces procédures sont nulles, | all these proceedings are void.

Nul and *aucun* also take the sign of the plural when they qualify a noun that has no singular, or which in its usual acceptation is always plural, as—

il n'a versé aucunes larmes, | he has shed no tears.

2°. *Aucun* is more restricted in its negative application than *nul*, it takes gender, and is generally singular,* as—

<i>aucune raison ne peut justifier le mensonge,</i>	no reason can justify a falsehood.
---	------------------------------------

Had we written *nulle raison*, it would have meant, no reason whatever, of any kind.

* We see no reason why it should not take the sign of the plural, which we find in best authors, and we would recommend the use of the plural.

Aucun is sometimes used without negation in phrases of doubt and interrogation, as—

<i>je doute qu'il y ait aucun sans défaut,</i>	I doubt if there be any one without a fault.
<i>de tous les hommes, y en a-t-il aucun sans défaut?</i>	of all men, is there one without a fault?

3°. *Pas un* expresses an exclusion more general than *aucun*, it takes the sign of the feminine, and means not one, but is always singular.

<i>il n'y a pas une seule personne qui approuve sa conduite,</i>	there is not one person that approves his conduct.
--	--

Nul, *aucun*, and *pas un*, govern the preposition *de* before the next noun or pronoun, when these words are intended to impart the idea of one out of a number, as—

<i>nul de tous ceux qui y ont été ne sont revenus,</i>	none of those who have been there have returned.
<i>aucun de vous ne peut se plaindre,</i>	none of you can complain.
<i>il n'y a pas un de ces livres que je n'aie lu,</i>	there is not one of those books but what I have read.

Il n'y a pas un livre would mean, there is not one book; *il n'y a pas un de ces livres* means, there is not one out of the number of books pointed out by *ces*, those.

EXERCISE CIV.

1°. *None of them* have accepted this very² delicate³ mission¹; *d'entre eux* ^{e²³} ^{e³} ..é.....f.
 no man is happy—*nothing* ^{e¹} ^{e¹³} ^{e¹⁵} ^{ne} ^{e¹⁵} ^{e²³} can make him so; *no funeral* ^{tel} ^{funérailles} ^{f.}
 was more pompous; this act renders all the others *void*; these
 H. *pompeux* ...m. ^{e⁵⁰} ^{e¹⁴} ^{e¹⁹}
 two wills are *void*, in consequence of *the one* ^{e²} ^{raison} ^{f.} ^{celui} ^{que} ^{e¹} he has just
testament m. ^{e²} ^{raison} ^{f.} ^{celui} ^{que} ^{e¹} made; *no one* ^{e⁵} ^{e²} ^à ^{se voir} ^{e²³} likes to see himself such as he is. 2°. ^{e²}
No reverse should change friendship; *no troops* equal ours;
contre ^{tems} ^{m.} ^{e³} ^{F.} ^{altérer} ^{e⁴²} ^{e⁴²} ^{égal}
none of you can complain of my conduct; he has been at no
f. ^{e¹⁵} ^{e¹⁷} ^{e²⁷} ^{e²⁴} —
 expense; *none* of those works will be handed down to
frais pl. ^{e¹} ^{passer}
posterity. 3°. *There is not a single person* of that opinion;
é f. ^{e⁴} ^{seul} ^{e²³}f.

one of those trees will bear any fruit this year; all those
^{e⁴⁶} ^{porter} ^{e³⁰} ...m. ^{e³} ^{e¹⁴}
 ig ladies were invited to the ball, but not one would go to
^{e¹⁹} H. ^{inviter} ^{e³⁴} ^{e¹} ^{e¹⁷} H. ^{e¹} y
 there is not one of those books but what I ^A have read.
^{e⁴} ^{e²} ^{que} ^{ne} ^{e³⁰} T.

ULE CV.—37. 1°. *Autre*, when not joined to a noun, or out reference to the relative pronoun *en*, is a pronoun, ding for *personne* or *chose*, *une autre personne*, *une autre e*, and is rendered by another, as—

autre vous punirait sévère- | another would punish you
ent, | severely.

autre, joined to a noun, or in reference to the relative pronoun *en*, is an adjective,

yez moi mes autres chevaux, | send me my other horses.
alle de spectacle étant brûlée, | the theatre being burnt
n en rebâtit une autre, | down, they built another.

autre, with the article, is relative to the noun of persons or things mentioned before, and is rendered by *others*, as—

autres restèrent chez eux, | the others remained at home.

°. *L'un l'autre*, one another, used separately, imply division of several persons or things, and may be governed each by a preposition, as—

avait raison l'autre avait | the one was right the other
ort, | was wrong.

L'un, the one, is used in relation to the person first mentioned, and *l'autre*, the other, to the last.

l'one, in a sense of division of numbers, is rendered by *les autres*.

uns chantèrent, les autres dansèrent, | some sung, some danced.

°. *Ni l'un ni l'autre*, requires the verb of which it is the subject to be put in the plural when two or more nouns concur the action expressed; and in the singular when only one possibly be the subject, as—

l'un ni l'autre n'iront au | neither of them shall go to the
concert, | concert.

une ni l'autre (better au- | neither the one nor the other
une des deux) n'est ma | is my mother.
ère,

Ni l'un ni l'autre, in the first case, implies two persons that are not to go to the concert, for we can say, *ils n'iront au concert, ni l'un ni l'autre*, and therefore the verb is in the plural; in the second only one can be my mother, and consequently the verb is in the singular.

But if *l'un l'autre* as adjectives are followed by a noun, we think the number of the verb ought to be determined by the number of that noun, as—

ni l'une ni l'autre raison n'est bonne, | neither the one reason nor the other is good.

4°. *L'un ou l'autre* is rendered by either, and both adjective and verb must be in the singular, as—

l'un ou l'autre viendra, | either of them will come.

For *plusieurs*, many, several; and *tel*, such; see Syntax, rule 36.

EXERCISE CV.

1°. *Many have been deceived* in wishing to deceive others;
se tromper e^2 e^{37} e^{20}
another Δ Δ would not speak to you so candidly; one
que moi e^{12} *avec tant de franchise* $f. e^5$
cannot be happy in this world and in the other. 2°. The
 e^{15} e^{13} e^2 e^{64} e^{13}
people always suffer by the war which sovereigns wage with
 e^{40} pl. e^9 e^4 e^{27} e^2 *souverrain faire* e^{11}
one another; let us presume to oppose Socrates even to Cato,
 e^{95} *opposer* e^{13}
the one was more a philosopher, *the other* more a citizen;
 Δ — e^5 — e^{67}
Charles the Twelfth, king of Sweden, experienced what pro-
..... — e^2 *éprouver* e^{15}
priety has Δ most great and what adversity has Δ most
..... e^1 e^{15} e^f Δ most
cruel, without being enervated by *the one*, or shaken by *the*
..... e^8 Δ *amolli* e^{19} *ébranlé* e^{19}
other. 3°. I am very angry against Francis and John, for
 e^2 e^{30} e^2 *François* *Jean* e^{38}
neither have done their duty; Mr. F. and Mr. G. have been
 e^{13} e^{49}
proposed for Lord Mayor, but *neither the one nor the other*
proposer
 Δ will be it. 4. You have an agent at Trieste and another
ne e^{48} *correspondant*

at Geneva, give me the direction of *either of them*, for I must
 ^{e⁴} *adresse* f. ^{e¹⁸} ^{e²⁰}

write to *one of them*.
 use ^{e¹} R

RULE CVI.—38. 1°. *Quelque*, *whatever*, *whatsoever*, joined to a noun, with or without an adjective, indicates number and quantity, and is generally put in the plural, with *que* before the verb in the subjunctive, as—

<i>quelque poste que vous occu-</i> <i>piez...</i>	whatever post you occupy...
<i>quelques grands biens que l'on</i> <i>possède...</i>	whatever wealth we may pos- sess...

2°. *Quelque*, used with the verb *être*, which must be in the subjunctive, is divided into *quel-que*; *quel* assuming the gender and number of the word it relates to, as—

<i>quelle que soit votre intention,</i>	whatever may be your inten- tion.
<i>quelles que soient vos inten-</i> <i>tions,</i>	whatever may be your inten- tions.

OBSERVE.—When the verb *être* is followed by two nouns united by the conjunction *ou*, *quel* must agree with the last noun, because the second being generally used to add energy to the sentence, the mind reverts to it more than to the first,
 as—

<i>quelle que soit le mérite ou la</i> <i>vertu de cet homme...</i>	whatever may be the merit or virtue of that man...
--	---

3°. *Quelque*, in the sense of *though*, *all*, *however*, *howsoever*, and before an adverb, or an adjective before a noun, becomes an adverb, and therefore indeclinable, as—

<i>quelque prudemment que nous</i> <i>agissions...</i>	however prudently we may act...
<i>quelque incrédules que soient</i> <i>les hommes...</i>	however incredulous men may be...

Incredulous as, or as incredulous as men may be...

Though men be ever so incredulous...

How incredulous soever men may be...

Let men be ever so incredulous...

OBSERVE.—That *quelque* requires the adverb or adjective to be placed immediately after it, and that it governs *que* and the subjunctive; but *tout* in the same sense governs *que* and the indicative, as—

Tout incrédules que sont les hommes.

Tout in this sense, used with the indicative, affirms positively; *quelque*, in the same sense, used with the subjunctive, affirms with doubt.

EXERCISE CVI.

1°. A woman, *whatever* great wealth she brings into a house, soon ruins it if she introduces luxury into it; with *whatever* proud distinction *men* may flatter themselves, they all have the same origin. 2°. But, *whatever* be thy religion and thy country, sleep beneath my tent in safety; *whatever* may be his fault or his awkwardness, do not be angry with him; *whatever* men may be, we must live with them. 3°. *However* rich *misers* may be, they give to no one; *however* secret may have been your opinions, they have transpired; *however* prudently we may act, our conduct will nevertheless be blamed; *however* cleverly he goes about it, he does not succeed.

s'y prendre

OF *TOUT*.

RULE CVII.—39. 1°. *Tout* as a pronoun is indeclinable, and stands for all things or everything; it is either the subject or object, direct or indirect, of the verb. As subject it precedes the verb, as direct object it is placed after, and in compound tenses between the auxiliary verb and participle; but when an indirect object, that is governed by a preposition, it is placed after the participle, as—

<i>Il croit que tout lui réussira,</i>	he thinks that all will succeed.
<i>et vous dois tout,</i>	I owe you everything.
<i>Il a tout perdu,</i>	he has lost everything.
<i>et suis fatigué de tout,</i>	I am tired of all things.

2°. *Tout ce qui* as subject, and *tout ce que* as object, always precede the verb, and stand for *all that*; *whatever*, standing for *all that, everything that, or which*.

<i>Tout ce qui est inutile est cher,</i>	all that is useless is dear.
<i>Tout ce que vous voyez m'appartient,</i>	whatever you see is mine.

3°. *Tout*, all, the whole, collectively, may be used with *nous*, *vous*, *eux*, when governed by a preposition; *tout* coming after the pronouns, as *nous tous*, or *toutes*, all of us; *vous tous*, or *toutes*, all of you; *eux tous*, *elles toutes*, all of them, as—

<i>il se plaint de nous tous,</i>	he complains of us all.
<i>je m'adresse à vous tous,</i>	I address myself to you all.

But if *tout* be the subject of a verb or its attribute, *nous*, *vous*, *eux*, *elles*, are omitted though expressed in English, as—

<i>ils étaient tous en France,</i>	they were all of them in France.
<i>nous étions tous ivres,</i> not	all of us were tipsy, that is, we
<i>nous tous ivres,</i>	were all tipsy.

EXERCISE CVII.

1°. With knowledge, skill, and honesty, one may aspire to ^{e⁸} *everything*; for the ^{e³⁸} *ambitious* ^{f.} *man*, ^{e⁶⁵} *all* ^{e¹⁶} *he* ^{e⁷⁸} *possesses* [^] *nothing*, what he desires is ^{ambitieux} *everything*; ^{ce que} *there* ^{e³⁵} *is* ^{e¹²} *nothing* for ^{e¹⁶} *supper*, the English travellers have ate ^{e⁸¹} *everything*; let us ^{e⁴} *souper* ^{e¹²} *with* ^{e¹} *the* ^{voyageur} *travellers* ^{e¹} *have* ^{e¹⁹} *set off*, I have paid for ^{depuis} *all*; from the most abject slave ^{misérable} *to* ^{e¹²} *the* ^{e¹} *greatest* ^{e²} *king* ^{e¹⁹} *in* ^{e⁶⁴} *the* ^{e¹⁷} *world*, ^{e¹} *all* ^{e²} *complain*, ^{e¹⁹} *all* ^{e⁶⁴} *murmur* ^{e¹⁷} *against* ^{e¹} *fortune*. 2°. *All that* is fashionable is much sought after; ^{e²} *whatever* ^{.....f.} *he* ^{à la mode} *says* ^{très} *is* ^{rechercher} *false*; bring the *whole*, and we will ^{e¹⁰} *make* ^{faux} *our* ^{e⁴} *choice*. 3°. All the people who live in *poverty* ^{e⁵} *are* ^{choix} *ugly* ^{m.} *or* ^{e⁴⁰} *deformed*; to use ^{pl.} *all* ^{e²} *our* ^{misérablement} *power*, *all* ^{e⁶⁰} *our* ^{e³⁸} *in-* ^{...} *laid* ^{mal fait} *shape*.

dustry, *all* our knowledge, *all* our means, for a friend, is a
*ie* f. *savoir* m. *capacité* sin. *son* *e*⁴
 duty; he has sent these strawberries for *us all*; Madame de
*e*⁴⁰ *e*³ *e*²⁶
 Lambert sends her compliments to *you all*; we were *all* in
 *faire*m. *e*¹
 the country; all that proceeds from the mouth of a father
*e*¹⁴ *sortir* *e*²³ *e*²
 should be *listened to* with respect and submission.
*e*⁸ *recevoir* *e*⁸m. *soumission* f.

RULE CVIII.—39. 1°. *Tout*, as an adjective, in the sense of *entire*, and divided from the noun by a verb, takes no article, as—

<i>l'âme est toute dans le corps,</i>	the soul is entire in the body,
<i>et toute en chacune de ses parties,</i>	and entire in all its parts.

OBSERVE.—*Tout*, in the sense of *chaque*, each (each or every one individually), takes no article or pronoun, and is always singular, as—

<i>il nous voit à tout moment,</i>	he sees us at every moment.
<i>tout citoyen doit servir son pays,</i>	each citizen ought to serve his country.

Everybody is rendered by *tout le monde*.

2°. *Tout*, all, as an adjective with nouns of nations, takes the gender of that noun, but with the names of towns, cities, streets, or parishes, it remains masculine, the word people being understood, as—

<i>toute la France l'admire,</i>	all France admires him.
<i>toute l'Europe le loue,</i>	all Europe praises him.
<i>tout Rome le sait,</i>	all Rome knows it.
<i>tout Paris le connaît,</i>	all Paris knows him.

That is to say, *toute la population de la France, de l'Europe, tout le peuple de Rome, de Paris*.

3°. *Tout*, wholly, entirely, quite, however, although, is an adverb. The adverb *tout* is indeclinable before all adjectives and participles.

<i>elles furent tout étonnées,</i>	they were quite ashamed.
<i>ils sont tout pleins d'esprit,</i>	they are all full of sense.

But if the adjective or participle that comes after the word *tout* begins with a consonant, *tout* assumes the gender and number of the word qualified or restricted—by the law of euphony—when feminine, but is unchangeable if the noun be masculine, as—

<i>toutes méchantes que sont vos</i>	ill-tempered as your sisters
<i>sœurs elles se font aimer,</i>	are, they are loved.
<i>tout magistrats qu'ils sont je</i>	although they be magistrates,
<i>ne les craint pas,</i>	I do not fear them.

Tout is also an adverb, and indeclinable when it precedes a preposition or another adverb, as—

<i>je les ai vus tout en pleurs,</i>	I saw them all in tears.
<i>la rivière coule tout doucement,</i>	the river flows quite softly.

Tout, in the sense of all, is also an adverb when used before a noun, being the attribute of a preceding noun or pronoun, as—

elle est tout yeux et tout oreilles, | she is all eyes and all ears.

Wholly, entirely, quite, coming before the pronoun yours, is rendered by *tout*.

je suis tout à vous, | I am wholly yours.

Tout must be repeated before every noun or adjective, whether used as an adjective or adverb, declinable or not.

EXERCISE CVIII.

1°. *Every* kind of credit is a tax; above all things honour
 — — ...é...m. *impôt* m. ^{e¹⁶} ^{e²⁰}
 divinity; *all* power is weak unless [^] it [^] is united. 2°. *All*
e f. ^{e¹} ^{e²} *amoin* *que* *ne* R *uni*
 London is in mourning for the king; that fire alarmed *all* the
^{e²} *deuil* m. ^{e¹} ^{e²} *incendie* m. *alarmer*
 street St. Honoré. 3°. That young lady is *quite* ashamed of
^{e²} ... ^{e²⁰} *personne* *honteux*
 having expressed herself as she [^] did; our ships are *quite*
^{e¹⁷} *s'exprimer* ^{e¹⁷} *le faire* K ^{e⁴}
 ready, and the wind calls us; *all* astonishing as they are, I do
^{e¹⁵} ^{e⁷} ^{e⁷} ^{e⁶⁶}
 not admire them; these flowers are *quite* as fresh as yesterday;
^{e²⁸} ^{e⁶⁸} ^{e⁷⁵} ^{e²⁸}
 praises *quite* pure do not make a man comfortable, *there must*
louange f. *mettre* ^{e¹} *à son aise* ^{e²⁰}
be something^s [^] substantial⁴ mingled² with them¹; the pleasure
 — — — — *du solide* *mêler* ^y ^{e²⁰}

of doing a kindness is a *pleasing sensation*³, *quite*¹ different¹ [▲]
^{e¹³} *du bien* ^{douce} *autrement* *qui*
 to the pleasure of receiving it; opinion, akin to [▲] faith, is
 — ^{e⁵⁰} ^{e¹⁰}f. *sœur de art.* ^{e⁸}
 like² her³, all-powerful¹.
^{e²⁴} ^{e²}

CHAPTER FIFTH.

OF VERBS.

OF THE AGREEMENT OF THE VERB WITH ITS SUBJECT.

RULE CIX.—40. 1°. Though we have said that, when the relative pronoun *qui* is the subject of a verb, it assumes the gender, number, and person of its antecedent, and that the verb must agree with it accordingly, yet should the pronoun *qui* be used absolutely, the verb must be put in the singular.

les hommes qui parlent...
qui vous a donné cela?

the men who speak...
 who gave you that?

Parlent, speak, in the first example, is third person plural, because *qui*, with which it agrees, relates to *hommes*, men, third person plural; and *a*, has, is third person singular, because *qui*, with which it agrees, is absolute, and has no antecedent expressed.

2°. It is plain that two singulars are equivalent to a plural, and the verb must be put in the plural when, as subjects, two or more nouns or pronouns of the third person are united by the conjunction *et* or *ni*.

son père et lui y furent,
ni l'or ni l'argent ne peuvent
le guérir,

his father and he were there.
 neither gold nor silver can
 cure him.

If the action, however, expressed by the verb, can only be referred to one of the nouns united by *ni* repeated, the verb must be in the singular.

ni M. D. ni M. C. ne sera élu
président du conseil,

neither Mr. D. nor Mr. C. will
 be elected president of the
 council.

As they could not be both elected president of the council, the verb is put in the singular.

3°. When the subjects are of different persons, united by the conjunctions *et*, or *ni*, or *ou*,* they are collected under the resuming pronoun *nous* or *vous*, and the verb agreeing with them is put in the plural; but nouns or pronouns of the third person, united by *ou*, require the verb in the singular.

<i>vous et votre cousin vous êtes</i>	you and your cousin (you) are
<i> paresseux,</i>	lazy.
<i>lui et moi nous avons à nous</i>	he and I (we) have to com-
<i> plaindre,</i>	plain.
<i>ni vous ni moi ne l'avons vue,</i>	neither you nor I have seen her.
<i>l'amour propre ou le besoin le</i>	self-love or want will make
<i> fera travailler,</i>	him work.

Should the relative pronoun *qui* be used, the supplying pronouns *nous* or *vous* are omitted.

<i>c'est vous ou lui qui avez</i>	it is you or he that have ate
<i> mangé le pâté,</i>	the pie.

4°. The verb is also put in the plural though the nouns be not united by a conjunction, as—

<i>la danse, la musique, le des-</i>	dancing, music, drawing, are
<i> sein, sont ses délices,</i>	his delight.

But should the nouns have any degree of similitude in their signification (in which case they must never be united by the conjunction *et*), or should the last of a series of nouns be more dwelt upon than the others, and form a kind of climax, the verb must in such* instances be made to agree with the last noun only, as—

<i>son courage, son intrépidité,</i>	his courage, his intrepidity,
<i> le fait admirer,</i>	obtain him admiration.
<i>votre intérêt, votre honneur,</i>	your interest, your honour,
<i> Dieu vous le commande,</i>	God commands you to do it.

5°. OBSERVE.—That *l'un et l'autre*, as subject, requires the verb in the plural, and *l'un ou l'autre* requires it in the singular; *ni l'un ni l'autre*, under restriction, require the verb in the plural.

* Should the nouns or pronouns that are joined by *ou* be the subject of a verb which could not apply to both of them, a different turn must be given to the phrase, and instead of *mon frère ou moi gagnerons le prix*, say *l'un de nous deux gagnera le prix, mon frère ou moi*. Indeed, we would recommend this turn in all cases where *ou* unites two subjects of different persons.

† *Nous* is seldom used as a resuming pronoun with *ni*, to avoid the clash of *n'a*.

EXERCISE CIX.—PART I.

1°. Of all¹ animals⁴, man¹ is² the one who can¹ best exist
^{e¹⁴}m. ^{e¹} ^{e¹⁰⁴} ^{e¹⁵} art. ^{e²⁵} vive
 in flocks; coward who would die! brave who can live! ?
^{e²} troupeau m. lâche ^{e¹⁶} H ^{e¹⁸} ^{e¹²} ^{e¹}
 Gold and silver may be exhausted, but virtue, constancy, and
^{e¹} ^{e¹} s'épuiser ^{e¹} ^{e¹} constance f.
 poverty, are never exhausted; neither thy sister nor thy
 povereté f. ^{e²²} ^{e¹⁰⁸} ^{e²²} ^{e¹²} ^{e¹}
 cousin will be admitted to an audience with the first minister;
m. admis laf. ^{e¹⁰}¹⁶
 it ¹ will neither be thy niece nor thy sister who will marry
^{e¹³} ne ^{e²⁰} ^{e³} ^{e¹²} ^{e¹}
 the son of the general. 3°. The conspirators and I have made
^{e¹⁴} ..é..é... conjuré ^{e¹}
 an oath to avenge our country; you must know that my
 — serment m. de ^{e²²} ^{e¹⁰⁸} ^{e²} — ^{e²²} I
 daughter and I went last² Saturday¹ to take a walk in the
^{e²} ^{e¹} ^{e²} Samedi m. se promener ^{e¹}
 botanic garden; it is you and your friend who have played
 jardin des plantes ^{e¹³} ^{e¹} ^{e²²}
 me this trick; I do not know if it was you or my sister
 tour m. ^{e²⁴} ^{e²¹}
 who said this; (better to say) I do not know who said this,
 tenir ce propos K ^{e²⁴} ^{e¹⁰⁸} K
 you or my sister.

EXERCISE CIX.—PART II.

3°. Neither the captain nor I could save the ship: but it
^{e²⁰} ^{e²} ^{e³} ^{e¹⁵} K ^{e²⁰} ^{e¹} ^{e²²}
 was he, his brother, and I, who saved the crew; neither love
 H ^{e²} ^{e²⁰} K équipage m. ^{e²⁰} ^{e²}
 nor hatred accompany us into the tomb. 4°. At Rome, at
^{e²} ^{e²²} suivre ^{e²} tombeau m.
 Athens, at Lacædemonia, honour was the sole reward for the
^{e²²} payait seul —
 greatest² services¹; a crown of oak or of laurels, a statue,
 signalém. ^{e²} ^{e²²} ^{e²}f.
 a praise, was a great reward for a battle gained or a city taken;
^{e²¹} immense ^{e²²} ^{e¹⁰} ^{e²²} ^{e¹³} ^{e¹}
 his courage, his intrepidity, his daring in defying death, caused
m.é.....é f. audace f. ^{e²} affronter ^{e¹} faire
 him to be liked; man ought not to depend on life—a vapour,
 aimer ^{e¹} ^{e¹⁹} ^{e²⁰} ^{e¹} ^{e¹}

a grain of sand, is sufficient to terminate it; a single word, a
 ...m. ^{e¹} ^{e²⁰} pour terminer ^{e¹⁰⁴} moi m.
 sigh, a glance of the eye, betrays us. 5°. Take back these
 soup^{ir} m. coup^{m.} — ^{e³³} ^{e¹⁴} remporter
 two bottles, neither ^Δ suit me; take back these two rings,
^{e⁷} ^{ne} ^{e⁷⁰} ^{e¹⁰⁰} ^{bague} f.
 neither ^Δ is the one ^Δ I want, but one or the other will
^{ne} ^{e¹⁰⁴} ^{dont} ^{e¹⁸} ^{e¹}
 please ^Δ Mademoiselle Faucher.
^{e²⁶} ^d

CONTINUATION OF THE AGREEMENT OF THE VERB WITH ITS
 SUBJECT.

RULE CX.—1°. When *ainsi que*, in the sense of *de même que*, in the same manner as, like, is intended to establish a similitude between the proposition that precedes it and the proposition that follows, the verb must be put in the singular; the second proposition, being only used as a point on which to fix the simile, cannot influence the verb, as—

<i>la beauté, ainsi qu'une fleur,</i>	beauty, like a flower,
<i>s'épanouit en un jour,</i>	a day.

But if it is intended to establish unity or conformity between the two propositions united by *ainsi que*, now used in the sense of *et*, and, the verb is put in the plural, unless *ainsi que* precedes the first proposition, which will be more elegant, and the verb required to be in the singular.

<i>la peste ainsi que la guerre</i>	pestilence as well as war have
<i>ont désolé un grand nombre</i>	laid waste a vast number of
<i>d'état,</i>	states.
<i>ainsi que la guerre, la peste a</i>	as well as war, pestilence has
<i>dévoré un grand nombre</i>	laid waste a vast number of
<i>d'état,</i>	states.

In the first instance *ainsi que* evidently implies that both—not each, like the other, but conjointly—have laid the countries waste, and the verb has as much claim to the plural as if the noun was united by the conjunction *et*, and as if it were, *la peste et la guerre ont*, &c., pestilence and war have, &c.

2°. In the same manner, if two subjects be connected by the conjunctions *comme*, *avec*, *aussi bien que*, *autant que*, *de même que*, *non plus que*, and such like, intending to draw a simile, the verb must agree with the noun that precedes them, without reference to what comes after them, as—

<i>la Bourgogne, aussi bien que</i>	Burgundy, as well as Cham-
<i>la Champagne, produit des</i>	paigne, produces excellent
<i>vins excellents,</i>	wine.
<i>les hommes, comme les femmes,</i>	men, as well as women, like
<i>aiment les compliments,</i>	compliments.
<i>un rôti, avec une salade, suffit</i>	some roast meat, with a salad,
<i>pour mon dîner,</i>	is sufficient for my dinner.

3°. Should the subject of the verb be a noun partitive, such as *la plupart*, *une quantité*, *un nombre*, *une sorte*, *une foule*, *une nuée*, &c., as also the adverbs of quantity, *assez*, *combien*, *peu*, *beaucoup*, *moins*, *plus*, *trop*, *tout*, and *que* for *combien*, the verb is either singular or plural according to the number of the noun that follows the preposition, as—

<i>une foule de peuple obstruit</i>	a crowd of people obstructed
<i>toutes les avenues,</i>	all the avenues.
<i>une foule de soldats obstrui-</i>	a crowd of soldiers obstructed
<i>ent toutes les avenues,</i>	all the avenues.
<i>moins d'éclat convient à mes</i>	less pomp suits my habits.
<i>habitudes,</i>	
<i>trop de soins nuisent à ma</i>	too many cares are injurious
<i>santé,</i>	to my health.

4°. Should, however, the partitive noun be the principal word to which the mind reverts, the noun following being considered as a restrictive word, the verb must be singular though the noun following should be in the plural, as—

<i>la pluralité de maîtres n'est</i>	the plurality of masters is not
<i>pas bonne,</i>	good.

The masters might be good for aught that is said in this phrase, but the plurality of them is bad. In this, and in such cases, the concord is sylleptical, not grammatical; it exists, not between words, but ideas.

5. Collectives which represent to the mind one total, though formed of many, such as *un corps de*, *un peuple de*, *une multitude*, *une foule*, *une armée de*, require the verb to agree with them, without reference to the number of the noun that follows.

<i>une multitude de paysants est</i>	a multitude of peasants is
<i>arrivée d'Irlande,</i>	arrived from Ireland.

6°. *Un*, one, followed by *de* or *des*, requires the verb in the singular, if it be considered that one out of the number is individually the subject; but it must be put in the plural, if the plural noun that follows can collectively be considered the subject.

une des misères des riches est d'être trompés, | one of the miseries of the rich is to be deceived.
l'intempérance est un des vices qui détruisent la santé, | intemperance is one of the vices that destroy health.

In the first place, it is plain that *un*, one, is the subject, as it is not all the miseries, but only one of them that deceives the rich; in the second, *vices*, vices, is the subject of the verb *détruire*, to destroy, as the intention is to assert that intemperance is one of the many vices which destroy health.

EXERCISE CX.—PART I.

1°. History, as well as natural philosophy, only began ^{e³} *ainsi* ^{e¹} *physique* f. ^{e⁴⁶} *K* ^a *a*
to be unravelled towards the end of the sixteenth century;
se débrouiller ^{e³⁸} ^{e⁶⁰} *siècle*
crime^s has⁴ its degrees^s as well¹ as virtue^s; pleasure, as well as
....m. *degré* m. ^{e¹¹⁰} ^{e¹} ^{e¹} ^{e¹¹⁰}
sorrow, agitates the soul. 2°. Almost all Livonia, with the
peine f. *agiter* ^{e⁴⁰} ^{e⁹⁴} ^{e⁸}
whole^s of Estonia¹, had been given up to the king of Sweden;
^{e⁷⁴} — *abandonner* ^{e²}
the strength of mind, like that of the body, is the effect of
force f. *âme* f. ^{e²⁴} ^{e⁷⁶} ^{e⁶⁷} *fruit* m.
temperance; envy, like ^a all other passions, is not very
.....é.....f. ^{e⁶⁸} *de même que* ^{e¹⁴} ^{e¹⁹}f. *est peu*
consistent with happiness. 3°. A crowd of friends came to
compatible ^{e⁸} *bonheur* m. ^{e⁷⁰} f. ^{e⁴} ^{e¹⁶} *K*
congratulate me; one-half of the trees which I had planted are
féliciter *la* ^{e⁴⁰} *faire* *K* *planter*
dead; a crowd of people obstructed all the passages; there is
^{e¹⁸} ^{e⁷⁰} ^{e⁴⁰} *obstruer* *G* *avenue* f. ^{e⁴}
in my sitting-room a cloud of flies, which prevent me from
salon m. *nuée* f. *mouche* f. ^{e³⁶}
remaining ^a there.
^{e¹⁶} *de* ^{e¹⁹}

EXERCISE CX.—PART II.

3°. Sufficient ^{e⁴} *de* ^{e²⁸} ^{e³⁰} ^{e¹⁰⁸} *peu savoir donner*
of it. 4°. The bustle of business overpowers him; a numerous
— — *foule* f. ^{e⁵⁷} pl. *accabler*
quantity of critics have arisen against him; a nation of heroes
nuée f. *critique* ^{e³⁸} ^{e²} *peuple* m. ^{e⁶¹}
will arise in that climate. 5°. A body of infantry advanced
aller *F* ^{e¹} *climat* m. ^{e⁶⁷} *fantassins* pl. *s'avancer* *G*

towards the wood, a multitude of peasants were going ^{the} _{e²³} the
_{e²⁰} same way; the army of the Spaniards maintained the battle _{e¹} *paysans* _{e¹⁰} *de*
for five hours. 6°. Trajan is one of the greatest princes that _{e¹} *soutenir*
has reigned; that officer is one of those who showed the most _{e¹²} _{e²²} *K*
valour in that battle; it is one of the officers of my regiment _{e¹⁰} _{e¹³} *valleur* _{e¹⁴} *K* _{e²} *enlever*
who took this colour from the enemy; your brother is one _{e³³} _{e²} *contribuer* *K* *e²* *rallier* _{e⁴²} _{e¹³}
of those who assisted in rallying the troops; it is one of _{e¹³} _{e²} *valeureux* f. *..é...é...* _{e³⁰} *K* _{e²}
the bold actions of my general that saved the state.

PLACE OF THE SUBJECT OF THE VERB.

According to the order of natural construction, the subject should always precede the verb; but this order suffers many exceptions.

RULE CXI.—41. 1°. Besides the cases mentioned in Rule 41 of Syntax, the subject is placed after the verb.

1°. When with the subjunctive you intend to express a wish, a desire, or when used in the sense of *quand même*,
fasse le ciel que vous soyez | heaven grant you may be
heureux! | happy!
dussé-je y périr! j'irai, | should I perish there! I will go.

2°. When the preposition begins with *tel*, *ainsi*, such, thus,
tel fut le résultat de sa folie, | such was the result of his folly.
ainsi périt tout un peuple, | thus perished a whole people.

3°. The personal pronoun, as subject, is elegantly placed after the verb when the sentence begins with *du moins*, at least; *aussi*, therefore; *encore*, still; *peut-être*, perhaps.

*du moins eut-il pitié de moi,
aussi a-t-elle toujours déclaré
que...
encore cette ombre de gloire
va-t-elle s'évanouir,
peut-être le verrai-je demain,*

*at least he pitied me.
therefore has she always de-
clared...
and still this shade of glory is
going to vanish.
perhaps I shall see him to-
morrow;*

Which is more elegant than "*peut-être je le verrai demain.*"

4°. When the subject, noun or pronoun, of an incidental phrase, is the person whose words are quoted, it is placed after the verb.

"*la haine,*" *dit un sage,* "*est* | "*hatred,*" said a wise man,
"*un sentiment pénible,*" | "*is a painful feeling.*"

5°. It is also placed after unipersonal verbs, as *il* simply implies the subject, but is not the real one.

il lui est échu une succession, | he has inherited a succession.

As if it were *ceci lui est échu, une succession lui est échu.*

OBSERVE.—The verb must be repeated after every subject when they are of different persons or numbers.

sa voix devient plus timide, | his voice becomes more faint,
ses expressions deviennent | his expression becomes more
plus animées, | animated.

Not *sa voix devient plus timide, ses expressions plus animées.*

EXERCISE CXI.—PART I.

1°. What is not in the power of the gods? were you in the
ne^{e16} — dieux s^{e1}
depths of the abyss, their power could draw you thence;
fond m. abîme f. e¹ tirer en
may I with my own eyes see² the fire of heaven⁴ fall³
e¹⁶ R e¹⁰ — e²³ e⁴ foudre f. e⁶
on it! may all nations be convinced that there is no greater
y e¹⁶ R e¹⁴ e¹¹⁰ se convaincre e⁴ e¹
scourge than the revolutions of states; were he
fléau m. f. dans art. e³ s¹
faultless, he ought to be indulgent² to others¹; thus died
sans défaut e¹⁹ o — indulgence f. art. e¹⁹ e¹⁴ e¹⁸
the most righteous of men; Heaven³ preserve² us¹ from a new
juste e¹ e⁵⁰ pl. préserver e³⁵
war! 2°. Such appeared in our eyes the lustre of her beauty;
e² e²⁶ e³ e² e²³ éclat m. e⁶
thus ended in the abasement of Athens, that dreadful
e¹⁴ se terminer e² humiliation f. terrible
war of twenty-seven years. 3°. At least he took pity
e² e²⁹ du moins avoir H e¹³
on the wife of that unfortunate prince; though even the
e¹⁸ épouse e⁵ alors e¹³ que

negro were but a beast of burden, still *we ought* to treat
negre o *e*¹⁹ *bête f.* *somme f.* *e*⁴⁴ *e*²⁰ o *il* *traiter*
 him well.
*e*¹²

EXERCISE CXL—PART II.

4°. "All men are mad," said Boileau, "and only differ
*e*¹⁴ *e*¹ *e*¹⁰² *e*¹⁰ K *e*¹ *différer*
 in the degree;" "only² think¹," said Emily to him,
du plus ou du moins donc *e*¹⁶ *e*¹⁰ H *Emilie*
 "to what you expose yourself;" "I shall consider myself
*e*⁴¹ *s'exposer* *se croire*
 happy," said this good king, "only in as much as I shall
*e*¹³ *e*¹⁰ G *e*² *e*² *qu'autant*
 have contributed to the happiness of my people." 5°. There
faire I — *e*¹¹⁰ *e*⁴⁰ *e*⁴⁷
 have occurred fortunate circumstances; there are arrived here
est survenir *e*⁸³ *circonstance f.* *e*⁴⁷ *e*¹⁸ *e*²⁴
 a great many young women from the kingdom of Visapour;
*e*⁴ *e*²⁰ *e*⁷ *royaume m.*
 there happens to be there a young man; there is a dreadful
*e*⁴⁷ *se trouver* *e*¹⁴ *e*²⁰ *e*¹ *e*⁴ *e*¹⁰⁰
 shore, half peopled, half wild; we listen calmly to
rivage m. *moitié f.* *e*¹² *e*¹¹¹ *sauvage* *e*² *avec docilité*
 the advice which those³ who⁴ flatter⁵ our passions⁶
conseil m. *e*¹² *savoir flatter* f.
 give³ us¹. 5°. There was a temple on the front of which
*e*⁴ *e*⁴m. *e*⁶⁹ *frontispice m.*
 were written these terrible words, "You must die."
*e*¹ L *e*¹⁰⁰ *e*⁸ *e*¹⁸

OF THE OBJECTS OF VERBS.

The object of verbs, otherwise called regimen or complement, have been fully explained in Chapter 4th of Syntax; but learners are so apt to blunder in this particular, that we would rather be guilty of repetition than they should have a doubt on the subject.

The OBJECT, or regimen, serves to bring to a conclusion the meaning of an unfinished proposition, hence it is sometimes called complement; and as this can be effected in a direct or indirect manner, there are two kinds of complements which are called direct and indirect objects.

The DIRECT OBJECT completes or restrains in a direct manner the expression of the verb. It is the aim of the action made

perfect without the aid of a preposition; it may be a noun, a pronoun, an infinitive, or even part of a phrase.

The INDIRECT OBJECT is always preceded by a preposition, either expressed or understood.

The DIRECT OBJECT of a verb being an infinitive, may be preceded by a preposition; but this preposition may be considered as a letter or particle necessary to harmony rather than a real preposition, as, *il aime à parler*, he likes to speak. *Aimer*, to like, is an active verb, having *parler* for its direct object, as it is that which he likes; consequently, the letter *à* does not govern it in the third state.

The active and reflective verbs alone have, and must always have, a direct object expressed or understood; they may also have an incidental indirect object, as—

<i>il vendra son cheval à son</i>	he will sell his horse to his
<i>frère,</i>	brother.
<i>il s'amuse à écrire,</i>	he amuses himself writing.
<i>il lit du matin au soir,</i>	he reads from morning to night.

Cheval is the direct object of *vendra*, and *frère* the indirect object; *se* is the direct object of *amuse*, and *à écrire* the indirect object; and the direct object of *lit* must be *écriture*, writing, understood.

The passive verb has an indirect object, generally governed by the preposition *par* or *de*, previously the subject of the active verb, from which the passive sense has been formed, as—

Act. <i>j'aime toute votre famille,</i>	I love all your family.
Pas. <i>toute votre famille est</i>	all your family is loved by
<i>aimée de moi,</i>	me.
Act. <i>l'officier appelle la garde,</i>	the officer calls the guard.
Pas. <i>la garde est appelée par</i>	the guard is called by the
<i>l'officier,</i>	officer.

When the passive verb expresses an operation of the mind, an act indicative of the emotion of the soul in which the body has no share, it governs *de* before its complement, as—

<i>cette dame est estimée de tout</i>	that lady is esteemed by every
<i>le monde,</i>	body.

But if it expresses an act of the body alone, or an act in which the body and mind have a share, it governs *par*, as—

<i>M. D. fut blessé par son cheval,</i>	Mr D. was wounded by his horse.
<i>l'alphabet fut inventée par Cadmus le Phénicien,</i>	the alphabet was invented by Cadmus the Phenician.

The neuter verbs have an indirect object, generally governed by *à* or *de*, as—

<i>cette femme médit de son prochain,</i>	this woman slanders her neighbour.
---	------------------------------------

But some of them have no object, as, *dormir*, to sleep.

The reflective verbs have *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous*, *vous*, *se* for their direct and sometimes for their indirect object: when they are indirect, they require a direct object after the verb, as—

<i>je me suis coupé,</i>	I have cut myself.
<i>il se donne des louanges,</i>	he praises himself.

OF THE PLACE OF THE OBJECTS.

RULE CXII.—42. 1°. The object is placed after the verb, first, when it is a noun; second, when it is a noun or personal pronoun, with the preposition expressed; third, in the imperative, whether the pronoun as object be direct or indirect except in the third person singular and plural, as—

1. <i>Louis XVI. aimait ses sujets,</i>	Louis XVI. loved his subjects.
2. <i>je le donne à lui et à vous,</i>	I give it to him and you.
3. <i>donnez la à votre sœur,</i>	give it to your sister.
3. <i>donnez lui cet éventail,</i>	give her this fan.

When the imperative is used negatively, the pronoun, as object, is placed before the verb, except in those cases where the preposition must be expressed; but if the object be a noun, it is placed after the verb in all cases.

2°. The object comes before the verb, and is repeated before each, first, when it is a personal pronoun and a direct object, or being an indirect object the preposition is understood; second, when the object being a noun is preceded by the interrogative pronoun *quel*, *quelle*, &c., whether it be governed by a preposition or not, as—

<i>je les ai vus hier au soir,</i>	I saw them last night.
<i>vous lui avez donné beaucoup d'embarras,</i>	you have given him (to him) a great deal of trouble.
<i>quelle raison pouvez-vous donner ?</i>	what reason can you give?

3°. When the verb has two objects, the one direct and the other indirect, the direct precedes the indirect, as also when being composed of several words they are of the same length; but being of different lengths, the shorter precedes the longer, without any regard as to which is the direct or indirect, as—

<i>donnez une montre à votre</i>	give a watch to your sister.
<i>sœur,</i>	
<i>nous préférons, à une heureuse</i>	we prefer, to a happy compe-
<i>médiocrité, les richesses qui</i>	tency, the riches which are
<i>sont la source de tous nos</i>	the cause of all our misfor-
<i>malheurs,</i>	tunes.

However, to avoid *equivoque*, the indirect object may precede the direct, even when they are of the same length, as—

<i>le physicien arrache à la na-</i>	the natural philosopher ex-
<i>ture tous ses secrets,</i>	tracts from nature all her
	secrets.

If the objects were transposed, a doubt might arise in French whether the secrets he extracts were nature's or his own. Any person feeling the sense of what they write will know where to place the object, for it is not a matter of choice but of necessity, as the two following sentences will show:—

<i>croyez-vous pouvoir ramener</i>	do you think you are able to
<i>ces esprits égarés par la</i>	restore those minds led
<i>douceur?</i>	astray by mildness?
<i>croyez-vous pouvoir ramener</i>	do you think you are able to
<i>par la douceur ces esprits</i>	restore by mildness those
<i>égarés?</i>	minds led astray.

EXERCISE CXII.—PART I.

1°. My death will serve Rome *as much* as my life² would
^{e⁸} ^{e¹⁴} ^{autant} ^{e⁹}
 have done¹; Rome alone can² now¹ resist Rome; fickle
^{e¹³} ^v ^{seul} ^{e¹⁶} ^{aujourd'hui} ^{résister} ^{volage}
 fortune seems to mock you; Mr Arnot came to us
 f. ^{e⁸} ^{se moquer de} ^{e¹⁶}
 when we were not thinking of him; love others, and they will
^{e³} ^{e¹⁷} ^{e⁴} ^{e¹⁹}
 love you. 2°. Riches are pleasing to us, we wish to increase
^{e⁴} ^{e¹} ^{e²⁸} ^F ^{e³⁷} ^{accroître}
 them, and to retain them by any means *whatever*;
^{conserver} ^{e¹⁹} ^{quelque} ^{prix m.} ^{que ce soit}
 we forgive ourselves everything, and nothing to others; what
^{se pardonner} ^{e⁴⁰} ^{e¹²} ^{e¹⁹} ^{quel}

tears have I wiped! what civil wars have we kindled! vice
pleurs m. *sécher* *intestin* e^3 *allumer* .m.
 embitters pleasure, passion adulterates them, moderation
empoisonner e^1 *frélater* e^1f.
 gives them a zest, innocence purifies them, good breeding
aiguiserf. *épurer* *bienstance*
 increases them, friendship perpetuates them.
multiplier e^{42} *perpétuer*

EXERCISE CXII.—PART II.

3°. Ambition, who is foreseeing, sacrifices the present for
f. *prévoir* e^{86} ... e^1 ...m.
 the future, voluptuousness, who is blind, sacrifices the future
 e^{47} *volupté* f. *aveugle* e^{86} e^{47}
 for the present, but envy and the other meaner passions
 ... e^1 ...m. e^{65} e^{19} *lâche*f.
 embitter both the present and the future; there are many
 e^{112} *et* ... e^1 ...m. e^{47} *il est* e^{65}
 persons who, with a great deal of sense, commit very great
gens e^8 e^4 e^2 *de* e^3 e^1
 faults; between a hero and a villain there is often no difference
 e^9 e^{74} e^{61} *scélérat* e^4 e^3 *de*f.
 but the place, the opportunity, or the time; the naturalist
 e^{19} e^{44} pl. *occasion* f. e^{26} *physicien*
 tears from nature all her secrets; the wise man prefers sciences
arracher àf.m. e^{65} e^{26} f.
 to riches; people, be obedient to your sovereigns, and you,
 e^1 e^{40} e^{59} e^{106}
 sovereigns, do to your people all the good e^{106} e^{13} e^{40} e^5 *qu'il est* e^2
 power.
 e^{23}

CONCLUDING REMARKS ON OBJECTS.

A noun or pronoun may be the object of several verbs, adjectives, or prepositions, providing they all govern their complement in the same state, as—

<i>on doit aimer et respecter ses</i>	we ought to love and respect
<i>parents,</i>	
<i>je serai docile et fidèle à vos</i>	
<i>ordres,</i>	I shall be docile and faithful to your orders.

These phrases are correct, because *aimer* and *respecter* govern *parents* in the fourth state, that is, in a direct manner; and *docile* and *fidèle* both govern *ordres*, in the third state; but it would be incorrect to say, either in English or in French—

<i>le souverain Créateur préside</i>	the Creator of the universe
<i>et règle le mouvement des</i>	presides and rules the mo-
<i>astres,</i>	tions of the celestial bodies.
<i>je suis très-sensible et très-mé-</i>	I am quite aware, and very
<i>content de son procédé,</i>	much displeased, at his be-
	haviour.

Incorrect, because *préside* governs *à*, which is the third state and indirect object, and *règle* governs the fourth state, which is the direct object, and because *sensible* governs *à*, and *mécontent* governs *de*, two different states. It should be—

Le souverain Créateur préside aux mouvements des astres et les règle.

Je suis très-sensible à ce procédé et j'en suis très-mécontent.

Lastly, there must be no disparity between the objects of the verb; for if a verb has several objects, they must be of the same specie; for example, an active verb cannot have a noun, as a direct object and a verb with a preposition for another, as—

<i>il aime la justice, et à chanter</i>	he loves justice, and to sing
<i>les louanges du Seigneur,</i>	the praises of the Lord.

It should be—

Il aime à rendre justice et à chanter les louanges du Seigneur.

OF MOODS AND TENSES.

RULE CXIII. 44—47. 1°. The present of the indicative, besides its absolute affirmation of the present time, and the expressing continued or eternal truths, serves to express a future, when accompanied with some expression that denotes a near future, as—

<i>il aime la paix,</i>	he loves peace.
<i>que ne me disiez-vous que vous</i>	why did you not tell me that
<i>êtes mon père ?</i>	you are my father?
<i>je suis à vous dans l'instant,</i>	I'll be with you in a moment.
<i>je pars demain pour Londres,</i>	I am going to London to-
	morrow.

Je pars demain, and *je partirai demain pour Londres*, are not synonymous expressions; the first simply announces the fact, the second the determination to do the act.

2°. The present is also used to relate actions past, in order to fix the attention, to strike the mind more forcibly, and, as in a theatrical representation, to offer to the senses, as it were, a present and living picture of the past, as—

dès que la flotte est en pleine mer, le ciel se couvre de nuages, &c. | as soon as the fleet is on the open sea, the sky is covered with clouds, &c.

OBSERVE.—When the present is thus used for the past, the verbs connected in one phrase must all be in the same tense.

EXERCISE CXIII.

1°. But yesterday he accosts me, and pressing my hand,
^{e¹} ^{e²³} ^{e²⁹} ^{e⁶}
 “Ah, Sir,” said he to me, “I expect you to-morrow, Mr B.
Monsieur e¹⁰ ^{e²⁹} ^{e⁶}
 is to marry Miss S. the day after to-morrow, she brings him
^{e²} ^{e⁶⁹} ^{e¹¹⁵}
 five hundred thousand francs; this is the inscription that is
m. ^{e²⁹} ^{e¹⁰⁶} ^{e²}
 read on the tomb of Telemachus, “Beneath this stone lies
^{e³⁰} ^{e¹⁰⁶} ^{e²}
 Fenelon; stranger, blot not with thy tears this epitaph,
 ..é..é... ^{e⁶¹} ^{e¹¹⁵}
 that others may read it, and weep as thou. 2°. The
^{e¹⁹} ^{e³⁰} ^{e⁸²} ^{e¹⁷}
 centurion sent by Mucien enters into the port of Carthage,
 centurion ^{e³} ^{e⁶} ^{e⁶} ...m.
 and as soon as he is landed, he raises his voice; the general
^{e⁹} ^{e⁹} ^{e¹⁴} ^{e⁷⁹}
 arrives, his sight awes the soldiers, all prefer to
^{e¹⁸} ^{e⁶} ^{e¹⁴} ^{e⁷⁹}
 fight under his colours than to fail in their duty.
^{e¹⁰⁰} ^{e⁶¹} ^{e¹⁴} ^{e⁴⁶}

THE IMPERFECT, PRETERITE, AND COMPOUND OF THE PRESENT.

These three tenses serve equally to express a time past, anterior to the present moment, and are used with such nice distinction, dependent on circumstances, that strangers to our language find much difficulty in deciding which to use.

RULE CXIV. 44—47. The imperfect serves to express something existing, or an act doing at a time past, but present with regard to another thing spoken of, which serves to point out the time when it was doing, but not when it was done or completed, as—

j'allais à Versailles quand je | I was going to Versailles when
vous rencontrai, | I met you.

Here, to mark the progress of the act of going, the preterite *rencontrai*, met, is used; but whether you went to Versailles or not is undecided; for if it had been completed, the preterite of *aller* would have been used, as—

après que je vous eus rencontré | after I had met you, I went to
j'allai (or, *je fus*) à Ver- | Versailles.
sailles,

If the second act be also incomplete, both verbs may be in the imperfect, as—

j'allais à Versailles lorsque | I was going to Versailles when
vous en reveniez, | you were returning from it.

In both cases the progress of the action is ascertained, but the completion of either is undetermined and imperfect.

2°. To assist the learner, we may observe, first, that the French imperfect may be used, when the English participle present, with the verb to be, are used to express the past, as—

j'allais en France, | I was going to France.

Second, That when the verb employed in English can be preceded by the word *used*; third, when the verb relates to an act or state of being with continuation, but the time being neither mentioned or necessary; or, lastly, when the English verb, or anything coupled with it, relates to a thing done habitually at a time past, as—

quand j'étais en France, je | when I was in France, I ate a
mangeais beaucoup de fruit, | great deal of fruit.

That is, I *used* to eat a great deal of fruit.

les Juifs étaient un peuple | the Jews were a wicked race.
méchant,

That is, *used* to be a wicked race; but the time is neither mentioned nor necessary.

quand j'étais jeune je me levais | when I was young, I rose every
tous les jours, à six heures, | morning at six o'clock.

But if I want to point out some particular occasion only, when
I rose at six o'clock, I must use the preterite, as—

<i>le jour que Louis XVIII. fit</i>	the day that Louis XVIII.
<i>son entrée à Paris, je me</i>	made his entrance into Paris,
<i>levai à six heures,</i>	I rose at six o'clock.

3°. The imperfect is used to describe the customs and manners of nations or individuals, and in describing the habits, qualities, or dispositions of persons, the time not being decidedly pointed out, nor the duration or completion of the act or state of being confirmed.

<i>Henri IV. était un grand roi;</i>	Henry IV. was a great king;
<i>il aimait son peuple,</i>	he loved his people.

However, in speaking of the qualities, &c. of persons supposed to be alive, the compound of the present is used, unless a particular period is stated, then the imperfect may be used, as—

<i>sa sœur était belle,</i>	his sister was beautiful.
<i>sa sœur a été belle,</i>	his sister has been beautiful.
<i>sa sœur était belle dans sa</i>	his sister was beautiful in her
<i>jeunesse,</i>	youth.

In the first instance, the person and the state of beauty are supposed to be passed away; in the second, the beauty seems to be passed away, but the person still alive; in the third, the person may be alive or dead, but the state of beauty is passed.

4°. The imperfect, when preceded by *si*, may also impart the supposition of the present, as—

<i>si j'étais riche j'achèterais</i>	if I were rich, I would buy
<i>cette maison,</i>	that country-seat.

EXERCISE CXIV.

1°. ^A Racing, swimming, and ^A hunting were the favourite
art. *course* f. *nage* f. art. *chasse* f. *favoris*
amusement of the ancient Romans, whilst ^A the women and
.....m. *ancien* *tandis que* *e'*
old men were intrusted with the care of the household. 2°. I
^{e¹} *charger* ^{e¹⁰} ^{e⁸} *ménage* m.
was writing, whilst ^A he was dancing and tormenting me;
^{e¹} *pendant que* *danser* ^{e⁹⁰}
when I was in the country, I went to the fishing, to the
^{e³} ^{e²} ^{e¹⁴} ^{e¹} ^{e³⁰}
hunting, or I rode on horseback; the Abbé of Saint Pierre
^{e¹¹⁴} *monter* *e'* *cheval* m.

thought that the motto of the virtuous man was comprised in
^{e¹⁷}m. ^{e⁹} ^{e¹} *comprendre*
 these two words, give, and forgive; if I were a legislator, I
^{e¹⁰⁹} ^{e⁴} ^{e⁶⁰} *.é.....eur*
 would not allow imprisonment for debt; nor *call for*
^{e⁶⁵} *qu'on emprisonner* ^{e⁶⁴} ^{e⁸} *qu'on demande du*
 blood, but for blood; a wise man of Greece maintained, that
sang m. ^{e¹¹⁴} ^{e⁶⁵} ^{e¹¹⁰}
 health creates the happiness of the body, and knowledge that
^{e⁹} *faire* ^{e⁶⁵} ^{e⁶⁷} ^{e¹⁰⁷}
 of the mind. 3°. At the age of twelve, I went to school
^{e⁶} *d..m.* *ans* ^{e¹} *école f.*
every day. 4°. Louis XIV. was courageous, sober, and
tous les jours.*eux**re*
 prudent, but he was proud and cruel.
 ^{e¹} *fier*

RULE CXV. 44—47. 1°. The preterite is used to affirm an act as having been completed in a period stated, and now totally expired; and as anything occurring within 24 hours would be considered as done within the present day, and therefore during a period not expired, that space of time at least must be elapsed, since the performance of an act to authorise the use of the preterite, as—

<i>il partit pour l'Amérique la</i>	he went to America last week.
<i>semaine dernière,</i>	
<i>je déjeunai hier chez madame</i>	I breakfasted yesterday with
<i>votre sœur,</i>	your sister.

As the events related in history are generally considered as facts completed in a time entirely elapsed, the preterite is principally used in that style, as—

<i>les Romains chassèrent Tar-</i>	the Romans expelled Tarquin
<i>quin de Rome,</i>	from Rome.

2°. The COMPOUND OF THE PRESENT serves to express something done in a perfect past time, but undefined; or during a period of time not yet expired, as, anything done this day, this week, this month, &c., as—

<i>vous avez appris à faire votre</i>	you have learned to do your
<i>devoir,</i>	duty.
<i>j'ai été trois fois à la cam-</i>	I have been three times in the
<i>pagne cette semaine,</i>	country this week.

In the first example, nothing points out the period in which you did your duty; in the second, though the period of time in

which you went to the country be pointed out, yet it is incomplete, the present week not being ended.

3°. The compound of the present is also used to express a future, as—

as-tu bientôt fini? | will you soon have done?

4°. Though the preterite can never be used but to express a thing done within a period totally past and expressed, yet custom authorises the use of the compound of the present in the same case as the preterite, as we can say equally,

j'ai écrit, or j'écrivis à votre frère la semaine dernière, | I have written, or I wrote to your brother last week.

But we recommend strictly the use of these tenses, according to the rules laid down.

EXERCISE CXV.

1°. Last summer was very rainy, and the low lands were
^{e²} laid under water; ^{e⁴⁵} Anthony was defeated at Modena; the two
^{e³} *pluvieux* ^{bas} ^{e¹⁶}
^{submerger} ^{Antoine} ^{défait}
 consuls, Hirtius and Pansa, ^Δ were killed; my dog Talma
 ^{.....y} ^{périr} ^{chien}
 swam¹ across² the river² the day before yesterday, and on
^{passer à la nage} ^{e¹¹} — ^{avant-hier} ^{e²}
 reaching the shore ^Δ was attacked by a large black² dog.¹
^{aborder} ^{il} ^{attaquer} ^{e²} ^{e⁶⁸} ^{e¹¹⁵}
 2°. The ark in which were saved the remains of mankind has
^{arche f.} ^{où} ^{se sauver} ^{reste m.} ^{genre humain m.}
 been at all times celebrated in the east; Ovid has said
^{de} ^{e²⁶} ^{e⁵²} ^{e²} — ^{orient m.} ^{.....e} ^{e¹⁰}
 that study softens our manners; they have stolen two thou-
^{e¹⁸} ^{adoucir} ^{mœurs f.} ^{e²⁰} ^{voler}
 sand crowns from my brother's banker. 3°. Wait, I have
^{e¹⁰} ^{e¹¹²} ^{e²} ^{e²⁹} ^{e⁶²}
 done in a moment. 4°. I went last year to France and Italy,
^{finir} ^{e¹} ^{.....m.} ^{e¹} ^{e³} ^{e³} ^{e⁶⁶}
 and ^Δ returned by the Mediterranean; last Saturday I went
^{être} ^{e¹⁴} ^{e³} ^{e¹⁰⁹} ^{être H}
 to Mrs W.'s, where I heard a lady sing, "Come, love, to me."
^{chez} ^{e²¹} ^{e³³} ^{e²⁸} ^{e¹⁶} ^{.....} ^{.....} ^{.....}

COMPOUND OF THE IMPERFECT AND PRETERITE.

RULE CXVI. 44-47. 1°. Both these tenses point out something done, not simply in a past time, but also past with

regard to something else past likewise; and though but little difference may appear in the use of them, they must not be employed indiscriminately. The compound of the imperfect implies a thing completed previously to another taking place, in which case the previous act is expressed before the subsequent one, as—

j'avais déjeuné quand vous | I had breakfasted when you
vintes me voir, | came to see me.

2°. But if, by mentioning a circumstance, I wish to draw the attention more to the time when it was done than to the act itself, in order to point out when another thing was done, I must use the compound of the preterite, as—

quand j'eus reconnu mon erreur, | when I had seen my error,
j'en fus honteux, | I was ashamed of it.

Here, in the first part, I do not wish so much to state that I had seen my error, as by the circumstance to point out the time when I was ashamed, which state of shame is principally what I intend to express.

OBSERVE.—When the compound of the imperfect is used, the principal act or thing takes the first rank, and when the compound of the preterite is used, it takes the second.

3°. When we wish to express an act or thing done previous to another done also, but during a period not expired, I must use the double compound of the present, as—

dès que j'ai eu travaillé, ce | as soon as I had worked this
matin je suis sorti, | morning, I went away.

OF THE TWO FUTURES.

4°. The simple future, besides its definition of one of the natural divisions of time, is used in the sense of an imperative, as—

vous respecterez vos parents, | you shall respect your parents.

The compound of the future is used either with a conjunction, and serves to point out the termination of some act as the epoch of time when another will begin, or it is used without a conjunction, to assert that a thing will be done or ready before another shall take place, as—

quand j'aurai fini mon ouvrage je viendrai vous voir, | when I shall have finished my
work, I shall come to see
you.

j'aurai fini mon ouvrage | I shall have finished my work
avant vous, | before you.

Will and shall is sometimes omitted in the English future tenses; and to those who are not very observant, it appears to be a present tense; as soon as I have finished my exercise, means, as soon as I shall have finished my exercise; and is not a present.

EXERCISE CXVI.

1°. I had already spoken when thou enteredst; I had sealed my letters, when I saw enter into my court four coaches and six. 2°. As soon as I had sealed my letters, I saw four à six chevaux enter into my court; as soon as I had obtained this answer, which was to prove so agreeable to my friend, I hastened to him with it. 3°. When I had learned this morning the news of your appointment, I flew to inform our mutual friends. 4°. Rigid futurity will censure the greatest part of those men whom we admire; when you have read the celebrated discourse of Bossuet on universal history, and studied in it the cause of the rise and fall of states, you will be less astonished at the revolutions more or less sudden, that modern empires have experienced which appeared to you in the most flourishing state—

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

RULE CXVII. 44—47. 1°. To express that a thing would, could, or might be done, providing however that a condition be fulfilled use the present conditional, and the compound conditional if it depend on a certain condition having taken place in a past time, as—

je travaillerais si j'avais mes papiers, | I would work if I had my papers.

j'aurais travaillé si j'avais eu mes papiers, | I would have worked if I had had my papers.

2°. Neither of the tenses of the conditional can be used without a condition being expressed or understood; for though these two tenses are used to express a wish, as—

je serais content d'obtenir votre suffrage, | I should be happy to obtain your approbation.
j'aurais été heureux de vous voir, | I should have been happy to see you,

the conditions are evidently understood: in the first case, I should be happy if I could obtain, &c.; and in the second, if you had allowed me to see you.

3°. When the condition is neither expressed nor understood, the tenses of the conditional are used for some tenses of the indicative, as—

j'aimerais que vous parlassiez de cette affaire au ministre, | I should like you to speak of this business to the minister.

Here the present conditional is used for the present indicative, *j'aime, je désire que vous parliez, &c.*; however, we believe that the conditional is properly used, because the condition may be understood to be, *if you had the power, the opportunity, the kindness* to speak of this business to the minister, it would please me—I should like you to do so; in all cases where the conditional is used there is a condition expressed or understood, which may be found out, though sometimes somewhat difficult, as—

pourquoi violerait-il un des devoirs les plus saints? | why should he violate one of the most holy duties?

Here the conditional is used for the future—*what reason is there to suppose he will violate? &c.*

4°. *Si, if*, in the sense of providing that, used in English before the future, requires the present indicative in French, and the imperfect when used before the conditional, as—

il deviendra savant s'il (i.e. pourvu qu'il) étudie, | he will become learned if (providing that) he will study.
s'ils parlaient moins ils seraient plus estimés, | if they would speak less, they would be more esteemed.

But we see no reason why the same tense should not be used in English as in French—he will become a learned man *if he study; if they were speaking less, they would be more esteemed.*

5°. Nothing more than what has been said need be observed of the imperative, except that a man speaking of himself sometimes uses the first person plural much the same as an editor or author says "we;" however, it must be observed that in such cases the adjective is made to agree with the actual person, and not the pronoun understood, which is used from custom or fancy, as—

<i>pour me soustraire à leur</i>	to hide myself from their
<i>poursuite vivons caché,</i>	suit, let us live concealed.
<i>je suis fâché de voir cet homme</i>	I am sorry to see that man in
<i>daus cet état, secourons le,</i>	that situation; let us relieve
	him.

EXERCISE CXVII.

1°. Ingratitude would be more unusual if interested² favours¹
f. rare à usure ^{e¹}
 were less common; if Cæsar and Pompey had thought like Cato,
u.. Cæsarée ^{e¹⁷} ^{e²⁴}
 others would have thought like Cæsar and Pompey; and the
 de ^{e¹⁹} ^{e¹⁷} ^{e²⁴}
 republic, doomed to perish, would have been drawn to
 république f. destiné à ^{e⁴⁴} entrainer
 the precipice by another hand; had I been conquered, I
 ...é.....m. une ^{e¹⁹} ^{e²³} si j'eusse ^{e⁸⁸}
 would have been guilty. 2°. Virtues ought to be sisters,
 eusse criminel ^{e¹} ^{e¹⁹} ^{e¹²}
 as vices are brothers; they would have promised every-
 ainsi quem. ^{e²} ^{e¹⁸} ^{e⁴⁰}
 thing you wished. 3°. Could you believe your son capable of
^{e¹⁶} P pouvoir ^{e¹⁵} ^{e¹⁵}
 being ungrateful. 4°. If they would reef^A their sails,
 ingratitude f. prendre un ris à voile f.
 there would be no danger; if you will live according to ^A
^{e³⁵}m. — ^{e²} ^{e⁶⁸} — art.
 nature, you will never be poor; if, according to ^A opinion, you
f. ^{e²⁸} d'après — art.f.
 will never be rich. 5°. Let us forget his faults, to remember
^{e⁵⁴} ^{e¹³} ^{e⁵³} ^{e¹⁰⁸} ^{e⁴⁶}
 only his misfortunes; in order not to wake him, let us make
 que de ^{e⁴} ^{e³⁹} éveiller être
 no noise.
 tranquille

OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

OBSERVE.—That as the subjunctive cannot be used without two propositions, and as the term is frequently used in the

following article, it is necessary the learner should know, that what is affirmed to be or not to be in a phrase is a proposition; that a phrase may contain several propositions; that by a principal proposition is meant the one on which the others are dependent—the one that ranks first in expressing our thoughts; and that by the subordinate or incidental proposition is meant the one which depends on the principal one to which it is connected by means of a conjunction or a relative pronoun.

RULE CXVIII. 44–47. A verb in the subordinate proposition, preceded by *que*, is put in the indicative; when preceded by a verb that expresses affirmation in a positive, direct, and independent manner; and in the subjunctive when the first verb expresses doubt, fear, desire, joy, grief, shame, will, surprise, or any impulse of the heart or emotion of the soul, as—

<i>je suis certain qu'il se fera beaucoup d'ennemis,</i>	I am certain that he will create many enemies.
<i>je doute qu'il se fasse jamais des amis,</i>	I fear he will never make any friends.
<i>je parie qu'il ne voit pas le danger où il est,</i>	I'll wager he does not see the danger he is in.
<i>je m'étonne qu'il ne voie pas le danger où il est,</i>	I am astonished he does not see the danger he is in.

2°. Any adjectives, participle, or phrase used with the verb *être*, expressive of any of the emotions before mentioned, govern the second verb, always preceded by *que*, in the subjunctive, or in the indicative if they express a thing positive, as—

<i>cet homme est enchanté que vous l'ayez salué,</i>	this man is delighted that you have bowed to him.
<i>je suis certain, que cet homme vous a salué,</i>	I am certain that that man has bowed to you.

3°. Verbs with negation, expressive of an idea of doubt, fear, desire, &c., and those used interrogatively, requiring *que* before the subordinate verb, govern the second verb in the subjunctive, as—

<i>je ne croyais pas qu'il fallut faire ce voyage, espérez-vous qu'il vienne?</i>	I did not think it was necessary to undertake that journey. do you expect him to come?
---	--

When the first verb is used interrogatively, not with a view

of acquiring information, but to affirm or deny more firmly, or to find out if the person spoken to is informed of a thing which is a fact and certain in itself, the indicative is used, as—

<i>croyez-vous qu'on leur rende</i>	do you think they will restore
<i>la liberté?</i>	him to liberty?
<i>ignorez-vous que vous êtes</i>	do you know that you are
<i>libre?</i>	free?

Both these sentences are interrogative; but the first is used to inquire after what has not yet taken place, and may never take place, and is therefore in the subjunctive. The second speaks of an act, a thing that has taken place; but the interrogative is used to find out if you knew it, and is therefore in the indicative.

4°. Unipersonal verbs, or verbs used unipersonally, require the next verb in the subjunctive; but if the unipersonal verb itself, or the adjective with which it is coupled, expresses certitude, assurance, or evidence, it governs the indicative if it be affirmative, and the subjunctive if it be either negative, interrogative, or preceded by *si*, as—

Unipers., ...*il faut que j'aille à la ville*, I must go to town.

Certainty, ...*il est certain qu'il est parti*, it is certain he is gone.

Negation, ...*il n'est pas certain qu'il soit parti*.....

Interrogation, *est-il certain qu'il soit parti?*.....

With *si*,*si il est certain qu'il soit parti*.....

The first certifies the fact, the three others throw a doubt upon it, and consequently require the subjunctive.

EXERCISE CXVIII.

1°. The good ^A we have received from *a person* requires
^{e⁵} *que* ^{e¹⁰} *quelqu'un* ^{e¹³} *vouloir*
 that we should respect the *wrong* which he has done us; a
^{e¹⁴} ^{e¹⁹} ^{e¹³}
 woman who *has her likeness taken* wishes ^A the painter to
^{e¹} *se faire peindre* ^{e²⁷} *que* ^{e⁵}
 be untrue, and ^A the portrait to be a likeness. 2°. They are
^R *infidel* *que*m. — *ressemblant*
 surprised that you have not learned French; I am certain
surpris ^{e¹} *convaincre*
^A your gown will not be done; your sister is *quite sorry* that her
^{e¹³} *robe f.* ^{e¹³} *désolé*
^{e¹¹⁸} *gown is not done.* 3°. Do you think that the heat will be less
^{e¹³} *présumer* *il faire moins chaud*

-morrow? do you feel that it is *hotter* than yesterday? I *will*
sentir faire plus chaud
 t allow any one to dictate to me, as I do not *pretend* to do
entendre on faire la loi ^{e¹⁷} *entendre* ^{e¹⁸}
 to any one. 4°. I must [^] [^] return to him the sum [^] he
personne ^{e⁸} *que je* ^{e²³} ^{e⁴⁰} *que*
 at me; Sir, it is impossible that you can see my mistress²
^K ^{e¹¹³} ^{e⁴} ^{e²⁷}
 present,¹ she is in the deepest² affliction.¹
 ...é..... *cruel* f.

RULE CXIX.—47. 1°. The relative pronouns, *qui*, *que*,
nt, *où*, govern the subjunctive in four different cases—first,
 when they relate to a noun qualified by an adjective in the
 superlative degree, that is, by an adjective or participle pre-
 ceded by any of the following words—*le plus*, *le moins*, *le*
meux, also fem. and plu., and by a noun qualified by *le*
meilleur, *le pire*, *le moindre*, also fem. and plu., and also
 after *le pis*, the worst, or after any of these words used
 of themselves; but if any of these superlative relatives
 immediately govern a noun in the second state, the indi-
 cative or conditional must be used, as—

<i>Cid est la meilleure tragé-</i>	the Cid is the best tragedy
<i>die que nous ayons,</i>	that we have.
<i>Cid est la meilleure des tra-</i>	the Cid is the best tragedy
<i>gédies que Corneille a faites,</i>	that Corneille has written.

Secondly, When they are preceded by the adjective, *le pre-*
mier, *le second*, *le seul*, *l'unique*, *le dernier*, as—

<i>vous êtes le premier qui ne</i>	you are the first that does not
<i>lui rendiez pas justice,</i>	do him justice.
<i>le chien est le seul animal</i>	the dog is the only animal
<i>dont la fidélité soit à l'é-</i>	whose fidelity is proof.
<i>preuve,</i>	

Thirdly, when *seul* and *premier* can be transposed without alter-
 ing the sense, the indicative is used, as—

<i>suis le premier qui vous ai</i>	I am the first who saw you.
<i>vu,</i>	
<i>ans.) je vous ai vu le pre-</i>	I saw you the first.
<i>mier,</i>	

Thirdly, *Qui*, *que*, *dont*, *où* also govern the subjunctive
 when preceded by any of the following words, and all such as

have a negative import—*personne, rien, aucun, pas un, nul, guère, pas, point, peu*, and after *qui que ce soit, quel que soit*, as—

<i>je n'ai vu personne qui puisse m'indiquer sa demeure,</i>	I have seen no one that could give me his address.
<i>il y a peu de femme qui se plaîne d'un compliment,</i>	there are few women who com- plain of a compliment.

Fourthly, When *qui, que, dont, où* are preceded by a verb that expresses doubt, uncertainty, or something that depends on a future, the subordinate verb is put in the subjunctive, and in the indicative if the subordinate expresses something positive, as—

SUBJUNCTIVE.

INDICATIVE.

<i>lisez des ouvrages qui puis- sent former le goût, trouverai-je une auberge où je puisse me reposer?</i>	<i>lisez ces ouvrages qui peuvent former le goût. vous trouverez une auberge où vous pourrez vous reposer.</i>
--	--

In the one case the works alluded to are not decided works, but any works that may form the taste, and in the other the works are decidedly mentioned as those that can, without a doubt, form the taste. The same kind of distinction may be observed in the other examples.

2°. *Que*, preceded by *quel, quelle, quelque, qui, quoi*, govern the subjunctive, as—

<i>qui que vous soyez je vous plains,</i>	whoever you are, I pity you.
<i>quelques personne que vous fréquentez,</i>	whatever person you associate with.

But *qui que*, or *quel que*, used with the verb *être*, require the second verb to be in the indicative, if the latter expresses a positive idea, as—

<i>qui que ce soit de vous deux qui me rendra service, ja- mais je ne l'oublierai,</i>	whichever of you two will do me that favour, I shall never forget it.
<i>quels que soient les talents que vous posséderez un jour....</i>	whatever may be the talents which you will one day possess....

3°. *Tout que*, in the sense of *quelque*, requires also the

Subjunctive when it serves to express something undecided,
—

Out riche qu'on soit on a encore besoin de l'assistance d'autrui, | rich as one may be, still we require the assistance of others.

EXERCISE CXIX.—PART I.

1°. First—The brightest virtue that man can possess [^] is
beau e¹ e¹ e¹⁵ e⁵⁴ ce
beneficence; the brightest of the virtues *that have been praised*
enfaillance f. e¹¹⁹ e¹ dont on faire l'éloge
beneficence; the Cid is the best tragedy [^] we have; the Cid
e¹¹⁹ tragédie que
the best [^] tragedy that Corneille has written; the greatest
de e¹¹⁹ faire e¹
one of action there is for virtue [^] is conscience. Second—
théâtre m. e⁴ e¹ ce f.
is not the first man [^] I have seen sacrifice his interest
e¹ que e⁴ e⁸⁸ e¹⁴
[^] self-love; seize this opportunity, the *only one* that you
on e¹⁹ - e³⁰ e¹¹² unique
can find. Third—*There are few persons* who know how to
e¹⁰ il en est peu e²⁸ —
forget or pardon [^] wrongs; *there is* nothing [^] pleases me
e³³ e⁵⁰ art. injure f. e⁴ e¹² qui e²⁶
much as modesty added to learning; there [^] is no pleasure
e¹¹² ief. joindre érudition il ne e²⁵ e¹
surpassing that of a good action. Fourth—I wish to
valoir e² f. e⁸⁸
live in some country place, where I can live in peace; I
e⁴ dans un e¹⁴ — e²¹ e¹⁵ e² — tranquille
endeavouring to obtain [^] a situation that may be agreeable;
aspirer à place f. é.....
have in view [^] a situation that is agreeable.
aspirer à e¹¹⁹ é.....

EXERCISE CXIX.—PART II.

2°. With whatever danger [^] you may be threatened, do
e¹⁰ e¹⁰¹ péril m. que e²⁰
not suffer yourself to be intimidated; whoever it be, speak,
laisser e³⁵ e¹²
do not fear him; whatever great qualities [^] we may possess,
e¹⁹ e⁷⁰ qualité f. que e¹⁵ e³⁵

Second, When used for *quelque*, however, as—

<i>si petite qu'une fourmi soit,</i>	however small an ant may be,
<i>elle tremble comme un éléphant,</i>	it trembles as well as an elephant.

Third, When used with a negative, both before and after, as—

<i>il ne fait pas si mauvais tems</i>	the weather is not so bad but
<i>que nous ne puissions nous passer de voiture,</i>	that we may do without a coach.

3°. The conjunction *que* governs of itself the subjunctive in two cases—first, in imperative and elliptical phrases expressive of a wish, and in the latter case *que* is sometimes understood, as—

<i>que l'on dise que je n'y suis pas,</i>	let them say I am not at home.
<i>qu'il fasse ce qui lui plaira,</i>	let him do what he pleases.
<i>fasse le ciel qu'il se corrige!</i>	heaven grant he may correct himself!
<i>saute qui peut,</i>	let who can save themselves.

The first person singular present subjunctive of the verb *savoir*, used negatively, is the only instance of the subjunctive being used without depending on some other word, as—

je ne sache rien de plus utile, | I know nothing more useful.

Which stands for *je ne sais.....* and which we think ought always to be preferred to it.

OBSERVE.—*Que* governs the subjunctive when elliptically used for *soit que*, *à moins que*, *avant que*, *afin que*, *de peur que*, *sans que*, *de ce que*, *quoi que*, and *si*, as—

<i>qu'il pleuve ou qu'il fasse beau</i>	let it be rain or good weather,
<i>nous viendrons vous voir,</i>	we will come to see you.

For *soit qu'il pleuve ou soit qu'il fasse beau*, &c.

EXERCISE CXX.

1°. Δ to bring up children well, it is necessary to act so that
 pour élever e^{18} e^{12} e^{20} faire en sorte
 every thing good and honest may please Δ them; he will retain
 — e^{14} e^2 e^{12} e^{26} Δ e^{112}
 his cheerfulness a long time, providing no Δ Δ unforeseen
 gaité f. — long-tems si ce n'est — que un imprévu
 misfortune happen to him; hide yourself, so that you may
 e^4 e^{26} se cacher de manière que e^{102} R.

not *be seen*; behave yourself, so that you may obtain true
^{e⁴} friends. ^{e⁶⁶} 2°. ^{e⁴} Little as it may be, economy is a great merit;
^{e⁴} if it were true that you had disturbed public order—if it were
^{e¹⁸} proved ^{e⁸} to me that you had insulted the magistrates, I would
^{e¹⁸} *prouver* ^{e⁸}é..t
petition for your arrest; ^{e⁴} small as it may be, a hair
^{e⁴} *soliciter* — ^{e⁴} *arrestation* f. ^{e⁴} *si mince* — ^{e⁶⁶} ^{e⁴} *il*
has a shadow. 3°. If you have but a hundred francs,
^{e⁴} *faire de art. ombre* f. — ^{e¹⁹}m.
lend them to me; Heaven² grant¹ that your prayers may be
^{e²¹} heard! happy the man who can, were it only in his *old age*,
^{e¹⁸} *accompli* ^{e¹} ^{e¹⁵} ^{e¹³} ^{e¹} ^{e¹} *vieillesse* f.
obtain the esteem which he has endeavoured to deserve; let no
^{e⁸⁴} one ^{e⁹} *fancy* that all that is useful is just; perish all
^{e⁵⁵} *aller s'imaginer* ^{e¹⁴} ^{e⁸} R ^{e⁴⁴} ^{e¹⁴}
those who take pleasure in shedding human blood!
^{e⁴³} ^{e²} *verser humain* ^{e¹¹⁴}

REMARKS ON SOME PARTICULAR VERBS GOVERNING THE SUBJUNCTIVE OR THE INDICATIVE.

OBSERVE.—That the verb of the subordinate proposition can only be put in the subjunctive when the act expressed by that verb is neither done by the subject nor the object of the first verb, as in that case the first verb governs the present infinitive, as—

permettez que je vous fasse | allow me to make you an ob-
une observation, | servation.

Ought to be—

permettez moi de vous faire une observation.

RULE CXXI.—47. 1°. *Ordonner*, to order, in the sense of giving an order, governs the subjunctive; and in the sense of a proclamation, or the ordinance of the sovereign or officers in power, the indicative, as—

le juge ordonna qu'on le con- | the judge ordered him to be
duist en prison, | taken to prison.

<i>le général ordonne que le butin sera distribué aux soldats,</i>	the general ordains that the booty shall be distributed to the soldiers.
--	--

2°. *Dire*, to say, used in the sense of giving orders, advising, &c., governs the subjunctive; and in the sense of announcing, or relating by word of mouth, the indicative, as—

<i>le président dit que l'on se taise,</i>	the president commands si- lence.
<i>le président dit que l'on fait trop de bruit,</i>	the president says there is too much noise.

3°. *Supposer*, to suppose, when used to admit a fact by supposition, in order to draw a consequence from it, governs the subjunctive; and the indicative, when used to set forth as true anything that is false, as—

<i>je veux bien supposer que cela soit, quelle conséquence en tirez-vous?</i>	I will suppose that this is true, what consequence do you draw from it?
<i>pour me faire disgracier, il a supposé que j'avais mal parlé du roi,</i>	to get me disgraced, he pre- tended that I had spoken ill of the king.

4°. *Attendre*, to wait, meaning to be waiting for, governs the subjunctive; but used reflectively, and meaning to depend on something, it governs the indicative or conditional, as—

<i>j'attendais pour sortir que mon frère fût rentré,</i>	I waited for my brother's re- turn to go out.
<i>il est condamné, il s'attend que le roi lui fera grace,</i>	he is condemned, he expects the king will pardon him.

5°. *Entendre*, in the sense of hearing, understanding; and the verb *prétendre*, meaning to affirm, to maintain, to insist, govern the indicative; but they govern the subjunctive when they imply being willing or ordering, as—

<i>j'ai entendu que votre frère est arrivé,</i>	I heard your brother was ar- rived.
<i>je prétends que vous n'avez aucun droit sur ce bien,</i>	I maintain that you have no right on this property.
<i>il entend qu'on ne fasse rien sans son avis,</i>	he insists that nothing shall be done without his consent.
<i>cet homme prétend que je me soumette à sa volonté,</i>	this man wishes me to bend to his will.

6°. *Se plaindre*, to complain, governs the indicative when the thing complained of is real, not being doubtful; and the subjunctive when it is only imaginary, being doubtful.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

vous êtes bien injuste de vous plaindre que je ne vous écrive pas assez souvent,
you are very unjust to complain that I do not write to you often enough.

INDICATIVE.*

vous auriez raison de vous plaindre que (or de ce que) je vous écris rarement si, &c.
you would have reason to complain that I wrote to you but seldom if, &c.

NOTE.—*Se soucier, s'inquiéter*, to care, to be uneasy about, govern the subjunctive, *il se soucie peu que son père soit content.*

7°. The verb *douter*, to doubt, as well as all verbs of doubt and uncertainty, govern the subjunctive; but when *douter* is used reflectively, it governs the indicative, as—

SUBJUNCTIVE.

je doute qu'il vienne ce soir,
I doubt he will not come to-night.

INDICATIVE.

je me doute qu'il viendra ce soir,
I doubt he will come to-night.

8°. *Prendre garde*, in the sense of taking care, to avoid, governs the subjunctive with *ne*; but when it means to consider, to observe, it governs the indicative without *ne*, as—

SUBJUNCTIVE.

je prendrai garde qu'on ne vienne vous troubler,*
I will take care you shall not be disturbed.

INDICATIVE.

il prendra garde qu'on fait tout pour le troubler,
he will notice that everything is done to torment him.

NOTE.—*Veiller*, in the sense of *prendre garde*, to take care, and followed by *à ce que*, governs the subjunctive, as—

On veillera à ce que les enfants soient tenus proprement.

9°. The impersonal verb, *il semble*, it seems, governs the subjunctive when unaccompanied by any object; but when preceded by the personal pronouns of the third state, *me, te, lui, nous, vous, leur*, or any object after it, it governs the in-

* For verbs that require *ne* in the subordinate phrase, see Chapter of Adverbs.

cative, except when used negatively or interrogatively, as when it governs the subjunctive, as—

SUBJUNCTIVE.

*semble que chacun se fasse
un devoir de médire de son
prochain,*

seems that every one makes
it his duty to slander his
neighbour.

*ne me semble pas qu'elle
puisse exister long-tems,*
does not seem to me that
she can live long.

INDICATIVE.

*il me semble que l'on doit se
faire un devoir de cacher
les défauts de son prochain,*

it seems to me to be every one's
duty to conceal the faults
of his neighbour.

*il me semble qu'elle ne peut
pas exister long-tems,*
it seems to me that she cannot
live long.

10°. *Ignorer*, to be ignorant, governs the subjunctive, as it contains in itself a negative sense; but when used with a negation, the negative is neutralised,* and governs the indicative.

*ignore que son père dût ar-
river ce matin,*

was ignorant that his father
was to arrive this morning.

*il n'ignorait pas que son père
devait arriver ce matin,*

he was not ignorant that his
father was to arrive this
morning.

EXERCISE CXXI.—PART I.

1°. The mayor orders that ^A the guard³ be fetched,¹ and
maire e⁶⁰ on garde f. aller e¹⁸
at ^A that man³ be¹ arrested;² the provost ordains, that ^A
on e¹ e³⁴ arrêter prévôt commander à
from this day the citizen shall mount guard in military
te e⁸ e⁸⁷ monter e¹²¹ militaire
uniform. 2°. Old Andronic sent to tell ^A the patriarch ^A to
iforme m. e²⁶us e³ e⁷ àe qu'il
tangle with the affairs of the church, and ^A to allow him to
mêler e¹⁰ f. e⁶³ qu'il laisser
manage those of the empire. 3°. Supposing ^A you cannot
gouvernerm. supposer que e¹⁵
into the country, I ^A will take your son; in order not to
nir e²¹ e¹⁴ y e²¹ e¹⁵ afin de
to your country-house, he pretended ^A he was ill, and could
e⁸ supposer K que e¹⁵ e¹⁵

* We do not admit the absurd notion, that in French or in English two negatives make an affirmative. What! would nothing added to nothing make something?

not walk. 4°. I waited till the judge had pronounced [▲] *sen-
marcher* ^{e²²} *que* ^{e²⁵} *prononcer sa*
tence. 5°. I insist that my right is unquestionable; I wish
.....f. *entendre* ^{e⁴³} *incontestable prétendre*
[▲] you to execute my order punctually; I will not allow [▲]
que *exécuter* ^{e²⁹} *à la lettre* *entendre que* [▲]
you to make any expense, or [▲] *to send* [▲] *for anything*
^{e⁵} ^{e⁵¹} ^{e¹⁰⁴} *que vous* ^{e⁵} *acheter rien*
for me; by the noise which [▲] is made, I find that my brothers
^{e¹} ^{e²⁷} ^{e⁵} *l'on* - ^{e⁵} *entendre* ^{e²}
are in the next room.
voisin chambre f.

EXERCISE CXXI.—PART II.

6°. Seamen complain [▲] [▲] that I have favoured lands-
gens de mer ^{e¹⁷} *de ce* *favoriser gens de*
men; the people have no reason [▲] to complain that the
campagne ^{e⁴⁶} ^{e²⁹} *de* ^{e¹⁷}
government does not come to its assistance. 7°. We are so
gou.....m. ^{e¹⁶} ^{e²⁹}
afraid, [▲] we all doubt that affairs can go well. 8°. That
craintif que ^{e¹⁴} ^{e⁷⁷}*te f.* ^{e¹⁵} ^{e¹} ^{e¹²}
man who took so much care not to be robbed, has been
^{e¹} ^{e⁵} ^{e³¹} *garde qu'on* ^{e²⁰}
stripped; that man fortunately took notice that they were
dévalisé ^{e¹} *heureusement* ^{e⁵} *garde* ^{e²⁰}
intending [▲] to rob him. 9°. It seems that women are more
se disposer à ^{e²⁰} *semble* ^{e⁷}
sensitive than men; it seems to me that women are more
sensitif ^{e¹} ^{e¹²¹} ^{e⁷}
sensitive than men; there appeared such a quantity
^{e¹²¹} ^{e¹} *on voir sortir une si grande* -*e f.*
of fireworks, that it seemed as if all the stars were falling
feu d'artifice m. ^{e¹²¹} ^{e¹⁷} ^{e¹⁴} ^{e²³} ^{e⁵}
from the sky; it seemed to us as if all the stars were
^{e⁷⁶} ^{e¹²¹} ^{e¹⁷} ^{e¹⁴} ^{e²³}
falling from the sky. 10°. People do not know, or pretend not
^{e⁵} ^{e⁷⁶} ^{e⁹⁴} ^{e¹⁴}
to know, that Boileau did really [▲] esteem [▲] La Fontaine;
^{e²⁴} ^{e⁵} *vraiment de l* ^{e⁹} *pour*
I am not ignorant that the *Luciade* is a poem replete with
^{e²⁴} *poëme* m. ^{e²⁷} ^{e¹⁰}
beauties—^{e⁶}.

CORRESPONDENCE BETWEEN THE TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE AND THE TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

The present and compound of the present subjunctive correspond with the present and two futures.

Indicative.	Examples.	Subjunctive.
Present, Future, Comp. Fut.	<i>j'ordonne,</i> <i>j'ordonnerai,</i> <i>quand j'aurai ordonné,</i>	<i>qu'il écrive, pres.</i> <i>qu'il ait écrit, comp.</i> <i>pres.</i>

The compound present subjunctive corresponds also with the compound present indicative, as—*j'ai souhaité que tu sois venu.*

The preterite and compound preterite of the subjunctive correspond with the imperfect, the preterite, comp. pres., and imp. and two cond.

Indicative.	Examples.	Subjunctive.
Imperfect, Preterite, Com. Present, Com. Imper. Cond. Pres. Com. Con. Pre.	<i>je voulais,</i> <i>je voulus,</i> <i>j'ai voulu,</i> <i>j'avais voulu,</i> <i>je voudrais,</i> <i>j'aurais voulu,</i>	<i>que vous vinssiez—s.</i> or <i>que vous fussiez } v.</i> <i>venu.</i>

OF THE USE OF THE TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

RULE CXXII. 1°. When the verb of the principal proposition is in the present or future of the indicative, the verb of the subordinate proposition must be put in the present of the subjunctive, if we wish to express a present or a future with regard to the first verb; and in the compound of the present, if we wish to express a past, as—

Pres.— <i>je désire que vous soyez content,</i>	I wish you to be happy.
Fut.— <i>il faudra que je m'y rende,</i>	I shall be obliged to go there.
Past.— <i>il faut que j'aie trouvé de puissants protecteurs,</i>	I must have found powerful protectors. •

The compound of the present subjunctive may also be preceded by the compound present ind. to express a past, as—

<i>il a fallu que vous ayez eu beaucoup de patience,</i>	you must have had a great deal of patience.
--	---

2°. If the verb is in any of the tenses of the indicative or conditional, except the present or future indicative used above, the second verb is put in the preterite of the subjunctive, to express a present or future with regard to the first verb, and in the compound preterite to express a past, as—

Pres.— <i>il avait défendu que l'on me reçût,</i>	he had ordered me not to be received.
Fut.— <i>je craindrais que mon père ne le trouvât mal,</i>	I should be afraid my father would be angry.
Past.— <i>j'aurais désiré que vous eussiez parlé,</i>	I should have wished that you had spoken.

Essential Observations on the Participle Present.

3°. When the participle present can be changed into the present of the indicative, the subordinate verb must be put in the present subjunctive, and in the compound of the present if we want to express a past, according to the first part of the above rule, as—

<i>craignant (i. e., comme je crains) que votre père ne soit malade.....</i>	fearing that your father was ill,
--	-----------------------------------

And if the participle present can be changed into the imperfect of the indicative, the second verb is put in the preterite subjunctive, if we want to express a present or future, and compound preterite if we want to express a past, according to the second part of the above rule, as—

<i>cet enfant craignant (i. e., qui craignait) qu'on ne le grondât.....</i>	this child, afraid of being scolded.....
---	--

4°. EXCEPTIONS.—1st, The present of the subjunctive may sometimes be used in the subordinate proposition after the compound present indicative, but only when the subjunctive is governed by such conjunctions as *afin que*, *pour que*, &c., in the sense of, in order to; and when wishing to express a thing

the moment, or a future with regard to the present

ré vos malles afin | I have prepared your trunks,
s ne vous fassiez | that you might not make
idre, | them wait for you.

ough the first verb be in the present or future of
ive, the second may be put in the preterite or com-
erite subjunctive, if the latter be attended by any
xpressed or understood, as—

qu'elle se rétablît | do you think she will recover
lait à Bath? | if she goes to Bath?

.—If the condition be expressed by the present in-
e present subjunctive must be used, as—

u'il ne meure si on | I am afraid he will die if they
gne pas, | do not take care of him.

conditionals, *on dirait*, it would seem, and *je ne*
r I cannot, govern the present and compound pre-
ctive, as—

que cet homme | it would seem as if that man
noyer, | wanted to drown himself.

lirait sometimes governs the indicative, as—

u'il va pleuvoir, | one would think it was going
to rain.

ais, used sometimes in the sense of wishing, desir-
s the present subjunctive, as—

drais qu'il pleuve, | I wish it would rain.

RVE.—The verb of the subordinate proposition is
in the present of the subjunctive, whatever may be
ig tense of the indicative, when the second verb
continued truth, a thing still existing at the mo-
ndependent of the circumstances of time, as—

'é admis dans votre | he has not been admitted in
quoiqu'il soit plus | your regiment, though he is
vous, | taller than you.

* * Should the learner be at a loss to know if what he wishes to express by the verb in the subjunctive is in a past time with regard to the first verb, he has only to remark, that if the English verb, which corresponds with the French subjunctive, be in a compound tense, or can be turned into one, it refers to a past, and the French subjunctive must be put consequently in the preterite or compound preterite; but an intelligent scholar needs no such guide, if he understands what he means to express.

EXERCISE CXXII.—PART I.

1°. It is *necessary* that he who speaks should *make himself* understood by those who listen to him; and that he who writes *à la portée* should have *in view* to make himself understood by those who read his works; it is *sufficient* that a clever man has neglected nothing to make an undertaking² succeed¹; *want of success* ought not to diminish his merit; *I am satisfied* that you have petitioned the minister in my favour. 2°. Trajan's *maxim* was, that it was *necessary* that the citizens should find him such as he would have wished to find the emperor, had he been a simple citizen; you *did* not think they had laid a snare for you. 3°. Fearing that they have forgot to inform you of the arrival of your sister, I *send* you word; the prisoner not knowing that they had seized his papers, asserted that he had not corresponded with the rebels.

EXERCISE CXXII.—PART II.

4°.—1st *Excep.* Your brother has behaved too ill, *that* I should take upon me to excuse him. 2d *Excep.* I fear that

ould love gambling *to extreme*, if he had many ^{e⁴} oppor-
 is of playing; I will never believe that he would have ^{e⁴} *passionément* ^{e¹⁵} *souvent des*
 guilty of this error, if he had reflected *ever so little*.
 penser ^{e¹³} *tant soit peu*
 rcep. One cannot say a word to Miss Céleste, but she
 e⁵⁵ *savoir* e¹⁰ e¹⁰⁹ e⁵⁷
 the pet; one would think that these people
 re la mouche e⁵⁵ *dire* e²³
 pleasure in mischief; one would think ^{e⁵⁵} that house is
 ire à faire du mal e¹²³ *que* e²
 to fall. 5°. God ^{e²} has surrounded our eyes with
 e² nous *entourer* les e²³ e¹⁰
 thin coats, transparent in front, in order that
 vince tunique f. e⁵⁵ *le devant afin*
 night be able to see through; one would think her your
 e¹⁵ e⁴ e⁵⁸ e⁵⁵ e¹⁷
 though she is ten years younger than you.
 e⁵⁴ e²⁹ e²⁰

IONS OF THE TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE AND CONDITIONAL.

e present relates to its own tense, and comp. pres.

arle.....	quand vous parlez	pres.
inse.....	quand vous avez dansé	comp. pres.

e imperfect—to its own tense, the pret. and comp. pres.

enais...	quand vous sonniez	imper.
rivais...	quand vous sonnâtes	pret.
rtais...	quand vous avez sonné	comp. pres.

e preterite—to its own tense, and generally to the comp. pret.

oupai	quand vous soupâtes	pret.
éjeûnai	quand vous eûtes déjeûné	comp. pret.

e comp. pres.—to its own tense, imp. comp. pret. double.

mangé	quand vous avez joué	comp. pres.
bu	pendant que vous dîniez	imp.
diné	après que vous avez eu diné	comp. pret. d.

mp. pret. generally to the preterite.

id j'eu lu | vous entrâtes \ pret.

6. Comp. imp.—to the imp. comp. pres. and comp. pres.

<i>j'avais chanté</i>	<i>quand vous chantiez</i>	comp. pres.
<i>j'avais dansé</i>	<i>quand vous chantâtes</i>	pret.
<i>il avait dîné</i>	<i>quand vous avez dîné</i>	comp. pres.
<i>j'avais bu</i>	<i>quand vous eûtes bu</i>	comp. pret.

7. The future—to its own tense, comp. fut. pres. comp. pres.

<i>il jouera</i>	<i>quand je jouerai</i>	fut.
<i>il jouera</i>	<i>quand il aura dîné</i>	comp. fut.
<i>je jouerai</i>	<i>si vous jouez</i>	pres.
<i>je dînerai</i>	<i>si on a servi</i>	comp. pres.

8. Comp. fut.—to the future.

<i>quand j'aurai bu</i>	<i>je dînerai.....</i>	fut.
-----------------------------	------------------------	------

9. Pres. cond.—to its tense comp. pres. cond. imp. and comp. pres. ind.

<i>quand je partirais</i>	<i>je n'arriverais</i>	pres. cond.
<i>toute de suite</i>	<i>pas à tems</i>	
<i>je ne pourrais pas</i>	<i>vous auriez payé</i>	comp. pres. cond.
<i>quand même</i>		
<i>je donnerais</i>	<i>si je pouvais</i>	imper.
<i>je le punirais</i>	<i>s'il avait menti</i>	comp. imp.

10. Comp. pres. cond.—to its own tense and comp. imp.

<i>j'aurais écrit pen-</i>	<i>auriez cacheté</i>	comp. pres. cond.
<i>dant que vous</i>	<i>votre lettre</i>	
<i>je lui aurait écrit</i>	<i>s'il avait voulu</i>	comp. imp.

When two verbs are united by the conjunction *que*, the second verb is put in some of the tenses of the indicative or conditional, if the first verb expresses something positive.

The pres. ind.—relates to the following tenses:—

<i>on assure</i>	<i>qu'il doit partir aujourd'hui.</i>	pres.
<i>je promets</i>	<i>qu'il partira demain.</i>	fut.
<i>on m'assure</i>	<i>que vous dansiez lorsque.....</i>	imp.
<i>il est certain</i>	<i>qu'il partit hier.</i>	pret.
<i>je suis sûr</i>	<i>qu'il est parti ce matin.</i>	comp. pret.
<i>on assure</i>	<i>qu'il était parti.</i>	comp. imp.
<i>on dit</i>	<i>que le roi partirait si.....</i>	pres. cond.
<i>il jure</i>	<i>que son fils serait parti si....</i>	comp. pres. con.
<i>on promet</i>	<i>qu'il sera puni s'il ment.</i>	comp. fut.

If the second verb expresses a temporary action, a fleeting state of being, and you wish to express a time present with regard to the first verb, the four following tenses, the imp., pret., comp. pres., comp. imp., correspond to the imperfect, as—

imperfect	<i>on disait</i>	<i>que vous étiez paresseux</i>
preterite	<i>je dis</i>	<i>qu'il était malade</i>
comp. pres.	<i>il a dit</i>	<i>que vous parliez trop</i>
comp. imp.	<i>il avait dit</i>	<i>que je dansais bien</i>

But if you wish to express a time anterior to the time of the first verb, the same tenses correspond to the compound imperfect, as—

imperfect	<i>on disait</i>	<i>que vous aviez été paresseux</i>
preterite	<i>je dis</i>	<i>qu'il avait été petit</i>
comp. pres.	<i>il a dit</i>	<i>que vous aviez trop parlé</i>
comp. imp.	<i>il avait dit</i>	<i>que j'avais bien dansé</i>

When it is intended by the second verb to express an absolute future, that is, something yet to be done after the time expressed by the first verb, the same tenses correspond with the cond. pres., as—

imperfect	<i>on disait</i>	<i>que vous seriez paresseux</i>
preterite	<i>je dis</i>	<i>qu'il serait petit</i>
comp. pres.	<i>il a dit</i>	<i>que vous parleriez trop</i>
comp. imp.	<i>il avait dit</i>	<i>que je danserais bien</i>

But if the second verb expresses an eternal truth, or an action which is done, or can be done at all time, the same tenses correspond to the present, as—

imperfect	<i>je vous disais</i>	<i>que Dieu voit tout</i>
preterite	<i>je vous dis</i>	<i>que la vertu est aimable en soi</i>
comp. pres.	<i>il m'a dit</i>	<i>que la santé fait la félicité du corps</i>
comp. imp.	<i>je lui avais dit</i>	<i>qu'il faut toujours être franc</i>

A common error is to use a past tense to express something still existing, as *je savais qu'il était marié*, but in such cases the subordinate verb must be put in the pres. ind., as—

imperfect	<i>je savais</i>	<i>qu'il est marié</i>
preterite	<i>je vous dis</i>	<i>qu'il est mort</i>
comp. pres.	<i>on m'a dit</i>	<i>que votre père est remarié</i>
comp. imp.	<i>il avait appris</i>	<i>que vous parlez bien Français</i>

If by the second verb you wish to express a thing done in an indefinite past time, the comp. pres. is used, and not the imperfect, as—

je savais que vous avez obtenu un prix à la lotterie.

If you wish to express a thing positive, the future, and not the conditional, is used for the second verb, as—

je savais que vous partirez demain, not partiriez.

Though the imperfect suits best after the conjunction *si*, the compound is sometimes used to express something not permanent, but temporary or accidental, as—

<i>je vous aurais salué si je vous</i>		I would have bowed to you
<i>avais vu,</i>		had I seen you.

But a very short-sighted person would very properly say,

je vous aurais salué si je voyais.

The first complains of the accidental circumstance of not observing, and uses the compound imperfect; the second, of the permanent defect of sight, which prevents him observing at any time, and he uses the imperfect; we must therefore say,

il n'aurait pas souffert cet affront s'il était sensible, not s'il avait été, because *sensible* is a permanent quality.

[For dialogues or exercises on the verbs, conjunctions, or phrases which govern the subjunctive, see beginning of the Appendix.]

OF THE GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

Verbs, with regard to their government, may be classed into a variety of kinds, of which the different lists will be found in the Appendix, according to their number.

OBSERVE.—That active verbs must have a direct object expressed or understood, whether they have an indirect one or not.

RULE CXXIII. 1°. *First list* contains verbs which generally admit of a direct object or regimen, but not of an indirect object, as—

<i>regardez mon cheval, comme</i>		look at my horse, how it runs!
<i>il court!</i>		

2°. *Second list* contains verbs which, having two objects, require *de* before the indirect object, as—

<i>Il a comblé son ami de bienfait,</i>	he has loaded his friend with kindness.
---	---

3°. *Third list* contains verbs which admit only of an indirect object, governed by *de*, as—

<i>elle profitera de votre étourderie,</i>	she will take advantage of your folly.
--	--

4°. Active verbs, used in a passive sense, generally govern the preposition *de* before their complement, when the participle expresses an operation of the mind—such as fear, anger, love, hatred, pain, respect, esteem, &c., or when followed in English by of, from, with, or by, as—

<i>il est estimé de tout le monde,</i>	he is esteemed by every body.
<i>cela est traduit de l'Anglais,</i>	that is translated from the English.

But *by* is expressed by *par*, when speaking of physical actions, or when the bodily faculties participate in those of the mind, as—

<i>cette grammaire est écrite par Mons. S.</i>	this grammar is written by Mr. S.
<i>j'ai été insulté par un manant,</i>	I have been insulted by a fellow.

5°. *Fourth list* contains those verbs which, having two objects, require *à* before their indirect object, which generally relates to persons, as—

<i>donnez-moi de l'argent, for</i>	give me some money, for
<i>donnez de l'argent à moi,</i>	give some money to me.

6°. *Fifth list* contains those verbs which can only have an indirect object governed by the preposition *à*, as—

<i>il déplaît à l'audience,</i>	he displeases the audience.
<i>je pense à vos malheurs,</i>	I think on your misfortunes.

Jouer, to play on an instrument, governs the preposition *de* before its complement, and *jouer*, to play at a game, governs *à*, as—

<i>voulez-vous jouer du violon?</i>	will you play on the violin?
<i>j'aime mieux jouer au billiard,</i>	I had rather play at billiards.

EXERCISE CXXIII.—PART I.

1°. *First list.* All men seek happiness, and not one finds it;
^{e¹⁴} ^{e¹} ^{e⁷⁷} ^{e¹¹⁰} *pas un* ^{e¹⁰}
the watch cannot deny the maker, the creature cannot deny
^{e⁶} ^{e¹⁵} *nier horloger créature f.* ^{e¹⁵} ^{e¹²}
the Creator. 2°. *Second list.* We are so little acquainted
Créateur ^{e¹} ^{e⁴} *connaître*
yet with a man, that we blame him for his inclinations, his
^{e³⁰} — art. ^{e¹} ^{e²⁷} ^{e⁴} ^{e⁷⁸} *de*
sensations, his opinions—he is not the master of them!
.....f. *de*f. ^{e⁶}
3°. *Third list.* It is with liberty as with happiness—
en ^{e¹⁰}f. ^{e¹⁷} ^{e¹⁰} ^{e¹¹⁰}
every body speaks of it, nobody enjoys it; we enjoy less in
^{e⁵} ^{e¹²} ^{e¹⁰⁶} ^{e³⁰} *de* ^{e¹⁵} ^{e³⁰} ^{e²⁵}
imagination what we have than what we hope for; who
.....f. *de ce que* ^{e¹⁵} ^{e¹²³} *le* ^{e¹⁵} ^{e³⁰} —
profits by crime is guilty of it. 4°. Do not flatter yourself
profiter ^{e²⁷} ...m. *l'a commis*
to be much loved by a woman who loves herself; I have been
^{e⁴} ^{e⁴} ^{e²⁷} ^{e⁷} *s'aimer*
discharged by my master, after he had enriched himself by my
chasser ^{e¹⁹} ^{e⁶} ^{e³¹} *s'enrichir* ^{e¹⁹}
industry.
.....ie f.

EXERCISE CXXIII.—PART II.

5°. *Fourth list.* How many people derive their virtues
combien personne f. devoir ^{e¹}
from nature, and defects from education! the impious denies to
.....f. ^{e⁶⁶} *é*.....f. ^{e⁶⁶} *refuser*
the divinity attributes which he would blush not to
Dieu des qualité f. rougir de
possess; we are indebted to Christianity for the origin of the
^{e²⁵} ^{e¹⁵} ^{e²⁹} *Christianisme m.* — *idée f.*
greatest virtues; he has taught my son history and geography.
^{e⁷⁰} ^{e¹} *enseigner* ^{e¹⁵} ^{e⁸} ^{e²¹}
6°. *Fifth list.* The wicked man hurts himself before he
méchant se nuire lui-même ^{e⁷}
hurts others; we run the risk of outliving happiness by en-
^{e⁴⁷} ^{e¹⁹} ^{e¹⁵} *s'exposer* *survivre* ^{e¹¹⁰}
deavouring to increase it; they oppose your happiness; it is
s'efforcer de ^{e¹¹²} *s'opposer* *félicité f.*
better to expose ourselves to ingratitude than to fail in our duty
^{e¹⁰⁸} *s'exposer*f. *que de manquer*

o the poor; those whom *every body* suits seldom suit *every*
misérable pl. e^{12} e^6 e^{70} e^{18} e^{70}
body; the luxury of the rich aggravates the hunger of the poor.
 e^5 e^{80} *insulter* *faim* f. e^{66}

OF THE INFINITIVE AND PREPOSITIONS.

RULE CXXIV. The present of the infinitive is either used without a preposition or preceded by *à*, *de*, or *pour*, as the preceding verb requires.

1°. The infinitive is used without a preposition, when used substantively as the subject or object of another verb, or when preceded by any verbs not marked in the Sixth list of the Appendix as governing a preposition before the next infinitive, as—

<i>il aime trop le boire et le</i>	he likes eating and drinking
<i>manger,</i>	too much.
<i>il faut venir me voir,</i>	you must come and see me.
<i>j'aimerais mieux mourir,</i>	I would rather die.

 OF THE INFINITIVE GOVERNED BY *DE*.

2°. The infinitive is preceded by *de*.

1st, When coming after any of the verbs contained in the Sixth list as requiring *de* before the infinitive, as—

<i>je vous conseille d'apprendre</i>	I advise you to learn French.
<i>le Français,</i>	

2dly, Coming after any noun mentioned in the Seventh list as requiring *de* before the infinitive, as—

<i>il n'a pas lieu de craindre,</i>	he has no reason to fear.
-------------------------------------	---------------------------

3dly, Coming after a noun inseparably connected, and as forming but one idea with the preceding verb, as mentioned in Seventh list, and as requiring *de* before the next infinitive, as—

<i>j'ai peur de me faire mal,</i>	I am afraid to hurt myself.
-----------------------------------	-----------------------------

4thly, Coming after the participle past of an active verb used in a passive sense, as—

<i>on est obligé de manger,</i>	we are obliged to eat.
---------------------------------	------------------------

5thly, Coming after any of the adjectives mentioned in Seventh list as requiring *de* before the next infinitive, as—

je suis las de payer vos dettes, | I am tired of paying your debts.

6thly, After an adjective used with the unipersonal verb *il est*, it is, or after any unipersonal verb, the sense of which could be rendered by using the unipersonal verb *il est*, and an adjective, as—

il est honteux de trahir sa patrie, | it is a shame to betray one's country.
il suffit (i. e., *il est suffisant*), | it suffices (or it is sufficient) to
de dire que je ne veux pas, | say, I will not.

OBSERVE.—To before an infinitive is generally expressed by *de*, when it can be changed into the preposition of or from, and the verb into the participle present, as—

je vous donne la liberté de partir, | I give you the liberty to go, that is, of going.

This generally occurs after a noun used in a definite sense. As this rule is not absolute, let the learner refer to the lists.

EXERCISE CXXIV.

1°. You dare shudder at the recital of a love scene, and you cannot grant a look of pity on a crowd of unfortunate beings whom you see dying with want; consider yourself fortunate, if the favourites condescend to listen to you. 2°. 1st, Let us not allow ourselves to judge what we cannot appreciate; it belongs only to virtuous persons to be discreet. 2d, The gift of writing is the first of talents; what pride, for a philosopher, to believe that there must be a religion for the million, and none for him. 3d, We trust to time the care to correct the faults of children, which alone is sufficient to render them

e¹⁴ frémir récit m. amoureuxf.
e¹²² e⁴⁶ e⁴¹ e¹⁵ e⁷⁰ malheureux —
e⁴ périr e¹⁰ innation f. ———— e⁸³
favori e⁴³ e²
e⁶⁵ e³⁴ e¹⁵ e¹⁵ apprécier e²⁴
e¹ e⁹ e²³d... e⁴
écriture f.m. e³⁷
e¹⁵ e²⁰f. peuple
non e¹⁷ e³⁶ e⁶ e²³
e⁶⁶ e¹⁸ e¹¹² e²⁶ pour e²¹

corrigible. 4th, I am sorry to see *à* you are tired of
 *e²⁴* *e⁴* *que* *e²⁵*
 nging. 5th, *There are* none but those capable of
e¹⁶ *e⁴* — *e¹⁹* *personne*
 itating great men who are capable of praising them. 6th,
imiter *e¹* *e¹* *R* *e²⁰*
 is dangerous for man to disturb the order of nature.
e⁴ *e¹* *déranger* *plan m.*f.

OF THE INFINITIVE GOVERNED BY *à*.

RULE CXXV. 1°. The infinitive is governed by *à*—

1st, When coming after any of the verbs mentioned in the sixth list as governing *à* before the infinitive, as—

Il aime à danser avec vous, | she likes to dance with you.

2dly, When coming after any of the adjectives mentioned in the Seventh list, as also after those that express aptness, fitness, inclination, readiness, as—

cela est agréable à voir, | that is agreeable to see.
il est enclin à jouer, | he is inclined to play.

3dly, After a noun when the verb expresses yet something to be done or performed, as—

'est à votre tour à jouer, | it is your turn to play.
'ai une fille à marier, | I have a daughter to marry.

2°. To before an infinitive is generally expressed by *à*, when it can be changed into the preposition *in*, and the verb into the participle present, as—

Il a de la difficulté à parler, | he has some difficulty to speak.
 (that is, *in speaking*.)

This generally occurs when the noun is taken in a partitive sense. As this rule is not general, the learner must refer to the list.

To before an infinitive is rendered by *pour*, when it stands for the words, *in order to*, *for the purpose of*, as—

Je sortirai pour acheter du drap, | I will go out to buy some cloth (i. e., for the purpose of buying, &c.)

The participle present, preceded by the preposition *for*, denoting the means of an action, or the reason that it was done, is expressed by *pour* before the infinitive, as—

je l'ai puni pour avoir menti, | I punished him for having (i. e., because he had) told a lie.

OBSERVE.—When the English participle present, used with *for*, implies a future, the present infinitive is used in French; but if implying a past, it stands in English for the compound present infinitive, that part of the verb being used in French, as—

il me demande £4 pour me faire un habit, | he asks £4 for making me a coat.
je fus puni pour avoir ri, | I was punished for laughing (i. e., for having laughed).

EXERCISE CXXV.

1°. 1st, Logic tends to correct our judgment; we are never
logique f. tendre rectifier opinion f. e¹⁶ e²⁴
 so easily deceived as when we want to deceive others. 2d, He
aisément e²⁰ e³ e¹⁶ songer e²⁰ e¹⁹
 is ready to die, rather than to deny his faith; do you think
e⁴³ e¹⁸ plutôt e¹²³ renier e⁶⁶ e²³
 the enemy is inclined to capitulate? 3d, I have several
que e³³ enclin capituler e²⁶
 letters to write before *post time*. 2°. We had much diffi-
e¹⁹ e¹ e⁷ départ du courrier H e¹
 culty to obtain a passport during the late revolution in France;
.....f. e⁸⁴m. pendant e¹³⁷ ..é.....f.
 we felt disgusted to enter an apartment where *so much* blood
avoir répugnance f. e⁶ e⁶⁸ e²¹ e³¹ e¹¹⁴
 had been shed; men lose their time, reputation, peace, even
répendre des e³⁸ e²³ e²⁶ ..é.....f. e⁴¹
 lives, to uphold doubtful propositions; he has been ruined
e⁹ soutenir des douteuxf. e⁸³
 for having engaged in clandestine speculations; he asks
s'engager desé.....f. e⁹
 fifteen pounds for painting my house; he charges fifteen
e⁵ peindre e² charger
 pounds for painting my house.
e⁵ e¹²⁵ e²

OF THE PARTICIPLES.

GENERAL RULE.—The participle present is declinable or in-

declinable according as it is used as an adjective, expressing a quality of a noun, or as a participle expressing an action or an operation of the mind.

RULE CXXVI.—49. 1°. The participle present, always ending in *ant* in French, and *ing* in English, as *parlant*, making, is an adjective, and is declinable when it expresses quality, a state, or a situation, and is known to be so when it comes after the noun it serves to restrict, and when it can be used with the verb *être*, as—

<i>femmes sont très-obligeantes,</i>	these women are very oblig-
	ing.
<i>j'ai vu une baleine vivante,</i>	I saw a living whale.

Obligeantes and *vivante* are both used to restrict the noun preceding by expressing its quality, the second by pointing out its state; the first is used with the verb *être*, and the second will admit of it.

2°. The participle present is indeclinable when it expresses an action, or an operation of the mind, and not a quality; when it has an object expressed or understood, and when it cannot be used with the verb *être*, as—

<i>j'ai vu grondant sa femme,</i>	I saw him scolding his wife.
<i>Turenne, parlant à son neveu,</i>	Turenne, speaking to his ne-
<i>fut tué,</i>	phew, was killed.

Grondant and *parlant* express an action; they have an object, and cannot be used with *être*.

Should any doubt arise whether the word ending in *ant* be a participle present or a participle adjective, try whether the word can be changed into a tense of the same verb preceded by *qui*, without altering the sense, if it can, it is a participle present, as—

<i>j'ai vu nos braves endurent la</i>	I saw our brave men enduring
<i>fatigue,</i>	fatigue.

which can be changed into *qui enduraient la fatigue*, who were enduring fatigue.

But if the word ending in *ant* can be used with the verb *être*, preceded by *qui*, without altering the sense, it is a participle adjective, as—

<i>il a une figure rebutante,</i>	he has a repulsive face.
-----------------------------------	--------------------------

it is, une figure qui est rebutante, a face that is repulsive.

EXERCISE CXXVI.

1°. How agreeable² it is¹ to quench one's thirst in a running
^{e⁴} ^{e²} ^{se désaltérer} ^{couler}
 water; "there are heaped, within destructive walls," "the
^{e⁶} ^{e⁴} ^{amonceler dans dévorant} ^{e¹¹}
 living upon the dead, the dead upon the dying;"
 vivant pl. ^{e¹} mort pl. ^{e¹²⁶} pl. ^{e¹} mourant pl.
 writing is the only image of the voice—the more it is like, the
^{e¹²⁴} ^{seul peinture f.} ^{e⁹} ^{e⁷⁸}
 better it is. 2°. Look at those flowers dying from the sting of
^{e²³} — ^{e⁶³} ^{e¹²⁶} ^{aiguillon m.}
 an insect; "behold those Drusi darting towards glory,"
e f. ^{regarder} ^{voler} ^{e²³} ^{e¹}
 "those Décii dying to live in memory." 1 and 2. Waters
 ^{e¹²⁶} ^{e²} ^{e¹} ^{e²³} ^{e⁸}
 flowing towards the sea, are immersed in it; running waters
^{couler} ^{e²³} ^{e⁴} ^{se perdre} ^{e¹¹⁶} ^{e¹²⁶} ^{e⁸}
 are much wholesomer than those of pools; we found this
^{e¹} ^{sain} ^{étang m.} ^{e¹⁰}
 shepherdess sleeping profoundly on the shores of the Tagus;
^{bergère} ^{e⁸} ^{profondément} ^{e¹¹¹}
 I have seen flocks wandering in the meadow; men who wander
^{e⁴} ^{e¹⁰⁹} ^{errant} ^{champ} ^{e¹} ^{e¹²⁶}
 excite a just mistrust.
er ^{méfiance f.}

RULE CXXVII.—49. 1°. When the participle present is preceded by the preposition *en*, or if the preposition *en* be understood, it is indeclinable, and always refers to the *subject* of the verb; therefore, if it is intended to refer to the *object* of the verb, the present of the infinitive must be used instead of the participle present without *en*, as—

je vous ai vu en priant Dieu, | I saw you in praying to God.

This would signify that it was *I* that was praying, as *I* is the subject, and the part. pres. refers to it; but if I say,

je vous ai vu prier Dieu, or *priant Dieu*,

without the preposition *en*, it will then signify

I saw you pray or praying to God.

2°. When the participle present is used without the preposition *en*, it may relate either to subject or object; and where any ambiguity may appear, the preposition *en* must be used to

it it, as it will make the participle relate to the subject,

vu votre frère sortant | I saw your brother coming out
de voiture, | of a coach.

came out, I or your brother? the phrase does not decide;
I add *en* to it, *j'ai vu votre frère en sortant, &c.*, it
the participle refer to the subject, and decides that
tais, I was coming out, and not my brother.

The pronoun *en*, of him, of it, must never be placed
a participle present, as—

us ai envoyé mon fils, | I have sent you my son, wish-
lant en faire quelque | ing to make something good
se de bon, | of him.

I had written *en voulant faire quelque chose de bon*, it
have meant, wishing to do something good. As no
ition but *en* can govern the participle present, should
her preposition govern the English participle which can-
rendered by *en*, the infinitive must be used, as—

fatigué de courir, | I am tired of running.
fatigué sans travailler, | he is tired without working.

By, in the sense of *by means of*, is generally rendered
before a participle present, as—

fait mal en dansant, | he has hurt himself by dancing.

The English participle present is often used as a noun
the subject of a verb; it is then rendered either by the
ponding noun or the present of the infinitive, as—

se n'est pas nécessaire, | dancing is not necessary.
de Madame Siddons | the acting of Mrs. Siddons was
incomparable, | incomparable.

When the English participle present refers to a noun or
an object of a preceding verb, it is generally rendered in
by the present or imperfect tense preceded by *qui*, or
time by the infinitive, particularly after *voir*, *entendre*,
r, as—

nti ce chien qui me mor- | I felt that dog biting me.
t,
is a vu courir dans le | he saw you running in the
tin, | garden.

7°. The participle present, construed in English with the possessive pronoun, must be rendered in French by a personal pronoun, preceded by *que*, and followed by a verb in such a tense as the sense may require, as—

<i>j'avais peur qu'elle ne tombe,</i>	I was afraid of her falling.
<i>je savais qu'elle avait tombé,</i>	I knew of her falling.

8°. *It being*, at the beginning of a phrase, cannot be construed into French but by some other tense of the verb *être*, preceded by *comme*, *puisque*, or *depuis que*, using *ce* before the verb, if followed by a noun or pronoun, and *il* if followed by an adjective, as—

<i>comme c'est mon intention de voyager.....</i>	it being my intention to travel.....
<i>puisque'il est évident que je perdrai.....</i>	it being evident that I shall lose my suit.....

EXERCISE CXXVII.

1°. and 4°. Fishermen's boats appearing and disappearing alternately between the waves, *were in danger*, by striking upon the shore, of meeting their fate; I contribute to his present good by allowing him to be free; I contribute to his future good by arming him against the evils he must encounter. 2. "She had always the key of that place," "but letting it fall, Joconde found it." 3. A prince smooths the sternness of power by sharing in the duties of it. 5. Singing soothes in retirement, and charms in society. 6. I heard Mrs. S. singing a new Italian air. 7. I am ignorant of his having received the payment of the bill. 8. It being decided by a majority, I give up.

pêcheur e' paraissant disparaissant
tour à tour e⁷⁴ vague f. hasarder e⁸⁶ s'échouer
e¹ e¹¹¹ y trouver sort m. e⁸⁷ faire
en le moment présent e¹⁹ e⁶⁸ e⁶⁵ libre
e⁸⁷ dans l'avenir e¹⁹ e⁶⁸ armer e²
e⁵ que e⁸⁸ supporter e⁹ clef f.
e⁴⁴ là e¹ e⁸ e⁸ e¹⁰
..... tempérer rigueur f. e²³ e⁶⁸ e⁷⁴
e⁴⁹ chant m. consoler retraite f. charmer
monde m. e¹²¹ e¹⁶ e⁸⁵m.
e⁸⁴ e¹⁰ montant m.
e⁶⁶ e³⁰ pluralité f. céder

OF THE PARTICIPLE PAST.

LE CXXVIII.—50 to 52. 1°. The participle past, used with the verb *être*, agrees with the subject of the verb, except with reflective verbs, as the verb *être* in that case is used for the verb *avoir*, and is subject to the same rules, as—

<i>sont très-fatiguées,</i>	they are much fatigued.
<i>se sont donné beaucoup</i>	they have given themselves a
<i>peines,</i>	great deal of trouble.

The participle past also agrees with the subject of the verb when used with *sembler* or *paraître*, as—

<i>semble affligée,</i>	she seems afflicted.
<i>paraît accoutumée,</i>	she appears accustomed to it.

Two participles agree with the subject, because the verb is understood—*elle semble être affligée, elle paraît être accoutumée*; *été*, been, is the only participle that is indeclinable.

When the participle past, *attendu, y compris, excepté, inclus, ci-joint, supposé, out*, come before a noun, they are considered as prepositions, and are indeclinable; but when placed after the nouns, they are considered as adjectives, and are declinable, as—

<i>vous achetés tous ses biens,</i>	you have bought all his pro-
<i>pris la ferme,</i>	perty, the farm included.

Il a vendu tous ses biens, sa ferme comprise.

When the participle past of an active or reflective verb precedes by its direct object, it is declinable; and when the object comes after the participles, it is indeclinable,

<i>ai lues (i. e., histoires),</i>	I have read them (histories).
<i>ces histoires,</i>	I have read those histories.

This rule is essential, in as much as it admits of no deviation; the only difficulty the learner has to encounter is to distinguish whether the object that precedes the verb be direct or indirect; what verbs may or may not have a direct object; and when an infinitive follows a participle, to which of the two the infinitive belongs. These points being ascertained, it is easy to ascertain whether the participle be declinable or not, by conformity to the general rule.

The direct object preceding the participle past can only be the following personal pronouns—*me, te, se, nous, vous, le, la, les*, the relative pronoun *que*, or a noun preceded by *quel, quelle, &c., autant de, combien de*, and *que de*, as—

<i>je les ai vus hier,</i>	I saw them yesterday.
<i>la femme que vous avez vue...</i>	the woman whom you saw.
<i>que de difficultés j'ai éprou-</i>	how many difficulties I have
<i>vées!</i>	experienced!
<i>quelle joie nous avons éprou-</i>	what joy we have experienced!
<i>vée!</i>	

EXERCISE CXXVIII.

1°. Beloved by her husband, adored by her children, this
chéri ^{e²⁷} ^{e²⁸} ^{e²⁷} ^{e²⁸}
 good mother is constantly devoted to the happiness of
^{e²} ^{e⁸} *perpétuellement* *s'occuper* ^{e⁷⁸} ^{e¹¹⁰}
 all those around her; laws are made for the greater
^{e¹⁴} ^{e¹²} *qui environner* ^{e⁹} ^{e⁵} ^{e¹}
 advantage of all—we must therefore obey the laws that
^{e⁸} ^{e¹⁴} ^{e⁸} *donc* ^{e⁵⁹} ^{e⁹} ^{e⁹} ^{e⁹} ^{e⁹}
 have been established. 2°. Young ladies, you seem tired
^a *établir* ^{e²⁷} ^{e¹²¹} *ennuyé*
 with everything that surrounds you; all your hens appear
^{e¹⁰} ^{e⁴⁰} ^{e³⁶} *environner* ^{e¹⁴} *poule* ^{e⁸}
 to me starving. 3°. Except this lady, every body was pleased
^{e¹⁴} ^{e²⁸} ^{e⁵} ^{e⁴³} *excepté* ^{e²⁸} ^{e⁵} ^{e⁴³}
 —every body was pleased, this lady excepted. 4°. How
^{e⁵} ^{e⁴³} ^{e²⁸} ^{e¹²⁸} ^{e⁸⁴}
 often has she not thanked God....., to have made her a
de fois — ^{e⁸⁴} ^{e²} ^{e⁵} ^{e⁵}
 christian.....for having made her an unfortunate queen!
^{e¹} ^{e⁴} ^{e⁵} — ^{e⁵} ^{e²}
 “all the honours which thou asked me for, I instantly³ and
^{e¹⁴} *dignité* f. ^{e⁹} *sur l'heure*
 willingly⁴ granted⁵ them² to thee¹,” the exploits of Alexander
sans peine ^{e⁴⁸} Km.
 have been lauded by some historians—for my part, far from
vantée... *moi* — *loin*
 admiring them, I have always considered them deserving
^{e²⁸} ^{e⁹} ^{e³⁰} *digne*
^a *censure.*
de blame m.

PARTICIPLE PAST FOLLOWED BY AN INFINITIVE.

RULE CXXIX. 1°. When a participle past is followed by an infinitive, it is declinable if the pronoun that precedes be the direct object of the participle, and indeclinable if it be the object of the infinitive, as—

<i>je les ai vus applaudir,</i>	I saw them applauding.
<i>je les ai vu applaudir,</i>	I saw them applauded.

If followed by the participle of a neuter verb, the object must belong to the infinitive, as the neuter verb cannot have an object.

If the infinitive be that of a neuter verb, the object must belong to the participle, for the same reason.

And if the infinitive be followed by an object direct, the preceding object must belong to the participle past: no hesitation can therefore arise, but when the participle and the infinitive are both active, and the direct object precedes.

To distinguish when the pronoun or noun preceding is the object of the participle or of the infinitive, observe the following rules:—

First, If the infinitive imply an action done by the person or thing spoken of as object, the participle is declinable; but if it imply an action done on the person mentioned as object, it is indeclinable, as—

<i>je les ai vus jouer,</i>	I saw them playing.
-----------------------------	---------------------

the act of playing was performed by them, the object and the participle declinable.

<i>je les ai vu gronder,</i>	I saw them scolded.
------------------------------	---------------------

the act of scolding was done on them, *les*, and the participle indeclinable.

Second, If by changing the participle into a participle present, or into the imperfect, preceded by *que*, placing the noun which the object relates after the participle, does not alter the sense, it is evident that the pronoun is the object of the participle, which is therefore declinable, as—

<i>les poètes que j'ai entendus</i>	the poets whom I have heard
<i>déclamer lisent bien,</i>	recite, read well.

If you transpose this phrase according to directions, you will have—

j'ai entendu les poètes déclamer, or qui déclamaient, | I heard the poets reciting, or who were reciting.

Which does not disturb the sense of the phrase, and proves the object to belong to the participle; but if the same transposition is made in this phrase,

les vers que j'ai entendu lire | the verses I have heard read
sont d'un bon auteur, | are from a good author,

we would have, *j'ai entendu les vers lisant, or qui lisaient*, I heard the verses reading, or who were reading, which, not making sense, proves the object to belong to the infinitive *lire*, and the participle to be indeclinable.

Third, If the French infinitive is rendered in English by the participle present, the object is that of the French participle, which is declinable; if it be rendered by the English participle past, the object is that of the infinitive, and the French participle indeclinable, as—

je les ai vus piller, | I saw them robbing.
je les ai vu piller, | I saw them robbed.

EXERCISE CXXIX.

1°. That is a house that I saw building, and that I saw fall
ce e² e⁴ K e² e⁴ K e⁶
into ruins; he has been like a rose scarcely bloomed, which
ene f. e²⁴f. e⁴⁵ *éclore*
the edge of the scythe cuts down, and which falls before
tranchant m. *charrue** f. *couper* e⁶ e⁷
the close of the day which gave it birth; the air that I heard
fin f. e⁶ *voir* K *naitre* *ariette* f. e¹²¹ K
sung is composed by Mlle. Sontag; the actresses I heard
e¹⁵ *de la composition de* *actrices que* e¹²¹ K
sing in Paris are arrived in London; this general gives too
e¹⁵ e² e³ e² ..é...é... e⁴
much liberty to his troops—he has allowed them to ransack
e²³ ...é...é f. e⁴² e¹²¹ *ravager*
all the neighbouring countries; a general ought to be respon-
voisin e¹⁴ ..é...é... e¹⁹
sible for the waste he has allowed his troops² to commit;
..a.. e⁴ *dégât* m. e¹²¹ *par* e⁴² e²³

* Literally a plough, which could not well be used with cuts down.

the flowers which I saw cultivated with success at your father's
^{e⁶³} ^{e⁴} K ^{e²⁰} ^{e³} ^{e⁹} ^{e⁶²} ^{e²}
 the carnations and the tulips; which is the country,
 ^{e¹¹} m. ^{e⁵} f. ^{e¹²}
 adam¹, that gave you birth? let us endeavour to imitate
 ^{e⁶} ^{e¹²⁰} ^{e²⁶} ^{e¹²⁴}
 the virtues we have heard praised.
 ^{e¹} ^{e¹²¹} ^{e²⁰}

RULE CXXX.—50 to 52. 1°. The participle past govern-
 ing an infinitive understood, is indeclinable; because this
 infinitive is its complement, and the pronoun preceding is the
 object of the infinitive, as—

m'a donné la place qu'il a | he gave me the place he was
pu, able.

What was he able to do? to give, *donner*; to give under-
 stood is therefore the object of *pu*, able, and *place* the object
 of *donné*.

2°. As the participle *fait*, done, forms an undivided sense
 with the infinitive that follows it, and as that infinitive is its
 direct object, it is indeclinable, as—

je les ai fait entrer, | I made them enter.

The participles *désiré*, *souhaité*, *du*, *pu*, *voulu*, we observe,
 are not declinable in the same case, as—

les règles qu'elle a voulu ap- | the rules she wished to learn...
prendre.....
elle que vous avez désiré de | her you desired to see.....
voir.....

EXERCISE CXXX.

1°. Your father has obtained all the favours ^Δ he desired; the

^{e²} ^{e⁸⁴} ^{e⁴⁶} *que* ^{e⁵⁹}
 man I ordered to be taken up wished to defend her case—
^{e⁷} ^{e⁵⁹} *arrêter* ^{e³⁷} K *se défendre*

he did not ^Δ succeed—the few ^Δ proofs that ^Δ must
pouvoir ^Δ *y parvenir* ^{e¹¹⁰} *de preuve* f. *on a du*
 have been brought against her were sufficient ^Δ to

lui *donner* *ont suffi pour faire*
 condemn her. 2°. The woman you desired ^Δ to see is dead—
^{e³²} ^{e⁷} ^{e⁵⁹} K *de* ^{e⁴} ^{e¹⁸}

of whom you wished to marry is become insane; the mob
le ^{e³⁷} K ^{e²} ^{e⁵¹} *fou* *populace* f.

that _A was allowed to enter made *a great deal* of noise; by
 on — *faire* κ e^6 e^5 κ e^4 e^5 à
dint of tormenting her, I made her return; you have loved
 force e^{80} e^6 κ e^{14} e^4
 your neighbour if you have rendered _A him all the services
 voisin m. e^{80} α e^{14} m.
 that you *were* able, that you *were* bound; twice in mine ears
 e^{15} κ *devoir* κ e^2 e^3
 they *have been* heard.
se faire κ e^{121}

THE PARTICIPLE PAST FOLLOWED BY AN INFINITIVE AND A
 PREPOSITION.

RULE CXXXI.—50 to 52. 1°. The infinitive coming after a participle past, is sometimes governed by *à*, sometimes by *de*; and in order to distinguish if the preceding direct object belongs to the participle or to the infinitive, place the antecedent of the relative pronoun after the participle; and if the sense remain undisturbed, the relative pronoun is the object of the participle, therefore declinable; but if the sense be altered, it is the object of the infinitive and the participle indeclinable, as—

les soldats qu'on a contraints | the soldiers who were forced to
de marcher se sont mutinés, | march have mutinied.

Soldats, the antecedent of *que*, being placed after the participle *contraints*, will produce *on a contraint les soldats*, &c., and making sense, proves the participle to be declinable, as it was not the marching that was forced, but the soldiers, to which *que* relates.

la règle que j'ai commencé à | the rule which I began to ex-
expliquer..... | plain.....

Which being rendered as above, *j'ai commencé la règle à expliquer*, not making sense, the participle is indeclinable, as the *règle* was not the thing began, but *expliquer* was began, and *que* is the object of *expliquer*, and not of the participle.

Besides the result acquired by this transposition, *qui* or *quoi*, who or what, may be used; if the infinitive be the answer, the object belongs to it; if the antecedent of the relative be the answer, it belongs to the participle, which is accordingly declinable, as in the above examples.

Les règles que j'ai commencé à expliquer—What did I begin? ans. to explain; the infinitive being the answer, the object belongs to it, and the participle is indeclinable.

Les soldats qu'on a contraints de marcher, &c.—Who or what were forced? ans. the soldiers, antecedent of *que*, object of the participle, declinable.

EXERCISE CXXXI.

1°. I offered her my hand, which she refused to accept;
 the fable I had to compose offers a fine moral; the
 fable which you have begun to learn is easy to learn;
 the rewards I have promised to grant shall be delivered;
 the lessons I have given you to study are quite easy;
 the Roman orators which we have begun to read, appeared
 to us replete with sense; the difficulties which we have en-
 deavoured to conquer will soon be overcome; and it is
 with reason that it is said, that those who raise themselves
 against difficulties have half conquered them; everywhere the
 piercing rays of truth will avenge the truth which he has
 neglected to follow.

RULE CXXXII.—50 to 52. 1°. The participle preceded by *en*, without a direct object, is indeclinable; but if accompanied by a direct object preceding, it is declinable: care must be taken therefore to observe when the *que* that precedes is a conjunction or a relative pronoun, as the relative pronoun alone can be the direct object, as—

il m'a promis plus de services | he promised me more favours
qu'il ne m'en a rendu, | than he has done me.

Que, then, is a conjunction, and *rendu* is indeclinable. This occurs in comparative sentences.

<i>quoique mon jardin soit vaste voici les seules pêches que j'en ai recueillies,</i>	though my garden be large, these are the only peaches I have gathered.
---	--

Que, which stands for *pêches*, is a relative, and direct object of *recueillies*, which agrees with it in gender and number.

2°. When *le*, that precedes the participle, relates to an adjective, or part of a sentence, it is indeclinable, and therefore cannot require the participle to agree with it, as—

<i>cette règle n'est pas si difficile que je l'avais imaginé,</i>	this rule is not so difficult as I had imagined.
---	---

L' for *le*, it, relates to the adjective *difficile*, not to *règle*, rule, as I did not imagine the rule, but imagined it was difficult, the participle therefore indeclinable.

<i>voici une nouvelle règle, c'est moi qui l'ai imaginée,</i>	here is a new rule, it is I who invented it.
---	---

L' for *la*, it, relates to *règle*, rule, the thing invented, direct object of *inventée*, declinable.

3°. When the participle past is both preceded and followed by *que*, it is indeclinable, as the relative that precedes is in that case always the object of the verb that follows the conjunction *que*, whilst the phrase that follows the participle is its object, as—

<i>j'ai oublié l'histoire que vous avez désiré que jeracontasse,</i>	I have forgot the history you wished me to relate.
--	---

Try the participle with *quoi*, and you will have the analysis, What did you wish? ans., *que je racontasse*, that I should relate, which is the object of *désiré*, and coming after it, *désiré* is indeclinable; to relate what? ans., *histoire*, history, represented by *que*, which, and object of relate.

4°. When the relative pronoun *que* is the object of a preposition understood, or is a false complement introduced by custom, the participle is indeclinable, as—

<i>les deux heures que j'ai dormi m'ont soulagé la tête, les chaleurs qu'il a fait cette année étaient insupportables,</i>	the two hours I have slept have relieved my head. the heat this summer has been dreadful.
--	--

In the first example *que* does not relate to *heures*, but is governed by *pendant*, and is elliptically used for *pendant la*

quelles. In the second, *que* relates to *chaleurs*, but cannot be the object of *fait*, as we cannot make heat. *Fait* relates to nothing, and is one of those words introduced instead of the proper word, and forms what is called a Gallicism.

EXERCISE CXXXII.

1°. *What a quantity* of letters! you [^] have written a *great many*; Confucius, in speaking of men, has said, "I have seen some who were little calculated for sciences, but I have seen none who were incapable of virtue." 2°. She is still as ill as you left her; triumph! base and cruel men, your victory is greater than you [^] thought it. 3°. The success which you supposed that I should obtain has not answered your expectation. 4°. The ten days which the vintage has lasted have appeared to me very short; the short moments which she has lived have been consecrated to good deeds; the three leagues which we have ran through the fields have given us a good appetite.

OF COLLECTIVES USED WITH THE PARTICIPLE PAST.

RULE CXXXIII.—50 to 52. 1°. When the relative pronoun, direct object of the participle past, has for its antecedent a noun, preceded by a collective word, as *la plupart des*, *l'infinité de*, *la moitié de*, &c., attention must be paid to which of the words the mind principally reverts, as the agreement of the participle is made according as the idea verges on the collective or on the noun, as—

la foule de peuple que j'ai rencontrée, | the crowd of people which I have met.

le vent a brisé la moitié des fleurs que j'avais plantées, | the wind has broken half of the flowers I had planted.

In the first example the idea reverts to *foule*, crowd, and the participle *rencontrée* agrees with it; in the second, it reverts to *fleurs*, flowers, and the participle, *rencontrées*, agrees with them.

LE PEU AND LE TROP USED WITH THE PARTICIPLE.

2°. When *le peu*, in the sense of a small quantity, before a noun, implies a small part or quantity of that noun, the idea being more bent on the noun than on the quantity, the participle is made to agree with the noun, its object; but if *le peu* implies the want, the deficiency of what the noun expresses, and that it denies quantity, the idea becomes more fixed on the want, on the denial, than on the noun, and the participle reverting to *le peu* for its object is indeclinable, as—

le peu d'affection que vous lui avez témoigné lui a ôté le courage, | the little affection you showed him deprived him of courage.

The want of affection is the principal idea, the deficiency being expressed by *le peu*, object of *témoigné*; the participle is indeclinable. *Le peu*, in this case and similar ones, is used as a kind of corrective for *you want, you have none of*, which might be considered too abrupt.

le peu d'affection que vous lui avez témoignée lui a rendu le courage, | the little affection you showed for him restored his courage.

Affection, though in ever so small a quantity, restored his courage. *Affection* is the principal idea, it is the object of *témoignée*, which agrees with it.

Je ne parlerai pas du peu de capacité que j'ai acquise dans les armées,

I did acquire capacity though but little; part. declinable.

Le peu d'explication qu'il m'a donné m'a empêché de comprendre cette règle,

He did not give sufficient explanation, the want of it is the source of complaint; part. indeclinable.

Le peu d'explications qu'il m'a données m'ont fait comprendre cette règle,

He did give me some explanations, and though they were but few, it was these that made me understand the rule; part. declinable.

Le trop de..... may be considered in the same light.

Le trop d'application qu'il a apporté à ses devoirs a nuire à sa santé,

It was not application that destroyed his health, but *le trop*, too much of it, which being the object of *apporté*, the latter is indeclinable.

OBSERVE.—That when *le peu*, or *le trop*, precedes a noun in the plural, the participle generally agrees with the noun.

Le peu de femmes que j'ai rencontrées,

Le trop de livres qu'il a achetés.

EXERCISE CXXXIII.

1°. The crowd of people that I met were going to the ball;
 the quantity of people that you saw at the theatre went
*é f. monde m.* *e⁷⁰ e⁴⁰ rencontrer e¹ e³⁴*
 to see the queen; *there* was at the ball a number of persons I
*é f. monde m.* *e⁴ K e⁴⁴ y était pour*
 would not have received at my house; the wind has destroyed
*é f. monde m.* *e⁴ e² e⁴ e³⁴ quantité f. e¹¹²*
 one-half of the flowers I had planted. 2°. Déjatorus reached
*é f. monde m.* *e¹⁰ e⁶² moi e⁷ briser*
 the port of Pharsalia, a little town, where *there is* nothing to
*é f. monde m.* *e¹⁰ e⁶² moi e⁷ briser*
 near from the few inhabitants which the war has left; the little
*é f. monde m.* *e¹⁰ e⁶² moi e⁷ briser*
 attention which you have paid to this business has made it
*é f. monde m.* *e¹⁰ e⁶² moi e⁷ briser*
 succeed; the little activity which you have showed in this
*é f. monde m.* *e¹⁰ e⁶² moi e⁷ briser*
 business has made it fail; the Numantines who were informed
*é f. monde m.* *e¹⁰ e⁶² moi e⁷ briser*
 of it, and who were apprised of the little caution which they
*é f. monde m.* *e¹⁰ e⁶² moi e⁷ briser*
 had observed, pursued him opportunely.
prendre poursuivre à propos

ON THE PARTICIPLE OF REFLECTIVE VERB.

RULE CXXXIV.—50 to 52. Reflective verbs may be divided into *Essential Reflective Verbs*, which are always used reflectively; *Accidental Reflective Active Verbs*, which are active verbs sometimes used reflectively, and sometimes not; and *Accidental Neuter Verbs*, sometimes used reflectively, and sometimes not. [See list in the Appendix.]

1°. Reflective verbs follow the general rule; if the direct object precede the verb, the participle is declinable; if there be no direct object preceding it, it is indeclinable.

2°. The essential reflective verb being always preceded by the direct object, the participle past is ever declinable—the verb *s'arroger*, to arrogate to one's self, is an exception; for though essentially reflective, its participle past is indeclinable.

3°. The accidental reflective verbs are declinable or indeclinable, according to the place of their object. When the participle is followed by a direct object, it is indeclinable, as—
ces femmes ce sont donné des louanges, | these women have praised themselves.

What did these women give? *louanges*, praises, the direct object coming after the participle, therefore indeclinable.

When the reflective verb is preceded by a direct and indirect object, the participle is declinable, as—

la mort que Lucrèce s'est donnée, | the death Lucretia inflicted on herself.

What did Lucretia give? *mort. f.*, death, with which the participle agrees; to whom did she give it? to herself, *à elle*, expressed by *se*, the indirect object.

To ascertain whether the personal pronoun, as object, that precedes the verb, be the direct or indirect object, try if the preposition *à*, to, be understood before the pronoun; if it be, the object is indirect.

4°. Accidental neuter reflective verbs are never declinable, as neuter verbs can never have a direct object; there are ten—

se plaire, | *se complaire,* | *se sourire,* | *se succéder,* | *se suffire,*
se déplaire, | *se rire,* | *se parler,* | *se nuire,* | *s'entremuire.*

5°. The twelve following accidental reflective verbs become

essentially reflective by the nature of their signification, and their participle is always declinable—

<i>s'attacher à,</i>	<i>s'attendre à,</i>	<i>se douter,</i>	<i>se taire,</i>
<i>s'apercevoir de,</i>	<i>s'aviser de,</i>	<i>se louer se féliciter,</i>	<i>se servir de,</i>
<i>s'attaquer à,</i>	<i>se disputer,</i>	<i>se plaindre de,</i>	<i>se prévaloir de</i>

elle s'était attendue à partir, | she expected to set off.

6°. The participle past of a reflective verb, followed by an infinitive, follows the same rule as the participle of active verbs, as—

<i>nous nous sommes senti cou-</i>	we felt ourselves
<i>doyer,</i>	
<i>nous nous sommes sentis mal-</i>	we felt ourselves
<i>traités par des barbares,</i>	
	ill treated by
	ruffians.

In the first example we did not feel ourselves, but the bowing, which is the object of *senti*, indeclinable. In the second we felt that we, *nous*, ourselves, were ill treated by the ruffians—*nous* is the object of *sentis*, declinable.

EXERCISE CXXXIV.

1°. Two slaters have fallen and broken their necks; my
couvreur e¹¹¹ e⁶ e²³ le cou m.
 country, my family, my friends, appeared to my imagination,
e² e¹³ e⁴ se présenter K esprit m.
 and my affection was aroused. 2°. If the Solons and the
tendresse f. se réveiller K
 Scourges have laughed at you, the new Triptolemuses have
se moquer e⁷⁶ Triptolèmes
 still more laughed at me. 3°. The learned bodies proposed
e¹⁸⁴ e⁷⁶ e¹³ e⁶⁷ se faire K
 and answered objections¹ on the difficulties which they
se répondre K f. difficulté f.
 had raised; the ^A Latin and the Greek are two lan-
faire langue f. Grec e⁸⁰
 guages which were a long time spoken, and which are no
 — *e²⁶ se parler K*
 longer spoken. 4°. They took pleasure in persecuting me;
e¹³⁴ K e⁴³ K e² e⁸⁰
 they laughed at our vain efforts. 5°. Your milliner
se rire K e⁷⁶ m. marchande de mode
 found out her mistake; she went away without answering you,
s'apercevoir K erreur f. e¹⁴ K e⁸ e²⁰

PREVIOUS THE SUBJECT. *NOT KNOWN TO THE* *WOMAN* *THE* *WOMAN* *THE* *WOMAN*
THE *WOMAN* *THE* *WOMAN* *THE* *WOMAN* *THE* *WOMAN*
THE *WOMAN* *THE* *WOMAN* *THE* *WOMAN* *THE* *WOMAN*
THE *WOMAN* *THE* *WOMAN* *THE* *WOMAN* *THE* *WOMAN*
THE *WOMAN* *THE* *WOMAN* *THE* *WOMAN* *THE* *WOMAN*
THE *WOMAN* *THE* *WOMAN* *THE* *WOMAN* *THE* *WOMAN*

OF THE PARTICIPLES OF KNOWN VERBS.

ETRE (XXXV)—51 to 52. 1°. The known verb can never have a direct object: the participle past used with *avoir* is therefore never declinable, as—

Quelle joie a paru dans son visage quand j'y suis apparu in his eyes.
was.

But used with *être*, they are, like the participle of active verbs, made to agree with the subject of the verb, as—

Some sentence there time that, we came to see you.

2°. The participle *coûté*, *cost*, in the sense of the price a thing *cost*, and *valu*, *worth*, the price a thing may be worth, are neuter and indeclinable: but when *coûté* means the trouble and expense a thing has occasioned or required, and when *valu*, *worth*, signifies what a thing has obtained or procured for a person, they are used in an active sense, and declinable, as—

je regrette les sommes que cette I regret the sums this farm
ferme m'a coûté, has cost me.
je regrette les peines que cette I regret the trouble this affair
affaire m'a coûtées, has given me.

Coûté, in the first example, reverting to the price the farm cost, is neuter and indeclinable. *Coûtées*, in the second, alluding to the trouble occasioned, is active and declinable.

Ces bas me content six francs; these stockings cost six francs;
ils ne les auraient pas valu they would not have been
s'ils n'avaient pas été de worth that had they not
soie, been of silk.
voyez les honneurs que ma see the honours my place has
place m'a déjà valu, already procured me.

In the first phrase, *valu* alludes to the cost of the thing; in the second, *valu*s alludes to what the thing has obtained, and the participle is declinable accordingly.

3°. The participle past of unipersonal verbs, or verbs used unipersonally, are indeclinable, as not having an active sense; it cannot have a direct object when used with *avoir*, and when used with *être*, the subject with which it should agree being always *il*, third person sing. mas., the participle takes neither gender nor number,

<i>les gelées qu'il a fait</i>	<i>ont arrêté</i>	the late frosts have stopped
<i>nos travaux,</i>		our labours.
<i>il s'est passé de grands évé-</i>	<i>nements</i>	great events have occurred of
<i>depuis peu,</i>		late.

EXERCISE CXXXV.

1°. All men of law are agreed on this point of right; this house and garden would have suited me well. 2°. My manuscripts, scratched, blotted, and almost unintelligible, *manuscrit m. ratulé barbouillé* show the trouble they have cost me,—it is my coat that attester *peine f. que* has obtained me the honours I have received,—my riches are not worth the trouble they have cost me, and I value little the honours they have gained me; your farm is no longer worth the hundred thousand francs which it has cost; it would have been always worth them if they had taken care of it. 3°. There has happened great events this year in Paris; the heat that has been felt this summer has been insupportable, even to the persons who have lived in southern countries.

OF VERBAL SIGNS.

RULE CXXXVI.—53. *Will* and *shall* are signs of the future: *shall* with the first person, and *will* with the second or third, announce simply a thing yet to be done; and *will* with the first, and *shall* with the second or third, express either a threat, a command, or a promise.

Would and *should* are signs of the conditional: *should* with the first person, and *would* with the second or third, announce simply a thing yet to be done on certain conditions; and *would* with the first, and *should* with the second or third, express either a threat, a command, or a promise.

1°. *May* and *might* are used to denote the possibility, the liberty or permission of doing a thing; if used with a conjunction or with a verb that governs the subjunctive, they are signs of that mood; but if neither the conjunction nor the verb govern the subjunctive, they are expressed by the corresponding tense of the verb *pouvoir*, *may* being rendered by the present, and *might* by the past, as—

<i>vous pouvez</i> (or <i>je vous per-</i> <i>metts d'</i>) <i>aller à la comédie</i>	you may (I permit you to) go to the play.
<i>il m'a dit que je pouvois aller</i> <i>à la comédie (qu'il me per-</i> <i>mettait d'aller),</i>	he told me I might go to the play (that he permitted me to go...).

But if the act be dependent on a condition, the conditional of *pouvoir* is used for *might*—

<i>il m'a dit que je pourrais aller</i> <i>à la comédie si j'apprenais</i> <i>ma leçon,</i>	he told me I might go to the play if I learned my lesson.
---	--

2°. *Can* and *could* denote the power, the capability of doing a thing; as signs of the conditional, they are rendered by the termination of the verb in that mood; but as verbs, *can* is rendered by the present of *pouvoir*, and *could* by the past, as—

<i>je peux marcher cinq milles en</i> <i>une heure,</i>	I can walk five miles in an hour.
<i>je pouvais marcher cinq milles</i> <i>en une heure quand j'étais</i> <i>jeune,</i>	I could walk five miles in an hour when I was young.

But if the act be dependent on a condition, the conditional of *pouvoir* is used for *could*, as—

<i>je pourrais marcher cinq milles</i> <i>en une heure, si j'étais en</i> <i>bonne santé,</i>	I could walk five miles in an hour, if I were in good health.
---	---

Can or *could*, in the sense of to know how to do a thing, is generally rendered by the corresponding tense of *savoir*, as—

<i>je sais faire un chapeau,</i> <i>elle sait lire et écrire,</i>	I can make a hat. she can read and write.
--	--

EXERCISE CXXXVI.

1°. An English poet has said, that the time of adversity
 may be considered as the season of virtue; our master told us
 that we might read Telemachus, if we could understand it;
 our master told us that we might read Telemachus. 2°. Who-
 ever can dress his wound is half cured; a man could live
 with little, if he would; how can the man who forgets the
 past, disdains the present, and runs after futurity, reject
 the hope of eternity; Miss Brunin can sing and dance, but
 cannot read nor write correctly; you may rest assured that
 reactions are the concomitant of sudden revolutions; I could
 never have believed that the waves of a lake could in one
 moment rise with such power.
m. e²³ e³ tant de e¹⁶

WILL, SHOULD, &c. WITH HAVE.

RULE CXXXVII.—54. 1°. Will have, and would have, in

the sense of, to be willing to have, are expressed by the corresponding tense of *vouloir*, and have is omitted, as—

<i>mon frère veut une montre,</i>	my brother will have a watch.
<i>mon frère voulait une montre,</i>	my brother would have a watch.

2°. But if they denote that something will absolutely be possessed, the future or conditional of *avoir* is used—

<i>vous aurez une montre quand</i>	you shall have a watch when
<i>vous aurez appris le Français,</i>	you shall learn French.
<i>vous auriez une montre si vous</i>	you would have a watch if you
<i>vouliez apprendre le Français,</i>	would learn French.

3°. When *will have* or *would have*, in the sense of to choose, to wish, are followed by another verb, the latter is put in the subjunctive, taking the object of have for its subject, as—

<i>je voudrais qu'il aille à Londres,</i>	I would have him go to London,
<i>je veux que vous appreniez le Français,</i>	I will have you learn French.

4°. *Would have*, in the sense of being willing, followed by a participle, is expressed in French by the imperfect or conditional of *avoir*, and the participle of *vouloir*, and the English participle is rendered by the present infinitive in French, as—

<i>si vous aviez voulu apprendre le Français, vous seriez propre à la place,</i>	if you would have learned French, you would be fit for the place.
--	---

5°. When *should have* or *ought to have*, in the sense of duty, is followed by a participle past, they are rendered in French by the conditional of *avoir*, and the participle of *devoir*, and the English participle is rendered by the French infinitive, as—

<i>vous auriez dû payer cet homme,</i>	you should have paid that man.
<i>vous auriez dû m'en parler,</i>	you ought to have spoken to me of it.

Could have, or *might have*, in the sense of capability or power, when followed by a participle, are rendered by the con-

ditional of *avoir*, and the participle of *devoir* with the verbs in the infinitive, as—

<i>vous auriez pu le payer,</i>		you could have paid him.
<i>vous auriez pu m'en parler,</i>		you might have spoken to me of it.

But when *could have* and *might have* imply the want of power, or the incapacity of doing a thing, the imperfect is used, as—

si j'avais pu payer cet homme, | if I could have paid that man.
which plainly implies, I could not pay the man.

EXERCISE CXXXVII.

1°. Captain Fleming will have a larger ship; the French would have a revolution. 2°. Captain Berthoud will have a larger vessel next season; the French would not have succeeded in the late revolution, if the parliament had been assembled. 3°. The miser would have *every body* to be poor, and he is poorer than *any body*; can you not do it to my taste? I will have it blue. 4°. If he would have paid his debts, he would be rich now. 5°. The king should have considered that the culprit was an old soldier, and should have *pardoned* him; you could have written your essay, but you would not; if you had studied the French language when you were in France, you might have learned it in *a short time*.

OF THE VERB *MUST*.

RULE CXXXVIII.—54. 1°. *Must*, in the sense of command or necessity, is rendered in French by the third person

singular of the unipersonal verb *falloir*, to be necessary, of whatever person it may be in English, and the second verb is put in the subjunctive, taking the subject of *must* for its own subject, as—

<i>il faut que j'aille à la bourse,</i>	I must go to the exchange.
<i>il faut que vous alliez à la banque,</i>	you must go to the bank.

2°. When *must have*, or the verb *want*, used in the same sense, has a direct object, its subject becomes the indirect object of the verb *falloir*, governed by the preposition *à*, as—

<i>il me-faut de l'argent,</i>	I must have some money.
<i>il lui faut de l'argent,</i>	he must have some money.
<i>il faut de l'argent à mon frère,</i>	my brother must have money.

3°. But when *must*, or *must have*, does not express command, or denote necessity, it is rendered by *devoir*, as—

<i>vous devez avoir froid,</i>	you must be cold.
<i>il doit avoir eu faim,</i>	he must have been hungry.

4°. When the subject of *must* is an indefinite word, such as *one*, *we*, *people*, &c., it is generally left out, and the second verb put in the present infinitive, as—

<i>il faut aller à l'église,</i>	we must go to church.
----------------------------------	-----------------------

And if the subject of *must* be a noun taken in a general sense, it becomes the object of the second verb, as—

<i>il faut soigner les chevaux,</i>	horses must be taken care of.
-------------------------------------	-------------------------------

But the subjunctive, and not the infinitive, is used when *must* cannot be changed into *it is necessary*, for we can say *it is necessary to take care of horses*; but *children must be prudent*, could not be changed in the same way, we must therefore write,

<i>il faut que les enfants soient prudents,</i>	children must be prudent.
---	---------------------------

5°. *Must be*, in the sense of *ought to be*, is expressed by the present tense of *devoir*, and the infinitive *être*; and *must have been*, by the present of *devoir*, and the infinitive of *avoir*, and the participle past *été*, as—

<i>il doit être midi,</i>	it must be twelve o'clock.
<i>il doit être arrivé,</i>	he must be arrived.
<i>il doit avoir été surpris,</i>	he must have been surprised.

6°. *Should be*, and *ought to be*, in the sense of duty, followed by an infinitive, is rendered by *falloir*; *il faut être utile aux hommes pour être grand à leurs yeux*.—*Massillon*.

EXERCISE CXXXVIII.

1°. If thou wilt correct others, thou must begin by correcting thyself. 2°. I want six hundred ounces of gold—we must have more money next week; we must have our dinner in an hour. 3°. Having lost his suit, he must be poor; he must have been badly advised. 4°. We must not encourage, by alms, the idleness of the poor; we must assist him by occupying him in useful things; fashion must be followed slowly, but it must be followed to avoid ridicule; we must be slower in condemning the opinion of a great man than that of a whole people. 5°. It must be daylight before six; the English must have been much alarmed at the revolution in Paris. 6°. Those who say what ought to be retained, often retain what ought to be said.

OF ADVERBS.

PLACE OF ADVERBS.

RULE CXXXIX.—55, 56. Some adverbs convey a different meaning to a phrase, according as they are placed before or after the verb, as—

<i>j'aime beaucoup à marcher,</i>	I am very fond of walking.
<i>j'aime à marcher beaucoup,</i>	I like to walk a great deal.

<i>on ne doit pas mal parler de qui que ce soit,</i>	we ought not to speak ill of any body.
<i>on ne doit pas parler mal de- vant des hommes instruits,</i>	we ought not to speak incor- rectly before learned men.

But unless the sense or rule requires it, the adverb should be placed close to the verb it serves to modify, as—

<i>elle parle très-bien l'Italien,</i>	she speaks Italian very well.
--	-------------------------------

QUE, COMMENT, COMBIEN—HOW.

1°. *Que*, standing for *combien*, used to denote admiration, and Anglicised by *how*, requires the adjective or adverb that it governs to be placed after the verb, or between the participle and the auxiliary verb, as—

<i>que votre sœur est aimable!</i>	how amiable your sister is!
<i>que cela est bien fait!</i>	how well that is done!

Comment, in the sense of the manner of doing a thing, or the state of being, is expressed by *how*; and *combien*, denoting quantity, is expressed by how many, as—

<i>comment faites-vous du punch?</i>	how do you make punch?
<i>comment cela est-il possible?</i>	how is that possible?
<i>combien d'écoliers avez-vous?</i>	how many scholars have you?

2°. *Combien*, *combien de tems*, *jusqu'à quand*, are all expressed by how long, as—

<i>combien y a-t-il que vous ap- prenez le Français?</i>	how long have you learned French?
<i>combien de tems avez-vous ap- pris le Français,</i>	how long have you learned French?

In the first example, I want to know the period when you first began to learn French, supposing you to be still continuing to learn, as expressed by the present tense *apprenez*.

In the second, I want to know the length of time you have been learning, supposing you to have left off, as expressed by the compound of the present *avez appris*; for if I had wanted to know how long you had been learning, supposing you to be still continuing to learn, I would have said,

<i>combien de tems y a-t-il que vous apprenez le Français?</i>	how long have you been learn- ing French?
--	--

3°. *Combien* and *jusqu'ou* are both expressed by, how far is it from? or how long is it to? as—

<i>combien y a-t-il d'ici à Douvres?</i>	how far is it from here to Dover?
<i>jusqu'ou va cette voiture?</i>	how far does this coach go?

By the first example, I inquire the distance between; by the second, the distance to.

4°. *Davantage* or *plus* are both rendered by more, but are not synonymous. *Davantage* is placed after the word it serves to modify; it is never placed before an adjective, and is never followed by *de* or *que*, and is Anglicised by *the more* when *the more* is not repeated; it is never used for *le plus*, the most.

<i>il sera aimé davantage,</i>	he will be loved the more.
<i>il sera aimé plus que vous,</i>	he will be loved more than you.
<i>Boileau est celui qui me plaît le plus,</i>	Boileau is the one who pleases me the most.

EXERCISE CXXXIX.

1°. How!—Monsieur is a Persian, that is a very extraordinary thing! how can a man be a Persian! how admirable are the works of the Creator! how little is man! 2°. “And I know that you² slandered³ me¹ last year;” “how could I have done it if I was not born?” how many war ships are there in England? how long has your brother lived in Ireland? how long will you remain idle? 3°. How long is it to Christmas? how far are you going to walk this evening? Noël 4°. The earth is great, the sun is more so; Jupiter loved Europa more than Juno; there is nothing assuredly which pleases more than applause, but this adulation does not make one live.

*Dans les champs de l'honneur il nous faut du courage,
Mais je vois qu'en ces lieux il en faut davantage.*

M. RAYNOUARD.

ON PAS AND POINT.

The noun *pas*, a step, and *point*, a point, denote a small extent in space, and were first added to the negative particle *ne*, to express that the negative was not to extend beyond these limits; and in as much as a point denoted a lesser space than a step, so *point* added a closer restriction to the real negative *ne* than *pas*. The constant use of these two words in this capacity have caused them to be wrongly denoted adverbs.

*Allez, sage Ismaël, ne perdez pas de temps,
Suivez de point en point ces ordres importants.*

RACINE. *Athalie*.

*Tu vois depuis quel temps il évite nos pas,
Et cherche tous les lieux où nous ne sommes pas.*

RACINE. *Phedre*.

RULE CXL.—57. *Pas* and *point* are not synonymous, though they are both used to perfect the negation; but *pas* denies with reserve, and *point* without reserve, as—

<i>je ne vais pas à la comédie,</i>	I am not going to the play.
<i>je ne vais point à la comédie,</i>	I do not go to the play.

The first example implies that you do go sometimes, the second that you never go; hence it is that you can use *pas*, with a modification, as—

je ne vais pas à la comédie dans l'été, in the summer.

But as *point* denies absolutely, it would be improperly used with any restriction; *pas*, and not *point*, is therefore used with such restricting words as *si*, *autant*, *plus*, *moins*, and other words of comparison and adjectives of number, as—

<i>il n'a pas plus de quinze ans,</i>	he is not more than fifteen.
<i>elle n'est pas si aimable que</i> <i>sa sœur,</i>	she is not so amiable as her sister.
<i>il n'est pas encore six heures,</i>	it is not six o'clock yet.

Pas is used to express temporary or incidental negatives; *point*, to express what is habitually or permanently negative, as—
il ne lit pas, | he is not reading. || *il ne lit point*, | he never reads.

There is also a difference to be observed between *pas* and *point*, when asking a question, as—

ne vous ai-je point payé? | **have I not paid you?**

implies a doubt in my mind whether I did or did not pay you, and I ask the question to ascertain which is the fact; but *vous ai-je pas payé?* implies that I am sure I paid you; and by using *pas*, the phrase is made to express surprise or reproach that you should have forgotten it.

EXERCISE CXL

1°. Milton did not refuse *to take advantage of* the thoughts
 *e⁴² de employer e⁹⁸*
 or figures of his predecessors; if the "Paradise Lost" is not
image f. prédécesseur paradis perdu
 the best of heroic poems, it is simply because it did not appear
héroïque ...ë...m. seulement e²² e⁸
 the first; Milton was grateful for the encouragement [^] he
sensible e¹⁵m. que
 received, but he *had no ambition* for them; "a fine head!"
e¹⁰ e¹ ne pas ambitionner G — — e⁶ e⁸
 said he, "but brains, none!" *how many* great lords are
e²⁰ e¹ de cervelle f. e¹⁴³ e¹ seigneur
 busts in that respect! you speak French well—have you not
buste m. e² point m. e¹² e¹² e¹²
 been in France; why do you not speak French? have you not
e² e²⁰ e¹² e¹²
 been in France for two years? the greatest point of wisdom is
e² e⁶⁰ e²⁰ dernierm. sagesse f.
[^] to know that we have none; it is not *sufficient* [^] to take long
de e²⁸ e¹⁵ e⁶⁰ de e⁷⁰ grand
 steps—[^] to arrive, we must walk straight; the weather is
e²⁴ pour e¹⁸ e⁸ e¹²¹ droit e⁵
 very damp—are you not cold? have I not lent you one of my
e²⁰ humide e¹²⁶ e⁶⁶ e²²
 works?—*e¹*

RULE CXLI.—1°. *Non*, or *non pas*, is used in answer to a question for *no*, as—

voulez-vous venir? non, Monsieur, | will you come? no, Sir.
prêter lui cent livres? non pas, | lend him one hundred
pounds? no.

2°. *Non* is used in the second part of a sentence in opposition to an affirmation for *not*, as—

<i>qu'il vienne ou non, cela m'est égal,</i>	let him come or not, it is the same thing to me.
<i>voulez-vous finir ou non?</i>	will you have done or not?

3°. *Point* may be used for *non* in answer to a question, or to terminate an elliptical sentence; but *pas* cannot, unless followed by some restricting word, as—

<i>apprenez-vous le Latin? point,</i>	do you learn Latin? no.
<i>jé le croyais mon ami? mais point,</i>	I thought him my friend? but no.
<i>allons nous promener; pas à présent,</i>	let us take a walk; not now.
<i>comment se porte madame votre mère? pas très-bien,</i>	how is your mother? not very well.

4°. *Non plus*, Anglicised by either, neither, not more, no more, is generally accompanied by *pas*, *ni*, &c., but not by *point*.

<i>il ne le veut pas, ni moi non plus,</i>	he will not have it, nor I neither.
--	-------------------------------------

EXERCISE CXLI.

1°. Will there be company to-night at Mr. Salmon's? not that I know of; well! that friend that you were not to see again, he is arrived! no, not yet! 2°. Did the soldiers practise this morning? no, Colonel; yes and no are very easily said, but before we utter them we must reflect. 3°. Has the new piece succeeded? I do not think so; I thought I was dealing with an honest man? but no; are there any provisions? no. 4°. You have no property? I have none either; war does not suit the English more than the French;

you don't flatter yourself to keep your money? I do not flatter
se piquer *garder* *e¹²* *e¹⁴¹*
 myself to keep mine either.
e¹⁴¹

PAS OR POINT NOT USED IN NEGATIVE SENTENCES.

RULE CXLII.—1°. *Cesser*, to cease; *oser*, to dare; *pouvoir*, to be able; and *savoir*, to know; followed by an infinitive, or by *où* or *si*, express their negative with *ne*, without *pas* or *point*, as—

<i>il ne cesse de pleuvoir ici,</i>	it never ceases raining here.
<i>je ne puis vous rendre ce service,</i>	I cannot do you that favour.
<i>je ne sais où il est allé,</i>	I do not know where he has gone.
<i>je ne sais si vous réussirez dans cette entreprise,</i>	I do not know if you will succeed in that affair.
<i>il n'ose se montrer,</i>	he dare not show himself.

Pas or *point* is sometimes added to render the negation more decisive; they are also used with *savoir*, when it has a noun or verb for its complement, and with *cesser* when its complement is modified, as—

<i>il n'ose pas venir,</i>	he dare not come.
<i>je ne puis pas le voir,</i>	I cannot see him.
<i>je ne sais pas ma leçon,</i>	I do not know my lesson.
<i>il ne sais pas parler Français,</i>	he does not know how to speak French.
<i>il ne cesse pas de travailler, avant minuit,</i>	he does not leave off working till twelve o'clock.

Savoir, in the conditional with *ne*, without *pas* or *point*, is always expressive of a negation in the sense of *ne pas pouvoir*, Anglicised by cannot, or not to be able, as—

<i>je ne saurais vous le dire,</i>	I cannot tell it you.
<i>je ne saurais vous payer,</i>	I am not able to pay you.

2°. *Pas*, *point*, or *plus* are omitted when the negation is sufficiently expressed by some other restrictive words, such as *guère*, little; *nul*, none; *rien*, nothing; *aucun*, none; *personne*, nobody; *nullement*, by no means; *jamais*, never; or

is ^{e¹⁰²} better to say nothing than to talk ^{e¹⁰} nonsense; we should
 have few pleasures if we never flattered ourselves. ^{e¹⁶} 4°. What
 is ^{e²⁷} there in this world ^{e¹} but ^{e¹⁵} what ^{e⁵⁴} is the work of God? I see
^{e⁴} no person ^{e⁵⁴} but ^{e⁷} what ^{e²} praises you; you do not say a word ^{e⁴} but
^{e²³} what ^{e³⁰} is applauded. ^{e¹⁰} — ^{e¹⁰⁰} ^{e¹⁴²}
 R *applaudi*

OF THE USE OF NE.

Ne is the only negative word in the French language that can be construed with a verb.

RULE CXLIII—1°. *Ne* is used with the subordinate verb when *que* is preceded by the comparative of inequality, *plus*, *moins*, *mieux*, &c., or by *autre* or *autrement*, as—

<i>elle parle mieux qu'elle n'écrit,</i>	she speaks better than she writes.
<i>vous êtes plus grand que vous n'étiez,</i>	you are taller than you were.
<i>il parle autrement qu'il ne pense,</i>	he speaks otherwise than he thinks.
<i>c'est tout autre chose que je ne croyais,</i>	it is quite different to what I thought.

2°. If the principal verb be either negative or interrogative, the *ne* is omitted before the subordinate verb; but if it be both negative and interrogative, *ne* is used, as—

<i>vous n'êtes pas plus riche que vous étiez,</i>	you are not richer than you were.
<i>êtes-vous aussi pauvre que vous étiez?</i>	are you as poor as you were?
<i>n'êtes-vous pas plus riche que vous n'étiez?</i>	are you not richer than you were?

OBSERVE.—*Ne* is omitted when a conjunction precedes the second verb, except when the first verb is negative and interrogative, as—

<i>je me porte mieux que quand j'étais en France,</i>	I am better than when I was in France.
---	--

3°. *Ne* is used after *à moins que*, *excepté que*, *de crainte que*, *de peur que*, when not used with *de*, and after *il ne tient pas à*, *il ne tient qu'à*, *il ne tient à rien*, when these last expressions imply an obstacle, an act of preventing or hindering, as—

<i>je n'irai pas à moins que vous</i>	I will not go unless you come
<i>ne veniez avec moi,</i>	with me.
<i>il ne tient pas à moi que vous</i>	I do not prevent you from
<i>ne réussissiez,</i>	succeeding.

But if *tenir* is used without a negation or an interrogation, or employed in the sense of having power, or of depending, the *ne* is omitted before the second verb, as—

<i>il tient à moi seul que vous</i>	your obtaining that favour de-
<i>obteniez cette faveur,</i>	pends on me alone.

EXERCISE CXLIII.

1°. Divine providence treats us better than we ^{e¹¹¹} deserve;
f. ^{e²⁴} ^{ne} ^{e²⁰}
 the morals of the present day are different than they ^{e⁴⁷} were
^{e⁴⁷} aujourd'hui autre ne
 in latter ages; how many people speak otherwise than they
^{e¹} dernier siècle m. que de ^{e²⁵} ^{e¹²} autrement
 think! 2°. The bay of Ténédos is not less dangerous now
^{e¹⁷} rade f. ^{e²⁶} ^{e⁴} ^{e¹¹²}
 than it ^{e¹⁷} was at the time of Virgil; is not this young man
^{e²⁶} le ^{e²⁶}e ^{e²⁰} ^{e¹}
 quite different than he was in his youth? Sire, I think that
 tout autre enfance f ^{e¹⁷}
 one cannot lose a kingdom more cheerfully than you do.
^{e⁵⁵} ^{e¹⁵} ^{e²³} ^{e¹¹¹} gaiement ^{e¹³}
 3°. ^{e¹} what could prevent that all men should live in ^{e¹}
^{e¹} à ^{e⁴¹} tiendrait-il peuple ^{e²} v une
 perfect intercourse? it depends on me alone that you should
^{e⁴⁹} intelligence f. tenir ^{e⁷} ^{e¹¹²}
 obtain that favour; nobody can know thoroughly his language
^{e²⁴} R ^{e⁴⁶} ^{e¹⁰⁶} ^{e¹⁵} ^{e²⁸} à fond ^{e²⁰}
 unless ^{e¹} he has studied it comparatively; it did not depend
 à moins que ^{e⁵⁰} Tment ^{e⁵} ^{e¹⁴⁸}
 on me that you should be happy.
^{e⁷} s ^{e¹³}

RULE CXLIV.—1°. *Ne* is used when *rien* is understood before *que*, when *si* or *que* stands for *à moins que*, unless.

When *que* stands for *pourquoi*, why, at the beginning of a phrase expressive of interrogation or exclamation, or when it stands for any other expression requiring *ne*, as—

<i>il ne fait que des sottises,</i>	he does nothing but blunders.
<i>si l'on ne vit content, on ne possède rien,</i>	unless we are happy, our wealth is nothing.
<i>que n'êtes-vous arrivé plutôt!</i>	why did you not come sooner!
<i>entrez vite, qu'il ne vous voie,</i>	come in quickly, for fear he should see you.

2°. *Ne* is used when two negative propositions are united by *ni*, or when *ni* is repeated, as—

<i>il ne mange ni ne boit,</i>	he neither eats nor drinks.
<i>ni les biens ni les honneurs ne valent la santé,</i>	neither wealth nor honours are equivalent to health.

3°. But when there is but one negative proposition, and *ni* is used to unite two members of it, *pas* or *point* may be used, as—

<i>je n'aime pas à voir des hommes emprisonnés pour dettes, ni pendus pour vol,</i>	I do not like to see men imprisoned for debt, nor hanged for theft.
---	---

4°. *Depuis que*, since, or *que* after *il y a*, standing for *depuis que*, and preceded by any word expressive of time, require *ne* with the verb in the compound of the present, as—

<i>vous êtes grandi depuis que je ne vous ai vu,</i>	you are grown since I saw you.
<i>il y a six mois que je ne lui ai parlé,</i>	it is six months since I have spoken to him.

If the first verb be negative, *ne* is suppressed in the second, as—

<i>vous n'êtes pas grandi depuis que je vous ai vu,</i>	you are not grown taller since I saw you.
---	---

And if we wish by the verb preceding *depuis que*, or its equivalent *que*, to express an act that is continuing, and which was begun when the act expressed by the second was suspended, the subordinate verb requires *ne* and *pas*, and is put in the present tense, as—

<i>il boude depuis que je ne lui parle pas,</i>	he sulks ever since I have not spoken to him.
<i>il y a six mois que je ne lui parle pas,</i>	it is six months since I have spoken to him.

5°. OBSERVE.—That if any of the subordinate verbs admitting *ne* in the cases previously mentioned, are preceded by any word requiring *de*, and consequently the present infinitive, *ne* is omitted, as—

<i>vous ferez mieux de danser</i>	you had better dance than play
<i>que de jouer aux cartes,</i>	at cards.
<i>on n'agit point ainsi à moins</i>	one would not act thus unless
<i>d'être fou,</i>	they were mad.

EXERCISE CXLIV.

1°. He asks for nothing but *what is necessary*; I cannot
^{e⁹} — — — — ^{e⁶⁷} art. ^{e¹} ^{e¹⁵}
 esteem a man who does nothing but laugh; I will not go to
estimer ^{e¹} ^{e¹³} — — — — ^{e⁶⁷} ^{e⁴³} ^{e¹}
 see her unless she invites me; why does he not come when
^{e⁴} ^{que} ^{e¹⁰⁴} ^{e³⁶} ^{e¹⁶} ^{e³}
 honour calls him? 2°. A *silly man* neither enters, nor goes
^{e²⁸} ^{e¹} ^{sot} ^{e⁴²} ^{e⁶} ^{e³}
 out, nor sits, nor rises, nor stands, like a man
^{e²} ^{e³} ^{e³⁶} ^{e³} *se lever* ^{e³} *être sur ses jambes* ^{e²⁴} ^{e¹}
 of sense; it is advantageous to be neither poor nor rich.
^{e²} ^{avantageux} ^{de} ^{e³⁰} ^{e²³} ^{e³}
 3°. Gold nor ivory do not shine in his house. 4°. Since
^{e¹} ^{e³} *ivoire m.* *briller* ^{e²} ^{e⁷⁰} ^{que}
 we do not see one another, we have ceased all communication;
^{e¹⁰⁴} ^{e⁴⁵} *relation f.*
 it is three days since those unfortunates have ate anything;
^{e⁴} ^{e⁶} ^{que} ^{e⁵} ^{e¹} — — — —
 it is a year since I heard speak of him. 5°. He would do
^{e⁴} ^{e²⁹} ^{e¹⁴⁴} ^{e³³} ^{e¹²} ^{e¹³}
 better ^{de} not to drink than to preach temperance—we do
^{e³⁶} ^{de} ^{e¹} ^{e¹²³} *prêcher*é.....f. ^{e¹⁵} ^{e¹³}
 more evil by bad example than we do ^{de} good by persuasion.
^{e⁵} ^{e⁹}m. ^{e⁵} ^{e¹³} ^{de} ^{e¹⁹}f.

RULE CXLV.—1°. *Prendre garde*, in the sense of being cautious, to prevent a thing from happening, and *empêcher*, to prevent, to keep from, require *ne* before the verb, as—

<i>prenez garde qu'il ne vous</i>	take care he does not deceive
<i>trompe,</i>	you.
<i>j'empêcherai qu'il ne vous</i>	I will prevent him deceiving
<i>trompe,</i>	you.

When *prendre garde* is used in the sense of observing, remarking, noticing, or paying attention to, the subordinate verb

is either positive or negative, according to what we wish to express, as—

<i>prenez garde que l'on vous dit la vérité,</i>	observe that they are speaking the truth.
<i>ne prenez pas garde à ce qu'il vous dit,</i>	pay no attention to what he says.
<i>vous prendrez garde que je ne suis pas riche,</i>	you will observe that I am not rich.

2°. The impersonal verb *s'en falloir*, in the sense of a want or privation, used negatively, or accompanied by *peu*, *moins*, *guère*, or other words that impart a negative sense, require *ne* before the subordinate verb in the subjunctive, as—

<i>il ne s'en faut pas de beaucoup que la somme entière n'y soit,</i>	there was very little wanting to complete the sum.
<i>peu s'en fallut qu'elle n'est épousé son cousin,</i>	she was just on the point of marrying her cousin.

OBSERVE.—*Beaucoup*, when speaking of deficiency in quantity, is preceded by *de*; but when speaking of the difference between persons or things, the *de* is omitted.

EXERCISE CXLV.

1°. Take care ^{e^s} ^{e¹²¹} ^{que} ^{e⁴⁴} ^{e⁹} ^{e¹⁰³} ^{e^s} he does not expose a life so dear; observe that the author does not say what you attribute to *prendre garde* ^{e⁷⁰} ^{e¹⁰} ^{e¹⁵} *prêter* him; take care at that clause of your contract; we will take ^{e^s} ^{e¹²¹}f. *contrat m.* ^{e^s} great care that they shall not abuse ^{e¹³¹} ^{e²⁰} ^{e¹⁰⁰} *R de excès* ^{e⁸⁰} our excess of confidence; *bien* ^{e¹³¹} ^{e²⁰} ^{e¹⁰⁰} *R de excès* ^{e⁸⁰} I have taken care that he should not elude the question pro- ^{e^s} ^{e¹²¹} *éluder*f. posed. 2°. So far be it that a christian ought to hate hisé.. *tant s'en faut* ^{e¹} ^{e¹⁹} ^{e⁶⁵} neighbour—that, on the contrary, he ought to assist him, and ^{e¹³⁰} ^{au contraire} ^{e¹⁹} ^{e¹⁶} do good even to his enemies; *there was not* ^{e¹³} ^{e¹⁹} ^{e¹³} ^{e²³} *de* ^{e¹} *s'en falloir* ^H to make ^{e¹³} ^{e¹⁹} ^{e¹³} ^{e²³} your sheep ^{e¹³} ^{e¹⁹} ^{e¹³} ^{e²³} as numerous as his; — *que vos mouton m. fussent nombreux* ^{e¹³} ^{e¹⁹} ^{e¹³} ^{e²³} very little, gentlemen, would make ^{e¹³} ^{e¹⁹} ^{e¹³} ^{e²³} me interrupt *peu s'en falloir* ^R ^{e³⁴} — — *que je* ^{e⁴⁴}

my discourse here—a discourse that nothing binds nor
^{e¹¹⁶} ^{e¹¹⁶} ^{e¹²} ^{e²⁷} ^{e¹}
 clogs, proceeds and flows of itself, and little would make
embarrasser marcher ^{e¹²⁶} *lui-même s'en falloir* ^{e¹} *peu*
 it sometimes ^{e⁴⁷} [^] [^] proceed faster than thoughts.
que il aller ^{e¹²⁶} *vite* ^{e²⁶}

*Prends garde que jamais l'astre qui nous éclaire,
 Ne te vois en ces lieux mettre un pied téméraire.*

RULE CXLVI.—1°. The verbs *craindre*, to fear; *avoir peur*, to be afraid; *appréhender*, to dread; *trembler*, to tremble lest; *de peur que*, *de crainte que*, for fear that, require *ne* before the next verb in the subjunctive; if, by these expressions of dread or fear, we intend to imply that we wish the circumstance expressed by the verb not to take place, as—

<i>je crains qu'il ne me voie,</i>	I fear he will see you.
<i>courez de peur qu'il ne vous</i>	run, for fear he should see
<i>voie,</i>	you.

In the first example, I express, by my fear of being seen, a wish, a desire not to be seen, and, by the second, a wish that he should not see you; but if no such wish exists, and if, on the contrary, I want to express a hope, a desire that the thing may happen, I add a negative to the English, and *pas*, *point*, or *plus* to the French, as—

<i>je crains qu'il ne me voie pas,</i>	I am afraid he does not see me.
<i>courez de peur qu'il ne vous</i>	run, for fear he should not see
<i>voie pas,</i>	you.

These last examples express an idea contrary to the preceding, as by the latter I wish him to see me, and to see you, expressed by the fear that he will not do so.

When the first verb is negative or interrogative, *ne* is omitted in the second, the phrase then implying indifference; but if they are both negative and interrogative, then *ne* is used, as—

<i>je ne crains pas qu'il me voie,</i>	I am not afraid of his seeing me.
<i>craignez-vous qu'il vous voie?</i>	are you afraid of his seeing you?
<i>ne craignez-vous pas qu'il ne</i>	are you not afraid of his see-
<i>vous voie?</i>	ing you?

2°. *Nier*, *douter*, *désespérer*, *empêcher*, *disconvenir*, and

contester, used negatively or interrogatively, require *ne* before the subordinate verb in the subjunctive, as—

<i>je ne doute pas que vous ne</i>	I do not doubt but that you
<i>soyez très-habile,</i>	' are very clever.
<i>peut-on nier que la santé ne</i>	can any one deny but that
<i>soit préférable aux richesses?</i>	health is preferable to riches?

3°. OBSERVE.—If any of these verbs are positive, or if the verb *nier* is equivalent to agreeing to, or acknowledging a thing, *ne* is omitted before the second verb, as—

<i>je désespère qu'il puisse venir,</i>	I despair of his coming.
<i>j'en nie pas que je l'aime,</i>	I do not deny I love her.

Douter does not take *ne* when it is interrogative, unless it is to infer a negation, as—

<i>doutez-vous que votre frère soit</i>	do you doubt that your bro-
<i>malade?</i>	ther is ill?
<i>qui doute que votre frère ne soit</i>	who doubts that your brother
<i>malade?</i>	is ill?

EXERCISE CXLVI.

1°. You are afraid ^A I should die with joy—but *are* you
avoir peur que ^{e¹⁸ e¹⁰ e⁸⁵ e¹}
 not also afraid that I should die with the displeasure of
^{e²³ e⁴⁵} ^{e¹⁸ e¹⁰} — *déplaisir* m.
 believing the contrary? it is always to be feared that
^{e¹⁵} *contraire* m. ^{e²⁶} *doit* ^{e⁹} ^{e⁸¹}
 those who have no principle of religion fall into ^A im-
^{e¹²} ^{e³⁵}f. ^{e⁶} ^{e⁸} ^{art.}
proper conduct; he has informed against you, for fear you
travers m. *dénoncer* ^{e⁴ e⁴⁸}
 should not be punished; he has justified you, for fear you
^{e³²} *justifier* ^{e⁴ e⁴⁸}
 should be punished; I trembled, lest they should observe
^{e³²} ^{e⁴⁰} & *que* ^{e¹¹²} *s'appercevoir de* ^A
 my absence; he trembled, lest they would not receive him.
f. ^{e⁴⁰} & ^{e¹⁴⁸} ^{e²⁰} ^{e¹⁷} s. ^{e¹⁰}
 2°. No natural philosopher doubts now but that the sea has
^{e²⁶} *physicien* ^{e⁷⁷} ^{e¹¹²} *que* ^{e⁴} *être*
 covered a great part of the inhabited earth; they did not
couvrir ^{e¹} *partie* f. *habité* ^{e¹} ^{e²⁰}
 despair but that you would become learned; I doubt not
désespérer ^{e¹⁴⁸} ^{e⁵¹} ^{e¹³} ^{e⁷¹}

but ^{e¹⁴⁶} that we would be more peaceable with less laws. 3°. Do
 you ^{e⁷⁷} doubt that that ^{e⁸} history, which is so well ^{e²⁶} written, ^{e⁹} will
 reach ^{e⁸} to posterity? ^{e¹²}
parvenir postérité f. ^{e¹}

*Le soleil, étonné de tant d'effets divers,
 Eut peur de ce voir inutile,
 Et qu'un autre que lui n'éclairât l'univers.*
 RACINE.

OF THE PREPOSITIONS *DE* AND *À*.

RULE CXLVII.—1°. *Of* or *from*, and *to* and *at*, generally denote the same relation in French as in English, as—

j'ai voyagé d'un bout de la France à l'autre, | I have travelled from one end of France to the other.

2°. When *from*, followed by *to*, denotes duration of time or distance, in the sense of beginning to end, or to point out the distance from one extreme to another, they are rendered by *depuis* and *jusqu'à*, as—

il est resté depuis lundi jusqu'à mercredi, | he remained from Monday to Wednesday.

But if the sentence begins by *de*, *to* in the second part must be rendered by *à*, as—

j'irai de Paris à Londres, | I will go from Paris to London.

From and *to*, governing the same noun repeated, are rendered by *de* and *en*, as—

il croît de jour en jour, | he grows from day to day.
il va de province en province, | he goes from province to province.

3°. *To*, preceded by *from* in the first part, is rendered by *en*, when it marks the progress of anything, particularly from place to place, from country to country, &c., except proper names of towns, cities, &c., as—

les affaires vont de mal en pis, | things are going from bad to worse.

<i>il alla de France en Russie,</i>	he went from France to Russia.
<i>je vais de Paris à Londres,</i>	I am going from Paris to London.

EXERCISE CXLVII.

1°. "Tell me," said Tibérius Cracchus to the nobles, "who is best, a citizen or a perpetual slave, a soldier, or a useless man in war?" 2°. I will wait for you to-morrow, from five o'clock until six; "from sorrow to pleasures we pass by turns;" "all changes, 'tis the law, night succeeds to day;" lightnings cleft the clouds from one to another pole; those poor Irish fendre & nue f. art. art. autre ..d..m. have been from farm to farm until they found work. 3°. I came from New York to England in twelve days; they go from Edinburgh to London, by sea, in forty-eight hours; the wind drives impetuously the flame from tent to tent; France extends from the Rhine to the ocean.

s'étendre ...é...m.

OF THE DIFFERENT RELATIONS OF SEVERAL FRENCH PREPOSITIONS.

 1.—*A travers, au travers*, through.

RULE CXLVIII.—*A travers* means a free opening, a thoroughfare, without any obstacle, and *au travers* signifies a passage made, or forced, by overcoming some difficulty, as—

<i>il alla à travers les bois,</i>	he went through the woods.
<i>il se fit jour au travers l'ennemi (or de l'ennemi).</i>	he made way through the enemy.

 2.—*Autour, Alentour*, round, around.

Autour is used to point out what surrounds, or an attendance arising from attachment or attention, and *alentour* is an adverb signifying vicinity, as—

<i>j'ai un verger autour de ma maison,</i>	I have an orchard round my house.
<i>elle est toujours autour de sa mère,</i>	she is always round her mother.
<i>écoutez les échos d'alentour,</i>	listen to the surrounding echoes.

3.—*Avant, devant*, before.

Avant points out the order of time, a thing done before another; *devant* points out the order of situation, one thing standing before another, as—

<i>il est arrivé avant moi,</i>	he is arrived before me.
<i>ne vous placez pas devant moi,</i>	do not place yourself before me.

4.—*Sans...ni, sans...et*, without.

Sans is repeated before its complement when followed by *et*, but not when followed by *ni*, as—

<i>sans grandeur ni courage on n'est point un héros,</i>	without greatness or courage, one cannot be a hero.
--	---

But we would recommend the use of *et*, and the repetition of *sans* in preference to *ni*; *sans grandeur et sans courage*, &c., without greatness and without courage, &c.

5.—*Durant, pendant*, during.

Durant expresses a duration, something that continues during the whole space of time mentioned; *pendant* a determinate time, but not continuation, something that occurs during a space of time, but not during the whole time mentioned, or a short space of time, as—

<i>il demeure à Paris durant l'hiver,</i>	he lives in Paris during winter.
<i>il va à Paris pendant l'hiver,</i>	he goes to Paris during winter.
<i>ils se sont battus pendant deux jours,</i>	they fought for two days.

In the first example, it is implied that he makes Paris his residence during the whole winter; in the second, that the visit is accidental during that season.

For stands for other words, to denote different durations of time; when it can be rendered by *since*, denoting the whole space of a period, it is rendered by *depuis*; when it denotes duration, and can be rendered by *during*, it is expressed by *pendant* or *durant*; and when it denotes the lasting of any thing to the end of a period, it is expressed by *pour*, as—

<i>Il apprend le Français depuis deux ans,</i>	he has been learning French for two years.
<i>Il est resté ici pendant trois heures,</i>	he remained here for three hours.
<i>J'ai de l'argent pour trois mois,</i>	I have money for three months.

EXERCISE CXLVIII.

1°. The light that passes into the body of a cloud passes
jour m. e⁶¹ e⁶ e⁶⁷ e⁷⁶ e⁶¹
 through; what ^Δ is more odious than the sight of every thing
e⁴¹ de — h eux e¹¹³ e²⁰ e¹⁵
 through a microscope? 2°. She is so charitable that she is
m.
 always attending ^Δ the sick; “with the brightness of her
e⁹ de malade pl. e¹⁰ éclat m.
 eyes, the shepherds around,” “all hard, all cold as they may be,
e²³ berger dur e⁸⁷ F
 were touched with love.” 3°. “The law in every state ought
H toucher e¹⁰ e¹⁹ e⁹ e²⁰ e³ e¹⁹
 to be universal;” “mortals, whoever they may be, are equal
e¹¹⁶ mortel quelque égal
 before it;” we must pay our debts, the salaries of artisans,
e⁸ e¹⁹ e⁵⁴ salaire m.
 the wages of servants, before ^Δ we give ought in charity.
gages e¹ que de — faire desé pl.
 4°. Without ^Δ fear and without ^Δ pity, there is no tragedy.
art. e⁹⁸ art. e¹³ e⁴ e¹¹⁹
 “I received and see the light which I breathe, without
e¹⁰ e⁴ e¹⁴⁸ respirer
 either father or mother having deigned to smile² on me¹.
que e³ ni e⁶ être R daigner sourire —
 5°. The enemies went into quarters during the campaign;
e³³ se cantonner K campagne f.
 the steam boat waited for you for half² an¹ hour.
e⁷ e¹ e⁶¹ K — e¹⁰ f.

1^o.—CHEZ, AT, TO, HOME, AMONG, &c.

RULE CXLIX.—*Chez* is a preposition, particularly adapted to express a domicile, or a residence with, or customs amongst people or tribes.

<i>il est retourné chez lui,</i>	he is returned home.
<i>c'est la coutume chez les Tartares,</i>	it is the custom among the Tartars.

The possessive pronoun, used in English with the word *house*, is expressed in French by the personal pronoun of the same person and number, and the word *house* is omitted; the same form is used when a noun is employed instead of a pronoun, as—

<i>venez chez moi, chez lui, chez elle,</i>	come to my, to his, to her house.
<i>je viens de chez lui,</i>	I come from his house.
<i>j'irai chez votre sœur,</i>	I will go to your sister's.

But if two residences are pointed out, and united by a conjunction, the relative possessive is used in the second part in English, and in French the *chez* is repeated, as—

j'irai chez elle ou chez vous, | I will go to her house or yours.

At home is expressed either by *chez* with the personal pronoun, or by *à la maison*, as—

<i>il n'est pas chez lui—à la maison—au logis,</i>	he is not at home.
--	--------------------

2^o.—DE CHEZ—DE LA PART—FROM.

De la part implies the coming or going from a person being deputed by any person; *de chez*, coming or going from a person's house, as—

<i>je vous apporte ce livre de la part de M. Dutour,</i>	I have brought you this book from M. Dutour.
<i>je vous apporte ce livre de chez le libraire,</i>	I have brought you this book from the bookseller's.

3^o.—CHEZ—SUR, ON OR UPON.

On or *upon* are literally rendered by *sur*; but when preceded by the verb *to call*, expressive of a visit, it is rendered by *chez*, as—

il a passé chez vous hier, | he called on you yesterday.

EXERCISE CXLIX.

1°. At whatever hour ^{e¹⁰¹} it may be, you find him ^{e¹⁰} at ^{e¹³} ^R ^{e⁹¹} ^{e¹⁰}
^{e¹} ^{e¹⁰} ^{e¹³} ^{e¹⁰}
 e, writing or meditating; I have found among the
^{e¹} ^{e¹⁰}
 ks less laws and more justice than among ourselves;
^{e²¹} ^ef. ^{e⁷⁹}
 ng women the austerity of morals is a garb and deception
^{e⁷}éf. ^{e¹⁷} ^{e¹⁰} ^{e¹⁰} ^{e¹⁰}
 ch adds to their beauty—with you, foolish or wicked, envy
^{e¹⁰} ^e ^{e¹⁰} ^{e¹⁰} ^{e¹⁰} ^{e¹⁰} ^{e¹⁰}
 ses for emulation, jealousy for love, and egotism for
^{e¹} ^{e¹⁰}f. ^{e¹³} ^{e¹⁰} ^{e¹⁰} ^{e¹⁰} ^{e¹⁰}
 osophy. 2°. I met Miss Baird coming from her uncle's
^{e¹⁰} ^{e¹³} ^{e¹⁰} ^{e¹⁰} ^{e¹⁰}
 morning before breakfast; I come from General Dumont
^{e²³} ^{e⁷} ^{e¹⁰} ^{e¹⁰}
 to announce to you the taking of Algiers. 3°. You
^{e¹⁰} ^{e¹⁰} ^{e¹⁰} ^{e¹⁰} ^{e¹⁰} ^{e¹⁰} ^{e¹⁰}
 uld always call on those friends whom you wish to retain,
^{e⁹} ^{e²³} ^{e⁴} ^{e¹⁰} ^{e¹⁰} ^{e¹⁰} ^{e¹⁰}
 n you have been absent from home for some time.
 ^{e¹¹²} ^{e¹⁰} ^{e¹⁰}

EN AND DANS.

RULE CL.—1°. *En* and *dans* are not synonymous; *dans* points out a definite and particular sense; it is used to express that one thing is within another, contained in it, within it; its literal translation is *in*. *En* points a general and indefinite sense: it serves to express manner, way, habit; it is the only position that governs the participle present, and is often represented in English by other words, as—

<i>Il est dans sa chambre,</i>		he is in his room.
<i>Il est en chambre garnie,</i>		he is in lodgings.

In the first example, *chambre* is defined by the possessive noun *sa*, his, as a particular room; hence *dans* is used: in the second, *chambre garnie*, lodgings, is mentioned as a general term, pointing out the manner in which he lives; hence *en* used.

OBSERVE.—Not to mistake the preposition *en*, in, with the relative pronoun *en*, of him, of her, &c.

When a noun is definite of itself, or restricted by an adjective, *dans* is preferred to *en*, as also before any noun requiring the article, possessive or demonstrative pronouns, and before proper names, as—

<i>on trouve des perles dans les</i>	pearls are found in oysters.
<i>huitres,</i>	
<i>j'ai lu cela dans Racine,</i>	I read that in Racine.

2°. *Dans* is used to express the time when a thing is to be done or begun; *en* to mark the length of time, as—

je ferai mon voyage dans deux mois,

means I will begin my journey in or after two months, but by saying, *en deux mois*, I mean to say that my journey will continue two months.

3°. In, or into, are expressed by *à*, speaking of towns and places in which a person resides, or where anything has happened, as—

<i>le roi est à Windsor,</i>	the king is at Windsor.
<i>il est mort à Paris,</i>	he died in Paris.

Before the names of countries coming after verbs, expressing residence or motion, *in* is expressed by *en*; but if they are restricted by an attribute, *dans* is used, or if they require the article, as occurs with countries out of Europe, *à* is used.

<i>il demeure en France,</i>	he lives in France.
<i>il est allé en Amérique,</i>	he is gone to America.
<i>il est allé dans l'Amérique</i> <i>méridionale,</i>	he is gone to South America.

Nothing but experience can make the learner familiar with the different relations expressed by *en* and *dans*, for we say,

votre frère est allé à la prison—en prison—dans la prison.

The first implies that your brother is gone to the prison on a visit or business; the second, that he is imprisoned; the third, that he is within the prison, but no more. We also say,

votre frère est à la campagne—en campagne—dans la campagne.

The first implies that your brother is out of town for pleasure;
 the second, that he is out either on business or military duty;
 the third, that he is in the fields, in the country.

<i>il est à la ville,</i>	he is (dwells) in the town.
<i>il est en ville,</i>	he is not at home.
<i>il est dans la ville,</i>	he is in the town.

EXERCISE CL.

1°. They found his body in the ashes; the house is reduced
 to ashes; he has been put in the prison of Rouane; they have
 been put in prison; I have put every thing in good order; I
 have put every thing in the good order in which you see them;
 Conscience warns us as a friend, before he punishes us
 as a judge. 2°. The St. James arrived from Jamaica in five
 weeks; the St. James is expected from Jamaica in five
 weeks. 3°. I was in England, in the county of Middlesex;
 his ship is at sea since a fortnight; I heard he had
 been lost at sea in a storm—no, but they were obliged to
 throw all the cargo into the sea; he used to live in Paris, but
 he died at Amiens.

SUR—ON, UPON.

RULE CLI.—1°. *On* and *upon* are rendered by *sur*; but when they imply domicile, by *chez*, see Rule CXLIX, Part 3.

When speaking of playing on an instrument, it is expressed by *de*.

je ne joue pas du violon, | I do not play on the violin.

In such expressions as, *on the right, on the left, on foot.*

on horseback, on board, on shore, it is expressed by *à*; but in the case of an appointment of a day or date, the equivalent of *on* is omitted in French, as—

<i>il voyage à cheval,</i>	he travels on horseback.
<i>n'allez pas à gauche,</i>	don't go to the left.
<i>il est venu le 10 May,</i>	he came on the 10th May.
<i>il faut me payer Lundi.</i>	you must pay me on Monday.

OBSERVE —That these prepositions are often used as particles forming an adjunct to the English verb, expressed in French by one verb, as—

<i>mettez votre habit,</i>	put on your hat.
<i>otez votre chapeau,</i>	take off your hat.

2°. *Over*, in the sense of *above* or *upon*, is expressed by *sur*, as—

<i>les maux qui pendent sur nos têtes,</i>	the ills which hang over us.
<i>mettez cette toile sur mes effets,</i>	put this cloth over my luggage.

When used to express a passage across anything offering an impediment, it is expressed by *par dessus*, as—

<i>il sauta par dessus le fossé,</i>	he jumped over the ditch.
<i>il passa par dessus les Alpes,</i>	he crossed over the Alps.

Over, expressive of what is past, is rendered in French by such words as correspond to the meaning intended to be expressed; speaking of things that are ended and can begin again, *over* is used, and rendered in French by *finir*, as—

<i>à quelle heure finira le spectacle?</i>	what time will the play be over?
--	----------------------------------

But we could not say, *my house is over*, because it is not to begin again; but we would say,

<i>ma maison est finie,</i>	my house is finished.
-----------------------------	-----------------------

In the sense of passed, we say,

<i>le danger est passé,</i>	the danger is over.
-----------------------------	---------------------

EXERCISE CLI.

- 1°. Do not depend on a friend who is going to get married;
plus e³⁰ e⁰⁰ e⁴ se marier

immediately they assemble workmen [▲] to work upon iron,
aussitôt ^{e²⁰} *assembler* *ouvrier* *pour* ^{e⁶⁰} ^{e¹⁹}
 upon steel, and upon brass; he called on all his friends *before*
^{e⁶} ^{airain} m. ^{e¹⁴} ^{e⁴} *pour*
sa *departure*; the troops went all on board on the 12th of
rendre congé ^{e⁴³} ^{e¹} H ^{e¹⁴} ^{e²¹}
 June, and were put on shore again on the 14th of the same
^{e⁷⁰} H *remettre* ^{e⁶⁵} ^{e²⁰}
 month; my dear Caroline, you play admirably well on the
^{e⁶} ^{e²} ^{e¹³⁰} ^{e⁹²} *parfaitement* ^{e¹²}
 piano-forte, but you do not play well on the harp; they were on
m. ^{e¹} ^{e¹⁵¹} *pincer* ^{e¹³}e f. H
 horseback when I met them. 2°. You have a very romantic
^{e¹¹⁴} ^{e³} ^{e¹³³} ^{e³} ^{e⁹⁷}
 roof over your house; I saw Mr. Ducrow jump over eight
^{e⁷⁷} ^{e²} ^{e⁴} ^{e²⁴}
 horses; travelling over these barren countries, we could not
^{e¹} ^{e²} *aride* ^{e¹⁶} pl. ^{e¹⁶}
 bear the burning rays of that day star which shines over our
soutenir ^{e⁶} ^{e¹³¹} m. *étoile du jour* ^{e¹⁴⁴}
 heads; is your lesson over? no, I could not finish it till [▲] the
^{e⁸} ^{e⁴⁵} ^{e²¹} ^{e¹⁶} K ^{e²¹} ^{e¹⁰} *que*
 storm [▲] was over.
orage m. *ne* H

SUR—VERS—ENVIRONS, &c.—ABOUT, TOWARDS, &c.

RULE CLII.—1°. *About*, before nouns denoting particular parts of time, is rendered by *vers*, and before the hour of the day, by *vers* or *sur*, with the article *le*, *la*, *les*, before the next noun of time, as—

il est arrivé vers le soir, | he arrived about the evening.
je vous verrez sur les 10 heures, | I will see you about ten o'clock.

When used in the sense of nearly, or approaching to the number or quantity of anything, it is rendered by *environs*, meaning more or less, or thereabouts, and by *à peu près*, *près de*, when nearly reaching the number or quantity mentioned, as—

il y avait environ deux* | there were about two thousand
mille hommes, | men.

* When *about* means vicinity, it is expressed by *dans les environs de*, or *aux environs de*, coming before the noun of place; if it come after, the preposition is omitted.

<i>il a près de soixante ans,</i>	he is nearly sixty.
<i>il y a à peu près dix ans que</i>	it is nearly ten years since I
<i>je ne vous ai vu,</i>	saw you.

2°. *About*, in the sense of occupation, is expressed either by the verb *faire* or by *occupé*, expressed or understood with the preposition *à*, as—

<i>à quoi êtes-vous occupé?</i>	or what are you about?
<i>que faites-vous?</i>	
<i>je suis à ma broderie,</i>	I am about my embroidery.

That is, *je suis occupé à faire ma broderie*.

About, in the sense of *on* before a personal or possessive pronoun, is expressed by *sur*, as—

<i>je n'ai pas de monnaie sur</i>	I have no change about me.
<i>moi,</i>	
<i>je l'ai raillé sur son mariage,</i>	I laughed at him about his
	marriage.

When *about* means concerning, respecting, it is generally expressed by *de*, speaking of persons, and by *touchant* before common and abstract nouns; but when *about* means on or upon, it is rendered by *sur* before abstract nouns only, as—

<i>il n'a pas parlé de vous,</i>	he did not speak about you.
<i>il m'a parlé touchant cet</i>	he spoke to me about that
<i>argent,</i>	money.
<i>il n'a pas parlé sur cette</i>	he did not speak about that
<i>affaire,</i>	business.

We could say, *touchant cette affaire*, but not *sur cet argent*, for it would mean standing upon that money.

EXERCISE CLII.

1°. Paper was invented about the end of the fourteenth
e⁴ K inventer e¹⁰
 century, and printing about the middle of the fifteenth; the
e¹¹⁰ imprimerie f. milieu m.
 first step towards enjoyment is patience; we attacked the
premier e⁸⁴ jouissance f.f. e³⁴
 citadel about twelve o'clock; the loss was about three thou-
citadelle f. midi e⁹⁶ H
 sand men rank and file, and about ten officers. 2°. What
e¹ de rang m. e⁶⁶

are your scholars about, that they make *so much* noise; I am
écolier m. e^s e^{s1} e^s
 very much tormented about that marriage; he tormented him
 e^{ss} — e^{s0} *mariage* m. e^{s0} K
 very much about that *bill*; *there are* about fifty steam
 e^{18} — *traite* e^4 e^7
 boats Δ *go up* and down the Clyde; *there are* about six ounces
 e^7 *qui monter descendre* e^4 e^{1ss}
 of gold in that box; a soldier, about Δ to depart, loves Δ
 e^1 e^{4s} e^s *de* e^{44} e^4 Δ
 to bid adieu, Δ glass in Δ hand.
faire ses adieux art. verre m. e^2 art. e^{23}
Sur cent personnes, il se trouve à peine un philosophe.
Sur cent philosophes, il se trouve à peine un sage.

CHAPTER EIGHTH.

OF CONJUNCTIONS.

RULE CLIII.—1°. Conjunctions ending in *que*, or those followed by *que* or *de*, and *comme*, *quand*, and *si*, are seldom repeated before the second part of a phrase; but *que* is used instead, and the verb is put in the same tense as if the conjunction was repeated, except with *si*, which requires the second verb after *que* to be in the subjunctive, though the first verb be in the indicative, as—

<i>conduisez-vous sagement afin</i>	conduct yourself with pru-
<i>que l'on vous estime et que</i>	dence, that you may be
<i>l'on se plaise à vous rece-</i>	esteemed, and that your
<i>voir,</i>	company may be agreeable.
<i>on fait bien des fautes quand</i>	we commit many faults when
<i>on est jeune et que l'on ne</i>	we are young and follow
<i>prend conseils que de soi-</i>	only our own councils.
<i>même,</i>	
<i>si vous venez et que je ne sois</i>	if I am not at home when you
<i>pas au logis vous m'atten-</i>	call, wait for me.
<i>drez,</i>	

2°. *Que* is also used in the second part of a sentence for a

great many conjunctions, and requires the verb to be in the same mood as the conjunction understood governs, as—

<i>approchez que je vous parle,</i>	draw near, that I may speak to you.
<i>attendez qu'il soit arrivé,</i>	stop till to-morrow.

The first *que* stands for *afin-que*, the second for *jusqu'à ce que*.

3°. *Que* is generally repeated in phrases of several parts, as are also the conjunctions *et*, *ni*, and *si*.

OBSERVE.—The use of the conjunction *que* is so extensive, that few phrases are begun and ended without it. To explain here the various means by which it leads the primordial idea to its completion would be too tedious, and the rules would be seldom referred to, as every good teacher will, by his judicious remarks, as the opportunity may occur, very soon make the learner sensible of its use and application.

4°. *Both* is generally expressed by *et* repeated before each noun or adjective, as—

<i>nous avons et faim et soif,</i>	we are both hungry and thirsty.
<i>j'ai été et en Italie et à Naple,</i>	I have been both in Italy and Naples.

Both is sometimes rendered by *tant* before a noun, with *que* before the second noun, as—

<i>je demeure en ville tant en</i>	I live in town both in summer
<i>été qu'en hiver,</i>	and winter.

If *tant* is omitted, *et* is used instead of *que*, as—

je demeure en ville en été et en hiver.

5°. *Either*, in the sense of *or*, and *or* in the second part is rendered by *ou*, as—

<i>cela doit être ou soie ou coton,</i>	that must be either silk or cotton.
---	-------------------------------------

If followed by a noun, *soit* is used instead of *ou*, as—

<i>soit par honte ou par force il</i>	either from shame or force he
<i>s'est battu,</i>	fought.

EXERCISE CLIII.

1°. Although you read often, and that you have a great knowledge, there remains still a great deal for you to
connaissance f. ^{e⁶⁴} ^{e³⁰} ^R ^{e³} ^R ^{de} ^{e¹}
^{e⁴¹} ^{vous} ^{e¹⁶} ^{e⁴} ^{e¹} ^{to}

require; if men were wise, and ^a followed the light of
^{e⁴³} ^{e¹⁸} ^{e¹} ^g ^{e¹²} ^{que} ^{ils} ^{e⁴} ^{e¹³} pl.
 eason, they would save themselves many troubles.
^{e⁶⁶} ^{s'épargner} ^{e⁶³} ^{e¹³⁵}
 2°. Draw near, that I may say a word to you; scarcely is it
^{approcher} ^{e¹⁰} ^{e¹⁰⁹} ^{e⁴⁵}
 lay light when I rise; when we fear God, and ^a ^a do
^{e¹³⁸} ^{e¹⁴⁴} ^{e³} ^{e¹⁵} ^{e⁴⁵} ^{e²} ^{que on} ^{e¹³}
 good to ^a others, we live in peace. 3°. The Gauls adored
^{e¹⁹} ^{art.} ^{e¹⁹} ^{e¹⁶} ^{e²} ^{e⁴¹} ^{Gaulois adorer}
 Apollo, Minerva, Jupiter, and Mars—they thought that
^{Minerve} ^{e²⁸}
 Apollo drove away diseases, that Minerva presided over works,
^{chasser} ^{e⁶⁷} ^{e¹⁵³} ^{présider} ^{e⁷}
 hat Jupiter was the sovereign of heaven, and Mars the
 ^{e¹⁰⁶} ^{e⁵⁰}
 urbiter of war. 4°. Cicero ^a is superior to the orators of his
^{urbite} ^{e²} ^{e¹} ^{emporter sur} ^{e¹⁵¹}
 age, both by the power of reasoning and the richness of his
^{siècle} ^{e¹⁶} ^{raisonnement m.} ^{richesse f.}
 expressions. 5°. It is either the sun or the earth that turns.
 f. ^{e¹³} ^{e¹} ^{e¹} ^{tourner}

RULE CLIV.—1°. When a verb in the indicative or subjunctive is preceded by *neither*, and followed by *nor*, they are rendered by *ne* before the first verb, and *ni ne* before the second verb, as—

elle ne boit ni ne mange, | she neither eats nor drinks.

But if they are followed by an infinitive, an adjective, noun, or pronoun, they are rendered by *ne* before the verb, and *ni* before each of these succeeding words, as—

<i>je ne puis ni boire ni mangé,</i>	I can neither eat nor drink.
<i>elle n'a ni argent ni ami,</i>	she has neither money nor friends.
<i>elle n'est ni riche ni prudente,</i>	she is neither rich nor prudent.

Whether, in the sense of *if*, is expressed by *si*, and the verb in the indicative; but in the sense of *let*, it is expressed by *soit que* or *que*, and the verb in the subjunctive, as—

savez-vous si elle est arrivée? | **do you know whether she is arrived?**

<i>soit qu'elle arrive ou non, or</i>	let her come or not, I shall
<i>qu'elle arrive ou qu'elle n'</i>	set off.
<i>arrive pas, je partirai,</i>	

2°. *Quand*, with the conditional, is rendered in English by *though, although, even if*.

<i>quand il mourrait elle n'en</i>	though he should die (even if
<i>serait pas plus riche,</i>	he should die), she would
	not be the richer.

Without, or any expression having the same import, such as, *but for, if it were not for, &c.*, are rendered by *sans*, as, *sans moi il serait ruiné*, if it were not for me he would be ruined, which is the same as, *without me, &c.*

How, to express surprise or admiration before an adjective or verb, is expressed by *que*; and *how much*, or *how many*, before a noun, by *que de*, as—

<i>que vous êtes pâle aujourd'hui!</i>	how pale you are to-day!
<i>que j'aime les fleurs!</i>	how I like flowers!
<i>que de maisons vous avez!</i>	how many houses you have!

May at the beginning of a sentence, expressive of an exclamation, is rendered by *que*, or present indicative of the verb *pouvoir*, when there is no condition, as—

<i>que je sois ruiné si ce n'est</i>	may I be ruined if that is not
<i>pas la vérité!</i>	the truth!
<i>puissé-je le rencontrer au de-</i>	may I meet him off his guard!
<i>pourvu!</i>	

EXERCISE CLIV.

1°. Children have neither any past nor future, and, what seldom happens to us, they enjoy the present; he has never known friendship nor its delights; there is nothing that men like better to preserve, and which they spare less, than their own lives. 2°. Though I should have all the riches that Cresus² possessed¹, I should not be happier than I am; "make that change without delay and without noise."

3°. What magnificence upon earth! how many wonders before
f. e¹ e²³ sous
 our eyes! how admirable⁴ are² the works¹ of the Creator²!
 e²³ e⁶³ e¹²³
 how insignificant² is man¹!
 petit e¹

“ N’attendez pas, Messieurs, que j’ouvre ici une scène tragique; que je représente ce grand homme étendu sur ses propres trophées; que je découvre ce corps pâle et sanglant près duquel fume encore la foudre qui l’a frappé; que je fasse orier son sang comme celui d’Abel, et que j’expose à vos yeux les tristes images, de la religion et de la patrie explorées.”

CHAPTER NINTH.

OF IDIOMS.

It is not intended here to give every idiom, but only to treat of such as most frequently occur; and the scholar is expected to write a voluntary exercise at the end of every rule, making an application of all the idioms therein mentioned.

An, Année, year.

RULE CLV.—*An* denotes a year, beginning and ending at any time. It is considered as a period, and is used in dates, and with numbers, whereas *année* points out duration, beginning the 1st of January and ending the 31st December, and is used with the restrictive words which specify it, as—

j’ai voyagé pendant dix ans, | I have travelled for ten years.
il reviendra l’année prochaine, | he will return next year.

Half a year is expressed by *demi année*, not *demi an*.

Jour, day; Matin, morning; Soir, evening, night.

These three words point out particular periods, but no duration, as—

il reviendra dans deux jours, | he will return in two days.
il doit être ici ce matin, | he will be here this morning.
il m’a promis de venir ce soir, | he promised to come to-night.

But *journée*, *matinée*, *soirée*, denote the whole space of time implied by the words, being the whole day, the whole morning, and the whole night, as—

<i>je passerai la journée, la matinée, la soirée, avec vous,</i>	I will spend the day, the morning, the evening with you.
--	--

Journée is used sometimes to denote a battle, with duration, as—

<i>cette journée fut sanglante,</i>	that battle was bloody.
-------------------------------------	-------------------------

Nuit, *Soir*, night—*Nuit*, *sombre*, dark.

When night means night-time, that space of darkness which continues during the natural time of rest, it is expressed by *nuit*; but if it means that time generally called evening, from twilight to the time of retiring, it is called *soir*, as—

<i>où couchez-vous cette nuit?</i>	where do you sleep to-night?
<i>je vous souhaite une bonne nuit,</i>	I wish you a good night's rest.
<i>j'irai à la comédie ce soir,</i>	I will go to the theatre to-night.
<i>je vous souhaite le bon soir,</i>	good night, good evening.

If by dark we allude to the shades of night, and not to those of colours, it is expressed by *nuit*; and if it alludes to the darkness of the atmosphere, occasioned by clouds, it is expressed by *sombre* or *noir*, as—

<i>il fait nuit à quatre-heures,</i>	it is dark at four.
<i>il fait bien sombre aujourd'hui,</i>	it is very dark to-day.

OBSERVE.—Dark, speaking of colours, is expressed by *foncé*, *cette couleur est trop foncée*, | this colour is too dark.

The different periods of time are expressed as follows:—

<i>ce soir</i> , to-night.	<i>hier</i> , yesterday. [yesterday.
<i>hier au soir</i> , last night.	<i>avant-hier</i> , the day before
<i>aujourd'hui</i> , to-day.	<i>la veille</i> , eve.
<i>midi</i> , noon.	<i>une semaine</i> , a week.
<i>après-midi</i> , afternoon.	<i>dans huit jours</i> , in a week.
<i>matin</i> , morning.	<i>dans une huitaine</i> , in a week.
<i>la nuit</i> , night-time.	<i>dans quinze jours</i> , in a fortnight
<i>minuit</i> , midnight.	<i>dans une quinzaine</i> , in a fort.
<i>demain</i> , to-morrow. [morrow.	<i>d'aujourd'hui en huit</i> , this day week.
<i>après-demain</i> , the day after to-	<i>d'aujourd'hui en quinze</i> , this
<i>le lendemain</i> , the next day.	day fortnight.
<i>le sur-lendemain</i> , two days after	

Tems implies time, space, duration, weather, as—

<i>il est tems de partir,</i>	it is time to set off.
<i>je n'ai pas le tems,</i>	I have no time.
<i>il fait mauvais tems,</i>	it is bad weather.

But *fois* implies the repetition of the action, and is equivalent to once, twice, &c., as—

<i>il a tombé une seconde fois,</i>	he fell a second time.
<i>je le ferai pour cette fois,</i>	I will do it this time.

Speaking of the hour of the day, the word *o'clock* is rendered by *heure*; and the division of the hour, such as, a quarter, five minutes, half-past, &c., which in English precede the number of the hour, come after it in French, as—

<i>il est une heure cinq minutes,</i>	it is five minutes past one.
<i>il est trois heures un quart,</i>	it is a quarter past three.
<i>il est deux heures et demie,</i>	it is half-past two.

OBSERVE.—That no word is equivalent to the word *past*; but the word *wants*, in the sense of *so much less*, is expressed by *moins*, as—

<i>il est une heure moins cinq minutes,</i>	it wants five minutes to one.
<i>il est une heure moins un quart,</i>	it wants a quarter to one.

We never say, *douze heures* for twelve o'clock, but *midi* for twelve o'clock in the day, and *minuit* for twelve o'clock at night.

Gens—Peuple—Personne—Monde—People.

RULE CLVI.—*People*, in the sense of the nation or the multitude, is rendered by *peuple*; but to denote certain division or quantity of people, *monde* is generally used, as—

<i>le peuple Français n'est pas constant,</i>	the French people are not very constant.
<i>le peuple est très-mécontent,</i>	the people are very dissatisfied.
<i>les rues sont remplies de monde,</i>	the streets are filled with people

But alluding to people without the idea of quantity, *gens* or *personne* are used, as—

<i>ces gens-là sont sots,</i>	those people are silly.
<i>il y a des personnes qui n'aiment pas la musique,</i>	there are some people who do not like music.

Personne, and not *gens*, must be used after a stated number, unless qualified by an adjective, which is fem. when it precedes *gens*, and mas. when it comes after, as—

<i>regardez ces deux personnes,</i>	look at those two people.
<i>voilà deux honnêtes gens,</i>	there are two honest people.
<i>ces bonnes gens sont paresseux,</i>	these good people are idle.

OBSERVE.—That in this last phrase, though *bonnes* is fem. that *paresseux* is masculine, a curious Gallicism.

Gens is never singular, and is often used in the sense of servants, as—

mes gens ne sont pas ici, | my servants are not here.

Pays—Campagne—Patrie—Contrée—Country.

Country, in the sense of a *country*, having a name, is expressed by *pays*; but in the sense of a cultivated part of a country (that part which is out of town), it is rendered by *campagne*; in the sense of *native country*, it is expressed by *patrie*; and, finally, in the sense of a tract of country, regions, nations, by *contrée*, as—

<i>la Laponie est un vilain pays,</i>	Laponia is an ugly country.
<i>j'aime mieux la campagne que</i>	I like the country better than
<i>la ville,</i>	town.
<i>je mourrais pour ma patrie,</i>	I would die for my country.
<i>L'Australie est une vaste contrée,</i>	Australia is a vast tract of country.

Pied, Foot, Hoof—Pate, Paw.

Pied is used to express the foot of man, or the hoof of an animal, and *pate* for paw; *pate* is also used speaking of birds, except birds of prey, as—

<i>le pied d'un homme, d'un éléphant,</i>	the foot of a man, the hoof of
<i>d'un bœuf, d'un cerf,</i>	an elephant, ox, stag.

Ongles are the nails of man, the claws of a lion; but *griffes*, the claws of a cat, tiger, &c.; *serres*, the talons of an eagle, of a hawk, and in general of birds of prey.

Bouche, Gueulle, Museau, Mouth, Jaw.

Bouche is used, speaking of human beings, of a horse, of an ass, of an ox, of an elephant, and in general of beasts of

burthen; and *gueule*, speaking of fishes, reptiles, and in general of quadrupeds, as—

<i>la bouche d'un mulet, d'un cheval,</i>	the mouth of a mule, a horse.
<i>la gueule d'un chien, d'une truite, d'un saumon,</i>	the mouth of a dog, a trout, a salmon.
<i>le museau d'un chat d'un chien d'un lapin,</i>	the snout of a cat, of a dog, of a rabbit.
<i>Museau</i> is also used for the head of some animals, including mouth and nose.	

TO BE, rendered by the verb AVOIR.

RULE CLVII.—As the adjectives hungry, thirsty, hot, cold, warm, right, wrong, ashamed, afraid, old, are expressed in French by the corresponding nouns, *avoir* must be used instead of *être*, as—

<i>j'ai faim—soif—chaud—froid—honte—raison,</i>	I am hungry—thirsty—warm—cold—ashamed—in the right.
<i>j'ai plus de dix ans,</i>	I am more than ten years old.
<i>j'ai froid aux mains,</i>	my hands are cold.
<i>j'ai chaud à la tête,</i>	my head is warm.

In vain for, preceded by the verb *to be*, impersonally, is rendered in French by *avoir beau*, taking the object of the preposition for its subject, as—

<i>vous avez beau parler, vous n'en viendrez pas à bout,</i>	it is in vain for you to speak: you will not succeed.
<i>M. Mitchell a beau dire, je l'aurai,</i>	it is in vain for Mr. Mitchell to talk: I will have it.

TO BE, rendered by the verb FAIRE.

When the verb *to be*, used impersonally, is intended to denote the different states of the weather, the verb *faire* is used in French; but if any noun is the subject of the verb *to be*, the same verb and noun is used in French as in English, as—

<i>il fait beau tems,</i>	it is fine weather.
<i>il fait claire de lune,</i>	it is moonlight.
<i>le tems est orageux,</i>	the weather is stormy.
<i>le soir est beau,</i>	the night is fine.

When the verb *to be*, *to do*, are used in speaking of a person's health, they are rendered by *se porter*, as—

<i>comment se porte-t-elle?</i>	how is she?—how does she do?
<i>je me suis bien porté,</i>	I have been very well.

The verb *to be*, used impersonally, and followed by *with*, to denote some similitude, is expressed by the verb *être* preceded by *en*, and followed by *de*, as—

<i>il en est d'un voleur comme</i>	it is with a robber as with a
<i>d'une bête sauvage,</i>	wild beast.

Aller—Venir—to go, to come.

RULE CLVIII. *Aller—Venir*, speaking of coming or going to visit, are used in French in reference to the place, leaving the person to be the object of the verb that follows, as—

<i>je viendrai vous voir,</i>	I will come and see you.
-------------------------------	--------------------------

As if it were, *je viendrai chez vous afin de vous voir*, I will come to your house in order to see you. You must therefore consider where a person is when you address him; for if he is actually in the place where you mean to come to, you will say, *je viendrai*, I will come; but if he is in any other place, you will say, *j'irai*, I will go,

<i>je viendrai vous voir Lundi,</i>	} I will come and see you
<i>j'irai vous voir Lundi,</i>	

Retourner—Revenir—Rendre—to return.

If by the verb *return* we mean, to go back, we say in French, *retourner*; and if it means, to come back, it is expressed by *revenir*; and if it has a direct object, and is used in the sense of, to give back, it is rendered by *rendre*, as—

<i>je retournerai à Paris demain,</i>	I shall return to Paris to-morrow.
<i>il reviendra Samedi,</i>	he will return on Saturday.
<i>il m'a rendu l'argent,</i>	he has returned the money.

Venir de, in the present or imperfect of the indicative, before an infinitive, implies a thing done at a time just elapsed—*il vient de me parler*, he has just spoken to me; but with the preposition *à*, it means to begin, as—

<i>quand on vint à parler,</i>	when they began to speak.
--------------------------------	---------------------------

Aller is also used in the sense of *fitting* or *becoming*, as—

<i>cet habit vous va bien,</i>	this coat fits you well.
<i>le bleu vous va bien,</i>	blue becomes you well.

Laisser—Quitter—que—to leave—to let.

When to *leave* means, to quit, to abandon a place, or to part from a person or a thing personified, we use *quitter*, as—

<i>1. D. a quitté Glasgow et sa femme,</i>	Mr. D. has left Glasgow and his wife.
<i>il quitte la vie avec regret,</i>	he parts from life with regret.

But when to *leave* means left behind, as in speaking of things that could be taken away, or to persons to whom we are not bound by ties of parentage or friendship, or even if the latter are left in any place but not abandoned, we use *laisser*, as—

<i>il a laissé sa guitare et ses écoliers,</i>	he has left his guitar and his scholars.
<i>ai laissé ma fille à l'école,</i>	I have left my daughter at school.

To part with a thing, in the sense of disposing or selling, is expressed by *défaire* or *vendre*; but to part with a person, in the sense of separating, it is rendered by *séparer*, as...

<i>il s'est défait de sa maison,</i>	he has parted with his house.
<i>il s'est séparé de sa mère,</i>	he has parted with his mother.

Let, as the sign of the third person of the imperative, is expressed by *que*; but in addressing the second person, in the sense of allowing, it is rendered by *laisser*.

<i>qu'il y aille lui-même,</i>	let him go himself.
<i>que votre fils vienne à 6 heures,</i>	let your son come at six.
<i>laissez le aller au bal,</i>	let him go to the ball.
<i>laissez aller cet homme,</i>	let that man go.

Laisser de, negatively, is used to strengthen the affirmation of the following verb, and is rendered in English in a variety of ways, as—

<i>malgré toutes ses pertes il ne laisse pas d'être riche,</i>	in spite of his losses he is still rich.
--	--

Faire, to do, to make.

RULE—CLIX. *Faire*, besides its literal signification, is

used with other words as a kind of auxiliary when no single word can be found to express the meaning required, as—

faire peur, faire semblant, | to frighten, to pretend.

Faire, to make, in the sense of *to render*, is expressed by *rendre*, as—

la tempérance rend l'homme | temperance makes a man
sain, | healthy.

Faire is used to express the fitting of any thing, as—

cette robe vous fait bien, | that gown fits you well.

Faire, with the infinitive of another verb, means to get a thing done, to force, to order, or cause to be done, as—

je vous prie faites la chanter, | do get her to sing.
faites le aller à l'école, | order him to go to school.
il fit cesser les canons, | he caused the canons to cease.

But before its own infinitive, it means to get made, or cause to be made, as—

où ferez-vous faire vos bottes? | where will you order your
boots?

je vais les faire faire à Londres, | I will order them in London.

Faire is always used when the person spoken of is only the agent of the act expressed by the next infinitive, but which in English is generally spoken of, as being the actual performer of it, as—

faites frire ce poisson, | fry that fish.
il a fait bâtir une maison, | he has built a house.
Charles XII. a fait périr | Charles XII. killed Patkul.
Patkul,

In the first example I am only the agent of the act, as I cannot of myself fry fish, but cause it to be fried, by bringing the fire in contact with it. In the second, unless I am a mason, I did not build the house, but caused it to be built, by paying for it; and in the third, Charles gave orders to execute the Russian ambassador, but did not kill him himself.

Faire with *ne que*, and an infinitive, is Anglicised by, to do nothing but; and if the infinitive be preceded by *de*, it serves to express that the act of the infinitive has only just been done, as—

il ne fait qu'entrer et sortir, | he does nothing but come in
and go out.

il ne fait que de sortir, | he is only just gone out.

Faire is used as the verb *to do* in English, to avoid the repetition of another verb, as—

<i>il écrit mieux qu'il ne faisait,</i>	he writes better than he did.
<i>on ne peut danser mieux qu'il ne fait,</i>	one cannot dance better than he does.

Faire is used in the sense of *giving* or *presenting*, as—
faites mes amitiés à votre sœur, | give my love to your sister.

Faire is frequently used to express pretensions to a character which we have not, as—

<i>il fait le savant,</i>	he pretends to be learned.
<i>elle fait la malade,</i>	she pretends to be ill.

Se faire is used in the sense of being inured or accustomed to a habit, as

<i>je ne peux pas me faire à ce climat,</i>	I cannot accustom myself to this climate.
<i>il s'est fait à la fatigue,</i>	he has inured himself to fatigue.

Faire is used with *question*, instead of, to ask, as—

ne me faites pas de questions, | don't ask me any questions.

Faire grâce is used in the sense of, to remit, to forgive, to pardon. *Faire une grâce* signifies, to do a favour, as—

<i>je vous fait grâce des frais,</i>	I remit you the expenses.
<i>on lui fit grâce à raison de sa famille,</i>	he was pardoned on account of his family.
<i>faites moi la grâce de venir,</i>	do me the favour to come.

Penser—Songer—Imaginer—Présumer, to think.

RULE CLX.—*Penser* in the preterite or compound of the present, is used to denote that the action, expressed by the verb which it governs without a preposition, was very near happening, as—

<i>il a pensé mourir de froid,</i>	he was almost dead with cold.
<i>nous pensâmes périr,</i>	we were nearly lost.

Penser and *songer*, to think, are both neuter, and govern the preposition *à* before their complement. *Penser* implies reflection, meditation, an occupation of the mind; but *songer*

implies remembrance, to keep a thing in mind only until it is done, as—

<i>il pense continuellement à ses études,</i>	he is continually thinking of his studies.
<i>je n'ai pas songer à fermer la porte à la clef,</i>	I did not think of locking the door.

Penser may be used in an active sense with a direct object, but *songer* cannot, as—

<i>on pense de lui mille choses avantageuses,</i>	they think a thousand things in his favour.
---	---

Supposer, in the sense of taking anything for granted, is used in French as in English; but in the sense of, to think, to fancy, to imagine, it is rendered by *penser*, *s'imaginer*, and *présumer*, as—

<i>je suppose que cela soit vrai, qu'en résulte-t-il?</i>	suppose that were true, what is the consequence?
<i>je m'imagine que cela doit suffire,</i>	I suppose that is sufficient.
<i>je pense qu'il y a eu un orage en mer,</i>	I suppose there has been a storm at sea?
<i>je présume que vous irez à l'opéra,</i>	I suppose you will go to the opera.

Demander, to ask.

Demander, to demand, is more frequently used in the sense of *demand*, to ask, with a noun; but *to ask*, with an infinitive, in the sense of asking a person to do a thing, is expressed by *dire* or *prier*, as—

<i>il m'a demandé quatre chelins,</i>	he asked me for four shillings.
<i>dites lui de venir ce soir,</i>	ask him to come to-night.
<i>priez le de vous prêter dix louis,</i>	ask him to lend you ten louis.

Désirer, to desire, also in the sense of asking a person to do a thing, is expressed by *prier* or *se charger de*, with this difference, that *dire* and *se charger de* are only used when we have a right to expect compliance, and *prier* when speaking with deference, as—

<i>mon père me charge de vous écrire,</i>	my father desires me to write to you.
<i>ma fille me prie de vous écrire,</i>	my daughter desires, &c.

Mener—Amener—Porter—Apporter, to Carry, to Bring.

RULE CLXI.—When to take is used in the sense of leading living beings, it is expressed by *mener*; and speaking of things that must be carried in order to be conveyed, we use *porter*; and in the sense of bringing, including the act of leading, we say *amener*; and bringing, including the act of carrying, we use *apporter*, as—

<i>menez mon cheval au champ,</i>	take my horse to the field.
<i>portez cet habit au tailleur,</i>	take that coat to the tailor.
<i>il a amené sa femme,</i>	he has brought his wife.
<i>j'ai apporté les tableaux,</i>	I have brought the pictures.

To bring back and lead, is rendered by *ramener*.

To bring back and carry, is rendered by *rapporter*.

To take back and lead, is rendered by *remener*.

To take back and carry, is rendered by *remporter*.

To take away, is expressed by *emporter*; but speaking of the materials of a dinner or supper table, *désservir* is used from *servir*, to serve, or to bring the dinner, as—

<i>on a servi,</i>	the dinner is on the table.
<i>dites aux domestiques de dé-</i>	tell the servants to take away
<i>sservir,</i>	the dinner things.
<i>emportez mon assiette,</i>	take away my plate.

To take a person anywhere, is rendered by *mener* or *conduire*, and not by *prendre*, but in the sense of calling for a person as you pass, it is rendered by *prendre en passant*, as—

<i>il a promis de me mener à la</i>	he promised to take me to the
<i>comédie,</i>	theatre.
<i>conduisez la à l'école,</i>	take her to school.
<i>nous vous prendrons en pas-</i>	we will call for you as we pass.
<i>sant,</i>	

To send, in the sense of sending to bring anything, is expressed by *envoyer chercher*, as—

j'ai envoyé chercher du papier, | I have sent for some paper.

Servir—Aider, to Help.

Aider, to help, is used in the sense of rendering assistance, but *servir*, to help, is used in the sense of serving a person to something at table, as—

<i>aidez moi à écrire mon thème,</i>	help me to write my exercise.
<i>vous servirai-je du veau?</i>	shall I help you to some veal?

OBSERVE.—*Servir* being used in the sense of presenting or giving, the thing thus presented, and not the person, must be the object of the verb *servir*.

Help used negatively, in the sense of not being able to avoid, is expressed by *faire*, as—

je ne saurais qu'y faire, | I cannot help it.

Dépenser.—*Passer*, to spend.

Speaking of time, spending is expressed by *passer*, but in its common acceptation it is rendered by *dépenser*, as—

il passe son tems à jouer, | he spends his time in playing.
il a dépensé tout son argent, | he has spent all his money.

Prendre.—*Prix*, to charge.

To charge, speaking of price, is rendered by *prendre* or *prix*, or *faire payer*, in preference to *charger*, which in that sense is seldom used, as it generally means to load, as—

quel est le prix de cette toile? | what is the price of this cloth?
combien-prenez vous par jour? | how much do you charge a day?

But *charger* may be used when no ambiguity with the verb to load can possibly take place, as—

vous m'avez chargé trop pour | you have charged too dear for
ce drap, | that cloth.

Prendre is used in the sense of to drink, to take. Whenever we speak of things which have a medicinal property, or which we take for our health, such as all medicines, mineral waters, tea and coffee, also chocolate, soups, gruels, &c., in which case we never say *boire*, to drink, as—

j'irai prendre les eaux cet été, | I will drink the waters this
 summer.
ne prenez pas votre thé si chaud, | don't drink your tea so hot.

In offering any liquors to another, *prendre* is used in preference to *boire*, as—

voulez-vous me faire l'honneur | will you do me the honour of
de prendre un verre de vin | drinking a glass of wine
avec moi? | with me?

Had we said *boire*, it would have meant to drink together.

Entendre, to hear.

RULE CLXII.—To hear, in the sense of sound, is expressed by *entendre*; but in the sense of hear from, to receive news from, it is expressed by the verbs *apprendre*, *recevoir*, *entendre des nouvelles*, as—

<i>avez-vous entendu des nouvelles de votre fils? non, mais j'ai reçu des nouvelles de ma fille,</i>	have you heard from your son? no, but I have heard from my daughter.
--	--

To inquire after a person, is expressed by *demandeur des nouvelles*, and after what belongs to a person, by *s'informer de*, as—

<i>il a demandé de vos nouvelles, il s'est informé de votre santé, je me suis informé de votre fils,</i>	he inquired after you. he inquired after your health. I inquired after your son.
--	--

Epouser—Marier—Se Marier, to marry.

Epouser, to marry, denotes the act of taking a wife; *marier* denotes the act of uniting two persons in marriage, or of giving a person away; *se marier* denotes the act of entering into the married state, as—

<i>M. Dupré a épousé ma fille,</i>	Mr. Dupré has married my daughter.
<i>M. Dupré a marié sa fille,</i>	Mr. Dupré has married his daughter.
<i>c'est le ministre qui l'a marié,</i>	it is the minister who married her.
<i>M. D. doit se marier,</i>	Mr. D. is going to be married.

Marier and *épouser* may both be used with the verb *avoir* in the same sense as above; but *marier*, used with the verb *être*, implies being married to, as—

<i>M. D. est marié à ma sœur,</i>	Mr. D. is married to my sister.
-----------------------------------	---------------------------------

Se promener—Marcher, to walk.

Marcher simply denotes the act of walking, but *se promener* denotes the act of going out either for health or amusement; if unaccompanied by any restricting term, it is understood to be on foot, otherwise it is accompanied by the word that expresses the conveyance employed, as—

<i>je n'aime pas à me promener avec vous, vous marchez si vite,</i>	I do not like to walk with you, you walk so fast.
---	--

<i>il se promène à cheval tous les jours,</i>	he rides on horseback every day.
<i>je vais me promener en voiture,</i>	I am going to take an airing.
<i>ils sont allés se promener en bateau,</i>	they are gone to take a sail.

To take a walk is expressed by *faire un tour de promenade*; a turn, by *un tour*, and to walk home, by *retourner*.

<i>si vous voulez nous irons faire un tour de promenade,</i>	if you please, we will take a walk.
<i>allons faire un tour dans le jardin,</i>	let us take a turn in the garden.
<i>allons faire un tour à cheval —en carrosse,</i>	let us take a ride on horseback —a ride in a coach.
<i>il est tems de retourner,</i>	it is time to go home.

To ride, in the sense of going on, or in any definite object, is rendered by *aller*, and the object as in English, as—

<i>je fus sur son mulet,</i>	I rode on his mule.
<i>voulez-vous aller dans mon cabriolet?</i>	will you ride in my gig?

An excursion, a trip, is rendered by *une petite course*, *un tour dans la campagne*, *un petit voyage*; a journey by land, or a sea voyage, are expressed by *voyage*, which, when used by itself, means a journey; we also say, *une traverse*, and *tour*, but these must always be accompanied with the name of the place.

RULE CLXIII.—To attend, means to go to, or assist at, to give or to take lessons, to serve or to wait on, to take care, to visit, to be present, to accompany, to follow, &c., it must therefore be rendered according to the meaning it is intended to convey, there being no word in French to represent it.

<i>il assista au congrès,</i>	he attended the congress.
<i>je lui donne leçon trois fois par semaine,</i>	I attend her three times a week.
<i>je ne puis prendre de leçon aujourd'hui,</i>	I cannot attend to-day.
<i>je viendrai à votre classe cet hiver,</i>	I will attend your class this winter.

dance has the same variety, and must also be recording to the meaning, as—

<i>é le médecin pour sa</i>	I paid the doctor for his attendance.
<i>ésence nous fut très-</i>	your attendance was very useful.
<i>lui donnez-vous pour sons?</i>	how much do you give him for his attendance?

Avoir besoin, to want.

besoin, to want, denotes the need we have of obtaining, or of doing a thing, as—

<i>besoin d'argent,</i>	he wants money.
<i>besoin d'apprendre,</i>	he wants to learn.

in the sense of desiring or wishing, to want is expressed *envie, souhaiter, désirer*, as—

<i>e d'aller à Bath,</i>	he wants to go to Bath.
<i>wie d'apprendre le</i>	he wants to learn French.
<i>çais,</i>	
<i>voir sa mère,</i>	he wants to see his mother.

ed, in the sense of a person being required or called expressed by *demander*, as—

<i>demande,</i>	you are wanted.
<i>demande à vous parler,</i>	Mr. A. wants to speak to you.

ant, in the sense of deficiency of weight or measure, is d by *manque*; but in any other sense *faute de* is better *nque de*, as—

<i>te une verge à ce drap,</i>	this cloth wants a yard.
<i>argent il a perdu sa</i>	for want of money, he lost his cause.

Regarder, Parattre, Avoir la mine, to look.

der, to look, means the view we take of things, as—

<i>ce beau bâtiment,</i>	look at that beautiful building.
--------------------------	----------------------------------

ok, in the sense of to seem, to appear to be, is ex by *paraître, avoir l'air—la mine—l'apparence*,

<i>nne mine,</i>	she looks well.
<i>aissez fatigué,</i>	you look fatigued.
<i>er a l'air contente,</i>	your sister looks pleased.

Look, meaning the glance of the eye, is rendered by *regard*, and look, meaning the appearance of the countenance or of the body, is rendered by *mine*, and when it denotes the appearance of countenance and body, it is rendered by *air*, and in allusion to dress, by *tournure*; look is also rendered by *physionomie*, when it denotes the mind, the character of the person depicted in the features of the countenance, as—

<i>il a un regard farouche,</i>		he has a wild look.
<i>son air est noble et gracieux,</i>		his looks are noble and kind.
<i>avez-vous observé sa tournure,</i>		did you observe her looks.
<i>il a une physionomie spirituelle,</i>		he has a sensible look.

Casser—Rompre—Briser, to break.

RULE CLXIV.—*Casser*, to break, is generally said of things that are brittle and snap asunder, and by which their continuity is destroyed, as—

<i>il a cassé un verre,</i>		he has broken a glass.
-----------------------------	--	------------------------

But if the thing requires some effort in order to be broken, by reason of the ligament of which it is formed, such as a rope, a stick, we use *rompre*, as—

<i>vous avez rompu cette corde,</i>		you have broken this rope.
-------------------------------------	--	----------------------------

But if the thing is not broken asunder, we can use *casser*, as—

<i>je vous casserai la tête,</i>		I will break your head.
----------------------------------	--	-------------------------

We therefore can say *casser la jambe*, if the bone be broken, and *rompre* if the bone be broken asunder.

To break to pieces, is expressed by *briser*, as—

<i>les vitres sont toutes brisées,</i>		the panes are all broken.
--	--	---------------------------

In the distinction of these verbs, much depends on the manner of performing the act; for *casser* is the act of a simple or sudden blow, *rompre* requires some exertion to break asunder, and *briser* requires violent or repeated blows.

Voici—voilà, here is—here are, there is—there are.

Voici and *voilà*, from the verb *voir*, to see, and *ci* here, and *là* there, are frequently used in French to point out objects, as—

<i>voici vos bas et voilà vos</i>		here are your stockings, and
<i>souliers,</i>		there are your shoes.

And when used with a personal pronoun, it precedes the verb in the fourth state, as—

le voilà, les voici, | there he is, here they are.

analysed by see him there, see them here.

Y avoir, there to be.

The verb *to be*, preceded by the adverb *there*, is rendered by the corresponding tenses of *y avoir*, used only in the third person singular; and speaking of the distance from one place to another, it is used in French, though another turn is given to the English, as—

il y a douze milles de Bath à Bristol, | Bath is twelve miles from Bristol.

There are is often understood in English before the word *some*, but it must be expressed in French, as—

il y a des gens qui..... | some people are...(i.e., there are some people.....).

These, those, pointing out a period of time, are rendered by *y avoir*, as—

il y a six ans qu'elle demeure ici, | she has lived here these six years.

Combien, how far—how many—how long.

Combien, how far, is used with *y avoir* interrogatively, to ask distances, as—

combien y a-t-il d'ici à Paris? | how far is it from here to Paris?

Combien, how long, is used with *y avoir*, to inquire space of time, as—

combien y a-t-il qu'il dort? | how long has he slept?

Combien, how many, is used with *y avoir* interrogatively, to ascertain number, as—

combien de soldats y a-t-il? | how many soldiers are there?

Combien, how much, is used with *y avoir*, to ascertain quantity.

combien y a-t-il d'argent? | how much money is there?

When *combien* is omitted or preceded by any other expression, *y avoir* loses its interrogative form, as—

<i>savez-vous combien il y a de personnes?</i>		do you know how many persons there are?
--	--	---

The word *ago* or *since* after nouns expressing stated quantities of time, are also rendered by *y avoir*, as—

<i>il y a un mois que je ne vous ai vu,</i>		it is a month since I saw you.
<i>je lui parlai il y a un mois,</i>		I spoke to him a month ago.

Long ago, long since, are rendered by *il y a long tems*.

<i>il y a long tems que je ne l'ai vu,</i>		it is long since I saw him.
<i>je faisais cela il y a long tems,</i>		I used to do that long ago.

APPENDIX.

FIRST LIST;

uing those Verbs which generally admit of a direct object and no direct object.

*Those marked thus * govern the infinitive without a preposition.*

to like.	<i>faire</i> , to make.
<i>aieuz</i> ,* to prefer.	<i>falloir</i> , to be necessary.
<i>r</i> , to admire.	<i>fléchir</i> , to soften.
<i>ver</i> , to approve.	<i>hair</i> , to hate.
to pull down.	<i>huer</i> , to hoot at.
<i>r</i> , to seek.	<i>s'imaginer</i> ,* to fancy.
, to expect.	<i>injurier</i> , to abuse.
<i>re</i> , to know.	<i>juger</i> , to judge.
<i>e</i> , to fear.	<i>lorgner</i> , to leer.
<i>r</i> , to criticise.	<i>nier</i> , to deny.
to believe.	<i>penser</i> ,* to think.
, to deign.	<i>perdre</i> , to lose.
<i>r</i> , to tear.	<i>pouvoir</i> ,* to be able.
<i>er</i> , to root out.	<i>regarder</i> , to look at.
to detest,	<i>savoir</i> ,* to know.
ought, should.	<i>valoir mieux</i> ,* better.
<i>er</i> , to examine.	<i>voir</i> , to see.
<i>dre</i> , to infringe.	<i>vouloir</i> ,* to be willing.
<i>e</i> ,* to hear.	

SECOND LIST;

ning those Verbs which, having two objects, require *de* before the indirect object, as, *on accuse Polignac de lèse-majesté*.

<i>re</i> , to absolve.	<i>détourner</i> , to deter.
<i>r</i> , to overwhelm.	<i>dissuader</i> , to dissuade.
<i>r</i> , to accept.	<i>emplir</i> , to fill.
to accuse.	<i>exclure</i> , to exclude.
<i>e</i> , to expect.	<i>expulser</i> , to expel.
to warn.	<i>implorer</i> , to implore.
to banish.	<i>informer</i> , to inform.
to blame.	<i>louer</i> , to praise.
to burthen.	<i>menacer</i> , to threaten.
to drive away.	<i>obtenir</i> , to obtain.
to load.	<i>priver</i> , to deprive.
<i>acré</i> , to convince.	<i>recevoir</i> , to receive.
<i>r</i> , to correct.	<i>remercier</i> , to thank.
<i>r</i> , to disgust.	<i>reprendre</i> , to reprove.
to free.	<i>soupçonner</i> , to suspect.

THIRD LIST;

Containing those Verbs which admit only of an indirect object, governed by *de*, as, *le désir empêche de jouir de ce qu'on a*.

accommoder, s', to put up with.
acquitter, s', to pay.
appercevoir, s', to perceive.
approcher, s', to draw near.
attrister, se, to grieve.
avoir pitié, s', to pity.
consoler, se, to console one's self.
désier, se, to distrust.
démettre, se, to resign.
effrayer, s', to be startled.
enorgueillir, s', to be proud of.
être affamé, to be greedy of.
être altéré, to thirst for.
être édifié, to be edified.
être rassasié, to be satisfied.
être surpris, to be surprised.

hériter, to inherit.
indigner, s', to be indignant.
inquiéter, s', to feel uneasy.
informer, s, to inquire.
jouir, to enjoy.
médire, to slander.
méfier, se, to mistrust.
persuader se, to persuade one's self.
profiter, to profit.
rétracter, se, to retract.
moquer, se, to laugh.
scandaliser, se, to be scandalized.
saisir, se, to seize upon.
servir, se, to use.
sécher, to wither.

FOURTH LIST;

Verbs with a direct object and an indirect object, governed by *à*, as, *il a expliqué ses raisons au roi*.

accorder, to grant.
adresser, to address.
annoncer, to announce.
apporter, to bring.
attribuer, to attribute.
avouer, to own.
communiquer, to communicate.
confesser, to confess.
confier, to intrust.
condamner, to condemn.
conseiller, to advise.
déclarer, to declare.
dédier, to dedicate.
défendre, to forbid.
demander, to ask.
donner, to give.
dénoncer, to denounce.
devoir, to owe.
dire, to say.
écrire, to write.
enseigner, to teach.
envoyer, to send.
épargner, to save.
expliquer, to explain.
faire, to do.
mander, to inform.

montrer, to show.
ordonner, to order.
ôter, to take off.
pardonner, to pardon.
porter, to carry.
prédire, to foretell.
préférer, to prefer.
prendre, to take.
présenter, to present.
prescrire, to prescribe.
prêter, to lend.
procurer, to procure.
promettre, to promise.
proposer, to propose.
raconter, to relate.
rapporter, to bring back.
recommander, to recommend.
réduire, to reduce.
refuser, to refuse.
rendre, to return.
renvoyer, to send back.
répéter, to repeat.
répondre, to answer.
reprocher, to reproach.
révéler, to reveal.
vendre, to sell.

FIFTH LIST;

Verbs admitting only an indirect object, governed by *à*, as *tous les hommes aspirent au bonheur*.

aboutir, to end.
adresser, *s'*, to apply to.
applaudir, to applaud.
aspirer, to aspire.
assujettir, *s'*, to subject one's self.
condescendre, to condescend.
contrevénir, to contravene.
contribuer, to contribute.
convenir, to suit.
déplaire, to displease.
désobéir, to disobey.
endurcir, *s*, to inure one's self.
fer, *se*, to trust.
insulter, to insult.
intéresser, *s'*, to be interested.
jouer, to play.
livrer, *se*, to yield to.

nuire, to annoy.
obéir, to obey.
obvier, to obviate.
opposer, *s'*, to oppose.
penser, to think.
plaire, to please.
pourvoir, to provide for.
rémédier, to remedy.
rendre se, to surrender.
résister, to resist.
ressembler, to resemble.
subvenir, to relieve.
succéder, to succeed.
survivre, to survive.
travailler, to work.
tendre, to aim at.
viser, to aim at.

SIXTH LIST;

Containing a series of Verbs, governing *à* or *de* before the infinitive.

A

abaisser, *s'*, *à*, to stoop to.
abandonner, *s'*, *à*, to give up to.
aboutir à, to end in.
abstenir, *s'*, *de*, to abstain from.
accoutumer, *s'*, *à*, to accustom one's self to.
1 *accoutumer à*, *de*, to accustom to.
accuser de, to accuse of.
acharner à, to be eager at.
achever de, to finish to.
admettre à, to admit to.
affecter de, to affect.
aider à, to help to.
aimer à, to love to.
ambitionner de, to be ambitious.
amuser, *s'*, *à*, to amuse o'self.
animer à, to incite.
appartient (il) *de*, uni., to become.
appliquer, *s'*, *à*, to apply to.
apprendre à, to learn to.

appréhender de, to apprehend to.
apprêter, *s'*, *à*, to prepare o'self.
aspirer à, to aspire to.
assigner à, to summons to.
assujétir à, to be subject to.
attacher, *s'*, *à*, to stick to.
attendre, *s'*, *à*, to expect.
avertir de, to warn.
avilir, *s'*, *de*, to disgrace o'self.
aviser, *s'*, *de*, to bethink o'self.
avoir à, to have to.
autoriser à, to authorise to.

B

ballancer à, to hesitate to.
blâmer de, to blame.
brûler de, to be impatient.

C

Cesser de, to cease to.
chercher à, to seek to.
commander de, to command to.
2 *commencer à*, *de*, to begin to.
concourir à, to tend to.

1 *Accoutumer*, used actively or reflectively, governs *à*; but when neuter and preceded by *avoir*, it governs *de*.

2 *Commencer à* denotes an action that will increase or improve; *commencer de*, an action with continuation that may be interrupted and resumed.

condamner à, to condemn to.
*conjur*er de, to entreat to.
conseiller de, to advise to.
consentir à, to consent to.
condescendre à, to condescend to.
consister à, to consist in, to.
conspirer à, to conspire to.
contenter, s', de, to satisfy o'self.
 3 *continuer à*, de, to continue,
 4 *contraindre à*, de, to compel.
convenir de, to agree to,
couler à, to cost.
contribuer à, to contribute to.
craindre de, to fear to.

D
dédaigner de, to disdain to.
décider, se, à, to fix.
défendre de, to defend.
 5 *défier à*, de, to defy.
 6 *demander à*, de, to ask to.
dépêcher, se, de, to make haste.
désaccoutumer, se, de, to lose the habit.
désespérer de, to lose hope.
désirer de, to desire to.
 7 *destiner à*, de, to doom.
 8 *déterminer à*, de, to resolve.
délibérer de, to deliberate.
dévouer à, to devote.
différer de, to differ.
dire de, to say, to tell.
disposer, se, à, to dispose o'self.
discontinuer de, to discontinue.
dispenser de, to dispense with.
dissuader de, to dissuade from.
dresser à, to be trained to.
disconvenir de, to disagree.
donner à, to give.

E
écrire de, to write to.
 9 *efforcer, s', à, de*, to exert o'self.
éluder de, to elude
empêcher de, to hinder to.
employer à, to employ.
 10 *empresser, s', à, de*, to be eager.
encourager à, to encourage to.
*engager** à, to induce.
engager, s', à, to engage.
enhardir à, to embolden.
enjoindre de, to enjoin.
ennuyer, s', de, to get wearied.
enseigner à, to teach to. [other.
entr'aider, s', à, to assist one an-
entreprendre de, to undertake to.
 11 *essayer à*, de, to try to.
étonner, s', de, to wonder at.
étudier, s', à, to endeavour to.
exceller à, to excel in.
exciter à, to excite to.
exhorter à, to exhort to.
exercer, s', à, to exercise o'self.
excuser, s', de, to excuse o'self.
exempter de, to exempt from.
exposer, s', à, to expose o'self.
éviter de, to shun.

F
feindre de, to pretend to.
 12 *finir à*, de, to finish to.
flatter, se, de, to flatter o'self.
former à, to train up to.
frémir de, to shudder to.
 13 *forcer à*, de, to oblige to.
 G
gager de, to wager to.
gagner à, to gain by.
garder, se, de, to take care.

* Coming before a vowel, it governs *de*, as, *il s'engagea de la vendre*.

3 *Continuer à*, to do a thing without interruption; *continuer de*, to continue to do a thing now and then.

4 *Contraindre* governs *à* when it proceeds from force, *de* when it proceeds from another cause.

5 *Défier*, a challenge between persons to do a thing, governs *à*, and *de* when it means defiance, mistrusting the power to do it.

6 *Demander à*, when the act of the second verb is to be performed by the person who asks, and by *de* when to be done by the person who is asked.

7 *Destiner à*, when active or passive; *destiner de*, when meaning to intend.

8 *Déterminer à*, to make a person form a resolution, to fix the meaning of a word; *déterminer de*, to come to a resolution.

9 *S'efforcer à*, to use all your strength, *s'efforcer à parler*; *s'efforcer de*, to use all your industry, *s'efforcer de réussir*.

10 *S'empresser à*, to act with ardour; *s'empresser de*, to seize the opportunity.

11 *Essayer à*, to make a trial, to attempt; *essayer de*, to use endeavours.

12 *Finir à* is used when it implies that a thing would never be finished, if attempted; *finir de*, to conclude, to finish, *il finira de parler à 8 heures*.

13 *Forcer à* before a noun, requires *à* before the infinitive; when negative, it governs *de*.

gémir de, to groan at.
glorifier, se, de, to glory in.
gronder de, to scold.

H

hasarder, se, à, to run the risk.
hâter, se, de, to hasten to.
hésiter à, to hesitate to.

I

- inciter* à, to incite to.
indigner, s', de, to be indignant.
ingérer, s', de, to take on o'self.
inspirer de, to inspire.
instruire à, to instruct to.
interdire de, to forbid to.
intéresser à, to induce to.
inviter à, to invite to.
juré de, to swear to.
justifier de, to justify.
 14 *laisser* à, de, to leave to.
languir de, to languish.
louer de, to praise.

M

- mander* de, to write word.
 15 *manquer* à, de, to fail in.
méditer de, to intend to.
mêler, se, de, to interfere with.
menacer de, to threaten to.
mériter de, to deserve to.
mettre à, to set about.
montrer à, to show.

O

- 16 *oblige* à, de, to oblige.
obstiner, s', à, to persist in.
obtenir de, to obtain.
occuper, s', à, to be engaged at.
occuper à, to occupy.
 17 *occuper*, s', à, de, to occupy one's self.
offrir de, to offer to.
offrir, s', à, to offer to.
omettre de, to omit to.
opiniâtrer à, to be obstinate.
ordonner de, to prescribe.
 18 *oublier* à, de, to forget.

N

nécessiter à, to force to.

négliger de, to neglect to.
nier de, to deny.

P

- pardonner* de, to forgive.
parvenir à, to succeed.
penser à, to be on the point of.
persévérer à, to persevere in.
persister à, to persist in.
permettre de, to permit to.
persuader de, to persuade to.
pâtiller de, to be eager to.
piquer, se, de, to pretend to.
plaindre, se, de, to pity.
plaire à, to please.
plaire, se, de, to delight in.
porter à, to prompt.
préparer à, to prepare.
préférer de, to prefer to.
prendre, se, à, to begin to.
préparer, se, à, to prepare o'self.
prescrire de, to prescribe.
préservé de, to preserve from.
presser de, to hurry to.
présumer de, to presume to.
prétendre à, to aspire to.
 19 *prier* à, de, to request, to invite.
priver de, to deprive of.
professer de, to profess to.
projeter de, to intend to.
promettre de, to promise to.
proposer de, to intend to.
protester de, to protest to.
provoquer à, to provoke to.
proposer de, to propose to.

R

rappeler, se, de, to recollect.
recommander de, to recommend.
repentir, se, de, to repent.
réprimender de, to reprove.
réduire à, to reduce.
reprandre de, to chide for.
redouter de, to fear to.
refuser de, to refuse to.
refuser, se, à, to refuse o'self.
regretter de, to regret to.
réjouir, se, de, to rejoice to.

14 *Laisser* à, without negation; *laisser* de, with negation; *laisser*, to permit, to allow, takes no preposition before the infinitive.

15 *Manquer* à, to express the omission of some duty; and *manquer* de to express omission arising from forgetfulness.

16 *Obliger*, in the sense of an obligation, to do or say a thing, governs *de* or *à*; but when it means to oblige, to do a service, it governs *de*.

17 *Occuper*, s'occuper à, to employ, to give work, to busy one's self at something; s'occuper de, to occupy one's time, to be busy in thought.

18 *Oublier* à, to have lost the knowledge or custom of some art or practice; *oublier* de, an omission arising from forgetfulness.

19 *Prier* à, to invite to dinner, &c.; *prier* de, to ask a favour.

remercier de, to thank.
renoncer à, to renounce.
reprocher de, to reproach for.
répugner à, to be repugnant.
résigner, se, à, to resign o'self.
résoudre de, to resolve to.
résoudre, se, à, to be resolved.
retenir, se, de, to forbear.
réussir à, to succeed in.
retarder de, to delay.
risquer de, to risk.
rire de, to laugh at.
rougir de, to blush.

S

sécher de, to wither with.
servir à, to serve to.
sonner de, to summons to.
songer à, to think of.
soucier, se, de, to mind, to care for.

soupçonner de, to suspect.
souvenir, se, de, to remember to.
soumettre, se, à, to submit to.
souhaiter de, to wish to.
 20 *suffir à, de*, to be sufficient.
suggérer de, to suggest.
supplier de, to entreat.

T

tenter de, to tempt.
 21 *tâcher à, de*, to endeavour.
 22 *tarder à, de*, to delay, to long,
tendre à, to tend to.
travailler à, to work at.
trembler de, to fear to.
 23 *tuer, se, à, de*, to exert o'self.

V

vanter, se, de, to boast of.
 24 *venir à, de*, to come from.

Détester, to detest; *espérer*, to hope; and *voir*, to see, are used with or without a preposition.

SEVENTH LIST;

Of Adjectives and Nouns governing *à* or *de* before the infinitive.

A

action de, act of.
admirable à, de, wonderful to.
affaire de, occasion for.
affligé de, afflicted to.
affreux à, de, dreadful to.
agréable à, de, agreeable to.
air de, manner of.
aise de, glad to.
aisé à, easy to.
ambition de, ambition to.
amitié de, favour to.
amour de, love of.
ardeur de, eagerness to.
arrogance de, arrogance to.
artifice de, art to.
assidu à, assiduous to.
avis de, advise to.
avoir besoin de, to want to.
 " *coutume de*, to be used to.
 " *honte de*, to be ashamed of.

avoir intérêt de, to be interested in.

" *l'honneur de*, to have the honour to.
 " *peine (de la) à*, to have difficulty.
 " *peur de*, to be afraid.
 " *plaisir (du) à*, to have pleasure in.
 " *soin de*, to take care of.
audace de, the daring to.

B

beau à, de, fine to.
bon à, de, good to.
bonté de, goodness to.

C

capable de, capable of.
chagrin de, grief to.
charmant à, charming to.
charmé de, delighted with.
choix de, choice of.
commission de, commission to.
complaisance de, kindness to.

20 *Suffir à*, sufficient to perform a duty, to satisfy a want; *suffire de*, when unipersonal, *il suffit de le voir*.

21 *Tâcher à*, to aim at; *tâcher de*, to use endeavours to succeed.

22 *Tarder à*, to put off, to act slowly; *tarder de* used unipersonally.

23 *Se tuer à*, to give one's self much trouble to accomplish anything; *se tuer de*, to use endeavours uselessly.

24 *Venir*, without a preposition, to come to a place; *venir à*, to come to a state; *venir de*, an idiom, to have just.

confusion de, confusion.
congé de, leave to.
consolation de, consolation to.
contraints de, constraint.
constance de, constancy.
content de, content.
courage de, courage.
curiosité de, curiosity to.
curieux de, to be curious to.

D

danger à, danger in.
dépit de, vexed.
dernier à, last to.
désagréable à, de, disagreeable to.
désir de, desire to.
dessein de, intention to.
difficile à, difficult to.
diligent à, de, diligent to.
don de, gift of.
doux de, sweet to.
droit de, right to.
durété de, harshness to.

E

effrayable à, de, frightful to.
effronterie à, de, impudence to.
enclin à, inclined to.
ennuyé de, wearied of.
enragé de, angry to.
envie de, a desire to.
esperance de, expectation to.
espoir de, hope to.
esprit de, sense to.
étonné de, astonished to.
être accoutumé, to be accustomed.
 " *accusé* de, to be accused.
 " *acharné* à, to be obstinately bent.
 " *affamé* de, eagerly desiring.
 " *affligé* de, to be afflicted with.
 " *capable* de, able to.
 " *charmé* de, delighted with.
 " *consterné* de, to be struck with fear.
 " *décidé* à, to be decided to.
 " *difficile* à, to be difficult to.
 " *disposé* à, to be inclined to.
 " *effrayé* de, to be frightened at.
 " *étonné* de, to be astonished at.
 " *exposé* à, to be exposed to.
 " *faché* de, to be sorry for.
 " *indigné* de, to be indignant at.
 " *intéressé* à, to feel an interest.
 " *loin* de, to be far from.
 " *ravi* de, to be delighted with.
 " *surpris* de, surprised to.
 " *tené* de, surprised to.
exact à, exact to.

F

facile à, de, easy to.
facilité à, inclination to.
façon de, style of.
faculté de, power to.
faiblesse de, weakness to.
faveur de, favour to.
fortune de, chance of.
frénésie de, madness to.
front de, assurance to.

G

gloire de, pride in.
grâce à, grace to.

H

habile à, to be clever in.
habitude de, to have the habit.
heureux de, happy to.
horrible à, de, horrid to.
honnêteté de, politeness.
honneur de, honour.
honte de, shame.

I

impatient de, impatient to.
impossible de, impossible to.
impudence à, impudence to.
imprudence de, imprudence to.
impuissance de, inability to.
incapable de, incapable of.
incommodité de, inconvenience.
ingénieux à, ingenious to.
inquiétude de, uneasiness.
insolence de, insolence to.
intention de, intention to.

J

justice de, justice to.
juste de, just to.

L

laid à, ugly to.
lassé de, tired of.
lent à, slow to.
liberté de, liberty.
lieu de, reason to.

M

maître de, master.
maladresse de, awkwardness to.
malheur de, misfortune to.
malice de, malice to.
manie de, habit of.
manière de, way of.
méchanceté de, wickedness to.
mérite de, merit of.
méthode de, method of.
mine de, the look of.
mortification de, grief of.

N

nécessaire de, necessary to.

nécessité de, necessity.

O

occasion de, occasion.

occupé à, busy at.

ordre de, order to.

orgueil de, pride to.

P

passion de, passion to.

peine à, difficulty in.

permission de, leave to.

péril de, danger of.

plaisir à, delight in.

possible de, possible to.

précaution de, to take care to.

premier à, first to.

présomption à, presumption to.

prêt à, ready to.

privilege de, privilege.

puissance de, power of, to.

R

rage de, rage to.

raison de, reason.

risque de, risk.

ruse de, cunning to.

S

satisfait de, satisfied to.

sens de, opinion of.

soin de, care to.

souci de, anxiety for.

sujet à, subject to.

sûr de, sure to.

surpris de, surprised to.

T

témérité, rashness in.

tentation de, temptation.

terrible à, terrible to.

tort de, wrong to.

V

vanité de, vanity to.

volonté de, the will to.

EIGHTH LIST;

Containing a series of Adjectives, governing *à* or *de* before their complement.

A

adroit à, dexterous at.

agile à, nimble at.

agréable à, agreeable to.

altéré de, thirsting after.

amoureux de, in love with.

alerte à, alert.

analogue à, analogous to.

antérieur à, anterior to.

approchant de, something like.

âpre à, rough to taste.

ardent à, ardent in.

assortissant à, matching.

atteint de, accused of.

attentif à, attention to.

avantageux à, advantageous to.

avare de, greedy of.

avide de, greedy of.

C

capable de, able to.

certain de, certain of.

chargé de, crowded, loaded with.

chagrin de, fretful at.

chéri de, beloved by.

cher à, dear to.

commode à, convenient to.

complice de, accessory to.

confus de, confused with.

connu de, known by.

conforme à, conformable to.

contraire à, contrary to.

convenable à, suitable to.

content de, pleased with.

coupable de, guilty of.

couronné de, surrounded by.

contrit de, grieved at.

curieux de, curious to.

D

dénué de, destitute of.

dépendant de, depending.

dépourvu de, void of.

désagréable à, disagreeable to.

désireux de, fond of.

différent de, different.

digne de, worthy of.

docile à, docile.

E

égal à, equal to.

enclin à, inclined.

enchanté de, delighted.

enivré de, drunk, infatuated.

envieux de, envious.

exact à, punctual to.

F

facile à, easy to.

favorable à, favourable.

fier de, proud of.

fidèle à, true to.

le, free to.

mad after.

à, fatal to.

de, furious at.

G

x de, proud of.

H

x de, happy to.

x de, ashamed of.

I

trable à, impervious to.

un à, troublesome to.

in de, at a loss to.

ble de, incapable of.

vode à, troublesome to.

lable de, inconsolable.

u à, unknown to.

ndant de, independent of.

e, unworthy of.

nsable à, indispensable to.

rent à, indifferent to.

ur à, inferior to.

e à, unskilful in.

à, useless to.

ble à, inexorable to.

de, uneasy for.

ble de, insatiable.

rable de, inseparable.

, drunk with.

de, jealous.

de, delighted at.

L

tired.

slow to.

a, free.

M

reux de, unfortunate to.

ent de, displeased.

N

à, natural to.

tre à, necessary to.

e à, hurtful.

O

obstiné à, obstinate of.

odieux à, odious to.

occupé à, busy.

orgueilleux de, proud of.

opposé à, opposed to.

P

paresseux à, idle.

plein de, full of.

pareil à, like.

pernicieux à, hurtful.

porté à, inclined to.

prêt à, ready.

préférable à, preferable.

privé de, deprived of.

prodigue de, prodigal of.

prompt à, quick.

propice à, propitious.

R

ravi de, enraptured with.

rayonnant de, radiant with.

rebelle à, rebellious.

reconnaissant de, grateful for.

redoutable à, formidable.

responsable à, responsible.

S

sensible à, sensible.

sourd à, deaf to.

soigneux de, careful of.

sujet à, subject.

supérieur à, subject to.

sûr de, sure of.

susceptible de, susceptible of.

T

tributaire de, tributary.

triste de, sorrowful to.

V

vain de, vain of.

vide de, void of.

utile à, useful to.

NINTH LIST—PART I.

Of Essential Reflective Verbs.

Those verbs marked thus * are not Reflective in English.

r, * s', to abstain.

er, * s', to lean with the elbow.

oir, s', to squat down.

r, s', to devote one's self.

iller, * s', to kneel.

r, s', to cling.

r, s', to arrogate.

e, to squat in a corner.

cabrer, se, to rear (like a horse).

comporter, se, to behave.

défier, * se, to distrust.

désister, * se, to desist.

écrouler, s', earth giving way.

embusquer, s', to be in ambush.

emparer, * s', to take possession.

empresser, s', to obtain from.

en aller, * *s'*, to go away.
enquérir, * *s'*, to inquire after.
enquêter, *s'*, to trouble one's self.
en retourner, *s'*, to return.
*éva*der, * *s'*, to escape.
évanouir, * *s'*, to faint.
*éva*porer, * *s'*, to evaporate.
évertuer, *s'*, to endeavour.
extasier, *s'*, to be in raptures.
formaliser, * *se*, to take offence.
gargariser, *se*, to gargle.
ingérer, * *s'*, to meddle with.
méfier, * *se*, to mistrust.
méprendre, * *se*, to err in.
moquer, *se*, to laugh at.

obstiner, * *se*, to be obstinate.
opiniâtrer, * *s'*, to be determined.
parjurer, *se*, to perjure one's self.
prosterner, *se*, to prostrate o'self.
ratatiner, *se*, to shrivel.
raviser, *se*, to change opinion.
rebeller, *se*, to rebel.
récrier, *se*, to exclaim against.
redimer, *se*, to redeem one's self.
refugier, * *se*, to take refuge.
remparer, *se*, to entrench o'self.
rengorger, *se*, to bridle up.
repentir, * *se*, to repent.
souvenir, *se*, to remember.

NINTH LIST—PART II.

Of Verbs Reflective in French and not in English.

<i>abonner</i> , <i>s'</i> , to subscribe.	<i>étonner</i> , <i>s'</i> , to wonder.
<i>accorder</i> , <i>s'</i> , to agree.	<i>évanouir</i> , <i>s'</i> , to faint.
<i>accouder</i> , <i>s'</i> , to lean with the elbow.	<i>éva</i> porer, <i>s'</i> , to evaporate.
<i>abstenir</i> , <i>s'</i> , to abstain.	<i>évertuer</i> , <i>s'</i> , to endeavour.
<i>asseoir</i> , <i>s'</i> , to sit down.	<i>éclipser</i> , <i>s'</i> , to vanish.
<i>adhém</i> iner, <i>s'</i> , to set out.	<i>écouler</i> , <i>s'</i> , to flow away.
<i>agenouiller</i> , <i>s'</i> , to kneel.	<i>efforcer</i> , <i>s'</i> , to endeavour.
<i>appercevoir</i> , <i>s'</i> , to perceive.	<i>émerveiller</i> , <i>s'</i> , to wonder.
<i>appauvrir</i> , <i>s'</i> , to grow poor.	<i>emporter</i> , <i>s'</i> , to get angry.
<i>appuyer</i> , <i>s'</i> , to lean upon.	<i>enorgueillir</i> , <i>s'</i> , to grow proud.
<i>arrêter</i> , <i>s'</i> , to stop.	<i>enquérir</i> , <i>s'</i> , to inquire after.
<i>attendre</i> , <i>s'</i> , to expect.	<i>entêter</i> , <i>s'</i> , to be obstinate.
<i>attendrir</i> , <i>s'</i> , to be moved.	<i>évader</i> , <i>s'</i> , to escape.
<i>baigner</i> , <i>se</i> , to bathe.	<i>expatrier</i> , <i>s'</i> , to leave o' country.
<i>baiss</i> er, <i>se</i> , to stoop.	<i>fier</i> , <i>se</i> , to trust.
<i>battre</i> , <i>se</i> , to fight.	<i>figurer</i> , <i>se</i> , to fancy.
<i>coucher</i> , <i>se</i> , to go to bed.	<i>flétrir</i> , <i>se</i> , to fade.
<i>déborder</i> , <i>se</i> , to overflow.	<i>fondre</i> , <i>se</i> , to melt.
<i>débattre</i> , <i>se</i> , to struggle.	<i>formaliser</i> , <i>se</i> , to take offence.
<i>dédire</i> , <i>se</i> , to retract.	<i>fâcher</i> , <i>se</i> , to get angry.
<i>défier</i> , <i>se</i> , to distrust.	<i>glisser</i> , <i>se</i> , to creep in.
<i>dépêcher</i> , <i>se</i> , to make haste.	<i>garder</i> , <i>se</i> , to beware.
<i>dém</i> ettre, <i>se</i> , to resign.	<i>guérir</i> , <i>se</i> , to cure.
<i>désister</i> , <i>se</i> , to desist.	<i>hâter</i> , <i>se</i> , to hasten.
<i>en aller</i> , <i>s'</i> , to go away.	<i>impatienter</i> , <i>s'</i> , to grow impatient.
<i>emparer</i> , <i>s'</i> , to take possession.	<i>imaginer</i> , <i>s'</i> , to fancy.
<i>endormir</i> , <i>s'</i> , to fall asleep.	<i>lever</i> , <i>se</i> , to rise.
<i>enfuir</i> , <i>s'</i> , to run away.	<i>lasser</i> , <i>se</i> , to grow tired.
<i>enhardir</i> , <i>s'</i> , to grow bold.	<i>insinuer</i> , <i>s'</i> , to creep in.
<i>enraciner</i> , <i>s'</i> , to take root.	<i>marier</i> , <i>se</i> , to be married.
<i>enrhumer</i> , <i>s'</i> , to catch cold.	<i>méfier</i> , <i>se</i> , to mistrust.
<i>enrichir</i> , <i>s'</i> , to grow rich.	<i>méprendre</i> , <i>se</i> , to err in.
<i>entretenir</i> , <i>s'</i> , to speak with.	<i>moquer</i> , <i>se</i> , to laugh at.
<i>envoler</i> , <i>s'</i> , to fly away.	<i>mutiner</i> , <i>se</i> , to mutiny.
<i>épanouir</i> , <i>s'</i> , to bloom.	<i>mourir</i> , <i>se</i> , to be dying.
<i>esquiver</i> , <i>s'</i> , to steal away.	<i>obstiner</i> , <i>s'</i> , to be obstinate.

trer, s', to be determined.
re, se, to complain.
ner, se, to walk.
er, se, to remember.
r, se, to rejoice.
ir, se, to repent.
r, se, to rest.
er, se, to rebel.

réfugier, se, to take refuge.
retirer, se, to withdraw.
saisir, se, to seize upon.
soumettre, se, to submit.
souvenir, se, to remember.
taire, se, to be silent.
vanter, se, to boast.

TENTH LIST.

The following Conjunctions govern the indicative :—

re que, because.
ue, according to.
tion que, on condition.
que, as.
arge que, on condition.
ure que, as fast as.
e...que, scarcely.
que, after, when.
u que, because.
bien que, as well as.
que; so, as.
peu que, as little as.
ôt que, as soon.
que, as much as.
tendu que, provided.
our cela que, 'tis for that.
ourquoi, 'tis for that.
si, as if.
nt que, in as much.
m que, so that.
ière que, so that.

de même que, same manner.
depuis que, since.
dès que, as soon as.
de sorte que, so that.
durant que, during.
lorsque, when.
non plus que, not that.
outre que, besides that.
parce que, because.
pendant que, whilst.
peut-être que, perhaps.
pourquoi, why.
puisque, since.
quand, when.
si, if, whether.
si ce n'est que, if not so.
sitôt que, as soon as.
tandis que, while.
tant que, as long as.
tellement que, so that.
vu que, seeing that.

ELEVENTH LIST.

The following Conjunctions govern the subjunctive :—

e, in order that.
que, before.
que, in case that.
s que, unless.
ie, although.
nte que, for fear.
r que, lest.
que, in fear.
que, although.
i ce que, until.
s, far from.
que, although.

non que, not that.
non pas que, not that.
pour que, for.
pour peu que, if ever so little.
pourvu que, provided.
quoi que, though.
sans que, without.
si non que, except that.
si peu que, if ever so little.
si ce n'est que, unless.
soit que, whether.
supposé que, supposing.

THIRTEENTH LIST.*

List of Ancient and Modern Names of the most remarkable Nations, Empires, Kingdoms, Provinces, Towns, Mountains, Capes, Islands, Straits, Rivers, &c., not spelled the same in French as in English.

OSERVE.—In general, all names of Kingdoms, Countries, Provinces, Towns, &c. ending in *a* and *burg* in English, become French by changing the *a* into *e* mute, and *burg* into *bourg*, as, *Carolina*, *Caroline*; *Arabia*, *Arabie*; *Cæsarea*, *Césarée*; *Angsburg*, *Angsbourg*; *Brandenburg*, *Brandebourg*, &c.

ABBREVIATIONS EXPLAINED.

a. adjectif.	pro. province.	sf. substantif féminin.
e. empire.	pl. pluriel.	sm. substantif masculin.
i. fle.	rio. rivière.	v. ville.
f. fleuve.	r. royaume.	e or ne f. of adj.
dét. détroit.	n. nom.	pe. peuple.

Africa,	<i>Afrique, sf.</i>	Burgundian,	<i>Bourguignon, ne.</i>
African,	<i>Africain, e, a.</i>	Bremen,	<i>Brême, sf. v.</i>
Alps,	<i>Alpes, sf. pl.</i>	Brasil,	<i>Brésil, sm. r.</i>
Algiers,	<i>Alger, sm. v.</i>	Brasilian,	<i>Brésilien, ne, a.</i>
Algerine,	<i>Algérien, ne, a.</i>	Britany,	<i>Bretagne, sf. pro.</i>
America,	<i>Amérique, sf.</i>	Britain,	<i>Bretagne, sf. r.</i>
American,	<i>Américain, e, a.</i>	British,	<i>Breton, ne, s.</i>
Andalusia,	<i>Andalousie, sf.</i>	Briton,	<i>Breton, ne, s.</i>
Antioch,	<i>Antioche, sf. v.</i>	Brussels,	<i>Bruxelles, v.</i>
Antwerp,	<i>Anvers, sm. v.</i>	Black Sea,	<i>Mer Noire.</i>
Apulia,	<i>Pouille(la) sf. pro.</i>	Cadiz,	<i>Cadix, sm. v.</i>
Arabian,	<i>Arabe, a.</i>	Cairo,	<i>Caire (le) sm. v.</i>
Arcadian,	<i>Arcadien, ne, a.</i>	Calabria,	<i>Calabre, sf. pro.</i>
Archipelago,	<i>Archipel, sm.</i>	Chalcedonia,	<i>Calcédoine, sf. v.</i>
Armenian,	<i>Arménien, ne, a.</i>	Canary,	<i>Canarie, sf. i.</i>
Asia,	<i>Asie, sf.</i>	Canadian,	<i>Canadien, ne, a.</i>
Asiatic,	<i>Asiatique, a.</i>	Canterbury,	<i>Cantorbéry, sm. v.</i>
Assyria,	<i>Assyrie, sf. e.</i>	Cape of Good Hope,	<i>Cap de Bonne-espérance.</i>
Assyrian,	<i>Assyrien, ne, a.</i>	Cappadocia,	<i>Cappadoce, sf.</i>
Asturias,	<i>Asturies, sf. pro.</i>	Cappadocian,	<i>Cappadocien, ne.</i>
Athens,	<i>Athènes, sf. v.</i>	Carthaginian,	<i>Carthaginois, e, a.</i>
Athenian,	<i>Athénien, ne, a.</i>	Caspian Sea,	<i>Caspienne (mer).</i>
Atlantic Ocean,	<i>Océan Atlantique.</i>	Castilian,	<i>Castillan, ne, a.</i>
Attica,	<i>Attique, sf. pro.</i>	Castile,	<i>Castille, sf. pro.</i>
Austria,	<i>Austrie, sf. pro.</i>	Champaign,	<i>Champagne, sf.</i>
Austrian,	<i>Autriche, sf. e.</i>	China,	<i>Chine, sf. e.</i>
Austria,	<i>Autrichien, ne, a.</i>	Chinese,	<i>Chinois, e, a.</i>
Babylon,	<i>Babylone, sf. v.</i>	Cyprus,	<i>Chypre, sf. i.</i>
Basil,	<i>Bâle, sf. v.</i>	Circassian,	<i>Circassien, ne, a.</i>
Baltic Sea,	<i>Baltique (mer).</i>	Cologne,	<i>Cologne, sm. v.</i>
Bavaria,	<i>Bavière, sf. r.</i>	Copenhagen,	<i>Copenhague, sm.</i>
Bavarian,	<i>Bavarois, e, a.</i>	Corfu,	<i>Corfou, sm. i.</i>
Bern,	<i>Berne, v.</i>	Corinth,	<i>Corinthe, sf. v.</i>
Bernese,	<i>Béarnais, e, a.</i>	Corinthian,	<i>Corinthien, ne, a.</i>
Belgium,	<i>Belgique, sf. pro.</i>	Cornwall,	<i>Cornouaille, sf.</i>
Bengal,	<i>Bengale, sm. pro.</i>	Corunna,	<i>Corogne (la) sf.</i>
Bohemia,	<i>Bohême, sf. r.</i>	Corsica,	<i>Corse, sf. i.</i>
Bohemian,	<i>Bohémien, ne, a.</i>	Corsican,	<i>Corse, a.</i>
Bologna,	<i>Bologne, sf. v.</i>	Cossack,	<i>Cosaque, n. de pe.</i>
Burgundy,	<i>Bourgogne, s. f.</i>		

* The Twelfth List is unavoidably placed after the Thirteenth.

and,	<i>Courlande, sf. pro.</i>	Guelderland,	<i>Gueldre, sf. pro.</i>
ow,	<i>Cracovie, sf. v.</i>	Guinea,	<i>Guinée, sf.</i>
in,	<i>Crétois, e, a.</i>	Hainault,	<i>Hainaut, sm. pro.</i>
arlian,	<i>Dalécarlien, ne, a.</i>	Hamburg,	<i>Hambourg, sm. v.</i>
usous,	<i>Damas, pro. v.</i>	Hamburgher,	<i>Hambourgeois, e, a.</i>
ark,	<i>Danemarck, sm. r.</i>	Hanover,	<i>Hanovre, sm. r.</i>
,	<i>Danois, e, n de pe.</i>	Hanoverian,	<i>Hanovrien, ne, a.</i>
ih,	<i>Danois, e, a.</i>	Havannah,	<i>Havanne (la) sf. v.</i>
hiny,	<i>Dauphiné sm. p.</i>	Hague,	<i>Haye (la) sf. v.</i>
r,	<i>Douvres, sm. v.</i>	Hebrus,	<i>Hèbre, sm. fl.</i>
len,	<i>Dresde, v.</i>	Hindostan,	<i>Indostan, sm.</i>
irk,	<i>Dunkerque, sm.</i>	Holland,	<i>Hollande, sf. pro.</i>
h,	<i>Hollandais, e, a.</i>	Holy Land,	<i>Terre-sainte (la).</i>
Indies,	<i>Indes orientales,</i>	Hungary,	<i>Hongrie, sf. r.</i>
ourgh,	<i>Edinbourg, sm. v.</i>	Hungarian,	<i>Hongrois, e, a.</i>
t,	<i>Egypte, sf. pro.</i>	India,	<i>Inde, sf.</i>
tian,	<i>Egyptien, ne, a.</i>	Indies,	<i>Indes, sf. pl.</i>
ind,	<i>Angleterre, sf. r.</i>	Indian,	<i>Indien, ne, a.</i>
ah,	<i>Anglais, e, a.</i>	Ireland,	<i>Irlande, sf. i.</i>
sus,	<i>Ephèse, sf. v.</i>	Irish,	<i>Irlandais, e, a.</i>
sian,	<i>Ephésien, ne, a.</i>	Italy,	<i>Italie, sf. r.</i>
urus,	<i>Epidaure, v.</i>	Italian,	<i>Italien, ne, a.</i>
urian,	<i>Epidaurien, ne, a.</i>	Jamaica,	<i>Jamaïque, sf. i.</i>
is,	<i>Epire, sm. pro.</i>	Japan,	<i>Japon, sm. e.</i>
pian,	<i>Ethiopien, ne, a.</i>	Japanese,	<i>Japonnais, e, a.</i>
rates,	<i>Euphrate, sm. r.</i>	Judea,	<i>Judée, sf. pro.</i>
pean,	<i>Européen, ne, a.</i>	Lacedemonia,	<i>Lacédémone, sf.</i>
nd,	<i>Finlande, sf. pro.</i>	Lacedemonian,	<i>Lacédémonien, ne.</i>
nder,	<i>Finlandais, e, a.</i>	Lancaster,	<i>Lancastre, sm. v.</i>
lers,	<i>Flandre, sf. pro.</i>	Lapland,	<i>Lapon, ne, n, de pe</i>
ish,	<i>Flamand, e, a.</i>	Laplander,	<i>Laponie, sf. pro.</i>
la,	<i>Floride, sf. pro.</i>	Leyden,	<i>Leyde, sf. v.</i>
ih,	<i>Français, e, a.</i>	Lisle,	<i>Lille, sm. v.</i>
kfort,	<i>Francfort, sm. v.</i>	Lisbon,	<i>Lisbonne, sf. v.</i>
rg,	<i>Fribourg, sm. v.</i>	Lithuanian,	<i>Lithuanien, ne, a.</i>
n Ocean,	<i>Mer Glaciale,</i>	Leghorn,	<i>Livourne, sf. v.</i>
t,	<i>Gand, sm. v.</i>	Livonian,	<i>Livonien, ne, a.</i>
es,	<i>Gange, sm. riv.</i>	Lombardy,	<i>Lombardie, sf. r.</i>
ny,	<i>Gascogne, sf. pro.</i>	London,	<i>Londres, sm. v.</i>
	<i>Gaule, sf.</i>	Lorrain,	<i>Lorraine, sf. pro.</i>
	<i>Gaulois, e, n.</i>	Lucca,	<i>Lucques, sf. v.</i>
	<i>Gênes, sf. v.</i>	Luccese,	<i>Lucquois, e, n.</i>
	<i>Genève, sf. v.</i>	Luxumburg,	<i>Luxembourg, sm.</i>
ra,	<i>Génevois, e, a.</i>	Lyons,	<i>Lyon, sm. v.</i>
rese,	<i>Génois, e, a.</i>	of Lyons,	<i>Lyonnais, e, a.</i>
se,	<i>Georgien, ne, a.</i>	Macedonia,	<i>Macédoine, sf. v.</i>
jian,	<i>Germanie, sf.</i>	Macedonian,	<i>Macédonien, ne.</i>
any,	<i>Allemagne, sf.</i>	Madeira,	<i>Madère, sf. i.</i>
any,	<i>German, ne, a.</i>	Mechlin,	<i>Malines, sf. v.</i>
an,	<i>Allemand, e, a.</i>	Malta,	<i>Malte, sf. i.</i>
an,	<i>Gironne, sf. v.</i>	Mantua,	<i>Mantoue, sf. v.</i>
na,	<i>Grèce, sf. pro.</i>	Marocco,	<i>Maroc, sm. e.</i>
e,	<i>Grec, que, a.</i>	Marseilles,	<i>Marseille, sf. v.</i>
c, Grecian,	<i>Grenade, sf. pro.</i>	Marseillaise,	<i>Marseillais, se, a.</i>
ida,	<i>Groënland, sm.</i>	Martinico,	<i>Martinique (la).</i>
land,	<i>Guadeloupe, sf. i.</i>	Mentz,	<i>Moyence, sf. v.</i>
loupe,			

Mecca,	<i>Mecque (la) sf. v.</i>	Pontus Euxinus	<i>Pont-Euxin, sm.</i>
Mediterranean,	<i>Méditerranée, sf.</i>	Portuguese,	<i>Portugais, e. a.</i>
Mexico,	<i>Mexique, sm. p.</i>	Presburg,	<i>Presbourg, sm. u.</i>
Mexican,	<i>Mexicain, e. a.</i>	Prussia,	<i>Prusse, sf. r.</i>
Milanese,	<i>Milanais, e. a.</i>	Prussian,	<i>Prussien, ne, a.</i>
Miletus,	<i>Milet, sm. v.</i>	Ratisbon,	<i>Ratisbonne, sf. v.</i>
Minorca,	<i>Minorque, sf. i.</i>	Red Sea,	<i>Mer Rouge.</i>
Mogul,	<i>Mogol, sm. e.</i>	Rhine,	<i>Rhin, sm. fl.</i>
Morea,	<i>Morée, sf. pro.</i>	Roman,	<i>Romain, e. a.</i>
Moscovy,	<i>Moscovie, sf. e.</i>	Russia,	<i>Russie, sf. e.</i>
Mycene,	<i>Mycènes, sf. v.</i>	Russian,	<i>Russe, a.</i>
Nantz,	<i>Nantes, sm. v.</i>	Saguntum,	<i>Sagonte, sf. v.</i>
Neapolitan,	<i>Napolitain, e.</i>	Saint-Helena,	<i>Hélène (Sainte) sf. i.</i>
Navarrese,	<i>Navarrois, e. a.</i>	St. Domingo,	<i>Domingue (Saint) i.</i>
Negro,	<i>Nègre, a.</i>	Salamanca,	<i>Salamanque, sf. v.</i>
Netherlands,	<i>Pays-Bas, sm. pl.</i>	Samaritan,	<i>Samaritain, e. a.</i>
Neufchatel,	<i>Neuchâtel, sm. v.</i>	Sardinia,	<i>Sardaigne, sf. r.</i>
Nile,	<i>Nil, sm. riv.</i>	Sardinian,	<i>Sarde, a.</i>
Nimeguen,	<i>Nimègue, sf. v.</i>	Sardia,	<i>Sardes, sf. v.</i>
Nineveh,	<i>Ninive, sf. v.</i>	Saragossa,	<i>Saragosse, sf. v.</i>
Normandy,	<i>Normandie, sf.</i>	Saracen,	<i>Sarrassin, e. a.</i>
Norman,	<i>Normand, e. a.</i>	Savoy,	<i>Savoie, sf. pro.</i>
Norway,	<i>Norvège, sf. r.</i>	Saxony,	<i>Saxe, sf. r.</i>
Norwegian,	<i>Norvégien, ne, a.</i>	Scotland,	<i>Ecosse, sf. r.</i>
New England,	<i>Nouvelle Angleterre, sf. pro.</i>	Scotch,	<i>Ecosais, e. a.</i>
Nova Scotia,	<i>Nouvelle-Ecosse.</i>	Scythia,	<i>Scythie, sf.</i>
Numidia,	<i>Numides, n. de pe.</i>	Scythian,	<i>Scythe, a.</i>
Oldenburg,	<i>Oldembourg, sm. v.</i>	St. Sebastian,	<i>Sébastien (Saint).</i>
Ostend,	<i>Ostende, sf. v.</i>	Siberia,	<i>Sibérie, sf. pro.</i>
Otranto,	<i>Otrante, sf. v.</i>	Siberian,	<i>Sibérien, ne, a.</i>
Pacific Ocean,	<i>Océan Pacifique,</i>	Sicily,	<i>Sicile, sf. i.</i>
Padua,	<i>Padoue, sf. v.</i>	Sicilian,	<i>Sicilien, ne, a.</i>
Palermo,	<i>Palerme, sf. v.</i>	Silesian,	<i>Silésien, ne, a.</i>
Palmyra,	<i>Palmyre, sf. v.</i>	Smyrna,	<i>Smyrne, v.</i>
Pampeluna,	<i>Pampelune, sf. v.</i>	Sodom,	<i>Sodome, sf. v.</i>
Parisian,	<i>Parisien, ne, a.</i>	Spain,	<i>Espagne, sf. r.</i>
Parma,	<i>Parme, sf. v.</i>	Spaniard,	<i>Espagnol, e. n.</i>
Parnassus,	<i>Parnasse, sm.</i>	Spanish,	<i>Espagnol, e. a.</i>
Peloponnesus,	<i>Péloponnèse, sm.</i>	Sparta,	<i>Sparte, sf. v.</i>
Peloponnesian,	<i>Péloponnésien, ne</i>	Spartan,	<i>Spartiate, a.</i>
Persia,	<i>Perse, sf. r.</i>	Strasburg,	<i>Strasbourg, sm. v.</i>
Persian,	<i>Perse, Persan, ne</i>	Suabia,	<i>Souabe, sf. pro.</i>
Peru,	<i>Pérou, sm. pro.</i>	Sweden,	<i>Suède, sf. r.</i>
Peruvian,	<i>Péruvien, ne, a.</i>	Swedish,	<i>Suédois, e. a.</i>
Petersburg,	<i>Petersbourg, sm.</i>	Switzerland,	<i>Suisse, sf.</i>
Pharsalia,	<i>Pharsale, sf. v.</i>	Swiss,	<i>Suisse, a.</i>
Phenician,	<i>Phénicien, ne, a.</i>	the Sound,	<i>Sund (le), det.</i>
Philadelphia,	<i>Philadelphie, sf.</i>	Syrian,	<i>Syrien, ne, a.</i>
Picardy,	<i>Picardie, sf. pro.</i>	Tagus,	<i>Tage, sm. fl.</i>
Piedmont,	<i>Piémont, sm. pro.</i>	Thames,	<i>Tamise, sf. riv.</i>
Piedmontese,	<i>Piémontais, e. a.</i>	Tarentum,	<i>Tarente, sf. v.</i>
Placentia,	<i>Plaisance, sf. v.</i>	Tarentine,	<i>Tarentin, e. a.</i>
Poland,	<i>Pologne, sf. r.</i>	Tarsus,	<i>Tarse, sf. v.</i>
Polander,	<i>Polonais, e. n. de pe.</i>	Tartary,	<i>Tartarie, sf.</i>
Pontus,	<i>Pont, sm. v.</i>	Tartar,	<i>Tartare, a.</i>
		Teneriffe,	<i>Ténériffe, sf. i.</i>

'erra del fuego,	<i>Terre-de-feu, sf.</i>	Turkey,	<i>Turquie, sf. c.</i>
'erra firma,	<i>Terre-ferme, sf.</i>	Turk, Turkish,	<i>Turc, que, a.</i>
'ewfoundland,	<i>Terre-neuve, sf. f.</i>	Tyre,	<i>Tyr, sf. v.</i>
'ebaid,	<i>Thébaïde, sf. pro.</i>	Tyrian,	<i>Tyrien, ne, a.</i>
'eban,	<i>Thébain, c, a.</i>	United States,	<i>Etats-unis, sm. pl.</i>
'ermopylæ,	<i>Thermopyles, sf.</i>	United Provin-	<i>Provinces-Unies.</i>
'essaly,	<i>Thessalie, sf. pro.</i>	oes,	
'essalian,	<i>Thessalien, ne, a.</i>	Valencia,	<i>Valence, sf.</i>
'essalonica,	<i>Thessalonique, sf.</i>	Venice,	<i>Venise, sf.</i>
'essalonian,	<i>Thessalonien, ne.</i>	Venetian,	<i>Vénitien ne, a.</i>
'hracian,	<i>Thrace, a.</i>	Vesuvius,	<i>Vésuve, sm.</i>
'iber,	<i>Tibre, sm. f.</i>	Vicenza,	<i>Vicence, sf. v.</i>
'igris,	<i>Tigre, sm. riv.</i>	Vienna,	<i>Vienne, sf. v.</i>
'obolsk,	<i>Tobolsk, sm. v.</i>	Virginia,	<i>Virginie, sf. pro.</i>
'oledo,	<i>Tolède, sf. v.</i>	Wales,	<i>Galles (le pays de)</i>
'uscany,	<i>Toscane, sf.</i>	Warsaw,	<i>Varsovie, sf. v.</i>
'uscan,	<i>Toscan, c, a.</i>	Welsh,	<i>Gallois, v. a.</i>
'rent,	<i>Trente, v.</i>	West Indies,	<i>Indes occidentales</i>
'riers,	<i>Trèves, sf. v.</i>	Westphalia,	<i>Westphalie, sf.</i>
'rinidad,	<i>Trinité (la), sf. f.</i>	Wiburg,	<i>Wibourg, sm. v.</i>
'roy,	<i>Troie, sf. v.</i>	Xanthe,	<i>Xanthus, sm. f.</i>
'rojan,	<i>Troyen, ne, a.</i>	Zealand,	<i>Zelande, sf. f.</i>

TWELFTH LIST.

Containing a series of Adjectives which impart a different signification to the noun, according as they are placed before or after it.

<i>un homme bon,</i> a good man.	BOB. good—simple.	<i>un bon homme,</i> a simple man.
<i>un homme brave,</i> a brave man.	BEAVE. brave—honest.	<i>un brave homme,</i> an honest man.
<i>une voix commune,</i> a common voice.	COMMUNE. common—unanimous.	<i>d'une commune voix,</i> unanimously.
<i>de nouvelles certaines,</i> positive rules.	CERTAIN. positive—particular.	<i>de certains esprits,</i> particular beings.
<i>l'année dernière,</i> last year.	DERNIER. last—the last.	<i>la dernière année,</i> the last year.
<i>un accord faux,</i> a false note.	FAUX. false—out of.	<i>un faux accord,</i> out of time.
<i>un faux jour,</i> a false light (shade).	FAUX. false—bad.	<i>dans un faux jour,</i> in a bad light.
<i>une porte fausse,</i> a false door.	FAUSSE. false—private.	<i>une fausse porte,</i> a private door.
<i>une clef fausse,</i> a wrong key.	FAUSSE. wrong—false.	<i>une fausse clef,</i> a false key.
<i>un fou furieux,</i> an enraged madman.	FURIEUX. enraged—terrible.	<i>un furieux menteur,</i> a terrible liar.
<i>un homme gallant,</i> a gallant man.	GALLANT. gallant—well-bred.	<i>un gallant homme,</i> a well-bred man.
<i>un homme grand,</i> a tall man.	GRAND. tall—great.	<i>un grand homme,</i> a great man.
<i>l'air grand,</i> a noble look.	GRAND. noble—noble.	<i>le grand air,</i> noble manners.
<i>une femme grosse,</i> a woman enceinte.	GROSSE. enceinte—big.	<i>une grosse femme,</i> a big woman.
<i>le ton haut,</i> a loud voice.	HAUT. loud—arrogant.	<i>le haut ton,</i> an arrogant manner.
<i>un homme honnête,</i> a polite man.	HONNÊTE. polite—honest.	<i>un honnête homme,</i> an honest man.
<i>des gens honnêtes,</i> polite people.	HONNÊTES. polite—respectable.	<i>des honnêtes gens,</i> respectable people.

un enfant malin,
a cunning child.
un fils malheureux,
an unfortunate son.
un enfant misérable,
an unhappy child.
L'air mauvais,
an ill-natured look.
épigramme méchante,
a wicked epigram.
du bois mort,
dead trees.
eau morte,
still water.
le vin nouveau,
wine newly made.
des livres nouveaux,
new books.
un habit nouveau,
new-fashioned coat.
un homme pauvre,
a poor man.
un homme plaisant,
a pleasant man.
personnage plaisant,
an amusing person.
un conte plaisant,
an amusing story.
un homme petit,
a mean man.
des termes propres,
correct expressions.
une femme sage,
a prudent woman.
un homme seul,
a man alone.
des airs simples,
plain tunes.
un homme triste,
a sorrowful man.
tableau unique,
a singular picture.
un homme vilain,
a mean man.
un conte vrai—
un conte véritable,
a true story.

MALIN.
cunning—engaging.
MALHEUREUX.
unfortunate—guilty.
MISÉRABLE.
unhappy—weak.
MAUVAIS.
ill-natured—vulgar.
MÉCHANTE.
wicked—bad.
MORT.
dead—little value.
MORTE.
still—ebb.
NOUVEAU.
newly—newly.
NOUVEAUX.
new—other.
NOUYEAU.
new—another.
PAUVRE.
poor—without merit.
PLAISANT.
pleasant—whimsical.
PLAISANT.
amusing—contemptible.
PLAISANT.
amusing—unlikely.
PETIT.
mean—little.
PROPRE.
correct—exact.
SAGE.
prudent—midwife.
SEUL.
alone—single.
SIMPLE.
plain—blank.
TRISTE.
sorrowful—poor.
UNIQUE.
singular—single.
VILLAIN.
mean—disagreeable.
VAI.
VERITABLE.
true—really.

un malin enfant,
an engaging child.
un malheureux fils.
a guilty son.
un misérable enfant,
a weak, poor child.
mauvais air,
vulgar appearance.
méchante épigramme.
a bad epigram.
du mort bois,
wood of little value.
morte eau,
ebb tides.
le nouveau vin,
wine newly come.
de nouveaux livres,
other books.
un nouvel habit,
another coat.
un pauvre homme,
a man of no merit.
un plaisant homme,
a whimsical man.
plaisant personnage,
a contemptible person.
un plaisant conte,
an unlikely tale.
un petit homme.
a little man.
les propres termes,
the exact words.
une sage femme,
a midwife.
un seul homme,
a single man.
des simples airs,
tunes without words.
un triste homme,
a poor kind of man.
unique tableau,
a single picture.
un vilain homme,
a disagreeable man.
un vrai conte—
un véritable conte,
tis really a story.

FINIS.

